Michael Swan • Catherine Walter

www.languagecentre.ir

# Oxford English Grammar Course





'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM

with answers

Basic

### OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

#### Great Clarendon Street, Oxford 0x2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford. It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research, scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

OXFORD and OXFORD ENGLISH are registered trade marks of Oxford University Press in the UK and in certain other countries

© Michael Swan and Catherine Walter 2011

The moral rights of the author have been asserted Database right Oxford University Press (maker) First published 2011

2016 2015 2014 2013 2012 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

#### No unauthorized photocopying

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction outside the scope of the above should be sent to the ELT Rights Department, Oxford University Press, at the address above You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

Any websites referred to in this publication are in the public domain and their addresses are provided by Oxford University Press for information only. Oxford University Press disclaims any responsibility for the content

ISBN: 978 0 19 442075 4 Student's Book with answers ISBN: 978 0 19 442077 8 Student's Book and CD-ROM Pack with answers

Printed in China

This book is printed on paper from certified and well-managed sources.

Michael Swan & Catherine Walter

# Oxford English Grammar Course Basic

A grammar practice book for elementary to pre-intermediate students of English

With answers



### publisher's acknowledgements

The publisher would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs and cartoons:

Alamy pp57 (Isabella Lucy Bird/Visual Arts Library), 109 (Paris/Antony Nettle), 137 (airplane/ Antony Nettle), 137 (speedboat/Ron Bedard), 137 (motorbike/Oleksiy Maksymenko), 137 (tractor/Juice Images), 282 (cafe/KIM), 282 (corner/Jim Powell), 282(shopping/STOCK4B GmbH); Ancient Art & Architecture Collection pp45 (ship), 45 (Namibia); Bridgeman Art Library p109 (Sunflowers/National Gallery, London, UK); CartoonStock p86; Corbis UK Ltd. pp137 (vacht/Patrick Ward), 282 (river/Jeff Henry); French Ministry of Culture and Communication p45 (Chauvet); Getty Images pp57 (Ann Carstairs/Mike Powell/TheImage Bank), 282 (diving/ PhotoDisk Green/David De Lossy); Greg Evans International pp13, 161 (Taj Mahal), 161 (Edinburgh Castle); Philip Hargraves: p167 (no shirt no shoes); Impact Photos p45 (China); iStockphoto p167 (no hard hat/Linda Steward); Oxford University Press pp45 (Stonehenge/ Photodisc), 59 (supermarket), 73; 109 (book/Mark Mason), 117 (spider/Eureka), 117 (cat), 117 (bear), 161 (Tower/Corel);209; 221; 282 (steps/Photodisc), 282 (bike/Photodisc), 282 (skiing/ Photodisc), 282 (gate/Photodisc), 282 (fence/Photodisc), 282 (yellow line/Photodisc), 282 (bridge); 205 (Mark Mason); Private Eye p287 (keys/Michael Heath); Punch Cartoon Library pp50; 58; 93, 195 (children, toys/Honeysett), 231, 287 (married/Pete Dredge); Raleigh Cycles p137 (bicycle): Robert Harding Picture Library pp109 (China/Gavin Hellier), 161 (Globe Theatre/ Fraser Hall); Robert Thompson pp119; 139 (Marriage Guidance); Royal Geographical Society p109 (North Pole); Sayle Screen Ltd p188; Shutterstock pp117 (dinosaur/Jean-Michel Girard), 117 (penguin/Jan Martin Will), 117 (elephant/Victor Soares), 117 (tiger/pandapaw); Stan Eales p114; The Cartoon Bank pp1; 22; 59; 139 (spell-checker/Marshal Hopkins/Conde Nast Publications), 195 (bed/Peter Steiner/Conde Nast Publications), 218; The Dian Fossey Gorilla Fund International p101; Michael Swan: pp 167 (no cycles/ good food served here, look both ways), 212

#### Commissioned illustrations by:

Hamesh Alles: p13; Emma Brownjohn/New Division: pp 35, 37, 91, 200; Stefan Chabluk: pp 19, 85, 131, 156, 168(prepositions), 187, 215, 254, 290; Mark Duffin: pp 146, 152, 153, 155, 177, 190, 191, 197, 199, 224, 225(snakes), 230, 241, 256, 261; Paul Daviz/Illustration: pp 183, 203; Richard Coggan: pp 80, 211

Pete Ellis/Meiklejohn Illustrations: pp 33, 154, 223, 228; Maureen and Gordon Gray: pp 169, 211 (people); Joanna Kerr: p178; Pete Lawrence: pp 3, 25, 28, 36, 42, 51, 61, 67, 89, 94. 96, 98, 100, 108, 112, 134, 135, 142, 145, 157, 170, 176, 191, 192, 207, 216, 247, 251, 264, 265, 268, 269, 278, 279, 295; Ed McLachlan: pp 71, 165, 210; Gavin Reece: pp 10, 24, 99, 147, 159, 189, 280, 281

Every effort has been made to trace the owners of copyright material used in this book, but we should be pleased to hear from any copyright holder whom we have been unable to contact.

The authors and publisher are grateful to those who have given permission to reproduce the following extracts and adaptations of copyright material:

p132 *The Sound of Silence* Copyright © 1964 Paul Simon and Bruce Woodley. Used by permission of the Publisher: Paul Simon Music.

p253 Definitions taken from the Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary, eighth edition, published 2010 © Oxford University Press 2010.

Sources

p73 www.zerocarbonbritain.com

p82 Lucile by Owen Meredith

p107 The Elephant's Child in Just So Stories by Rudyard Kipling

p183 Based on A contribution to statistics from Wislawa Szymborska Poems New and Collected

### contents

introduction	vi
words for talking about grammar	viii
list of units	х
units	1
appendices	299
answer key	309
index	355

### authors' acknowledgements

We owe a continuing debt to the many people whose advice and comments helped us with earlier versions of this material. The present book has benefited enormously from the hard work and professionalism of our editorial and design team at Oxford University Press. In particular, we would like to acknowledge the contributions of our remarkable editor, Sarah Parsons, and our equally remarkable designer, Phil Hargraves, who have made it possible for us to write the book that we wanted to, and whose input is evident on every page.

### introduction

### Who is this book for?

The Oxford English Grammar Course (Basic Level) is for all elementary and pre-intermediate learners who want to improve their knowledge of English grammar.

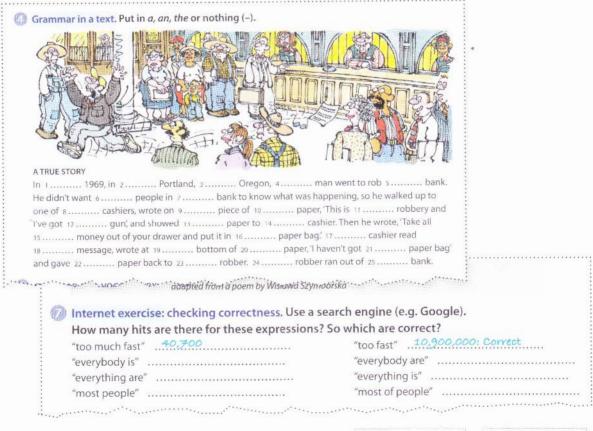
### What kind of English does the book teach?

This book teaches the grammar of spoken and written British English. But it can also be used by students of American, Australian or other kinds of English – the grammatical differences are very small and unimportant.

### How is the book organised?

There are 22 sections. A section covers one part of English grammar (for example: making questions and negatives; present tense verbs; problems with nouns). Each section contains:

- a presentation page which introduces the point of grammar
- several short units with explanations and exercises
- two 'More Practice' pages: these include 'Grammar in a text' exercises and internet exercises
- a short revision test.



#### **Two levels**

More basic units are marked 'Level 1'; more advanced units are marked 'Level 2'.



### One way of using the book: to study particular points

If you want to know more about a particular point (for example present tenses, the difference between *should* and *must*, or the position of adverbs), look in the index (pages 355–362) to find the right unit(s). Read the explanations and do the exercises. Check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).

### Another way of using the book: for systematic study

If you are working without a teacher, we suggest:

- 1 DON'T go right through the book from beginning to end some parts will be unnecessary for you.
- 2 Decide which sections you most need to study. Section 1, 'be and have', for example? Section 8, 'questions and negatives'? Section 19, 'relative pronouns'? Or other sections?
- 3 Go to the pages that you need. Read the grammar explanations, do the exercises, and check your answers in the answer key (pages 309–354).
- 4 In some units there are 'Grammar and vocabulary' exercises for students who would like to learn more words. Try these as well if you want to.
- 5 Do some or all of the exercises in the 'More Practice' pages.
- 6 Go to the revision test at the end of the section, and try some or all of the questions.
- 7 Check your answers. If you still have problems, look at the explanations again.

#### Website

On the website there are tests which will help you to decide what you need to study, or to find out how well you have learnt the different points of grammar. There are also extra exercises and games to give you more practice on some of the points.

### Pronunciation

The 'Pronunciation for grammar' CD-ROM will help you to pronounce structures fluently, with good rhythm and stress.



#### Examinations

This book teaches all of the grammar (and more!) that is needed for Common European Framework Levels A1 and A2, and is suitable for learners studying for Cambridge KET and PET.

### If you know everything in the book, will you speak perfect English?

No, sorry!

- 1 Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly. (And not many people need to.) But this book will help you to speak and write much more correctly.
- 2 Books like this give short practical explanations. They cannot tell you the whole truth about English grammar, and they cannot give you enough practice to get all the difficult points right. If you follow the rules in this book, you will not make many mistakes. But you will probably need to practise using the structures in different situations. (The website material will help with this.) You will find more complete information about difficult points in the Intermediate Level of the *Oxford English Grammar Course*.
- 3 Grammar is not the only important thing in a language. You also need a wide vocabulary, and very important you need a lot of practice in listening and speaking, reading and writing. Remember: this is a grammar practice book, not a complete English course.

We hope that you will enjoy using our book.

With our best wishes for your progress in English.

1) uch al Shan Catherine Walter

### words for talking about grammar

active and passive: I see, she heard are active verbs; I am seen, she was heard are passive verbs. adjectives: for example big, old, yellow, unhappy. adverbs: for example quickly, completely, now, there. affirmative sentences or statements are not questions or negatives - for example l arrived. articles: a/an ('indefinite article'); the ('definite article'). auxiliary verbs are used before other verbs to make questions, tenses etc - for example do you think; I have finished, she is working. See also modal auxiliary verbs. clause: see sentence. comparatives: for example older, better, more beautiful, more slowly. conditional: a structure using the conjunction if. conjunctions: for example and, but, because, while. consonants: see vowels. contractions: short forms like I'm, you're, he'll, don't. conversational: see formal. countable nouns: the names of things we can count – for example one chair, three cars; uncountable (or 'mass') nouns: the names of things we can't count, like oil, rice. determiners: words like the, some, many, my, which go before (adjective +) noun. double letters: pp, tt, ee etc. formal, informal, conversational: We use formal language with strangers, in business letters etc: for example 'Good afternoon, Mr Parker. May I help you?' We use informal or conversational language with family and friends: for example 'Hi, John. Want some help?' future verbs: for example I will go; Ann is going to write to us. imperatives: forms like Go home, Come and sit down, Don't worry, which we use when we tell or ask people (not) to do things. indirect speech: the grammar that we use to say what people say or think: for example John said that he was tired. infinitives: (to) go, (to) sleep etc. informal: see formal. -ing forms: going, sleeping etc. irregular: see regular. leave out: If we say Seen John?, we are leaving out Have you. modal verbs or modal auxiliary verbs: must, can, could, may, might, shall, should, ought to, will and would. negative sentences are made with not: for example I have not seen her. nouns: for example chair, oil, idea, sentence. object: see subject. opposite: hot is the opposite of cold; up is the opposite of down. passive: see active. past perfect tense: see perfect tenses. past progressive tense: see past tenses. past tenses: for example went, saw, stopped (simple past); was going, were eating (past progressive). past participles: for example gone, seen, stopped. perfect tenses: forms with have/has/had + past participle: for example I have forgotten (present perfect); It has been raining (present perfect progressive); They had stopped (past perfect). personal pronouns: for example I, you, us, them. plural: see singular. possessives: for example my, your; mine, yours; John's, my brothers'. prepositions: for example at, in, on, between. present participles: for example going, sleeping etc (also called -ing forms). present perfect tenses: see perfect tenses.

present tenses: for example He goes (simple present); She is walking (present progressive).

progressive (or 'continuous'): for example *I am thinking* (present progressive); They were talking (past progressive).

pronouns: for example I, you, anybody, themselves.

question tags: for example isn't it?, doesn't she?

reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc.

regular: plurals like cats, buses; past tenses like started, stopped; irregular: plurals like teeth, men, children; past tenses like broke, went, saw.

relative clauses: clauses that begin with relative pronouns: for example the man who bought my car. relative pronouns: who, which and that when they join clauses to nouns: for example the man who bought my car. sentence, clause: A sentence begins with a capital letter (A, B etc) and ends with a full stop (.), like this one. A

sentence may have more than one clause, often joined by a conjunction. For example: I'll come and see you when I'm in London.

simple past tense: see past tenses.

simple present tense: see present tenses.

singular: for example chair, cat, man; plural: for example chairs, cats, men.

spelling: writing words correctly: for example, we spell necessary with one c and double s.

subject and object: In She took the money – everybody saw her, the subjects are she and everybody; the objects are the money and her.

superlatives: for example oldest, best, most beautiful, most easily.

tense: She goes, she is going, she went, she was going, she has gone are different tenses.

third person: words for other people, not I or you: for example she, them, himself, John, has, goes.

uncountable nouns: see countable nouns.

verbs: for example sit, give, hold, think, write.

vowels: a, e, i, o, u and their usual sounds; consonants: b, c, d, f, g etc and their usual sounds.

### other useful words

Here are some other words that are used in this book. Find them in your dictionary and write the translations here.

commonpossibilitycomplete (verb)possiblecorrectpractisedescriptionpredictdifferenceprefereventprobableexclamationpronunceexplainpronunceexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionintroductionsectionjoinsituationmean (verb)situationnewsstressed (pronunciation)normalunusual	commonpocomplete (verb)pocorrectpradescriptionpre	ssibility ssible
complete (verb)possiblecorrectpractisedescriptionpredictdifferenceprefereventprobableexclamationpronounceexplainpronounceexplainpronunciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnewsstructurenormalunusual	complete ( <i>verb</i> ) po correct pra description pre	ssible
correctpractisedescriptionpredictdifferenceprefereventprobableexclamationpronounceexplainpronunciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsituationmean (verb)situationnecessarystructurenewsunusualnormalunusual	correct pra description pre	
descriptionpredictdifferenceprefereventprobableexclamationpronounceexplainpronounciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystressed (pronunciation)newsunnecessarynormalunusual	description pre	
differenceprefereventprobableexclamationpronounceexplainpronounceexplainpronunciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystressed (pronunciation)newsunnecessarynormalunusual		actise
eventprobableexclamationpronounceexplainpronounciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	difference	edict
exclamationpronounceexplainpronounciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystressed (pronunciation)newsunnecessarynormalunusual	pre	efer
explainpronunciationexpressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystressed (pronunciation)newsunnecessarynormalunusual	event pro	obable
expressionrepeatform (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationnecessarystressed (pronunciation)newsunnecessarynormalunusual	exclamation pro	onounce
form (noun)reportgo on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationmeaningstressed (pronunciation)necessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	explain pro	onunciation
go on, happenrevisionin generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationmeaningstressed (pronunciation)necessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	expression rep	peat
in generalruleintroductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationmeaningstressed (pronunciation)necessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	form (noun) rep	oort
introductionsectionjoinsimilarmean (verb)situationmeaningstressed (pronunciation)necessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	go on, happen rev	vision
joinsimilarmean (verb)situationmeaningstressed (pronunciation)necessarystructurenewsunnecessarynormalunusual	in general rul	e
mean (verb)       situation         meaning       stressed (pronunciation)         necessary       structure         news       unnecessary         normal       unusual	introduction see	ction
meaning       stressed (pronunciation)         necessary       structure         news       unnecessary         normal       unusual	joinsin	nilar
necessary structure news unnecessary normal unusual	mean (verb) site	uation
news unnecessary normal unusual	meaning str	essed (pronunciation)
normal unusual	necessary str	ucture
	news un	necessary
normally use ( <i>noun</i> )	normal un	usual
	normallyuse	e ( <i>noun</i> )
particularuse (verb)	particularuse	e ( <i>verb</i> )
plan (word) order	plan (w	ord) order;

# list of units

#### SECTION 1 be and have pages 1–14

grammar summary	1
be I am happy today. Are we late?	2-3
be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.	4
be: future The bus will be full.	5
there is/was There's a dog in the garden.	6
there is: future Will there be cars?	7
have I have do you have? I don't have	8
have: past and future	9
have: actions He's having a shower.	10
have without do: have got	
Have you got a cat?	11
be and have: more practice	12-13
be and have: revision test	14

#### SECTION 2 present tenses pages 15-34

grammar summary	15
simple present affirmative	
l work; you work; she works	16
simple present: use I work in a bank.	17
simple present negatives	
l don't know. She doesn't ski.	18-19
simple present questions	
Do you remember me?	20-21
simple present: more practice	22
present progressive: forms	
I'm reading. I'm not working.	23
present progressive: use	
I'm working just now.	24
present progressive negatives	
He's not listening to me.	25
present progressive questions Is it raining?	26
present progressive: more practice	27
the two present tenses: the difference	28-29
non-progressive verbs I don't understand.	30-31
present tenses: more practice	32-33
present tenses: revision test	34

### SECTION 3 talking about the future pages 35–44

grammar summary	35
going to Look – it's going to rain.	36-37
present progressive	
What are you doing this evening?	38

will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow.	39
will: deciding, refusing, promising I'll answe	r it. 40
simple present for future	
Our train leaves at 8.10.	41
future: more practice	42-43
future: revision test	44
SECTION 4 past tenses pages 45–56	
grammar summary	45
simple past: forms I worked. I went.	46
simple past: use I left school in 1990.	47
simple past: negatives I did not work.	
l did not go.	48
simple past questions Did you pay?	
What did she say?	49
simple past: more practice	50
past progressive What were you doing at 8.0	0? 51
simple past or past progressive?	
l walked / I was walking	52-53
past tenses: more practice	54-55
past tenses: revision test	56
SECTIONE morfact tonger manage F7 7	3

### SECTION 5 perfect tenses pages 57–72

grammar summary	57
present perfect: forms	
I have paid. Has she forgotten?	58-59
finished actions: present perfect	
or simple past?	60-61
time words: present perfect	
or simple past?	62-63
already, yet and just	64
since and for since Tuesday; for ten years	65
present perfect progressive	
It's been raining since Sunday.	66-67
past perfect	
It had already begun when we arrived.	68–69
perfect tenses: more practice	70-71
perfect tenses: revision test	72

### SECTION 6 modal verbs pages 73-92

grammar summary73modal verbs: introductioncan, must, should etc 74mustYou must be home by eleven. Must you go? 75have toDo you have to teach small children?76

mustn't and don't have to	
We mustn't wake the baby.	77
had to, will have to I didn't have to pay.	78
should What should I tell John?	79
can He can play the piano.	80
could; be able to	
She couldn't write. I'll be able to drive soon.	81
may and might	
It may snow. I might have a cold.	82–83
can, could and may: permission	
Can I use the phone?	84–85
can/could you?: requests	
Can you lend me a stamp?	86
shall in questions What shall we do?	87
would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be tal	ler. 88
used to lused to play the piano.	89
modal verbs: more practice	90-91
modal verbs: revision test	92
SECTION 7 passives pages 93–102	
grammar summary	93
passives: introduction	
English is spoken in Australia.	94
simple present passive	
We are woken by the birds.	95
future passive	
Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.	96
simple past passive	
I was stopped by a policeman.	97
present progressive passive It's being cleane	ed. 98
present perfect passive	
The house has been sold.	99
passives: more practice 10	0–101
passives: revision test	102
SECTION 8 questions and negatives	
pages 103-118	
grammar summary	103
<i>yes/no</i> questions	
Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa? 10	)4–105

question words When will you see her?

Who phoned? What happened?

Are Ann and her mother coming?

question-word subjects

questions with long subjects

prepositions in questions

Who did you go with?

106-107

108-109

110

111

not and no	
	114
negatives with nobody, never etc	
Nobody loves me.	115
questions and negatives: more practice 116-	-117
questions and negatives: revision test	118
SECTION 9 infinitives and -ing forms	
pages 119–138	
grammar summary	119
infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go?	120
infinitive of purpose	
She went to Paris to study music.	121
verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.12.	2-123
verb + object + infinitive	
	-125
<i>it</i> with infinitive subjects	
-	-127
adjective + infinitive	
glad to find you at home	128
adjectives with <i>enough/to</i> + infinitive	120
too tired to sing	129
noun/pronoun + infinitive	122
some letters to write	130
-ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you.	131
preposition +ing Thank you for coming.132	
verb +ing I can't help feeling unhappy. 134-	
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: more practice 136-	
	-137
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test	
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test	-137 138
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs	-137 138
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150	-137 138
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary	-137 138
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with <i>get</i>	-137 138 139
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold	-137 138 139 140
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me.	-137 138 139
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs	-137 138 139 140 141
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142	-137 138 139 140 141
infinitives and <i>-ing</i> forms: revision test  SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects	-137 138 139 140 141 -143
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters.	-137 138 139 140 141
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done I have my hair cut every week.	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144 145
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done I have my hair cut every week. imperatives Come in. Don't worry.	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144 145 146
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done I have my hair cut every week. imperatives Come in. Don't worry. let's (suggestions) Let's go.	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144 145 146 147
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done I have my hair cut every week. imperatives Come in. Don't worry.	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144 145 146 147
infinitives and -ing forms: revision test SECTION 10 special structures with verbs pages 139–150 grammar summary structures with get get up get your coat it's getting cold verbs with prepositions Wait for me. phrasal verbs Come in, take off your coat and sit down. 142 verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters. have something done I have my hair cut every week. imperatives Come in. Don't worry. let's (suggestions) Let's go.	-137 138 139 140 141 -143 144 145 146 147

negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know why.112-113

### SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the

### pages 151-166

grammar summary	151
a/an; pronunciation of the	152
countable and uncountable <i>a car, cars; the</i> and <i>a/an</i>	petrol 153
Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.	154-155
a/an She's a doctor.	156
a/an: describing people She's got a nice	smile. 157
talking in general without the	
People are funny.	158-159
names Mary, Africa, the USA	160-161
special cases	
in bed; after lunch; a hundred;	162-163
articles: more practice	164-165
articles: revision test	166

### SECTION 12 determiners pages 167-184

grammar summary	167
this, that, these and those	168–169
some and any	
I need some sugar. Have you got any?	170–171
somebody, anything, nowhere	172
much and many	
How much milk? How many languages?	173
a lot of and lots of	174
a little and a few a little English; a few word	ls 175
enough money; fast enough	176
too, too much/many and not enough	177
all all my friends are here; my friends are	
all here	178
all and every; each	179
both, either and neither	180
determiners and of most people; most of u	<i>is</i> 181
determiners: more practice	182-183
determiners: revision test	184

### SECTION 13 personal pronouns; possessives pages 185–194

grammar summary	185
personal pronouns: I and me etc	186–187
possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.	188-189
possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.	190
reflexive pronouns: myself, yourself etc	191
personal pronouns and possessives:	
more practice	192-193
personal pronouns and possessives:	
revision test	194

### SECTION 14 nouns pages 195–208

grammar summary	195
singular and plural nouns cat, cats; box, box	es 196
singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors	197
countable and uncountable nouns 19	8-199
one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair	200
's and s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men's	201
's and s' possessive: use	
lan's car; the boss's car 20	2-203
noun + noun	
Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate. 20	4-205

while chocolate is a kind of chocolate.	204 200
nouns: more practice	206-207
nouns: revision test	208

### SECTION 15 adjectives and adverbs pages 209–220

grammar summary	209
adjectives	
a beautiful little girl who was not stupid	210-211
adverbs of manner He ate quickly.	212
other adverbs I like sport very much.	213
adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc	214-215
interested and interesting etc	216
fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly,	217
adjectives and adverbs: more practice	218-219
adjectives and adverbs: revision test	220

### SECTION 16 comparison pages 221-232

221
222
223
-225
226
227
-229
-231
232

### SECTION 17 conjunctions pages 233–242

grammar summary	233
conjunctions: introduction	
and, but, because	234
position of conjunctions	
lf you need help, ask me.	235
tenses with time conjunctions	
l'Il see you before you go.	236

because and so; although and but	237
and I speak Russian, English and Swahili	238
double conjunctions	
both and; (n)either (n)or	239
conjunctions: more practice	240-241
conjunctions: revision test	242

### SECTION 18 if pages 243-252

grammar summary	243
<i>if</i> : position; <i>unless</i>	244
<i>if</i> : future <i>I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.</i>	245
not real / not probable If dogs could talk,	246
If I were you,	247
If I go, I will; If I went, I would	248
unreal past	
If A had happened, B would have happened.	249
<i>if</i> : more practice 250	-251
<i>if</i> : revision test	252

### SECTION 19 relative pronouns pages 253-262

TONI -

. .

grammar summary	253
relative who and which	
the keys which I lost	254-255
relative that a bird that can't fly	256
leaving out relative pronouns	
the car (that) you bought	257
prepositions the man that she works for	258
relative what It was just what I wanted.	259
relative pronouns: more practice	260-261
relative pronouns: revision test	262

SECTION 20 indirect speech pag	es 263-272
grammar summary	263
tenses and pronouns	
Bill said he was really happy.	264-265
indirect questions	
She asked him what his name was.	266
present reporting verbs	
She says she comes from London.	267
here and now > there and then	268
infinitives She told me to get out.	269
indirect speech: more practice	270-271
indirect speech: revision test	272

SECTION 21 prepositions	pages 273-286
grammar summary	273
at, in and on (time)	274-275
from to, until and by	276
for, during and while	277
in and on (place)	278
at (place)	279
other prepositions of place	280-281
prepositions of movement	282-283
prepositions: more practice	284-285
prepositions: revision test	286

SECTION 22 spoken grammar page	s 287–298
grammar summary	287
question tags	
This music isn't very good, is it?	288-289
short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.	290
reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?	291
revision of spoken question and	
answer structures	292
leaving out words Don't know if she has.	293
so am I; nor do I etc	294-295
spoken grammar: more practice	296-297
spoken grammar: revision test	298

# **SECTION 1** be and have

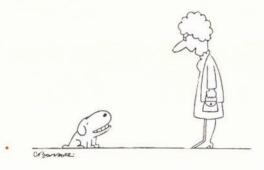
### grammar summary

### be (am/are/is/was/were)

- We can use adjectives, nouns or expressions of place after be. She is late. I'm hungry. Are you a doctor? Is everybody here?
- We use a special structure with be there is to introduce things: to say that they exist. There's a strange woman at the door. There are some letters for you.
- Be can be an auxiliary verb in progressive tenses (see page 23) and passives (see page 94).
   She is working. It was made in Hong Kong.

### have (have/has/had)

- We can use *have* or *have got* to talk about possession, relationships and some other ideas.
   Do you have a car?
   I don't have any brothers or sisters.
   Ann has got a headache.
- And we can use *have* to talk about some kinds of actions.
   I'm going to *have a shower*. What time *do* you *have breakfast*?
- Have can also be an auxiliary verb in perfect tenses (see Section 5).
   I haven't seen her all day. We knew that he had taken the money.



'And were you good while I was out?'

*To be or not to be, that is the question.* (*Shakespeare*: Hamlet)

Is there life before death? (Seamus Heaney)

If you've got everything, you've got nothing. (Leni MacShaw) There's a thin man inside every fat man. (George Orwell)

You can have it all, but you can't do it all. (*Michelle Pfeiffer*)

When I was young there was no respect for the young, and now that I am old there is no respect for the old.

(J B Priestley)

# be I am happy today. Are we late?

Level 1

	a statistication and the	JT				
關	lam	you are	he/she/it <mark>is</mark>	we are	they are	
誦	am l?	are you?	is he/she/it?	are we?	are they?	
	l am not	you are not	he/she/it is not	we are not	they are not	
l an	a doctor.	Are you Amei	rican? We are n	ot ready.		
	Put in <i>am, a</i>	are or is.				
1	Youare	late.		4  .	happy toda	iy.
	We	very well.		5 lt	hink you t	ired.
-	2 My sister	a doc	tor.	6 O	ur house v	ery small.
	B Paul and A	Ann i	n America.	71.	nearly read	у.
no	onversation	and informal v	vriting, we use cont	tractions:		
'm	you're	he's she	a construction of the second		we're they'r	
		You' <b>re</b> late.	John's in London.	The shop's o		
m		rou re lute.	John Shi London.	The shop s c	peri. werereday	
1	<b>Nrite these</b>	e sentences w	ith contractions.			
			Ц.	4 M	v name is Peter	
						······································
						···••·································
	3 lam sorry	······································		/ 31	ie is at nome	
STA	TEMENT 🏢:	I am late.	e, we put the verb b The taxi is here.	We are lat	e. Your keys a	re in the car.
STA QUE	TEMENT ##: STION ##:	I am late. / Am I late?	The taxi is here.	We are lat	e. Your keys a	
DUE	TEMENT III: STION III: Make quest	I am late. Am I late? tions.	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here?	We are lat Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys	in the car?
	TEMENT ::: STION ::: Make quest Bill / Scott	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish Is Bill.	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready	in the car?
STA QUE	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill. om Paris	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 1/	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early	in the car?
	TEMENT III: STION III: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish pm Paris late	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 I/ 9 th	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home	in the car?
STA QUE	TEMENT III: STION III: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro We / very John / in I	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishs Bill . om Paris late bed	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 I/ 9 th 10 yc	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy	in the car?
STA QUE 1 2 2 2 2	TEMENT       III:         STION       III:         Make quest       Bill / Scott         Bill / Scott       Marie / fro         Marie / very       John / in b         John / in b       He boss /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tish <u>Is Bíll</u> . om Paris late bed here	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 l/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jc	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy e / married	in the car?
	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in B 4 the boss / 5 your car /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill . om Paris late bed here fast	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 1/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house	in the car?
	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in B 4 the boss / 5 your car /	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill . om Paris late bed here fast	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 1/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house	in the car?
	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in l 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Luke / her	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill . om Paris late bed fast re	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 I/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th 13 th	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane	in the car?
	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in l 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Luke / her	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill . om Paris late bed fast re these question	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how	in the car?
STA QUE 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in b 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Luke / her you know all tractions wi	I am late.         Am I late?         tions.         tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready e arly ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's	s in the car?
STA QUE 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in b 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Luke / her you know all tractions wi	I am late.         Am I late?         tions.         tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's	s in the car?
Do y Whe	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in l 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Jour car / 5 Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that?	I am late.         Am I late?         tions.         tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who which at's when's when When's the party?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready e arly ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's	s in the car?
Do y Whe	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro 2 we / very 3 John / in l 4 the boss / 5 your car / 5 Jour car / 5 Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that?	I am late.         Am I late?         tions.         tish	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who which at's when's when When's the party?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready e arly e / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are we	here? <b>How</b> are you?
Do y Whe	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in h the boss / John / in h the boss / Syour car / Suuke / her you know all tractions wir o's that?	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill. om Paris late bed fast fast re these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' flt	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who whe that's when's whe When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.'	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 1/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th 13 th hat when w here's why's Where's the sta	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home ou / happy ou / happy ou / happy is / your house at / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are we	te?' 'My watch is broken.
Do y Con Whe	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in l the boss / John / in l the boss / John / in l the boss / John / in l the boss / your car / Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that?	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill. om Paris late bed fast fast re these question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' flt	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish? words? who with that's when's with When's the party? ith are or 's. 's my brother.' Amy?' 'In London.'	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are we	te?' 'My watch is broken.' nother?' 'Not very well.'
STA QUE 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in H the boss / John / in H the boss / John / in H the boss / John / in H the boss / Syour car / Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that? W Put in ques '	I am late.         Am I late?         tions.         tish          tish          om Paris          late          bed          fast          re          I these question       Mat's this?         tion words with	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat           Are we lat	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home bu / happy ou / happy bu / happy is / your house at / Jane here why how how's attion? Why are we 	<i>here? How are you?</i> te?' 'My watch is broken.' nother?' 'Not very well.' l?' 'In hospital.'
Doy Whe	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in H the boss / John / in H the boss / your car / Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that? Where '	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill. om Paris late bed fast fast fast there question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' 'lt Are Leo and  your nar 	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat 7 w 8 1/ 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th 13 th hat when where's why's Where's the sto 5 ' 6 ' 7 ' 8 '	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready early ey / at home by / at home e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are we  you la 	<i>here?</i> How are you? te?' 'My watch is broken.' nother?' 'Not very well.' I?' 'In hospital.' men?' 'I don't know.'
Do y Con Who 1 2 2 3 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	TEMENT :: STION :: Make quest Bill / Scott Marie / fro we / very John / in h the boss / John / in h the boss / John / in h the boss / Syour car / Luke / her you know all tractions wir o's that? Put in ques , where , where ,	I am late. Am I late? tions. tishIs Bill. om Paris late bed fast fast fast there question th is: who's w What's this? I tion words wi that?' 'It  that?' 'It 	The taxi is here. Is the taxi here? Scottish?	We are lat Are we lat Are we lat 7 w 9 th 10 yc 11 Jo 12 th 13 th hat when when where's why's Where's the sto 5 ' 6 ' 7 ' 8 ' 9 ' 9 '	e. Your keys a e? Are my keys e all / ready e arly ey / at home ey / at home e / married is / your house at / Jane here why how how's ation? Why are we	<i>here?</i> How are you? te?' 'My watch is broken.' nother?' 'Not very well.' I?' 'In hospital.' men?' 'I don't know.'

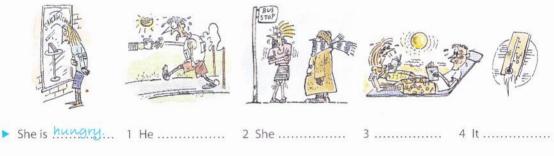
To ma	ake negative (	) sentences with be,	we put not after	am/are/is or 'm, 're	e, 's.
lam	not Scottish.	We are not ready.	l' <mark>m not</mark> tired.	She's not here.	They're not my friends.
We ca	an also make co	ontractions with <b>n't</b> : y	ou <mark>aren't</mark> , she <mark>isn</mark> '	t etc (BUT NOT lam	<del>m't</del> ).
1	rite negative I'm Greek, but It's winter, but She's tired, bu They are in En You're tall, bu We are late, b It's summer, b	e ()) ends for the so t () from Athens)! t () from Athens)! t () from Athens)! t () from Athenson t () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson t () from Athenson page 1 () from Athenson t () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson t () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson t () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson t () from Athenson ngland, but () from Athenson	entences. 'm not from A cold. 'on)	thens. OR <sup>[</sup>	t isw't cold.
7					
8	Anne is at wo	rk, but (ﷺ <i>in her office</i>	)		
9	This is a nice of	coat, but ( <i>IIII mine</i> )			

10 It's a big car, but (# very fast) ......

### We often use *be* with: *hungry, thirsty, cold, hot, right, wrong, afraid, interested, what colour?, what size?* And we use *be* with **ages**.

Have you got anything to ea	at? l <b>'m hungry</b> .	I'm cold.	It's very hot here in summer.	
'It's late.' 'You're right. Let's	go.' Are you a	afraid of flying?	I'm interested in politics.	
What colour is her hair?	What size are y	our shoes?	'How old are you?' 'I'm 17.'	

### Complete the sentences under the pictures.



### Put in words from the box.

afraid 🗸 cold colour hot hungry interested old right size thirsty wrong

- He is a big man, but he is ...afraid... of her.
- 1 You think I'm wrong, but I know I'm .....
- 2 'What ..... is that T-shirt?' 'Extra large.'
- 3 What ..... is your car?
- 4 Sorry, I'm not ..... in her problems.
- 5 'It's the18th today.' 'You're ..... it's the 19th.'
- 6 'Something to drink?' 'No, thanks. I'm not ......'
- 7 'It's ..... in here.' 'Open a window.'
- 8 Is it ..... here in winter?
- 9 'How ..... is your girlfriend?' 'She's 19.'
- 10 'I'm ......' 'Would you like a sandwich?'

# be: past Where were you? I was in Glasgow.

1.12	Iwas	you were	he/she/it was	we were	they were	
關	was 1?	were you?	was he/she/it?	were we?	were they?	
	l was not	you <mark>were not</mark>	he/she/it was not	we were not	they were not	
	Contractio	ns: wasn't, weren'	't			
	Where were	you yesterday?	My mother was a si	inger. I <mark>wasn'</mark>	t well last week.	
R						
Con .	Put in was o					
1		r 1990  was				
			o see you yesterday.			
4			e vegetables		•)	
1.11			here this mo	-		
2	4 lt	cold and dark,	and we tire	ed.		
4	5 My grandi	mother	. a doctor, and her tw	o brothers	both doctors too	i.
(	5 '	you in London ye	esterday?' 'No, I	in Glasgow.		
			esterday?' 'No, I n?' 'It yeste			
7	7 'When	your exan		erday.'		
8	7 'When 3 'Why	your exan you late?' '	n?' 'lt yeste The train la	erday.' ate.'		
; 8 1	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor	your exan you late?' " rds in the corre	n?' 'lt yeste The train la <b>ct order to make q</b>	erday.' hte.' uestions.		
; 8 1	<ul> <li>'When</li> <li>'Why</li> <li>Put the wor</li> <li>Ann at hor</li> </ul>	your exan you late?' " r <b>ds in the corre</b> me yesterday wa	n?' 'lt yeste The train la <b>ct order to make q</b> sWas Ann at k	erday.' hte.' uestions. home yesterday	J?	
- 	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor Ann at hou 1 good part	your exan you late?' ' 'ds in the corre me yesterday wa y was the	n?' 'lt yeste The train la ct order to make q s	erday.' hte.' uestions. nome yesterday	1?	
	<ul> <li>7 'When</li> <li>3 'Why</li> <li>Put the wor</li> <li>Ann at hoi</li> <li>1 good part</li> <li>2 people we</li> </ul>	your exan you late?' " ods in the corre- me yesterday wa y was the ere the interesting	n?' 'lt yeste The train la ct order to make q s Was Ann at k g	erday: ite: uestions. nome yesterday	J?	
	<ul> <li>7 'When</li> <li>3 'Why</li> <li>Put the wor</li> <li>Ann at hoi</li> <li>1 good part</li> <li>2 people we</li> </ul>	your exan you late?' " ods in the corre- me yesterday wa y was the ere the interesting	n?' 'lt yeste The train la ct order to make q s Was Ann at k g	erday: ite: uestions. nome yesterday	1?	
	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor Ann at hou 1 good part 2 people we 3 teacher fa 4 everybody	your exan you late?' ' <b>rds in the corre</b> me yesterday wa y was the ere the interesting ther your was a y was late	n?' 'lt yeste The train la <b>ct order to make q</b> s	erday: hte: uestions. nome yesterday	<u>]</u> ?	
2 2 2 2 2	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor Ann at hou 1 good part 2 people we 3 teacher fa 4 everybody	your exan you late?' ' <b>rds in the corre</b> me yesterday wa y was the ere the interesting ther your was a y was late	n?' 'lt yeste The train la <b>ct order to make q</b> s	erday: hte: uestions. nome yesterday	1?	
	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor Ann at hou 1 good part 2 people we 3 teacher fa 4 everybody 5 your was of	ds in the correct rds in the correct me yesterday wa y was the ther your was a y was late driving test when	n?' 'lt yeste The train la ct order to make q sas Ann at k g	erday: ite: uestions. nome yesterday	<u>]</u> ?	
	7 'When 3 'Why Put the wor Ann at hou 1 good part 2 people we 3 teacher fa 4 everybody 5 your was of 5 Tuesday y	ds in the correct rds in the correct was the correct y was the correct the interesting ther your was a y was late correct driving test when ou where on wer	n?' 'lt yeste The train la ct order to make q s	erday: ite: uestions. nome yesterday	<u>j?</u>	

- 1 You ..... Actually, you arrived 10 minutes early.

2 My father ..... Actually, he worked as a bus driver.

- 3 I ..... yesterday. Actually, I was with Susan.
- 4 The children ...... yesterday. The doctor came to see them.
- 5 We ..... last week. We went to Scotland for a few days.
- 6 The snow ...... at Christmas. We couldn't ski.
- 7 Ann and Peter ..... when I phoned.
- 8 It ..... last night. Actually, it was quite cold.

⇒ For the present perfect of be (I have been etc), see page 61.

# be: future The bus will be full.

I/you/he/she/it/we/they will be			
will l/you/she etc be?			
I/you/he etc will not be			
Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)			
It <b>will be</b> cold this evening. I' <b>II be</b> at home all day tomorrow.			
Where <b>will</b> we <b>be</b> ten years from now? The exam <b>won't be</b> difficult			
Dook at the table and complete the text.	Tomorrow's	temperatu	res
Tomorrow it will be very hot in Cairo.	Cairo	35°	
lt hot in	Rio	30°	
warm in	Paris	23°	
cold in	London	3°	00
very cold in	Moscow	-18°	- 0°
2 It will not be hot.			
<ul> <li>3 We won't be at home.</li> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul>			
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with <i>be</i> , we put <i>will</i> before the subject.			
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT :: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00.	The bus will be ful		
<ul><li>4 The shops will be closed.</li><li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li></ul>	The bus will be ful		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be?	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?	  II.	
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT III: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION III: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?	  //.	
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT :: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION :: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be full Will the bus be full?	//. 	
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT :: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION :: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?	······	
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full? evening?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>&gt; you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full? evening?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT :: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION :: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? <ul> <li>you / at home / this evening</li></ul>	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full? evening?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full?		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be full? Will the bus be full? evening? In 2000 I		
<ul> <li>4 The shops will be closed.</li> <li>5 He'll be in Scotland.</li> <li>6 Lisa will be at school.</li> </ul> To make future questions with be, we put will before the subject. STATEMENT ::: We will be late. Her brother will be here at 10.00. QUESTION ::: Will we be late? When will her brother be here? Make questions with will be? you / at home / this evening	The bus will be ful Will the bus be full? evening? In 2000 I In 2000 I		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·

# there is/was There's a dog in the garden.

	PRESENT		PAST	
	there is	there are	there was	there were
1	is there?	are there?	was there?	were there?
#	there is not	there are not	there was not	there were not

We use *there is, there are* etc to say that something or somebody exists. We often use *there is, there are* etc before *a/an, some* and *any*.

 There's a dog in the garden. (NOT A dog is in the garden.)
 There are some letters for you.

 Is there any milk in the fridge? (NOT Is any milk ...?)
 There isn't much coffee.

 Were there any phone calls? (NOT Were any phone calls?)
 There was a good film last night.

Make some sentences with words from the three boxes, using there is etc.

There is/are a lot of There isn't much		water air grass dogs elephants trees cars	in Africa in the USA in Antarctica in London
There aren't many		people computers	 on the moon in 1600
There isn't/aren't any		(vou think of some more	(you think of some more place
There wasn't/weren't any		things)	or times)
There are a lot of anin There weren't any car			 
	s in 16	00.	 
. There weren't any can	s in 16	00.	 
. There weren't any can	s in 16	00.	 
There weren't any can	s in 16	00.	 

To make **questions** with *there is* etc, we put *is* etc before *there*.

STATEMENT	There is a letter for you.	There were some problems.	William says there are six eggs.
QUESTION ##:	Is there a letter for me?	Were there any problems?	How many eggs are there?

# there is: future Will there be cars?

FUTURE	
there will be	
will there be?	
there will not be	
Contraction: won't (= will not)	
There will be a public holiday next Tuesday. Will there be	a meeting tomorrow?
	<b>be</b> any of my friends at the party.
Complete the sentences with there will be and wo	rds from the box.
fish flowers food hospital rain 🗸 sun	ten people trouble two new students
I thinkthere will be rain tomorrow.	
1 But I think on Tuesday.	
2 in the class tomorrow.	
3 in our house at the wee	kend
4 One day, perhaps enou	
5 for supper tonight.	ign för everybody.
	in our town positiveer
6a new	
7 'Mum, I've broken a window.' '	
8a lot of	in the garden this summer.
Make negative ()) sentences. Use There will not b	e or There won't be
<ul> <li>time / see Granny</li> <li>There won't be time to see G</li> </ul>	RANNU.
<ul> <li>exam / Saturday</li> <li>There will not be an exam on</li> </ul>	Saturday.
5	
1 meeting / tomorrow	
2 any trains / Sunday	
3 any buses / 4 o'clock in the morning	
4 If you get up late tomorrow, / any breakfast	
5 anybody / home tomorrow evening	
6 any children / the party	
7 a French lesson / Monday evening	
8 time / have lunch today	
White exections about life in the ways 2100 with 1	Nill there has 7
Write questions about life in the year 2100, with W (cars) Will there be cars?	
(	4 (different countries)
1 ( <i>trains</i> )	5 (governments)
2 (computers)	
2 (computers) 3 (good food)	
3 (good food)	7 (your question)
<ul> <li>3 (good food)</li> <li>Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.</li> </ul>	7 (your question)
<ul> <li>3 (good food)</li> <li>Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.</li> <li>There will be cars. OR. There won't be cars.</li> </ul>	7 (your question) 4
<ul> <li>3 (good food)</li> <li>Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.</li> <li>There will be cars. OR. There won't be cars.</li> <li>1</li> </ul>	7 (your question) 4 5
<ul> <li>3 (good food)</li> <li>Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 3.</li> <li>There will be cars. OR. There won't be cars.</li> </ul>	6 ( <i>a lot of problems</i> ) 7 (your question) 4 5 6 7

#### I/vou/we/they have he/she/it has

We can use have to	o talk about possessions	, family (and other) relations	ships and illnesses.
I have a new car.	Nina <b>has</b> two sisters.	Pete has a nice girlfriend.	We all <b>have</b> colds.
We also say that pe	eople have hair, eyes etc;	and that things have parts.	
You <b>have</b> beautiful		y <mark>has</mark> two doors.	
Circle the cor			
🕨 🕨 John /()have	e two brothers.	4 I see tha	at your brother <i>have / has</i> a new girlfriend.
► Grace has /	have a cold.	5 You / Pa	<i>ul</i> has very long hair.

- 1 My father / My parents has two cars.
- 2 We all / Sally have blue eyes.
- 3 I have / has a headache.

- 6 These houses have / has big rooms.
- 7 I can't read this book it has / have 800 pages.
- 8 Susie / Susie and Mick have a really nice flat.

### Write about three things that you have, and three things that one of your friends or relations has.

1	I have	4	
2	1	5	
3		6	

### We can make questions ( ) and negatives ( ) with do/does/did + infinitive (without to). (For questions and negatives without do, see page 11.)

STATEMENT	QUESTION ##	NEGATIVE 謎
I have the keys.	Do I have the keys?	I do not / don't have the keys.
Joe <mark>has</mark> a car.	Does Joe have a car? (NOT Does Joe has)	Joe does not / doesn't have a car.

#### Make questions ( ) or negatives ( ) with have.

- vou/a cat # Do you have a cat?
- Eric / many friends Eric doesn't have many friends.
- 1 we / a garden 💹 We don't.....
- 2 they / any children 🖽 .....
- 3 Peter / a cold 🔢 .....
- 4 my aunt / a dog 🏢 .....
- 5 Monica / any brothers or sisters 🗱
- 6 1 / enough money 🔛 .....
- 7 Laura / a boyfriend 🖬 .....
- 8 Why / you / two cars 🕮

### 📳 Write about three things that you don't have, and three things that one of your friends or relations doesn't have.

1	I don't have
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	

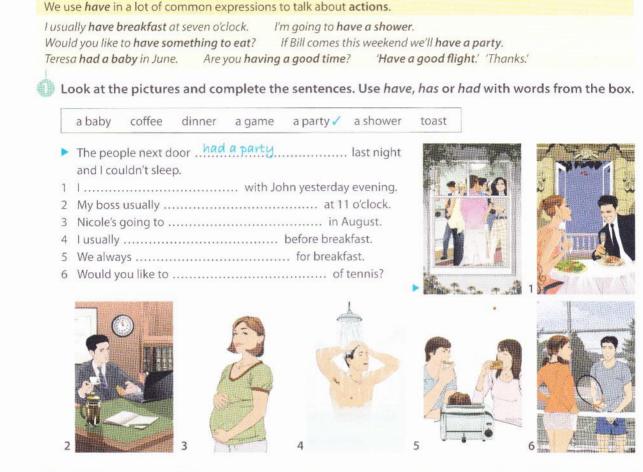
# have: past and future

#### PAST: I/you/he/she/it/we/they had

When I was a student I had an old Volkswagen. Ann had a cold last week.

STATEMENT	QUESTION #	NEGATIVE III
Clara <b>had</b> a cold.	Did Clara have a cold? (NOT <del>Did Clara had</del> )	Clara <b>did not / didn't have</b> a cold.
Make sentences	about Clara when she wa	s six
	Díd she have a bícycle?	
► a dog III .S	he dídn't have a dog.	
2 very fair hair		
3 lots of friends		
· ·		
Write sentences	about yourself when you	were six. Use I had and I didn't have.
1 I had		3
2 I didn't have		4
FUTURE: I/vou/	he/she/it/we/they will (not) ha	ve
	u'll etc; won't (= will not)	
One day everybody w	ill have apough food Iulia so	ave that she won't have children
One day, everybody w	<b>ill have</b> enough food. Julia sc	ays that she <b>won't have</b> children.
One day, everybody w	<b>ill have</b> enough food. Julia so	nys that she <b>won't have</b> children.
	<b>ill have</b> enough food. Julia so tions with <i>have</i> , we put <i>will</i> b	
To make <b>future ques</b>	tions with <i>have</i> , we put <i>will</i> b	
To make <mark>future ques</mark> STATEMENT 🎬: Johr	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon.	efore the subject.
To make future ques STATEMENT III: Johr QUESTION III: Will	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes?
To make future ques STATEMENT III: Johr QUESTION III: Will Read the text au	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future.
To make future ques STATEMENT III: Johr QUESTION III: Will Read the text an This year, John do	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. Ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car.
To make future ques STATEMENT : Johr QUESTION : Will Read the text ar This year, John do He has a small roc	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. Ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year:
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small roc More money	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more more	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: pwey.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small rood More money a small room	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more more He wow't have a smal	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: by ey. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small rood More money a small room	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more more He wow't have a smal	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: pwey.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room More money : a small room a cat :	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more more He wow't have a small lill he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: by ey. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small rood More money a small room a cat : 1 a job :	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? and complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more mu He wow't have a smal ull he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: owey. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room More money a small room a cat 1 a job 2 a bicycle	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gu He will have more more He wow't have a smal Lill he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: by ey. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room More money a small room a cat 1 a job 2 a bicycle 3 a car 	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gu He will have more more He wow't have a smal III he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. use, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: prey. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room ba cat :	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gu He will have more mo He will have a smal ill he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. Ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: DWEY. L room.
To make future ques STATEMENT III: Johr QUESTION III: Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room ha cat III a cat III a job III a cat III a cat III a a cat III	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? nd complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gui He will have more mo He wow't have a smal III he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? s about John's future. Ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: prey. 1 room.
To make future ques STATEMENT : John QUESTION : Will Read the text an This year, John do He has a small room a small room a cat :	tions with have, we put will b will have a car soon. John have a car soon? Ind complete the sentences esn't have money, a job, a hou om, a bicycle, old clothes, a gu He will have more more He wow't have a smal ill he have a cat?	efore the subject. The baby will have blue eyes. Will the baby have blue eyes? a about John's future. Ise, a girlfriend, a suit or a car. itar and a cat. But next year: Divey. L room.

# have: actions He's having a shower.



We make simple present and past questions and negatives with do/does and did.

We don't have parties very often.Does Kurt have eggs for breakfast?Did you have a good journey?We didn't have a holiday.

### Make questions (🎬) and negatives (🎬).

- (good time ) 'We went to Paris at the weekend'. 'Did you have a good time?'
- (breakfast ) | got up late this morning, so | didn't have breakfast.
- 1 (lunch 📳) What time ..... on Sundays?
- 2 (good trip 🏢) Ann was in America last week.
- 3 (shower ) The hotel bathroom was very dirty, so I .....
- 4 (good flight 🔝) Welcome to England, Mr García.
- 5 (good game 📰) 'Mark and I played tennis this morning.'
- 6 (coffee 🏢) ...... before I go to bed.

### LEARN THESE COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH HAVE (USE A DICTIONARY IF NECESSARY)

have breakfast, lunch, dinner, (a cup of) tea/coffee, a drink, something to eat/drink have eggs/toast for breakfast, have fish for lunch etc have a wash, a shower, a bath have a good time, a bad day, a nice evening, a party, a holiday, a game have a good flight/trip/journey etc have a conversation have a baby *have* without *do: have got Have you got a cat?* 

I/you/we/they have got he/she/i	it has not	
I/you/we/they have got he/she/i   have I/you etc got?	it has got	
I/you etc have not got he/she/i		
Contractions: I've, he's etc; haven't, h		
contractions, replaced, navena, r	nush t	
We often use got with have, especially in		
This does not change the meaning: we us	se have/has got like have/has	to talk about possession etc.
I have got is the same as I have.		
Have you got? is the same as Do you have so the base of the same as Do you have so the base of the same so the		ith have got.)
She hasn't got is the same as She does		
I've got a cat. Has she got a dog? (NOT		11
I haven't got a car. She's got a sister.	You' <b>ve got</b> beautiful eyes.	Have you got a cold?
💮 Write about John's possessions e	tc	
► a bicycle: ✓ John's got a bicy		
<ul> <li>suits: 2 He's got two suits.</li> </ul>	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	
> a horse x He hasn't got a ho	orse.	
<ul> <li>a horse: X He hasn't got a ho</li> <li>any children: X He hasn't got</li> </ul>	any children.	
1 brothers: 2		
2 a car: X		
3 dogs: 3		
4 a dictionary: ✓		
5 long hair: X		
6 any sisters: X		
Write three sentences about you	r possessions etc, and thre	e about the possessions
	r possessions etc, and thre	e about the possessions
Write three sentences about you		e about the possessions
Write three sentences about you of a friend or relation.		
Write three sentences about you of a friend or relation.		
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li> <li>2</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li> <li>2</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li> <li>2</li></ul>	4 5 6 put <i>have/has</i> before the subj	
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 6 put have/has before the subj Harry's got a fast car.	ect.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 6 put have/has before the subj Harry's got a fast car. Has Harry got a fast car?	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets?
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 6 put have/has before the subj Harry's got a fast car. Has Harry got a fast car? boney. Ask questions with h	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 6 put have/has before the subj Harry's got a fast car. Has Harry got a fast car? honey. Ask questions with h ot a big house?	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 5 6 <b>put have/has before the subj</b> Harry's got a fast car. Has Harry got a fast car? Hooney. Ask questions with h ot a big house?	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 5 6 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9 9	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.         <ol> <li>I've got</li> <li>I've got</li></ol></li></ul>	4 5 5 6 <b>put have/has before the subj</b> <b>Harry's got</b> a fast car. <b>Has Harry got</b> a fast car? <b>honey. Ask questions with</b> i ot a big house?	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.
<ul> <li>Write three sentences about your of a friend or relation.</li> <li>1 I've got</li></ul>	4 5 5 6 <b>put have/has before the subj</b> <b>Harry's got</b> a fast car. <b>Has Harry got</b> a fast car? <b>toney. Ask questions with</b> <i>I</i> ot a big house?	ect. Amy and Juan have got tickets. Have Amy and Juan got tickets? have got.

Past forms with got (I had got etc) are unusual. We don't use got in the future.

She had a fast car. (MORE NATURAL THAN She had got a fast car.) I will have. (NOT I will have got.)

# be and have: more practice

Manufacture Manufacture and

Contractions. Rewrite these sentences with cor	ntractions.
John is tired. John's tired.	5 She will not be late.
1 They were not ready.	6 You have got my keys.
2 We are all here.	7   have not got much time
3 I am not a student.	8 Franz does not live here.
4 Where is your house?	
Contractions. Rewrite these sentences without	contractions.
I wasn't ready was not ready.	5 She's got two sisters.
1 Tom's late.	6 She's right.
2 I won't have time	7 Emma's got beautiful eyes
3 Anna's hungry	8 There's a letter for you.
4 He doesn't have a car	
<ul> <li>Be. Make questions and negatives. Use negative</li> <li>It's summer. (hot) is it hot? No. it's not hot</li> </ul>	(OR No it ico (that)
	*****
8 They're rich. ( <i>happy</i> )	
Have: questions and negatives. Complete the s	entences with do or does
Have: questions and negatives. Complete the s	
Ido not have much free time.	4 you have my new address?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> </ol>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>2 England have any high mountains?</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>4</li></ol>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>2 England have any high mountains?</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>4</li></ol>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>DoesCarol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogsnot have wings.</li> <li>2England have any high mountains?</li> <li>3 Annn't have a job just now.</li> </ul>	<ol> <li>4</li></ol>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>DoesCarol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogsnot have wings.</li> <li>2England have any high mountains?</li> <li>3 Annn't have a job just now.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>2 England have any high mountains?</li> <li>3 Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>DoesCarol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogsnot have wings.</li> <li>England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there weren't is there are there was there were there</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>DoesCarol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there weren't is there are there was there were there</li> <li></li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>2 England have any high mountains?</li> <li>3 Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li>there's</li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be tor. hext year.
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>1 Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>2 England have any high mountains?</li> <li>3 Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there weren't is there are there was there were there</li> <li></li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. ng to eat?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>DoesCarol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs not have wings.</li> <li>England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's          there are there was there weren't is there are there was there were there</li> <li></li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night.
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li>there's</li> <li>somebody at the do</li> <li>I think an election r</li> <li>I'm hungry a fascinating prograf</li> <li>How many people</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be tor. nor. next year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li>There's </li> <li>there's </li> <li>somebody at the do</li> <li>I think an election r</li> <li>I'm hungry af fascinating program</li> <li>How many people</li> <li>I wanted to buy shoes, but</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. hext year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?
<ul> <li>Ido</li> <li>Does Carol have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there weren't is there are there was there were there</li> <li>There's somebody at the do</li> <li>I think an election r</li> <li>I'm hungry anythin</li> <li>a fascinating prograf</li> <li>How many people if</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8 your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li></li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li>There's </li> <li>there's </li> <li>somebody at the do</li> <li>I think an election r</li> <li>I'm hungry a fascinating prograf</li> <li>How many people for any people at the</li> <li>I wanted to buy shoes, but</li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. og to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?
<ul> <li>Ido not have much free time.</li> <li>Does Carol have a boyfriend?</li> <li>Dogs England have any high mountains?</li> <li>Annn't have a job just now.</li> <li>There is. Put in expressions from the box.</li> <li>there's </li> <li>there are there was there were there</li> <li></li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 you have my new address?</li> <li>5 My brother and I not have blue eyes.</li> <li>6 Marian't speak English.</li> <li>7 In't have a headache any more.</li> <li>8your street have any shops?</li> </ul> t there will be there won't be will there be or. next year. ng to eat? mme on TV last night. in your family?

### Grammar in a text. Read the text, and then write about yourself.

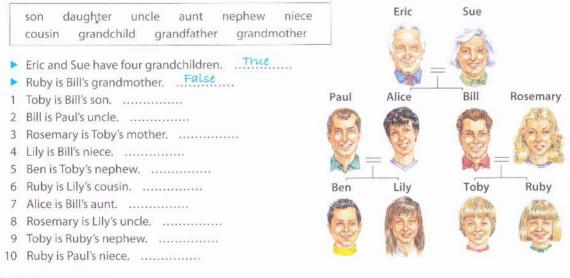
His name's Noureddin. He's from Rabat, in Morocco. He's a student. He's 21. He isn't married. He's got four brothers and two sisters. He's interested in music and politics. He isn't interested in sport.

My name's ....



### Grammar in a text. Put in affirmative (IIII) or negative (IIII) forms of be or have.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: relations. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the family tree and write 'true' or 'false' against the sentences.



#### Internet exercise. Can you find these on the internet?

1	The name of a song with the words "there is a house"
2	The name of a song with the words "once I had"
3	The name of a song with the words "have a party"

### be and have: revision test

### Circle the correct form.

- Is/Are your brother at home?
- 1 Where / Who / How is the station?
- 2 1/We was in London yesterday.
- 3 Are/Have you thirsty?
- 4 Alice is / has three brothers.
- 5 My sister is / has 25 today.
- 6 'I am / have cold.' 'Put on a sweater.'
- 7 | want / won't be here next week.
- 8 | am / are tired.
- 9 Emma is / has very happy today.
- 10 There is / are a new secretary in the company.

- 11 Did you have / had a good journey?
- 12 Do/Does your father have a car?
- 13 Do/Have you got a cold?
- 14 Will be you / Will you be at the party tonight?
- 15 *I amn't / I'm not* ready.
- 16 'Why/Who/How are you?' 'Fine, thanks.'
- 17 Did you have / has a good holiday?
- 18 It's my birthday next week. I will be / will have 18.
- 19 Does John have / has a brother?
- 20 How many people is / are there in your family?

To mercis, are a new secretary in e

### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- I don't had breakfast today. .....
- 1 l'm not ..... l amn't ..... he's not ..... he isn't .....
- 2 Do you got a bicycle? .....
- 3 Had you a good journey? .....
- 4 Jane is having a shower. .....

- 5 My friends was late. .....
- 6 Is there any eggs in the fridge? .....
- 7 I don't have many friends. .....
- 8 I do have two brothers. .....
- 9 There won't be a lesson tomorrow. .....
- 10 I not had breakfast today. .....

### Change the sentences to questions or negatives.

	•	It's Tuesday. It isn't Tuesday. OR . It's not Tuesday.
	1	There's a taxi outside. 🌃
	2	Chris has got a headache. 🔢
	3	Joe has a car. 🏢
	4	Ann had a meeting yesterday. 🏭
	5	I had coffee for breakfast. 🎆
	6	There will be an English lesson tomorrow. 鞋
	7	l'm hungry. 🇱
	8	Petra's got a new car. 🎆
	9	She had a nice time at the party.
i.	10	The house has got a big garden. 🏙

#### Make present (PR), past (PA) or future (F) questions.

•	Peter / Irish (PR) Is Peter Irish?
•	Jane / have breakfast this morning (PA) Did Jane have break fast this morning?
1	Rosemary / from London (PR)
2	we / early (F)
3	Sarah / at home (PA)
4	Karim / have a cold (PR)
5	your car / fast (PR)
6	the manager / in America (F)
7	Tim and Anna / students (PA)
8	What time / you have lunch today (F)
9	you / here tomorrow (F)
10	those people / American (PA)

# **SECTION 2** present tenses

### grammar summary

SIMPLE PRESENT: I work, she works, he doesn't work etc PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: I am working, she is working, he isn't working etc

#### English has two 'present' tenses.

We use the simple present mostly to talk about things that are always true, and things that happen repeatedly.

Dogs eat meat. My grandmother lives in Brighton. I work every Saturday.

 We use the present progressive (or 'present continuous') to talk about things that are happening just around the time when we speak.

Look! The dog's eating your shoe. I'm working hard these days.

We can also use the present progressive to talk about the future (see page 38). I'm seeing Lucy tomorrow.

# Some old songs

I like myself

I believe in love

She's leaving home

Am I asking too much?

Is she really going out with him?

Where are you going?

Smoke gets in your eyes

I love Paris in the springtime

She loves me

She loves you

I'm crying

I'm flying

Why do I love you?

Why do fools fall in love?

Why do lovers break each other's hearts?

I don't want to do it



# simple present\* affirmative I work; you work; she works

	Iwork	you work	he/she/it wor		<i>ie work</i>	they wor				
	1 live	you live	he/she/it lives		re live	they live				
	Istop	you stop	he/she/it stop	os W	e stop	they stop	2			
ou l		nk. He <b>wo</b> my brother. essons at 5.00.	o <b>rks</b> in a restaurar She <b>lives</b> in Live The train <b>sto</b>	erpool.	k.					
wc	TOMAK	E HE/SHE/IT FO	ORMS							
m	ost verb	s: +-s w	vork works	know	- knows	rain -=	rains			
-5,	-sh, -ch,	and the second second second	ass passes				teaches     teaches	mix	- mix	es
ex	ceptions	s: g	o goes do	doe	s have	has				
14	Irito the	e he/she/it fo	rmc.							
	mie me	ne/sne/n io	11115.							
	catch 🗸	come 🗸 🧃	cook drink	fetch	fix	live r	miss p	ush		
	read	run sm	oke stand	start	touch	watch	wish	write		
-					1 Power Land	10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 - 10 -				
+	-S:	iomes							19	
		-1-1-0-								
+	-ES:	atches							- 3	
vo	S ENDING	-ay, -e t + y -dy, -ly	ey, -oy, -uy: +- y, -py, -ry, etc: -y		say fly					
vo	owel + y onsonant /rite the	-ay, -e t + y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms.	⊧ -ies	fly≯+	flies				
vo	owel + y onsonant	-ay, -e t + y -dy, -ly	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms.	ies		flies	stay st	udy 1	try	
vo co M	owel + y onsonant /rite the	-ay, -e t + y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms.	<sub></sub> , -ies	fly≯+	flies play s	stay str	udy 1	try	
vo co W	owel + y onsonant /rite the buy √	-ay, -e t + y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms.		fly →→ marry	flies play s		udy 1	try	
vo co W + -y	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES	-ay, -e t+y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys s: carries	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy		<i>fly→</i> marry	flies play s		udy 1	try	
vo co W + -y Pi	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ′ → -IES ut the w	-ay, -e t+y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ cop buys s: carries vords in the	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order.		<i>fly→</i> marry	flies play s	e correct	answer	s.	
vo co W + -y Pi	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do	-ay, -e t+y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys s: carries vords in the og too your mu	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch		<i>fly→</i> marry	flies play s	e correct	answer	s.	clothes.
vo co W + -y Pi	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do 	-ay, -e t+y -dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys s: carries vords in the dog eats too	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch		<i>fly→</i> marry	flies play s Circle th We/A		answer ways wea	<b>s.</b> ar old	
vo co W + -y Pi	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th	-ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys carries vords in the og too your mu dog eats too at house in	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch	fry :	fly>+ marry 	flies play s Circle th We/A You J	e correct Ay friend al	answer ways wea s wears r	s. ar old	othes.
vo co W + -γ Pr ►	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ →> -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th	-ay, -e ay, -e -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -ay -ay, -ay -ay, -ay -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -ly -ay, -ay, -ay, -ay, -ay, -ay, -ay, -ay,	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch	fry :	fly>+ marry 	flies play Circle th We/A You (J 1 We all	e correct Ay friend al	answer ways wea rs wears r thinks yo	s. ar old nice clo	othes.
vo co W + -y Pi	wel + y nsonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki	-ay, -e ay, -e -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -ly 	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch much.	fry 1	fly>+ marry 	flies play Circle th We/A You 1 We all 2 1/Cath	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss	answer ways wea s wears r thinks yo t a new jo	s. ar old nice clo	othes.
va co W + -y P P P P P P P 1 2	wel + y nsonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki	-ay, -e ay, -e -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay, -ly -ay -ay, -ay -ay -ay, -ay -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -e -ay, -ly 	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch much.	fry 1	fly>+ marry 	flies play Circle th We/A You J 1 We all 2 I/Cath 3 Bread.	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss herine wan	answer ways wea s wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot.	<b>s.</b> ar old nice cle u're w ob.	othes. onderful
vo co W + -γ Pr ►	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ →> -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v	-ay, -e ay, -e dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys carries vords in the og too your mu dog eats too at house in im in a works iolin plays the	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y orms. py enjoy correct order. uch o much.	fry 1	fly>+ marry  	flies play Circle th We/A You You 1 We all 2 I/Cath 3 Bread 4 Andy/	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss herine wan / Books cos	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing:	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very	othes. onderful well.
va co W + -y P P P P P P 1 2 3	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ →> -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v	-ay, -e ay, -e dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys carries yords in the og too your mu dog eats too at house in im in a works iolin plays the	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y orms. py enjoy correct order. uch o much.	fry 1	fly>+ marry  	flies play s Circle th We/A You J 1 We all 2 I/Catl 3 Bread. 4 Andy/ 5 Sophy	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss herine wan / Books cos / Andy and	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing: d lan like	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very	othes. onderful well.
va co W + -y P P P P P P 1 2 3	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v Scotlan	-ay, -e ay, -e -ay, -b -ay, -ay, -b -ay, -b -	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch o much. e very Claire children come	fry 1	<i>fly</i> >+ marry 	flies play Circle th We/A You You We all We all We all We all Sophy Sophy You/S	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss herine wan / Books cos ( Andy and ) / Sophy an	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing: d lan like po fast.	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very partie	othes. onderful well. 25.
vo co W + -y P P P P 1 2 3 4	wel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -s: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v Scotlan	-ay, -e ay, -e -ay, -b -ay, -ay, -b -ay, -b -	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y orms. py enjoy correct order. uch o much.	fry 1	<i>fly</i> >+ marry 	flies play s Circle th We/A You J We all 2 I/Catl 3 Bread. 4 Andy/ 5 Sophy 6 You/S 7 Our ca	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss / The boss / Books cos / Andy and / Sophy an the drive to	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing: d lan like to fast.	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very partie	othes. onderful well. es. mice.
vo co W + -y P P P P 1 2 3 4	ywel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v Scotlan young v	-ay, -e ay, -e dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys carries yords in the og too your mu dog eats too at house in im in a works iolin plays the od those from very look you	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch much. e very Claire children come		fly>*	flies play s Circle th We/A You/J We all Veall 2 I/Cath 3 Bread, 4 Andy/ 5 Sophy 6 You/S 7 Our ca 8 That cl	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss / The boss / Books cos / Andy and / Sophy an the drive to t / Our cats hild / Child	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing: d lan like to fast. r never ca ren make	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very partie atches s a lot	othes. onderful well. 25. mice. of noise.
vo co W + -y P P P P 1 2 3 4	ywel + y prisonant /rite the buy ✓ -S: ✓ → -IES ut the w eats do Your live I th bank Ki badly v Scotlan young v	-ay, -e ay, -e dy, -ly e he/she/it fo carry ✓ co buys carries yords in the og too your mu dog eats too at house in im in a works iolin plays the od those from very look you	y, -py, -ry, etc: -y prms. py enjoy correct order. uch o much. e very Claire children come		<i>fly</i> >+ marry 	flies play s Circle th We/A You J We all 2 I/Catl 3 Bread. 4 Andy/ 5 Sophy 6 You /S 7 Our ca 8 That ci 9 That b	e correct Ay friend al ohn alway / The boss / The boss / Andy and / Sophy an the drive to t / Our cats	answer ways wears r thinks yo t a new jo sts a lot. Pete sing: d lan like to fast. never ca ren make se buses g	s. ar old nice clo u're w ob. s very partie atches s a lot go to t	othes. onderful well. es. mice. of noise. he station

\* Also called 'present simple'

# simple present: use I work in a bank.

<ul> <li>We use the simple present to talk about:</li> <li>things that are always true.</li> <li>habits and things that happen repeatedly.</li> </ul>
The sun <b>rises</b> in the east. My parents <b>live</b> near Dover. Joe <b>plays</b> golf on Saturdays.
PAST NOW FUTURE PAST 1 NOW 1 1 FUTURE 1
We often use the simple present with words that tell you how often: for example <i>always, never, often,</i>
sometimes, usually, once a day, twice a week, every year, all the time.
She <b>always forgets</b> my birthday. I <b>often get</b> headaches. You <b>never listen</b> to me. We <b>play</b> basketball <b>twice a week</b> . It <b>rains all the time</b> here.
We pluy busketbuilt twice a week. It fains an the time here.
🕕 Complete the sentences with the correct forms of verbs from the boxes.
ask get up√ go make play speak
usk gerup go make play speak
Peter alwaysgets up late on Sundays.
1 Ann and John sometimes tennis at weekends.
2 My mother often French at home.
3 Small children questions all the time.
4 Sarah to Oxford to see her mother twice a week.
5 1 more mistakes in English when I'm tired.
forget get listen live watch
6 I often people's names.
7 We usually to music in the car.
8 My brother in Vancouver.
9 Ia lot of films on TV.
10 My parentsall their food from supermarkets.
2 Choose suitable verbs in the correct forms to complete the sentences.
<ul> <li>The sunsets in the west. (live, rise, set)</li> </ul>
1 That woman that she everything. (know, think, run, wash)
2 Our son karate. (read, study, write)
3 Alice to go skiing every year. ( <i>try, play, say</i> )
4 You always very nice clothes. ( <i>look, start, wear</i> )
5 Andy always his car on Saturdays. ( <i>buy, sell, wash</i> )
6 Most people for other people. ( <i>talk, work, teach</i> )
7 That child never 'Thank you'. ( <i>like, say, sing</i> )
8 He in the same chair every evening. (know, like, sit, stand)
9 My father TV most evenings. ( <i>listen, think, watch</i> )
10 We always what we can't have. ( <i>want, get, forget</i> )
We do not use a present tense to talk about how long something has lasted (see page 65).

*I have known* her since 1990. (NOT <del>I know her since 1990.</del>)

# simple present negatives I don't know. She doesn't ski.

 I do not work
 you do not work
 he/she/it does not work
 we/they do not work

 Contractions: don't, doesn't
 Contractions: don't, doesn't
 Contractions: don't, doesn't
 Contractions: don't, doesn't

We make simple present negatives () with *do/does not* + infinitive (without *to*).

STATEMENT	NEGATIVE ##
Iknow	I do not know (NOT I know not)
You think	You <b>do not</b> think
He likes	He does not like
She remembers	She does not remember
It helps	It does not help
We want	We do not want
They understand	They <b>do not</b> understand

#### Make negative sentences. Use do not or does not.

- I play chess. (cards) ... I do not play cards.
- 1 You speak very good Arabic. (Chinese) .....
- 2 Bill plays the piano very well. (guitar)
- 3 We agree about most things. (holidays)
- 4 Alan and John live near me. (George and Andrew)
- 5 My father writes novels. (poetry) .....
- 6 Barbara works in London. (live) .....
- 7 Henry likes old books. (parties)

#### Make negative sentences. Use don't or doesn't.

- 1 The train stops at Bristol. (Cardiff) It.....
- 2 I like jazz. (pop music) .....
- 3 Peter remembers names very well. (faces)
- 4 We know our Member of Parliament. (*his wife*)
- 5 Alice teaches engineering. (mathematics)
- 6 The children play football on Mondays. (hockey)
- 7 The shops open on Sunday mornings. (afternoons)
- Complete the negative sentences, using words from the box. You can use *do not / does not* or *don't / doesn't*, as you like.

6 We / play .....

### Choose one verb to make each sentence negative.

- It ...doesn't snow ...... very often in San Francisco. (snow, sing, play)
- 1 I like football, but I ..... cricket at all. (think, like, remember)
- 2 She lives in Japan, but she ..... a word of Japanese. (sing, work, speak)
- 3 I'm sorry I ...... your name. (eat, remember, work)
- 4 He works in New York, but I ..... what he does. (know, use, come)
- 5 Mary's really tired, but she ..... to go to bed. (help, want, walk)
- 6 We ..... a big flat just one bedroom. (work, play, want)
- 7 Phil ..... very hard, but he makes a lot of money. (work, stand, stop)
- 8 Gemma's parents ...... I'm the right man for their daughter. (write, read, think)

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: games

Look at the table, and write five or more sentences like this:

### Ann plays tennis, but she doesn't play cards.

			Ø		16				
	tennis	football	rugby	basketball	baseball	chess	cards	hockey	badminton
Ann	1.	×	×	1	×	×	X	X	~
Pete	X	1	Х	X	×	~	1	X	X
Joe	1	×	1	1	×	×	1	1	1
Sarah	×	1	×	×	1	1	X	X	×

#### 6 What games do you play? And what games do you not play?

.....

### NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115). Nobody understands me. (NOT Nobody doesn't understand me.) She never phones me. (NOT She doesn't-never phone me.)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.



# simple present questions *Do you remember me?*

do I work? do you work? does he/she/it work? do we work? do they work?

#### We make simple present questions () with *do/does* + subject + infinitive (without *to*).

STATEMENT	QUESTION	
Iknow	Do I know?	
You think	Do you think? (NOT Think you?)	
He likes	Does he like? (NOT Does he likes?)	
She remembers	Does she remember?	
It helps	Does it help?	
Wewant	Do we want?	
They understand	Do they understand?	

### Put in do or does.

•		3 you speak Chinese?
•		4 Sarah go to school on Saturdays?
1	Ann want to come with us?	5 this shop sell stamps?
2	your parents live near here?	6 Bill and Harry play golf?

#### Make guestions.

- They smoke. Do they smoke?
- Ashley teaches French. Does Ashley teach French?
- 1 The Oxford bus stops here.
- 2 The teachers know her.
- 3 You play the piano.
- 4 John works in a restaurant.
- 5 This train stops at York.
- 6 We need more eggs. ....
- 7 Fatima likes parties.
- 8 Peter speaks Spanish well.

#### Do you know all these question words?

what when where who why how how much how many what time

What do you think? (NOT What think you?) Where does Lucy live? (NOT Where lives Lucy?) How much does this cost? (NOT How much this costs?)

What time does the train leave? (NOT What time the train leaves?)

### Choose the correct subject.

- How much does ... the ticket ...... cost? (the ticket / the tickets)
- 1 Where do ..... live? (your daughter / your children)
- 2 What time does ..... start? (the lesson / the lessons)
- 3 What do ..... want? (you / the girl)
- 4 When does ..... finish? (the holidays / the holiday)
- 5 Why do ..... talk so fast? (that woman / those women)
- 6 What do ..... think of the new boss? (you / she)

→ For questions without do, like Who lives here?, see pages 108–109.

Choose the correct guestion word and put in do or does. how how many how much when where why How much does ... the ticket cost? ..... vour children live? 2 ..... she want? 3 ..... the holidays start? 4 ..... the teacher talk so fast? ..... languages ..... he speak? 5 6 ..... you pronounce this word? Make guestions. Where / she live? Where does she live? 1 What / you want? 2 What / this word mean? 3 What time / the film start? 4 How much / those shoes cost? ..... 5 Why / she need money? ..... 6 How / this camera work? 7 Where / you buy your meat? 8 Who / you want to see? 🕜 Do you know all these simple present questions? Study them, and then put the correct question into each conversation. How do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that? What does this word mean? How much does it cost / do they cost? Do you know Anna? Where do you live/work? What do you do? (='What is your job?') How do you do? (='I'm pleased to meet you.') What time does the film/concert/class start? What time does the train/bus/plane leave/arrive? 1 4..... 'With one c and double s.' 2 '..... 'I'm a taxi driver.' 3 '..... 'I don't know. Look in the dictionary.' 4 '..... 'It gets into the station at 3.00 in the morning.' 5 '..... '€500.' б'.... 'No, but I know her sister.' 7 '..... 'How do you do?' 8 '.....

'I don't know. Look on the cinema programme.'

# simple present: more practice

					1
翻	I/you/we/they work	he/she/it works			
翻	, , , ,	does he/she/it work?			
Щ		he/she/it does not work	_	al designed	
	Contractions: don't, doesn't				
() (ci	ircle the correct answers.				
1	Where do / does your sister liv				ce doesn't open / opens on Sundays.
2	My cat / My cats don't like fish				our holiday start / start your holiday?
3	This car don't / doesn't go very				oth <i>play / plays</i> golf.
4	This train stop / stops at every				ose cafés stays open all night.
5	Why do English people / Englis	h people do 1	0	Her letters do	on't <i>say / to say</i> very much.
	drink so much tea?				
@ M	lake sentences.				
	Anu (live) in Birmingham	Anu lives in Birmin	9!	ham.	
•	Vou (sneak) Chinese B DO	you speak Chinese?			
	Sarah (like) classical music	Sarah doesn't like o	la	issical mus	íc.
1	( <i>like</i> ) getting up early III				
2	you (want) something to drin	k 韻建			*
3	Dan (play) football on Saturd	ays 🕅			
4	you (remember) her phone ni	umber 🔢			
5	that clock ( <i>work</i> ) ##				
6	she often (fly) to Paris on bus	iness 🕎			
7					
8	elephants ( <i>eat</i> ) meat 🏢				
9					
10	we ( <i>need</i> ) a new car 🖽				
E N	lake sentences like the one	es in Exercise 2. Write a	bo	out yourself	
1	l like				
2	l don't like				
3	I want				
4	l don't want				
5	I need				
6	l don't need				
7	l often				
8	l never				
9	l always				



22 PRESENT TENSES

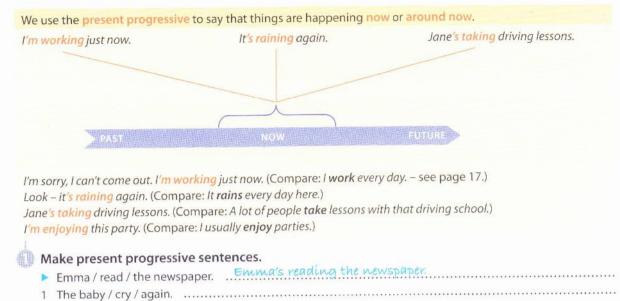
# present progressive\*: forms I'm reading; I'm not working.

Level 1

		100000000000000000000000000000000000000		1 . 1		the second second second second second
	l am working l am not working	you <b>are</b> workin you <b>are not</b> wo		he/she/it is working he/she/it is not work	ina etc	we/they are working
				aren't, he isn't etc		
				ng?, When's iting?		
		2.		5.		
Nem	ake present pro	aressive verbs with	he (I am voi	<i>are</i> etc – see page 2	$) \perp inc$	
	is studying Russia			a une etc see page .	2) +ing.	
				tion and informal w	ulting	
ve u	se contractions (	m, John S, ISH ( etc)	in conversa	tion and miormai w	nung.	
M	lake present pro	ogressive affirma	tive (🏢) ar	id negative (📰) se	ntences.	
•	The lesson	starting	nc	w. (start ###)		
	Jenny	orking	today.	(work )		
1	You		too fa	st. ( <i>talk</i> 📖)		
2				444337		
3						
4						
5 6			2552			<i>.</i>
7						
8				441197		
9				chool this week. (go		
S.,					1111	
10	VVC			r English. (reann <sub>#.m.)</sub>		
OW	TO MAKE JAIC FOI	DMC				
	TO MAKE -ING FO			- alaan ala		A MARKET AND AND A MARK
ma	ost verbs: + -ing	work	workin			
mo vei	ost verbs: +-ing rbs ending in -e:	() + -ing make	makin			
mo vei	ost verbs: + -ing	() + -ing make				
mo ver -ie	ost verbs: +-ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y +-i /rite the -ing for	(≷) + -ing work ng lie … ms of these verb	→→ makin → lying s.	g hope ho	p <b>ing</b>	
mo ver -ie W br	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reakbreaking	(≷) + -ing work make ing lie ms of these verb . clean	<i>makin</i> ⊷ <i>lying</i> s. come	g hope ho	oping	enjoy
mo ver -ie W br	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u>	(≩) + -ing work ing lie ms of these verb . clean	<mark>. → <i>P</i> makin <b>Iying</b> s come make</mark>	g hope — ho die . play	oping	
mo ver -ie W br	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u>	(≷) + -ing work make ing lie ms of these verb . clean	<mark>. → <i>P</i> makin <b>Iying</b> s come make</mark>	g hope — ho die . play	oping	
mo ver -ie W br go sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i Yrite the -ing for reakbreaking o	work make mg lie ms of these verb clean	<mark>. → <i>P</i> makin <b>Iying</b> s come make</mark>	g hope — ho die . play	oping	
ma ver -ie W br ga sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i rite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u> o art BLING (stopping, ru	work (*) + -ing make ing lie ms of these verb clean live wash wash unning etc)	<mark>. → <i>P</i> makin <b>Iying</b> s come make</mark>	g hope — ho die . play	oping	
mc vei -ie W br gc sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u> o art BLING (stopping, ru re vowel + one co	work (a) + -ing make ing lie mas of these verb conson of these verb wash unning etc) masonant	<ul> <li>→→ makin</li> <li>→→ makin</li> <li>→ lying</li> <li>s.</li> <li> come</li> <li>make</li> <li> write</li> </ul>	g hope ho	ping	sing
mo ver -ie W br gc sta sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak breaking art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co # double conson	work (*) + -ing make ing lie ing lie ing verb crms of these verb clean live wash unning etc) onsonant ant + -ing	<i>s.</i> <i>iying</i> <i>iying</i> <i>i</i> come make <i>i</i> write <i>stop</i> → <i>s</i>	g hope ho die . play topping (NOT stoping	p <b>ing</b>	sing
mo ver -ie W br go sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i /rite the -ing for reakbreaking o art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co double conson vo vowels: don't co	work (a) + -ing make ing lie ing lie ing lie ing work ing lie ing lie ing lie ing of these verb ing of	s. write stop s. stop step s	g hope ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait	p <b>ing</b> )) run ≫ waiting	sing running (NOT waitting)
wei -ie W br gc sta 00UE on tw tw	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reakbreaking art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co double conson ro vowels: don't co	work (a) + -ing make ing lie	s. s. s. s. stop stop sleep want stop sleep sleep sleep	g hope — ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait — wanting (NOT <del>wantti</del>	p <b>ing</b> a) run waiting ng) he	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping
wei -ie W br gc sta 00UE on tw tw	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i /rite the -ing for reakbreaking o art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co double conson vo vowels: don't co	work (a) + -ing make ing lie	s. s. s. s. stop stop sleep want stop sleep sleep sleep	g hope ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait	p <b>ing</b> a) run waiting ng) he	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping
mo vei -ie W br gc sta sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u> art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co vo vowels: don't co o consonants: do bly double in STR	work (a) + -ing make ing lie	s. stop sleep want beGIN make stop sleep sl	g hope — ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait — wanting (NOT <del>wantti</del>	p <b>ing</b> a) run waiting ng) he	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping
mover -ie W br gc sta on on tw tw tw On W	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak <u>breaking</u> o art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co double conson to consonants: do hly double in STR frite the -ing for	work (a) +-ing make ing lie ms of these verb clean live wash unning etc) onsonant ant +-ing double ESSED syllables rms of these verb	s. stop	g hope — ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait — wanting (NOT <del>wantti</del>	p <b>ing</b> a) r <b>un</b> ⊷ waiting ng) he ben → h	sing <i>running</i> (NOT waitting) <i>lp helping</i> appening
mo ver -ie W br go sta on tw tw tw On W ge	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reakbreaking art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co o consonants: do hy double in STR frite the -ing for et	work (a) + -ing make ing lie ms of these verb clean live wash wash mning etc) onsonant ant + -ing double bn't double ESSED syllables ms of these verb feel 	s. stop	g hope — ho die . 	p <b>ing</b> ) run ⇒ waiting ng) he ben → h hit	sing <i>running</i> (NOT waitting) <i>lp helping</i> appening
wei -ie W br go sta Sta OOUE tw tw tw On W ge ju	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reakbreaking art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co double conson to consonants: do hly double in STR frite the -ing for et	work (a) + -ing make ing lie ms of these verbe clean live wash wash mning etc) onsonant ant + -ing double bon't double ESSED syllables rms of these verb feel rain	stop s sleep want s.	g hope — ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait — wanting (NOT <del>wantti</del> beginning BUT HAPp but	p <b>ing</b> ) run ⇒ waiting ng) he pen → h hit sho	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping appening
W br ga sta OUUE on 	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i frite the -ing for reak breaking o art BLING (stopping, ru e vowel + one co vo vowels: don't co o consonants: do hly double in STR frite the -ing for et mp	work (a) + -ing make ing lie ms of these verb clean live wash wash mning etc) onsonant ant + -ing double ESSED syllables rms of these verb feel rain sit	s. stop sleep want sleen sleep sleep sleen	g hope — ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait — wanting (NOT <del>wantti</del> beginning BUT HAPp but	p <b>ing</b> p <b>ing</b> p <b>ing</b> p <b>ing</b> waiting ng) he pen → h hit sho drea	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping appening p
wei -ie W br gc sta sta OOUE on tw tw tw On W ge ju sh sta	ost verbs: + -ing rbs ending in -e: changes to y + -i drite the -ing for reak breaking art	work (*) +-ing make ing lie ms of these verb clean live wash wash mning etc) onsonant tant +-ing double ESSED syllables rms of these verb feel rain sit talk	s. with the second sec	g hope ho die . play topping (NOT stoping sleeping wait	p <b>ing</b> ) r <b>un</b> ⇒ waiting ng) he ben → h hit sho drea	sing running (NOT waitting) Ip helping appening p

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# present progressive: use I'm working just now.



- Ine Baby / cry / again.
  It / snow / hard.
  You / look / very beautiful today.
  Your coffee / get / cold.
  I / play / a lot of football this year.
  We / wait / for a phone call.
- 7 Chris and Helen / spend / a week in France.

Look at the pictures and use the verbs in the box to say what Helen is doing.



# present progressive negatives He's not listening to me.

盟	am not working you are not working he/she/it is not working we/they are not working	
	Contractions: I'm not, you're not; he's/she's/it's not, we're not, they're not	
	Or: you/we/they aren't, he/she/it isn't	_
We n	ake present progressive negatives with <i>am/are/is not</i> + <i>ing</i> .	
	ot working this week.	
	working this week.	
C	noose the right verbs and make negative (🎆) present progressive sentences.	
•	I (write, play, ask) you for a lot of money. I'm not asking you for a lot of money.	
1	He (listen, stand, start) to me.	
2	I (rain, work, get) today.	
3	It (wear, rain, speak) now.	
4	She (wear, look, wait) a coat.	
5	John's students ( <i>wait, like, learn</i> ) very much.	
6	We (enjoy, fly, read) this film.	
7	You ( <i>live, wait, eat</i> ) much these days.	
8	I (sleep, stand, expect) to pass the exam.	
9	My computer ( <i>pay, work, write</i> ).	
	I ( <i>stop, play, give</i> ) much tennis these days.	
2) W	rite negative ends for the sentences.	
•	It's cold, but (#snow) . it's not snowing.	
•	I'm a teacher, but (III work just now) I'm not working just now.	
1	He's a good footballer, but (IIII play well today)	
2	They are in England now, but (III live in London)	
3	It's a new car, but (## run well)	
4	Everybody says this is a good book, but (/ enjoy it)	
5	It's summer, but ( <i>the sun IIII shine</i> )	
6	I'm a student, but (# study at university)	
7	She sings when she's happy, but ( sing just now)	
8	I don't have any problems, but ( sleep well these days)	
9	We're on holiday, but ( <i>have a good time</i> )	
1000	I'm crying, but ( <i>iiii cry because of you</i> )	
	······································	
3 0	omplete the sentences, using the verbs in the box.	
Ē	To be that	7
	not work not listen not rain not move not eat	1
	The states of th	
1	The train	a l
2	The children	
3		Л
4	The cat	11
5	John	11
	3 1 1 2 5 5	0-

I've been waiting since 9.00. (NOT I'm waiting since 9.00.)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

am I working? are you working? is he/she/it working? are we/they working?

We make prese	nt progressive qu	estions with am/are/is + su	ıbject +ing
STATEMENT	It is raining,	You are working.	The children gre making something.
		Are you working?	What are the children making?
			■ Construction of the second state of the
Make ques	tions.		
			ng to me?
1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 -	normal and a second a second or suggested on the first of		
	T. T.		
			••••••
TO SOMEDOC	iy / cook iunch :		
	the questions.		
'Those period	eople aren't speaki	ng English.' 'What languag	e are they speaking?
1 'Bill's writ	ing something on	the wall.' 'I can't see - what	E
3 'They're s	studying now.' 'Wh	at	······································
4 'They're p	playing a game.' 'W	/hat game	
5 'I'm going	g now. Goodbye.' "	Wait! Where	·····
6 'Nadia's t	elephoning someb	ody: 'Who	
7 'The baby	y's eating somethin	ng: 'What	······································
8 'Sue's wo	rking as a secretar	y.' 'Where	
10 'l'm not li	ving with my pare	nts.' 'Where	······································
Put in que	stion words and	make present progress	ive questions. (More than one answer may
be possible			
		rdoing?	

# present progressive: more practice

m	l am working	you are working	he/she/it/is working	we/they are working
	am I working?	are you working?	is/he/she/it working?	are we/they working?
	l am not working	you <b>are not</b> working	he/she/it/ <b>is not</b> working e	tc
	Contractions: I'm, you	u're, he's etc (not)ing; yo	u aren't, he isn't etcing	
O P	ut the words in the c	orrect order. Use contr	actions (e.g. <i>it's</i> ) where pos	sible
•		Are you talking t		
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
2) N	lake present progres	sive sentences.		
•	I / look for / the station	m翻 I'm Looking for	the station.	
•			tonight?	
•	it / rain 🏢 🔜 It's wot	raining.		
1	Peter / try / to save mo	oney 🖽		
2	why / those children /	cry 顧		
3	your friends / play foo	tball / this afternoon 📗		
4	she / look / very well t	oday 🏢		
5	l think she / make / a l	big mistake 🏢 🛛		
6	you / wear / your usua	l glasses 🏢 🛛		
7	I / start / to learn Spar	ish 觀		
8	the 10.15 train / run /	today 翻		
9	David / live with his pa	arents / any more 🏢 🛛		
10	what / you / do / in m	/ room 🏢		
00	omplete the text wit	h verbs from the boxe	5.	

1–5: come ✓ look not wear snow walk wear

And Mrs Alexander > is coming ...... down the steps of the plane now. It is very cold and it 1..... heavily, but she 2..... very happy. She 3..... a dark blue dress with a black coat and boots, but she 4...... a hat. She really is a very beautiful woman. Her husband 5..... down the steps with her.

6-11: kiss look return say stop try

Now Mrs Alexander and her husband 6 at the crowd and smiling. The photographers
to get nearer, but the police 8 them. What a day! At last, after
wenty years, this wonderful woman 9 to her own country. Now the President
o her hand. What 11 he he to her, do you think?

# the two present tenses: the difference

IMPLE PRESENT: /	work etc		PR	ESENT PROG	RESSIVE:	'm worki	ing etc
things that are	100			things that a	240*		
things that hap			b	things that a	are happ	ening ar	ound now
repeatedly, oft	en, sometin	nes, never etc					
The sun <mark>rises</mark> in				The sun is no			
She often wears	red.			She's wearin			
l <mark>play</mark> tennis.			)	I'm playing	a lot of te	nnis thes	e days.
Put the expre	essions in t	he correct pla	ices.				
every day 🗸	iust now	nearly alway	s now 🗸	on Friday	s thes	e days	
this afterno	-	very often	when I'm		5 (1)(5)	e aays	
SIMPLE PRESEN	T. I work etc			PRESE	NT PROGI	RESSIVE	'm working etc
every day	1.1 POINCE			now		1233192.7	in working etc
Use the verb	s in the boy	to complete	the sente	nces.			•
chase 🗸 🛛 c	hase drive	e eat fly	play p	lay rain	sell	speak	work write
Cats chase	mice.	Cows	grass.	Planes			It often
		1	3	2			3
Subara	and the second sec	and and	0.00		n		201
Sar.	1	ALL ALL	AT PAR	1	Epistion .	12	
1 Contraction	will			Care Care		19	-0
L		In the second					
But this cat	ís	But this cow .		But this			But
not chasing	mice.						r
Luke	hard.	Ann	tennis.	John		English.	Bill a
4		5		6			7
	1 Star	200 Bill		/			1897
	- The	1121		(	你女子 ······		
< Hereit	- CF		2		626		
n All		Ser.	<u>San</u> inana		/4編		<i>2</i>
But		But		But	•••••		But
	today.		now.				
This shop		Carol		Simon			Dogs
books.		the piano.		poetry.			cats.
8		9		10 🔊			11
BOOKSE	OP	(FP)		Z	and a start		22.10
The second s	and the	and a second			Chill	-	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
- Kinten	N.C.	= Well	)	(Bar	and the	The set	
	2	×~)17-11-1				Seren .	
But		But she		But			But this

#### Complete the sentences with the correct verb forms. 'Do you smoke?' 'No, never' (you / smoke) 'What ... are you eating?' ........ 'A cheese sandwich' (you / eat) 1 'Where ...... these days?' 'In a garage.' (she / work) 2 '..... here in summer?' 'Not very often.' (it / rain) 3 'Bonjour'. 'Sorry, I ..... French'. (not speak) 4 'Your English ..... better.' 'Oh, thank you.' (get) 5 '...... golf?' 'Yes, but not very well.' (you / play) 6 'Who ...... to?' 'My boyfriend.' (you / write) 'Where's Suzanne?' '..... now.' (she / come) 7 8 Well, goodnight..... to bed. (1 / ao) 9 Water ..... at 100°C. (boil) 10 '.....?' 'Not yet.' (that water / boil) 11 '.....?' 'I can't see it.' (the bus / come) 12 'That man ...... all the time: 'Yes, and he .....' (talk: never listen) 13 "What's Peter's job?"...... film scripts. (he / write) 14 'Summer's coming.' 'Yes, ...... warmer.' (it / get) 15 'How often .....?' 'Every weekend.' (you / see your parents) 16 'Where's your brother?' '..... from Scotland today.' (he / come back) 17 '..... fast?' 'Yes, always. Too fast.' (John / drive) 18 'Come and have a drink,' 'Not now. I ...... a phone call.' (wait for) 19 'What .....at?' 'A very strange bird.' (vou / look) 20 'What kind of music ......' 'All kinds.' (you / like)

#### Make true sentences about yourself.

	I often Play tennís	, but .	I am not playing tennis now. ()	olay)
1	l often	, but I	now.	(play)
2	I sometimes	,	, but I	now. ( <i>wear</i> )
3	l often	, but I	now.	(speak)
4	l often	, but I	now.	(listen)
5	I sometimes		, but I	now. ( <i>read</i> )
6	l often	, but I		(watch)
7	l sometimes		, but I	now. ( <i>buy</i> )
8	l often	, but I	now.	(eat)
9	l often	, but l	l now.	(drink)
10	l never	, and	l now	. (?)

I never vote for anybody. I always vote against. (W C Fields)

I never travel without my diary. One should always have something sensational to read in the train.

(Oscar Wilde)

I never think of the future. It comes soon enough.

(Albert Einstein)

When a dog bites a man, that is not news, because it happens so often. But if a man bites a dog, that is news.

(John B Bogart, American newspaper editor)

When a woman isn't beautiful, people always say, 'You have lovely eyes, you have lovely hair'.

(Anton Chekhov)

# non-progressive verbs I don't understand.

Some verbs are most often used in simple tenses, not progressive, even if we mean 'just now'. *I like* this weather. (NOT *I'm liking this weather.*) What does he want? (NOT What is he wanting?)

#### THE MOST IMPORTANT NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS

believe, hate, hope, know, like, love, mean, need, prefer, remember, seem, think (= 'have an opinion'), understand, want

I hate this music. 'We're late.' 'I know.' I love that colour. Do you understand? What does this mean? I need some help. 'Tea?' 'I prefer juice.' Ayesha seems unhappy. Note also the expressions It doesn't matter (= 'It's not important') and I see (= 'I understand'). 'I'm sorry I'm late.' 'It doesn't matter.' 'There's a problem.' 'I see.'

#### Make sentences.

- Ayesha / seem / unhappy today Ayesha seems unhappy today.
- > you / need / help A Do you need help?
- I/know/hername I don't know her name.
- 1 what / this word / mean 🔢 .....
- 2 Rob / want / to see the doctor 🎆 .....
- 3 she / love / me ! 📰 .....
- 4 Peter / seem / tired 📰 .....
- 5 we / need / a new car 🚟 .....
- 6 you / know / that man 🔝 .....
- 7 |/ hate / this cold weather 🕎 .....
- 8 you / like / this music 📊 .....
- 9 1 / remember / her address 🔛 .....
- 10 you / understand / this letter 📓 .....

Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes.

hope like need not matter not understand prefer not remember want 🗸

- > What ...does ... Paul ... want ... for his birthday?
- 1 'Przepraszam!' 'Sorry, I ......'
- 2 'Would you like some coffee?' 'No, thank you. I ..... tea, if that's OK.'
- 3 'What do you think of this music?' 'I ..... it.'
- 4 I'm going to the shops. ..... we ..... anything?
- 5 'I've broken a cup.' 'It ......'
- 6 1 ..... it doesn't rain tomorrow.
- 7 Sorry, I ..... your name.

believe hate not know love mean see think

- 8 ..... you ..... what she told you?
- 9 1 ..... her name or address.
- 10 ..... you ..... it's going to rain?
- 11 'We've got a problem.' 'I ......'
- 12 'You're crazy!' 'What ...... you ......?'
- 13 If you ..... me, why can't we get married?
- 14 My father likes most music, but he ..... rock.

#### SOME USEFUL EXPRESSIONS WITH NON-PROGRESSIVE VERBS:

**Ihope** so. I hope not. I think so. I don't think so. It depends. I don't mind. (='It doesn't matter to me.')

Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' 'Is it going to rain?' 'I hope not.' Is that Maria over there?' 'Yes, I think so.' 'Are you free on Sunday?' 'I don't think so.' 'Can you help me?' 'It depends. What do you want me to do?' What would you like to drink?' 'I don't mind.'

Choose the best expressions to complete the conversations.

- 'Is Ingrid enjoying her holiday?' (1 hope so.) / 'I don't mind.'
- 1 'Agresti, min ruggide flochsch?' 'I don't think so.' / 'I don't understand.'
- 2 'We're not happy with your work.' 'I hope so.' / 'I see.'
- 3 'Is Jeremy coming to dinner?' 'I see.'/'I hope not.'
- 4 'Do you like this music?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 5 'Is that Olivia getting into the taxi?' 'I know.' / 'I don't think so.'
- 6 'Who wrote 'War and Peace'?' 'It depends.' / 'I don't know.'
- 7 'It's Tuesday'. 'I think so.' / 'I know.'
- 8 'Can you lend me some money?' 'It depends.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 9 'We're too early.' 'I don't know.' / 'It doesn't matter.'
- 10 'What's Phil's address?' 'I don't remember.' / 'It depends.'
- 11 'Sorry, this coffee isn't very good.' 'I don't mind.' / 'I hope so.'
- 12 'Will you pass your exam?' 'I hope so.' / 'I don't remember.'
- 13 'Is Pete in his office?' 'I don't think so.' / 'I see.'
- 14 'Is it going to rain?' 'It depends.' / 'I hope not.'
- 15 'Can you help me?' 'I think so.' / 'I don't remember.'

#### Write personal answers.

- Will everybody in the world speak English one day? I think so. / I don't think so. / I hope so. / I hope not. / I don't mind. / I don't know.
- 1 Is your English getting better?
- 2 Will you be rich and famous one day? .....
- 3 What were you doing at 8.00 in the morning on February 16th last year?

.....

- 4 How many stars are there in the sky?
- 5 Will it rain tomorrow? .....
- 6 Have you got a good government? .....
- 7 Will you live to be 100 years old? .....
- 8 Are there people on other planets? .....
- 9 Are you a nice person? .....
- 10 Will you fall in love next week? .....

WHAT YOU SAY	WHAT THEY SAY	WHAT THEY MEAN
Do you mind if I sit here?'	'No, please do.'	'Go away.'
I'm sorry I spilt coffee on you.'	'lt doesn't matter at all.'	'You clumsy fool.'
Can you do something for me?'	'lt depends.What is it?'	'Certainly not.'
What shall I sing?'	ʻl don't mind.Anything.'	'Don't sing.'
Do you see what I mean?'	'Yes.'	'No.'
Shall I wear the blue dress or the green one? Which do you prefer?'	ʻl don't mind.They're both beautiful.'	'A dress is a dress. What's the difference?'
'You don't seem to like the food.'	'Oh, I do. It's delicious.'	'I hate it.'
'I need to be alone.'	'I see.'	'I don't see.'

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *l am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# present tenses: more practice

# Question words. Choose words from the box to complete the questions.

	how how many how much	what what time	when	where	why	
1	do you want for Christma				usually get	
2	does the holiday start?	6		rice do	you want?	
3	does your sister live?	7		do you	need to lea	arn English?
	tickets do you need?	8		do you	make scra	mbled eggs?
Si	mple present. Choose the correc	t verbs to make si	mple pre	esent sen	tences.	
2	1 (hamburgars (##) (like drink play)	1 like hamburg	ers.			
	Hanny (Franch (FFH) (make speak we	Does Henry	Speak F	rench?		
	the buses / on Sundays ( ) (speak, p	play, run) The bus	es don't	nun on	Sundays	
1	what language / Brazilians () (run,	work, speak)				
2	Felix / fast cars ()) (sing, catch, drive	)				
3	Annemarie / newspapers (IIII) (make,	, read, clean)				
4	my two brothers both / in London (	(play, speak, work)				
5	dogs / vegetables (IIII) (walk, eat, pas	ss)				
6	Maria / the piano ()) (play, make, co					
7	Peter / at weekends (E)'(work, wear,					
8	my husband / very well ([[]]) (want, c					
9	Roger / to work with animals (					
	this bus / to Belfast () (work, speak					
D	resent progressive. Write true se	ntences to say wh	at is (no	t) happer	ning now.	
	I/work				2	
1	I/ wear red socks I'm					
2	it / rain					
	I / listen to music					
	I/ sit on the beach					
5	I / sing I / think about something beautiful					
6						
	I / wait for a phone call					
8	the sun / shine					
9	the government / make everybody					
10	my English / get better					
	rogressive and non-progressive					
•	Are you liking this weather?				e wrong	
>	l'm working today				Competence of the second s	brother
1	You're driving too fast	7	Sorry, l'i	n not und	erstanding	
2	What is this word meaning?			2007		orning
3	I'm not wanting a drink just now	9	'l can't p	bay you to	day.' 'l see.'	
4	Where are you living now?	10	What ar	e you thin	king about	?

#### S Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.

get up go have like like live look after not like not want work work 🗸

cry do love not know not want not work read sit you think want

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: clothes. Use the words in the box to say what the people are (not) wearing. Use a dictionary if necessary.



John is wearing a white shirt, a blue sweater, a blue jacket, grey trousers with a blue belt. blue socks and black shoes. He is not wearing glasses.
Cathy is wearing
Sandra
David

Internet exercise. Use the internet to get information about a well-known person. Write some of the information (simple present sentences). Some of these words might be useful.

		hate	like	live	work	play	travel	often	always	never	
	-	1.17 (V5 (V5))	A1388841/1	State State	10/16/20/2020		Contrast Contrast				

# present tenses: revision test

W WI	rite the simple present <i>he/she/it</i> forms.		
			enjoy fly
-	ve hope know live		
	ay stand teach think		
	ear wish work		
	rite the <i>-ing</i> forms.		
	II		
	rget get happen ho		
loc	ok make open play	• • • • •	send sit
sle	eep stop take		
-57h.			
PL	It the words in order to make simple present se	nte	nces.
	Phil / dogs / like (III) . Phil Likes dogs.		
	know / you / Anna (#) Do you know Anna?	~~	
•	open on Sundays / the post office (#) The post of	TICI	e abesh t open on Sunarys.
1	work / you / London ())		
2	pop music/ like / l ( )		
3	where / live / James (III)		
4	coffee / some / want / you (ﷺ)		
5	rain / here / it / a lot (###)		
6	I / my / every week / wash / car (###)		
7	Spanish / Luke / speak (ﷺ)		
8	friends / football / play / all your (監測)		
9	a suit / wear / to the office / I (5)		
10	make / spaghetti carbonara / how / you (🏢) 🌼		
PI	ut the words in order to make present progressi	ive	sentences.
1	sister / my / in Spain / travel (##)		
2	happy / Alice / look / very (ﷺ)		
3	the baby / why / cry (III)		
4	for the bus / wait / you (E)		
5	much tennis / I / these days / play (III)		
6	nice / Tim/ wear / a / very / raincoat ( )		
7	me / talk / you / about / ([])		
9			
10			
-			
(引) C	orrect (✓) or not (४)?		
1	'Where's Melissa?' 'She's coming now.'		I'm seeing the doctor this morning
2	'Are you smoking?' 'No, never.'		'l can't pay you today.' 'l see.'
3	John cooks dinner just now		Where are you living now?
4	I work late most Tuesdays		What do you think about?
5	Why is she looking at me?		I think you're wrong
6	I'm going skiing every winter	14	That man is looking like your brother
7	You're driving too fast	15	'Your English gets better.' 'Oh, thank you.'
8	What is this word meaning?		

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# **SECTION 3** talking about the future

# grammar summary

There are three common ways to talk about the future in English:

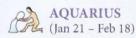
- with the going to structure. I'm really going to stop smoking.
- with the present progressive. I'm seeing John this evening.
- with will.

Anna will be in the office from 10.00 till 2.00

We use going to or the present progressive especially when the future has some present reality: for example to talk about plans that we have already made.

We can sometimes use the simple present to talk about the future. Her train arrives at 15.37. I'll phone you when I get home. I'll see you tomorrow if I have time.

# Your horoscope for next week



Wednesday will bring money, but the money will bring problems.



It will be a difficult week. Don't travel by train.



(Mar 21 – Apr 20)

Some very strange things will happen on Tuesday. Try to laugh about them.

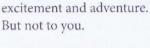


The week will be full of

danger. Stay away from children and animals.

**GEMINI** (May 22 - June 21) Your family will cause problems on Monday. And on Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, ...

CANCER (June 22 – July 22) The week will bring love,





(July 23 - Aug 23)

Stay in bed on Thursday. Don't open the door. Don't answer the phone.



VIRGO (Aug 24 - Sept 23)

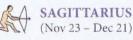
You will meet an exciting stranger. Don't believe anything that he says.

LIBRA (Sept 24 - Oct 23)

You will spend most of the week in hospital. Good luck.

Chice SCORPIO mce (Oct 24 - Nov 22)

The week will be bad in many ways. But not as bad as the following week.



You will make an unexpected journey. It will end badly.

> CAPRICORN (Dec 22 - Jan 20)

Trouble will come from a horse and a washing machine.

# going to Look – it's going to rain.

l am going to drive	you are going to drive	he/she is going to drive etc
am I going to drive?	are you going to drive?	is he/she going to drive? etc
I am not going to drive	you are not going to drive et	C C
For contractions (I'm, area	n't etc), see pages 2 and 315.	
often une poine te urben ur	a cap too the future in the present	– when a future situation is <b>starting</b> ,
clearly on the way.	e can see the future in the present	- when a future situation is starting,
cically on the hay.	(A)	
Look - it's go	ina to rain.	Rebecca's going to have a baby next month
	*****	
Look at the pictures. Wh	at is going to happen? Use the	words in the box.
► She isgoing to post	a letter.	break the window
1 The woman		crash
2 He		drink coffee
3 She		have breakfast
4 The cars		play the piano
5 He		post a letter 🗸
6 The ball		read a letter
	and it	n'i
1	80,3 m 2	3
TERMENT	A GAR	His Internet
E iz	L'Entre la	1 Starter
101	ter a	A TIL
E	TTT7	
4	5 5 6	
= = = = = = = =	a alley P	TTT 7

We often use *going to* to talk about intentions – things that people have decided (not) to do. What are you going to wear this evening? I'm not going to take a holiday this year.

Make questions with going to.

- > you / cook supper . Are you going to cook supper?
- 1 Jane / change her school
- 2 where / you / put that picture .....
- 3 what / you / buy for Felix's birthday .....
- 4 Ethan / play football / tomorrow
- 5 when / you / stop smoking .....
- 6 Alice / go to university
- 7 you / phone the police
- 8 your mother / come and stay with us .....
- 9 she / buy that coat .....
- 10 what / you / tell the boss .....

# Lindsay is talking about her holiday next week. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.

	do any work drive to Italy 🗸 fly 🗸 learn son stay in a nice hotel swim a lot take photos	
	No, I'm not going to fly. I'm going to drive to Italy.	4
1		б
2		7
3		8



	Make sentences with going to.
	Andy / start school / next week Andy is going to start school next week.
	you / see the dentist # Are you going to see the dentist?
	I / work this evening in I'm not going to work this evening.
	1 how / you / get to London 🇱
	2 when / Monica / come and see us
	3 it / snow 🏢
	4 1 / cook fish / for lunch 🇱
	5 when / you / see the doctor 🏭
	6 Angela / marry / her secretary 🇱
	7 John / call / this evening 🏭
	8  / stop / playing poker 🎬
	9 everybody / watch the football match 🏢
1	10 Sally / get the job 🇱

#### Write some sentences about your intentions. Use I'm (not) going to ...

1	I'm this evening.
2	tomorrow.
3	next year.
4	when I'm old.
5	one day.

NOTE: In informal speech (and songs), we often say gonna for going to.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.



# present progressive What are you doing this evening?

	l am working	you <b>are</b> working	he/she/it <b>is</b> working	we/they <b>are</b> working
	am I working?	<b>are</b> you working?	<b>is</b> he/she/it working?	<b>are</b> we/they working?
關	l am not working	you are not working	he/she/it is not working	

We can use the **present progressive** with a **future meaning**, especially when we talk about **plans for** a **fixed time and/or place**.

'What **are** you **doing** this evening?' 'I'**m staying** in.' Where **are** you **going** on holiday? Joe's **coming** to the theatre with us tomorrow. I'**m starting** a new job next week.

N (	lake sentences with the present progressive.		
•	when / you / come back #	ing back?	
	I/go/there again I'm not going there aga	ín.	
1	I / play / baseball tomorrow 🚟		
2			
3	1175		
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
	Gary / marry Cathy / after all ##		
10	Gary / many Carry / arter an and the control of the		
🕮 L	ook at Harry's diary and correct the sentences.		
10.00	He's staying in Berlin on Friday night.	Sunday	
	No, he's coming back to England on Friday		•
1	He's seeing John Parker on Sunday afternoon.	Monday	€
	ý , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	to Birmingham (1.15 train)	•
2	He's going to the Birmingham office by car.	Tuesday	
	·····	lunch Stewart 1.00	
3	He's having dinner with Stewart on Tuesday.	Wednesday	
		theatre with Ann and Joe	
4	He's going to the theatre on Thursday evening.	Thursday	
	The signing to the meane on marsay evening.	new secretary starting	
5	His new secretary is starting on Friday.	Friday	•
	This new secretary is starting on mady.	to Berlín LH014 8.00; 	ŧ
6	Phil and Monica are going to his wedding on Saturda		•
C	Fini and Monica are going to his wedding on Saturda		
		The area monitors weaking	
(1) I	A friend of yours is going on holiday soon. Write		
fib.	when / leave	5 stay / with friends	
	take / your sister Are you taking your sister?	6 how / travel	
1	where / go	7 take / the dog	
	why/go there	8 who/go with you	
	bow long / stav	9 when / come back	

4 stay / in one place .....

# will: predicting I think it will rain tomorrow.

2	will I/you/he etc work?
	l/you/he etc will not work
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't (= will not)
We	use will + infinitive to predict – to say things that we think, guess or know about the future.
Ithi	nk it <b>will snow</b> tomorrow. Be quick, or you' <b>ll miss</b> your train.
Bello	a won't be here this evening. When will you know your exam results?
O F	Put the words in the correct order to make affirmative (ﷺ) sentences.
,	here George be will George will be here tomorrow.
	speak everybody English perhaps will Perhaps everybody will speak English in the year 2100.

I/you/he/she/it/we/they will work

- 2 be they'll home ...... soon.
- 3 examination will the difficult be
- 4 walk we'll party the to
- 5 she not speak will me to .....
- 6 your John answer questions will
- Sunday ten years old will Emily be on 7

#### Make guestions with will.

1	what time / tomorrow evening's concert / start ?
2	when / you and the family / get back / from Paris ?
3	you / be / here tomorrow ?
4	you and your mother / be / here tomorrow ?
5	where / you / be / this evening ?
6	the children / have enough money / for the journey ?

7 how soon / you know / the answer ?

#### Make negatives with won't and questions.

- ▶ 1 won't finish ..... this work today.' 'When will you finish ... it?' (finish)
- John ... wow't be here tomorrow.' '... will he be here ... on Tuesday?' (be)
- 1 'Annie ...... here at ten.' 'When ...... here?' (be)
- 2 '1 ...... time for lunch.' '..... time for a sandwich?' (have)
- 3 'You ...... a pen in there.' 'Where ..... one?' (find)
- 4 'The children ......'(go)
- 6 'Your car ...... ready today.' 'When ..... ready?' (be)
- 'I ..... the exam result today.' 'When ..... it?' (know)

NOTE: After I and we, some people say shall instead of will. The meaning is the same; will is more common in modern English.

# will: deciding, refusing, promising 1'll answer it.

We can use will when we decide or agree to do things, and when we talk about refusing (saying 'no') and promising. We don't use the simple present in these cases.

I'll phone you. (NOT I phone you.) She won't speak to me. OK, I really will stop smoking.

Things can 'refuse'.

The car won't start. This pen won't write.

We often use will at the moment when we decide something.

'That's the phone.' 'I'll answer it.' 'There's someone at the door.' 'I'll go.' (NOT 1 go.)

Put in words from the box with 'll or won't.

open tell 🧹 tell wash go to bed 🧹 help start stop go shopping do

- I'm tired. I think I.'ll go to bed.
- I don't know what he wants. He ... wow't tell us.
- 1 1 ..... the cups; can you dry them?
- 2 'Can somebody post my letters?' 'I ..... it.'
- 3 'My motorbike .....' 'No petrol?'
- 4 1 ..... Jack that we're going to be late. 5 The baby ..... crying. Can you sing to her?
- 6 'There's no food in the house.' 'I ......'
- 7 'I can't move this table.' 'I ...... you.'
- 8 'This door ......' 'It's locked.'

It's time to change your life. Look at the ideas in the box and write six promises with will or won't - the most important first.

drive too fast fall in love every week always think before I speak be nice to everybody go for a walk every day go to bed early learn another language / a musical instrument smoke study English every day talk more slowly read more relax smile at everybody (your own promise) talk to strangers think about myself too much work harder

I'll talk more slowly. 3 ..... I won't drive too fast. 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 2 .....

Look at the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then circle the best answers.

I'll think about it. I'll see. ( = 'I'll think about it.') (I'll) see you tomorrow/later. I'll tell you tomorrow/later. I'll give you a ring/call. (='I'll phone you.') '(I'll) see you.

1 'Mum, can I have an ice cream?' A 'I'll see.' B 'I'll see you.'

2 'When do you want to play tennis?' A 'I'll see you tomorrow.' B 'I'll tell you tomorrow.'

- 3 'I've got to go now.' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll think about it.'
- 4 'Would you like to come dancing with me?' A 'I'll think about it.' B 'I'll see you later.'
- 5 'Can we talk about it some more?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll give you a ring.'
- A'See you tomorrow.' B'l'll see.' 6 'Goodbye now.'
- 7 'What do you want for your birthday?' A 'See you.' B'l'll tell you later.'
- 8 'Would you like to go to Scotland with me?' A 'I'll see you.' B 'I'll see.'

# simple present for future Our train leaves at 8.10.

# We can use the simple present to talk about timetables, cinema/theatre programmes and dates. Our train leaves at 8.10. What time does your flight arrive? The film starts at 7.30. Put the words in order to make sentences. Leave / the flight / at 9.30 The flight leaves at 9.30.

►	the film / what time / start
	at Mill Road / this bus / stop III This bus doesn't stop at Mill Road.
1	start / the next lesson / at 2.00 🗱
	this term / on March 12th / end 🛗
3	when / finish / the concert 🏥
4	we / a lesson / next Thursday / have 🎆
5	this bus / at the post office / stop 🏢
6	at 8.00 / start / the play 🇱
7	what time / arrive / you / in Rome 🏢
8	the banks / at 3.00 tomorrow / close 🔛
9	at every station / stop / the next train 🔛
	when / start / the school holidays ? 📲

 We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when, as soon as and if.

 We'll see you before we go. (NOT ... before we will go.)
 We'll have a drink after I finish work.

 You can use my bike while I'm away.
 He'll phone you when he arrives. (NOT ... when he will arrive.)

 We'll wait until Justin gets here.
 I'll tell you if I need money.
 I'll write as soon as I get home.

#### Put in the correct verb forms: simple present or *will*-future.

۲	If itrains, we "IL have
1	I my exam. ( <i>be; pass</i> )
2	If you how, you the train. ( <i>leave; catch</i> )
3	John says he * money. (work; need)
4	1 free tomorrow evening, but I you on Friday. (not be; see)
5	Mary Work. (study; stop)
6	1 you to the station as soon as 1 my car keys. (drive; find)
7	When he a lot. (marry; change)
8	smoking if the doctor you
	that you must? ( <i>stop</i> ; <i>tell</i> )
9	If we he he
	to us? (talk; listen)
10	l vou after l back from work. ( <i>phone; aet</i> )

For more practice on this point, see pages 236 and 245.

# future: more practice

Going to. Look at the pictures. What is going to happen? Use going to with the verbs in the box.

	crash drink a glass of water get on a bus go s make coffee 🗸 play the violin sing start runnir	skiing go swimming have dinner ng write a letter
	He's going to make coffee.	6
1	He's	7
2	She's	8
3	They	9
4	The car	10
5		



Present progressive. A problem. (Use a dictionary if necessary.) Jane is seeing five people next week, one each day: her bank manager, her solicitor, her accountant, her dentist and her doctor. Who is she seeing when? Read the text in the box, fill in the table and complete the sentences.

She's seeing her bank manager before her doctor. She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday. She's seeing her dentist two days after her bank manager. She's seeing her accountant two days after her doctor.

1	She's seeing on Monday.
2	on Tuesday.
3	on Wednesday.
4	on Thursday.
5	on Friday.

Monday	
Tuesday	doctor
Wednesday	
Thursday	
Friday	

*Will*. These are sentences from real conversations. Put in forms of *will* with expressions from the box. (C: the speaker used a contraction: '*ll* or *won't*.)

change not snow start tell go to sleep soon

- 1 You make me so unhappy: I ..... crying in a moment. (C)
- 2 Do you think that all this money ..... your life?
- 3 It ..... tonight, will it, John? (C)
- 4 And they said, 'Benjamin's tired, he .....'(C)
- 5 She ..... you how to do it.

### Put the words in order, and make statements (III), questions (IIII) or negative sentences (IIII) with going to (G), the present progressive (PP), will (W) or the simple present (SP). ► (G) start work / Robert / tomorrow III Robert is going to start work tomorrow. (PP) again / invite / her / 1 // not inviting her again. SP) leave / our train / at midday Our train leaves at midday. 1 (G) stop/1/smoking 2 (PP) 1 / Andrew / tonight / see 🔛 ..... 3 (G) rain / it 🏢 4 (G) marry / Peter / his boss 5 (W) exams / his / pass / Oliver 🎬 ..... 6 (W) like/ this/you/film 75 ..... 7 (SP) arrive / the bus from London / what time 🎬 8 (PP) 1/ tomorrow / the car / use 🚟 ..... 9 (G) steak / I / cook / this evening 10 (G) how / travel / to Ireland / you 🏭 ..... 11 (W, SP) I / phone you / when / get home / I 🏥 ..... 12 (PP) you / on Saturday / work 🕮 ..... 13 (W) need / you / for the night / room / a 🏭 ..... 14 (G) write / you / to your father 15 (W) we / enough / for a good holiday / money / have 🚟 ..... 16 (W) key / find / the / I / where ## 17 (W, SP) you / to university / after / leave school / you / go 🏭 ..... 18 (PP) stay with us / next week / John and Sylvia 🏭 ..... 19 (G) you / when / have a haircut 🔢 ..... 20 (G) get up / soon / you 🔢 .....

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: giving directions with *will*. Complete the letter. Put 'll with the verbs and put in the words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

apple trees bridge door house key old house the road 🗸 great time

Dear Pamela and Simon

To find the house: when you get to Llanbrig, drive through the town and take 🕨the road for
Caernarvon. After about 6 km, you (pass) an 1 on the left. Immediately after
that, you (come to) 2 a bridge. Turn left after the 3, and very soon you (come
to) 4a crossroads. Go left again, and you (see) 5our 6
on the right in about 300m. You (recognise) 7 it because it's got a green 8 and
four 9 You (find) 10 the 11 under a mat outside the back door.
Enjoy your holiday. I'm sure you (have) 12a 13a 13
Love
Susan

#### 6 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences that begin:

1	The government will
2	The government will not
3	The Prime Minister will
4	The Prime Minister will not
5	The President will
6	The weather will

100

# future: revision test

#### Write the contracted forms.

- 1 | will .....
- 2 She will .....
- 3 It will not .....
- 4 They are going to .....

#### Correct (\scale) or not (x)?

- You eat with us this evening? .....
- I'm taking a Spanish exam on Thursday. .....
- 1 'There's somebody at the door.' 'I go.' .....
- 2 Will Anna and John be here tomorrow? .....
- 3 I promise I write again soon. .....
- 4 I'll telling you everything soon. .....

- 5 They will .....
- 6 They will not .....
- 7 She is not going to ...... OR .....
- 8 I am not going to .....
- 5 The car won't start. .....
- 6 I'm working in London next week. .....
- 7 The concert starts at 8.00 this evening. .....
- 8 Emma's going to have a baby. .....
- 9 Do you play tennis with Peter this weekend? .....
- 10 Where will be the party? .....

(	01	rrect the mistakes.
1	-	When you and Karen coming to see us?
1	6 0-	The concert will tonight
1		will need a visa to go to China?
	_	a la signaturill moves out of London next year.
		Also and Carol not are getting married after all.
	2	ll se les testes smoking
	~	Luciat ha hara tomorrow
	7	Labora you after I will get home.
	0	The exceptory will giving you all the information.
	0	What you're doing at the weekend?
	9	When will be the meeting?
1	0	when will be the theeting:
围	M	ake questions and negative sentences.
11	I VII	- I Friday ## Serena / saxophone / Saturday ##
		will Fred play the flute on Friday? Serena won c puy the support
	1	Susan's seeing Simon on Sunday. 🛛 Melanie / Martin / Monday 🔛 🛛 Tessa / Tom / Tuesday 🏢
	1	Susans seeing simon on sunday.
		Mr Andrews / Arabic / Algiers
	2	
		Mrs Roberts / Russian / Rome 🇱
	3	Charles will cook chicken for Charlotte. Derek / duck / Dorothy 🔢 🛛 Sally / spaghetti / Sam 🎬
		Lieuwy / take a boliday / Hundary ## STRVE / SUUV / SUCH and

William is going to work in West Africa. Harry / take a holiday / Hungary A Steve / study / Siberia 
 Angela is travelling to Amsterdam in August. Oliver / Oslo / October M Monica / Madagascar / May

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *Im, don't*) and forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are corre

# past tenses

# **SECTION 4** past tenses

### grammar summary

SIMPLE PAST: I worked, she worked, he didn't work etc PAST PROGRESSIVE (OR 'PAST CONTINUOUS'): I was working, she was working, he wasn't working etc

#### English has two 'past' tenses.

- We use the simple past for complete finished actions. We often use it in stories. I wrote ten letters yesterday. A man walked into a police station and asked ...
- We use the past progressive to talk about actions which were unfinished at a past time. 'What were you doing at 10.00 last night?' 'I was writing letters.'





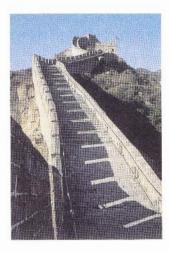
 About 6,000 years ago, somebody painted this picture on a cave wall in Namibia, south-west Africa.



Stonehenge, in southern England, is about 4,800 years old. Who built it? Nobody knows.

About 1,200 years ago, Vikings from Scandinavia made this beautiful ship.

About 2,200 years ago, Shi Huangdi completed the Great Wall of China.



# THE CAVE OF CHAUVET-PONT-D'ARC

A bout 33,000 years ago, in the Stone Age, a man or a woman drew this owl on the wall of a cave in southern France. We don't know anything about the artist, and we never will. We only know that somebody saw an owl, saw that it was beautiful, and recorded its beauty. (When Picasso first saw prehistoric cave art, he said 'We have learnt nothing.') Before the Bronze Age or the Iron Age, before the glaciers covered Europe and went away again, before all of recorded history, an unknown person left a message for us: 'I saw this creature, and I thought it was beautiful'. Thank you, Stone Age artist.

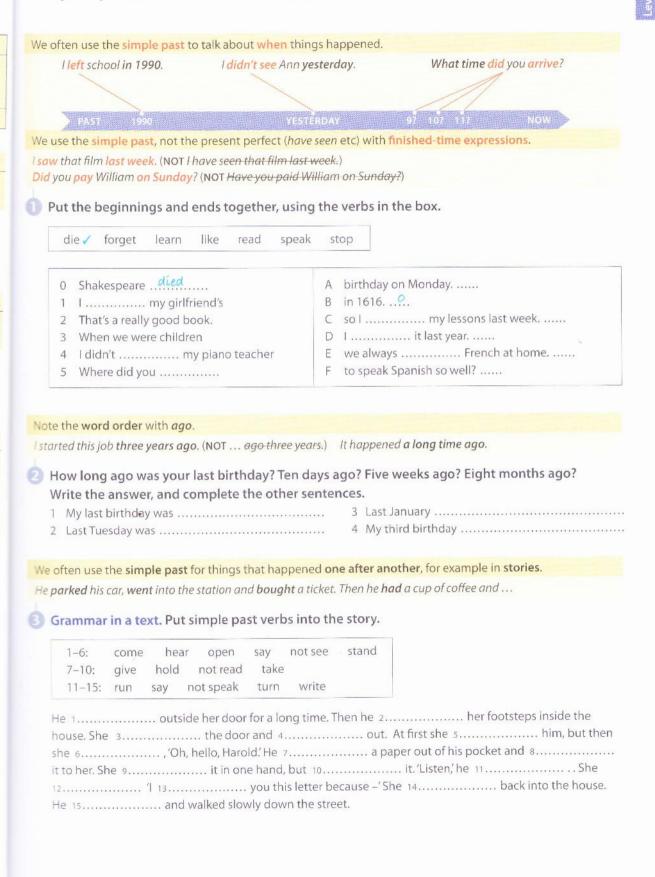


# simple past: forms I worked. I went.

Level 1

REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS
//you/he/she/it/we/they worked	I/you/he/she/it/we/they went
did l/you/he/she/it/we/they work?	did I/you/he/she/it/we/they go? I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not go
I/you/he/she/it/we/they did not work	l/you/ne/sne/n/we/they did not go
Contraction: didn't	
HOW TO MAKE REGULAR SIMPLE PAST FORMS	
Inost renot	elp helped rain rained
# after -e: + -d hope hoped like	ke — liked
Write the simple past.	
	ge cook
	shave watch
VERBS ENDING IN -Y	
vowel (a, e, o) + y	
+ consonant (d, l, r etc) + yied try	tried reply replied
White the simple past	
Write the simple past. stay study cry	annoy carry
· ·	
hurry pray	
DOUBLING (stopped, planned etc)	
one vowel + one consonant	
	stopped (NOT stoped) plan planned
* two vowels: don't double seem	wait waited (NOT waitted
🐑 two consonants: don't double 🧼 want	wanted (NOT wantted) help helped
only double in STRESSED syllables preFER	preferred BUT WONder wondered
Write the simple past.	
	rob slim
shop	fit turn
Jennip Mitteriere	VElop GALlop
	eFER
With irregular verbs, you have to learn the simple p	past forms one by one (see page 299).
go went see saw buy bough	
	you can. Check them on page 299, and learn
the ones that you don't know.	
	k bring catch
come drink eat	
get give hear	
learn leave let	
read say shut	
take tell think	write

# simple past: use I left school in 1990.



# simple past: negatives I did not work. I did not go.

I did not work you did not work he/she/it did not work we did not work they did not work Contraction: didn't We make simple past negatives (#) with *did not /didn't* + infinitive (without to). STATEMENT NEGATIVE ## He cleaned the car. *He did not clean the car.* (NOT *He did not cleaned the car.*) He did not start early. (NOT He did not starts early.) He started early. She didn't see you. (NOT She didn't saw you.) She saw you. John went to Rome. John didn't go to Rome. Circle the correct form. I break / broke a cup yesterday. 4 Alina come / came to see us at the weekend. 5 I didn't see / saw Bill at the party. Ann did not play / played tennis this morning. 1 Harry work / worked last Sunday. 7 The train did not arrive / arrives on time. 2 I didn't know / knew where I was. 8 Julita didn't like / likes / liked her teacher. 3 I didn't feel / felt well last night. weeks.

- 6 Peter didn't write / wrote to me for a long time.

. . . . . .

	M	ake simple past negative sentences.
	•	I played hockey last weekend. (football) I didn't play football.
	1	We spoke Spanish together. (Arabic)
	2	My uncle taught mathematics. (science)
	3	Bill cooked the potatoes. (the fish)
	4	I took my mother to the mountains. (my father)
	5	We told our parents everything. (the police)
	6	l wrote to my sister. ( <i>my brother</i> )
	7	l liked the party. ( <i>the music</i> )
	8	We knew her address. (phone number)
	Co	omplete the sentences with affirmative (🎬) or negative (🎬) verbs.
		I didn't break this window, but (the other one II) I broke the other one.
	•	I worked last week, but (the week before ) I didn't work the week before.
	1	He didn't change his trousers, but ( <i>his shirt</i> ﷺ)
	2	She answered the first question, but (the others 🏢)
	3	He phoned her, but (go to her house 🎆)
	4	I didn't bring any flowers, but (some chocolates #)
	5	She didn't buy a coat, but (a very nice dress 🔛)
	6	l ate the vegetables, but (the meat III)
	7	We kept the photos, but (the letters 🏢)
	8	They didn't speak English, but (German 🎆)
	9	My grandfather shaved on weekdays, but (at weekends iii)
Ð	w	rite five things that you didn't do yesterday.

#### did I work? did you work? did he/she/it work? did we work? did they work?

We make simple past questions (2) with a	did + subject +	infinitive (without to).
--	-----------------	--------------------------

STATEMENT ##	QUESTION	
He cleaned the car.	Did he clean the car? (NOT Did he cleaned the car?)	
The class went to Rome.	Where did the class go? (NOT Where did the class went?)	

#### Circle the correct form.

- I take / took my father to Spain last week.
- Did you hear / heard me?
- 1 Did Theo bring / brought his wife with him?
- 2 When did Gemma start / starts school?
- 3 I see / saw Eric in the supermarket yesterday.
- 4 The lesson begin / began very late.
- 5 How did Oliver break / broke his leg?

- 6 Why did you leave / left your job?
- 7 Did Fred speak / spoke to you about Andy?
- 8 Where did that woman keep / kept all her money?
- 9 Rolf learn / learnt English when he was young.
- 10 Sorry I forget / forgot to buy milk.
- 11 Did you come / came by train or by bus?
- 12 What did you say / said?

#### Make simple past questions.

۲	James enjoyed the food, but (the music 🇱) did he enjoy the music?
1	She listened to everything, but ( <i>remember it</i> 擺翻)
2	You didn't pay Ryan, but ( <i>the others</i> 謹韻)
3	You liked the book, but ( <i>the film </i> )
4	He played football, but ( <i>well</i> 🔛)
5	You gave them some help, but ( <i>any money</i> 📳)
6	She wrote to her sister, but (her mother 📳)
7	He learnt French, but ( <i>English</i> iii)
8	She got up early, but ( <i>early enough</i> 🔛)
9	You shut the back door, but ( <i>the front door</i> 📳)
10	They took the children with them, but ( <i>the dog</i> ﷺ)
11	She felt ill on Sunday, but ( <i>OK yesterday</i> [[]])
12	He forgot the name of his hotel, but (the address as well 📳)
	ake simple past questions with what, who and where.
•	Pete saw somebody
1	John went somewhere.
2	Bill bought something
3	Alice married somebody.
4	Mary broke something.
5	Mike stayed somewhere
6	Joe studied something.
7	Robert studied somewhere.
8	Ann wrote something.
9	Catherine heard somebody.
10	George understood something
11	Helen forgot something
12	Sarah went on holiday somewhere.

→ For questions without *did*, like Who said that? or What happened?, see pages 108–109.

#### did I work? did you work? did he/she/it work? did we work? did they work?

#### We make simple past questions () with *did* + subject + infinitive (without to).

STATEMENT THE	QUESTION E
He cleaned the car.	Did he clean the car? (NOT Did he cleaned the car?)
The class went to Rome.	Where did the class go? (NOT Where did the class went?)

#### Circle the correct form.

- I take / took my father to Spain last week.
- Did you hear / heard me?
- 1 Did Theo bring / brought his wife with him?
- 2 When did Gemma start / starts school?
- 3 | see / saw Eric in the supermarket yesterday.
- 4 The lesson begin / began very late.
- 5 How did Oliver break / broke his leg?

- 6 Why did you leave / left your job?
- 7 Did Fred speak / spoke to you about Andy?
- 8 Where did that woman keep / kept all her money?
- 9 Rolf learn / learnt English when he was young.
- 10 Sorry I forget / forgot to buy milk.
- 11 Did you come / came by train or by bus?
- 12 What did you say / said?

#### Make simple past questions.

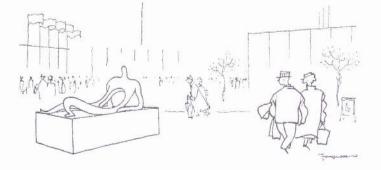
۲	James enjoyed the food, but (the music []])did he enjoy the music?
1	She listened to everything, but (remember it 🏢)
2	You didn't pay Ryan, but ( <i>the others</i> 🏭)
3	You liked the book, but (the film )
4	He played football, but ( <i>well</i> 🗐)
5	You gave them some help, but (any money 🚻)
6	She wrote to her sister, but ( <i>her mother</i> 🏭)
7	He learnt French, but ( <i>English 🏨</i> )
8	She got up early, but ( <i>early enough</i> 腳)
9	You shut the back door, but (the front door 🏥)
10	They took the children with them, but ( <i>the dog</i> 🏥)
11	She felt ill on Sunday, but ( <i>OK yesterday</i> 🏢)
12	He forgot the name of his hotel, but (the address as well )
M	ake simple past questions with what, who and where.
۲	Pete saw somebody. Who did he see?
1	John went somewhere.
2	Bill bought something
3	Alice married somebody.
4	Mary broke something
5	Mike stayed somewhere.
6	Joe studied something
7	Robert studied somewhere.
8	Ann wrote something
9	Catherine heard somebody.
10	George understood something
11	Helen forgot something.
12	Sarah went on holiday somewhere.

For questions without did, like Who said that? or What happened?, see pages 108–109.

# simple past: more practice

	REGULAR VERBS	IRREGULAR VERBS			
盟	l/you/he/she/it/we/they worked / liked	l/you/he etc went / saw			
臣祖	did I/you/he etc work / like?	did I/you/he etc go / see?			
翻	l/you/he/etc did not work / like	I/you/he etc did not go / see			
	Contraction: didn't				
C	omplete the sentences with affirmative (##	) verbs, questions () or negatives ().			
•	She didn't feel well last night, but (OK this morni	ng ##) . she felt OK this morning.			
•	'I bought a new coat yesterday.' ('shoes too	Did you buy shoes too?			
	We saw the Eiffel Tower, but (see Notre Dame				
1		f Latin 🔛 )			
2	I remembered to buy the bread, but (the milk	)			
3					
4					
5					
6	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1				
7	The second s				
8					
9					
10	I studied for the exam, but (enough III)				
N	lake simple past questions.				
•	Sarah and her baby came out of hospital. (When	) When did they come out?			
1	Ann and her brother went on holiday. (Where)				
2					
3					
4	The same of the second s				
5					
6	Mary dropped something. (What)				
7	Oliver beat somebody at tennis. (Who)				
8	George wrote to the police. (Why)				
9	Rose asked somebody to marry her. (Who)				
10	Druge lived in Ledie (11/hea)				

### Look at the picture, and complete the sentence correctly.



- A did you remember
- B did you remembered
- c do you remembered
- D did you to remember

'That reminds me, dear - ..... the sandwiches?'

# past progressive\* What were you doing at 8.00?

I was working
 was I working?
 I was not working

you were working were you working? ng you were not working he/she/it **was** working was he/she/it working? he/she/it **was not** working etc we/they were working were we/they working?

Contractions: wasn't, weren't

We make the past progressive with was/were + ...ing. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

At 8 o'clock I was waiting for a train. What were you doing?

We use the past progressive to say what was (not) happening around (before, at and perhaps after) a past time. What were you doing at 8.00? Were you watching TV?' (NOT What did you do ...) At 8.00? No, I wasn't watching TV. I was playing cards.' (NOT I played ...)

What were the people doing yesterday evening? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with words from the box. Use past progressive verbs.

cook supper	dance	drive home
not watch TV	play cards 🗸	

۶	At 9.15 Sarah was playing cards.
1	At 10.30 Fred and Alice
2	At 8.20 Keith
3	At 7.50 Mary
	At 11.00 Oliver



We make past progressive questions with was/were + subject +ing.				
STATEMENT []]:	It was raining.	You were working.	All the children were singing.	
QUESTION 2:	Was it raining?	Were you working?	What were all the children singing?	

#### Write questions.

۶	"At 10.00 I was reading! (a newspaper) Were you reading a newspaper?
۶	"When I saw Peter he was eating! (what)
1	When I went into Alesha's office, she was writing.' ( <i>letters</i> )
2	'At lunchtime Richard was shopping.' (where)
3	'At 8.30 Anna was cooking.' (what)
4	When I arrived, all the children were crying.' (why)
5	'At midnight, Liz and Jack were driving.' (to Scotland)

#### What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?

\* Also called 'past continuous'

51

PAST TENSES

# simple past or past progressive? I walked / I was walking

PAST       200       400       NOW       PAST       800       1         Simple past or past progressive?       I lived/was living in France for eight years.       Sue lived / was living in France when her uncle died.       1       At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.       2       We watched / were watching TV when Anita came in.         4       My father worked / was working hard all his life.       5       They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.         5       Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.       1       it was an icce evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.       8         8       I met Sylvie while I worked / was sudking to a policeman.       9       10         9       When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.       9         9       When I got home (the children watch TV III)      Wherk I got, where. got. Show. Where watching ?         9       When I got home (the children watch TV III)      Where I got home, the looking happy         9       (you cycle III) when you broke your III      Where I got home, the looking happy         9       (you cycle III) when you broke your III      Where I got home, the children, were watching ?         9       (you cycle IIII) when you home but (talk IIIII)       3         1       At seven oclock on Friday (we play c	loe <mark>g</mark> e	ot up at 7.00 and worked from 9.00 to 4.00. At 8.00, when Joe came home, I was reading.
PAST       200       100       PAST       8.00       1         Simple past or past progressive?       I lived / was living in France for eight years.       Sue lived / was living in France when her uncle died.         1       At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.       We watched / were watching TV all evening.         3       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.         4       My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.       My father worked / was watching TV all evening.         5       They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.       Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.         7       It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.       I met Sylvie while I worked / was studying physics.         10       When I last saw him he talked / was studying to a policeman.         Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.         >       When I got home (the children watch TV III)      When I got home the look IIII) happy		
PAST       200       400       NOW       PAST       8.00       1         Simple past or past progressive?       I lived / was living in France or eight years.       Sue lived / was living in France when her uncle died.         1       At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.       Vie watched / were watching TV all evening.         3       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.         4       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.       Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.         5       They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.       Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.         7       It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.       I met Sylvie while I worked / was studying physics.         10       When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.       Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.         >       When I got home (the children watch TV III)      When I got broke your leg       Were you where, you broke your leg?         >       When I saw ban (she look IIII) happy      When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy      When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy         2       When Mary got up (it snow IIII)      When I saw Joak (she look IIII) happy      When I saw Alice, (she walk IIII) very fast         3       When I saw		
I fived / was living in France for eight years.         Sue lived / was living in France when her uncle died.         1 At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.         2 We watched / were watching TV all evening.         3 Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.         4 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         5 Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.         6 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         7 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         8 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         9 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         9 My father worked / was working in Japan.         9 At university 1 studied / was studying physics.         10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman. <b>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</b> • When I got home (the children watch TV )	PASI	7.00 9.00 4.00 NOW PAST 8.00 N
I fived / was living in France for eight years.         Sue lived / was living in France when her uncle died.         1 At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.         2 We watched / were watching TV all evening.         3 Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.         4 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         5 Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.         6 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         7 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         8 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         9 My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.         9 My father worked / was working in Japan.         9 At university 1 studied / was studying physics.         10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman. <b>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</b> • When I got home (the children watch TV )	Si	mple past or past progressive?
<ul> <li>Sue <i>lived (was living</i>) in France when her uncle died.</li> <li>At 6.15, when you phoned, I <i>had / was having</i> a shower.</li> <li>We watched / were watching TV all evening.</li> <li>Matt watched / was watching TV all evening.</li> <li>Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was watching to the father studying at London University.</li> <li>Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>I twas a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> </ul> Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs. When I got home (the children watch TV III) where I dot home the children were watching T When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happyWhen I saw Alice, (she walk IIIII) very fast When I saw Alice, (she walk IIIII) very fast When I saw Alice, (she walk IIIII) very fast What (you do IIII) at ten o'clock yesterday evening When you heard them, (they talk about me IIII) How fast (you drive IIII) when you had the accident The doorbell rang when I (expect IIIII) anybody		
<ul> <li>We watched / were watching TV all evening.</li> <li>Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was working hard all his life.</li> <li>They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.</li> <li>Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> </ul> Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs. <ul> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV (a)) when I got home the children, were watching in Japan.</li> <li>(you cycle (a)) when you broke your leg where you cycleing when you broke your leg?</li> <li>When I saw Joan (she look (a)) happy when I saw Joan, she wasw't Looking happy.</li> <li>At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards (a))</li> <li>When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk (a))</li> <li>When I saw Alice, (she walk (a)) very fast</li> <li>When I saw Alice, (she walk (a)) very fast</li> <li>When you heard them, (they talk about me (a))</li> <li>How fast (you drive (a)) when you had the accident</li> <li>The doorbell rang when I (expect (a)) anybody</li> </ul>	•	
<ul> <li>Matt watched / was watching TV when Anita came in.</li> <li>My father worked / was working hard all his life.</li> <li>They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.</li> <li>Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>I twas a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>I met Sylvie while I worked / was studying physics.</li> <li>When I last saw him he talked / was stalking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III)</li></ul>	1	At 6.15, when you phoned, I had / was having a shower.
<ul> <li>4 My father worked / was working hard all his life.</li> <li>5 They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.</li> <li>6 Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>9 At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>&gt; When I got home (the children watch TV III) when I got home the children were watching.</li> <li>&gt; (you cycle III) when you broke your leg when I got when you broke your leg?</li> <li>&gt; When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy when I saw Joan she wasw't looking happy.</li> <li>1 At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards III)</li> <li>2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk IIII)</li> <li>3 When Mary got up (it snow IIII)</li> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (she walk IIII) very fast</li> <li>5 What (you do IIII) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (they talk about me IIII)</li> <li>7 How fast (you drive IIII) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect IIII) anybody</li> </ul>	2	We watched / were watching TV all evening.
<ul> <li>5 They got married while they studied / were studying at London University.</li> <li>6 Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>9 At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>&gt; When I got home (the children watch TV III)</li></ul>	3	
<ul> <li>6 Yesterday we drove / were driving from Oxford to Edinburgh and back.</li> <li>7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>9 At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III) When I got home the children were watching .</li> <li>(you cycle III) when you broke your leg Were You cycling when you broke your leg?</li> <li>When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy</li></ul>	4	
<ul> <li>7 It was a nice evening, so she walked / was walking home from work.</li> <li>8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV []])</li></ul>	5	
<ul> <li>8 I met Sylvie while I worked / was working in Japan.</li> <li>9 At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III) . When I got home the children were watching?</li> <li>(you cycle III) when you broke your leg . Were you cycling when you broke your leg?</li> <li>When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy . When I saw Joan she wasn't looking happy.</li> <li>1 At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards III)</li> <li>2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk IIII)</li> <li>3 When Mary got up (it snow IIII)</li> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (she walk IIII) very fast</li> <li>5 What (you do IIII) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (they talk about me IIII)</li> <li>7 How fast (you drive IIII) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect IIII) anybody</li> </ul>	-	
<ul> <li>9 At university I studied / was studying physics.</li> <li>10 When I last saw him he talked / was talking to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III) When I got home the children were watching</li> <li>(you cycle III) when you broke your leg Were you cycling when you broke your leg?</li> <li>When I saw Joan (she look IIII) happy When I saw Joan she wasn't looking happy.</li> <li>At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards III)</li> <li>2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk IIII)</li> <li>3 When Mary got up (it snow IIII)</li> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (she walk IIII) very fast</li> <li>5 What (you do IIII) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (they talk about me IIII)</li> <li>7 How fast (you drive IIII) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect IIII) anybody</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>10 When I last saw him he <i>talked / was talking</i> to a policeman.</li> <li>Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.</li> <li>When I got home (<i>the children watch TV</i> (1))</li></ul>		
Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.         When I got home (the children watch TV []])       When I got home the children were watching         (you cycle []]) when you broke your leg       Were you cycling when you broke your leg?         When I saw Joan (she look []]) happy       When I saw Joan she wasw't looking happy.         1 At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards []])         2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk []])         3 When Mary got up (it snow []])         4 When I saw Alice, (she walk []]) very fast         5 What (you do []]) at ten o'clock yesterday evening         6 When you heard them, (they talk about me []])         7 How fast (you drive []]) when you had the accident         8 The doorbell rang when I (expect []]) anybody		
<ul> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III)</li></ul>	10	when Hast saw him he <i>talked / was talking</i> to a policeman.
<ul> <li>When I got home (the children watch TV III)When I got home the children were watching (you cycle III) when you broke your leg</li></ul>	Co	omplete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
<ul> <li>When I saw Joan (<i>she look</i> iii) happy</li></ul>		
<ul> <li>At seven o'clock on Friday (we play cards )</li> <li>When I saw him he was holding the phone but (talk )</li> <li>When Mary got up (it snow )</li> <li>When I saw Alice, (she walk ) very fast</li> <li>What (you do ) ) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>When you heard them, (they talk about me )</li> <li>How fast (you drive ) when you had the accident</li> <li>The doorbell rang when I (expect ) anybody</li> </ul>	•	(you cycle iii) when you broke your leg
<ul> <li>2 When I saw him he was holding the phone but (<i>talk</i> )</li> <li>3 When Mary got up (<i>it snow</i> )</li> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (<i>she walk</i> )) very fast</li> <li>5 What (<i>you do</i> )) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i> )</li> <li>7 How fast (<i>you drive</i> )) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i> )) anybody</li> </ul>	•	When I saw Joan (she look ) happy When I saw Joan she wasn't Looking happy.
<ul> <li>When Mary got up (<i>it snow</i> )</li> <li>When I saw Alice, (<i>she walk</i> )) very fast</li> <li>What (<i>you do</i> )) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i> )</li> <li>How fast (<i>you drive</i> )) when you had the accident</li> <li>The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i> )) anybody</li> </ul>	1	At seven o'clock on Friday ( <i>we play cards</i>
<ul> <li>When Mary got up (<i>it snow</i> )</li> <li>When I saw Alice, (<i>she walk</i> )) very fast</li> <li>What (<i>you do</i> )) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i> )</li> <li>How fast (<i>you drive</i> )) when you had the accident</li> <li>The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i> )) anybody</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (<i>she walk</i> ) very fast</li> <li>5 What (<i>you do</i>) ) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i>)</li> <li>7 How fast (<i>you drive</i>) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i>) anybody</li> </ul>	2	When I saw him he was holding the phone but ( <i>talk</i>
<ul> <li>4 When I saw Alice, (<i>she walk</i> ) very fast</li> <li>5 What (<i>you do</i>) ) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i>)</li> <li>7 How fast (<i>you drive</i>) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i>) anybody</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>5 What (you do )) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (they talk about me ))</li> <li>7 How fast (you drive )) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect )) anybody</li> </ul>	3	When Mary got up ( <i>it snow</i>
<ul> <li>5 What (you do )) at ten o'clock yesterday evening</li> <li>6 When you heard them, (they talk about me ))</li> <li>7 How fast (you drive )) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect )) anybody</li> </ul>	4	When I saw Alice, (she walk 🏢) very fast
<ul> <li>6 When you heard them, (<i>they talk about me</i>)</li> <li>7 How fast (<i>you drive</i>) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i>) anybody</li> </ul>		
<ul> <li>7 How fast (<i>you drive</i> ) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (<i>expect</i> ) anybody</li> </ul>	5	What (you do 🔝) at ten o'clock yesterday evening
<ul> <li>7 How fast (you drive ) when you had the accident</li> <li>8 The doorbell rang when I (expect ) anybody</li> </ul>	6	When you heard them, ( <i>they talk about me</i>
8 The doorbell rang when I ( <i>expect</i> 臘) anybody		
8 The doorbell rang when I ( <i>expect</i> ) anybody	7	
	8	The doorbell rang when I (expect IIII) anybody
	9	
	10	I had to drive to London because the trains ( <i>run</i> ) when I left home
10 I had to drive to London because the trains ( <i>run</i> ) when I left home		***************************************

While I was having a bath,	While I was talking to my brother,		
AST	W PAST . NOW		
the phone <mark>rang</mark> .	Bill came in.		
Put simple past and past progressive	verbs in the right places.		
► While I was walking down	n the road, I		
	ewspaper, the caton to the table.		
(read; jump)			
	vhile he in Morocco. ( <i>meet; travel</i> )		
	while she ( <i>break; ski</i> )		
	nebody my car. (shop; steal)		
	ht times yesterday while I		
	ne while I home. (stop; drive)		
7 1 an interesti ( <i>hear; have</i> )	ng report on the radio while Ibreakfast.		
	again while heTV. (go; watch)		
	a glass. (wash up; break)		
	hile I in the kitchen. ( <i>cut; work</i> )		
11 When I the h	nouse I took my coat because it		
(leave; snow)			
	loor they about me. ( <i>open; talk</i> )		
	while I lunch. ( <i>ring; cook</i> )		
14 When Hastt	rom Harry he in Portugal. ( <i>hear; work</i> )		
Correct ( $\checkmark$ ) or not ( $x$ )?			
1 This morning I listened to the news before			
2 I walked up to the policeman and asked			
3 When Ann arrived I was writing letters.			
4 The cat was bringing in a mouse while I			
<ul><li>5 I didn't go out because when I looked o</li><li>6 When I went to sleep the teacher was to</li></ul>			
<ul><li>6 When I went to sleep the teacher was ta</li><li>7 The teacher was still talking about gran</li></ul>			
8 Jenny and Takashi got married while sh			
e eening and random get manned in me sh	e worked in rongor mini		
Put in words from the box, in the sim	ple past or past progressive.		
drive open pass pull run	shine 🗸 sing start turn turn wait		
drive open pass pull run shine sing start turn turn wait			
It was a beautiful morning. The sun 🕨			
people 2 in front of the palace. At 10.00, the guards 3 the Palace gates,			

9..... out in front of it and 10..... a gun from his pocket.

*g* 

•••

.

# past tenses: more practice

🚺 Sir	mple past. Make sentences.
	the train / stop / at every station The train stopped at every station.
	when / my letter / arrive III
	the doctor / remember / my name The doctor didn't remember my name.
1	what / all those people / want 🛍
2	all your brothers / send you / birthday cards 🙀
_	
3	the baby / eat / some toothpaste this morning 📰
	the teacher / answer / my question 🔛
5	I / lose / my keys again yesterday 🛗
6	anybody / phone / while I was out 🔛
7	The Prime Minister / tell / us that things were getting better
8	My friends and I / believe / the Prime Minister 🇱
~	
	Richard / give / me a birthday present III
10	What time / you / get up / today 🎼
Pa Pa	ast progressive. Complete the sentences with past progressive verbs.
1411	When I walked in (the children fight ) . the children were fighting.
	What (you do 📳) in my office when I came in
•	When I had the accident (I drive ) fast I wasn't driving
1	At 9.00 on Sunday ( <i>we watch TV</i> )
2	When I saw him he was holding a paper, but (read )
3	When you heard them, (they speak English 📳)
4	When you got home, what (the children do 📳)
5	Anna arrived when I (expect 🔛) her
6	I don't know what I (do 🏥) at 6.00 on February 18th
7	When I looked out of the window it (snow 📰) again
8	I had to drive to work because the trains (run 📖)
9	How fast (you drive 🏦) when the police caught you
10	When I saw Peter, he (stand III) and looking up at my window
alla c:	mple past and past progressive. Put in the correct verb forms.
	They
	When I out of the house I took my umbrella because it
1	This morning I the newspaper before I went out. ( <i>read</i> )
2	
4	When I into the room they
5	At 8 o'clock yesterday morning I in the sea. ( <i>swim</i> )
	I walked up to the classroom window and in The teacher
0	nobody
7	The telephone
8	This time last Friday I on the beach. ( <i>lie</i> )
9	Why you
10	When I first
10	

#### Grammar in a text. Complete the text with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.

Yesterday I > (get up)
window it 2 (rain) exactly like every other day this week.
3 (wash), 4 (get dressed)
5 (give) the cat his breakfast, and 6 (make) coffee.
7 I (not eat) anything, because I'm never hungry in the morning. Then I
8 (go) to the bus stop and 9 (wait) for the bus. It
10 ( <i>not arrive</i> ) to the office.
While   12 (walk)
with a car. When I 13 ( <i>arrive</i> )
15 everybody ( <i>talk</i> ) about the weather. The boss
16 (come in) and 17 (tell) everybody to start working, but
this 18 (not make) at my
desk and 20 ( <i>start</i> ) thinking about football.

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know all the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then try to correct the mistakes. Find the answers on the internet if necessary.

	build climb compose discover make invent paint write
	Galileo wrote 'Hamlet' Galileo discovered the moons of Jupiter.
	Shakespeare discovered the moons of Jupiter. Shakespeare wrote 'Hamlet'.
1	Mozart built the Eiffel Tower.
2	
2	
3	
4	Alfred Nobel wrote the song 'Help'.
-	
5	Sergei Eisenstein built the Taj Mahal.
6	Gustave Eiffel wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.
7	Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
8	Marie Curie first climbed Mount Everest.
9	John Lennon and Paul McCartney discovered radium.
	,
10	The novelist Jane Austen painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
In	nternet exercise. What did these people do? Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out t
ar	nswers, if necessary.
1	Alexander Fleming
2	Giuseppe Verdi
3	Rembrandt van Rijn
4	Edmund Whymper

- 5 Mary Shelley
- 6 Stephanie Kwolek .....
- 7 Christopher Wren .....
- 8 Akira Kurosawa .....

# past tenses: revision test



#### Write the simple past forms.

arrivearrived	become	begin	break	bring	
buy	change	cry	develop	feel	
go	hope	leave	like	pay	start
stay	stop	watch	write	work	

#### Oircle the correct forms.

- Why didn't you phone / phones / phoned ?
- 1 In the afternoon the rain stoped / stopped.
- 2 You never visited / visitted me in hospital.
- 3 When I arrived she was makeing / making coffee.
- 4 My mother didn't feel / felt well yesterday.
- 5 We usually speak / spoke French in my family when I was a child.
- 6 Henry didn't told / tell the police anything.
- 7 Did you like / liked the film?
- 8 I didn't saw/seen/see the accident.
- 9 John phoned / was phoning just when I went / was going out.
- 10 I played / was playing football a lot when I was at school.

#### Put in simple past or past progressive verbs.

- He .....told ..... his wife that he ...was playing... chess at midnight. (tell; play)
- 1 I ..... as a translator for two years. (work)
- 2 Jenny ...... as a translator when she ..... Roger. (work; meet)
- 3 Liz ...... her purse while she ...... (lose; shop)
- 4 We ...... John all evening. (*listen to*)
- 5 While I ..... to talk to me. (clean; stop)
- 6 | ...... my hand while | ...... (burn; cook)
- 7 Rick ...... when Emma ..... home. (read; come)
- 8 My mother ..... in Dublin all her life. (*live*)
- 9 While she ..... in Chicago she ..... ill. (study; get)
- 10 The police ..... out of the bank. (catch; run)

#### Each sentence has one or two mistakes. Correct them.

- 1 Yesterday we were driving from London to Bristol and back.
- 2 At university I was studied engineering. .....
- 3 Why you were crying when I came in? .....
- 4 I was begining to get tired, so I was going home.
- 5 We payed the bill and leaved the restaurant.
- 6 While I was shoping, somebody was stealing my bicycle.
- 7 The doorbell ringed while I was cleaning the flat.
- 8 It was a warm day, so we opening all the windows.
- 9 What time you was got up this morning? .....
- 10 I did lost my keys somewhere when I walked home this evening. .....

# perfect tenses

# SECTION 5 perfect tenses

# grammar summary

(SIMPLE) PRESENT PERFECT: I have worked, she has worked, he hasn't worked etc PRESENT PERFECT PROGRESSIVE: I have been working, he has been working etc PAST PERFECT: I had worked, she had worked etc

We use the present perfect to talk about past actions with some importance now. I've written to John, so he knows what's happening.

We use the present perfect progressive mostly to say how long things have been going on up to now. I have been writing letters since breakfast time.

When we are already talking about the past, we use the **past perfect** to talk about an **earlier time**. Yesterday I found some old letters that Kate had written to me from Germany.

Ann CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an Asia and Africa. She has also participated in expeditions to the North and South Poles and she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas.

For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.





ISABELLA LUCY BIRD (1831–1904) was a famous explorer. At a time when it was difficult for women to be independent, she travelled in the United States, Persia, Tibet, Kurdistan, China, Japan, Korea and Morocco. She wrote many books about her experiences, illustrated with her own remarkable photographs.

He's not here. He's gone to Paris.

I've made a cake. Would you like some?

I've already read it.

I've been studying English for three years.

Look what I've found!

Have you ever been to Canada?

She's been here since Monday.

Nobody was there. They had all gone home. Who's taken my coat?

I've just had a brilliant idea.

The Prime Minister has met workers' representatives. They discussed a number of questions.

I knew I'd seen her somewhere before.



# present perfect: forms I have paid. Has she forgotten?

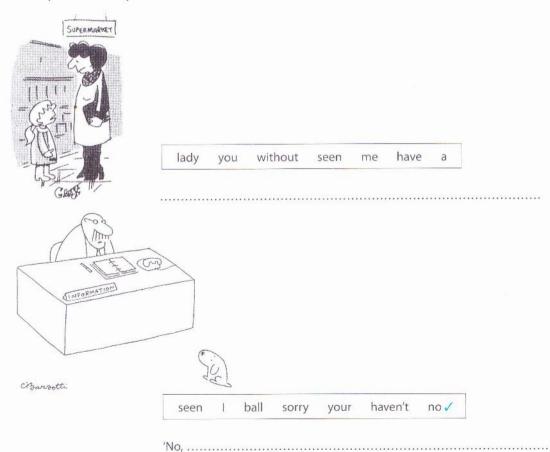
	REGULAR VERBS	AN IRREGULAR VERB
111	I have worked you have worked he/she/it has worked etc	I have seen etc
鼦	have I worked? have you worked? has he/she/it worked? etc	have   seen? etc
翻	I have not worked you have not worked etc	I have not seen etc
	For contractions (I've, he's, haven't), see page 301.	
	nake the present perfect, put have/has with the past participle (worked,	
	ular past participles end in <mark>-ed</mark> , like simple past tenses (for spelling rules,	
	k worked hope hoped stop stopped try tr	
	i irregular verbs, the past participle is often different from the simple pas have to learn the forms one by one (see page 299).	t tense.
see	seen speak spoken go gone buy bought	
1		
() V	Vrite as many of the irregular past participles as you can. Check	them on page 299,
a	nd learn the ones that you don't know.	
b	ecome become begin begin break bring	g buy
C	ome drink eat fall	forget
g	ive hear hold keep	know
le	earn leave let make	pay
p	ut read say shut	sit
S	tand take tell think	write
	Vrite affirmative (ﷺ) or negative (ﷺ) present perfect sentences.	
		••••••
	they (eat )) anything	
	she (forget in ) my address	
	ا ( <i>make</i> ) a mistake	
3		
	Alan ( <i>work</i> ) very hard	
5		
	John ( <i>learn</i> )) anything	
	l (break 🏢) a cup	
8		
9		
10	l ( <i>see</i> 🏢) a newspaper today	



'Somewhere with no irregular verbs.'

			h have/has + subject + past			
	MENT	You have paid.	The rain has stopped.	The children have gone to Dublin.		
QUES	TION :	Have you paid?	Has the rain stopped?	Where have the children gone?		
6 M	ako prosor	nt perfect question	-			
		e? Has John Left	-			
	Junit / Teav	Vachama 2 Wh	1 has Fiona aone home?			
				eys?		
1						
2						
3						
4	the dogs /	come back ?				
5	what / Bark	para tell the police ?				
6	why / Andy	/ and Sarah / bring the	children ?			
7						
8						
9						
10						
11	who / take / my coat ?					
12	where / my brother / go ?					
13						
14						
15	the postma	an / come ?				

### Look at the pictures and put the words in the correct order.



### finished actions: present perfect or simple past?

#### PRESENT PERFECT: WE THINK ABOUT THE PAST AND THE PRESENT TOGETHER When we think about the past and present together, we normally use the present perfect.

the present periect.

l**'ve written** to John, so he knows what's happening now. l**'ve made** a cake. Would you like some? Look – l**'ve bought** a new dress.

# FINISHED ACTION PRESENT PERFECT PRESENT letter (yesterday) // we written to John. John knows now. cake (this morning) // we made a cake. Would you like some? I'm offering you some now. new dress (last Tuesday) Look – I've bought a new dress. I'm showing you now.

### SIMPLE PAST: WE THINK ONLY ABOUT THE PAST, NOT THE PRESENT

When we think only about the past, we most often use the simple past.

My grandfather wrote me a lot of letters.

- (He's dead now; I'm not thinking about the present.) I made a cake for the children, but they didn't like it.
  - (I'm not talking about the present.)

I bought a new dress last Tuesday, for the party.

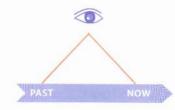
(I'm thinking only about last Tuesday.)

### Read the sentences and the questions, and circle the correct answers.

- Ann has bought a new coat. Has she got the coat now? (YES) / PERHAPS
- Grandma came to stay with us. Is Grandma with us now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 1 I made a cup of tea. Is there tea now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 2 Eric has made a cake. Is there a cake now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
- 3 Jane went to France. Is she there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 4 Marlon has gone to Scotland. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 5 Pat and Al started a business. Is the business still running? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 6 Sue has started guitar lessons. Is she taking lessons now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 7 The cat has run away. Is the cat at home now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 8 The doctor sent Bill into hospital. Is he there now? YES / DON'T KNOW
- 9 Pete lost his glasses. Has he got his glasses now? NO / DON'T KNOW
- 10 Joanna has cut all her hair off. Has she got any hair now? NO / DON'T KNOW

#### 🕑 Circle the correct verb forms.

- 1 Shakespeare never travelled / has never travelled in Africa.
- 2 When I was at school I studied / have studied Latin.
- 3 Rob lost / has lost his job, and he can't find another one.
- 4 We met / have met some very interesting people on our last holiday.
- 5 Look I bought / 've bought some new shoes.
- 6 My grandmother left / has left school at 14.
- 7 'Does your father know you're back in England?' 'Yes, I told / 've told him.
- 8 I made / 've made mushroom soup. Would you like some?
- 9 'What's Rosie's phone number?' 'Sorry, I forgot / 've forgotten.'
- 10 Who built / has built Edinburgh Castle?



# PAST NOW

What are the people saying? Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with verbs from the box. Use the present perfect.

	break ✓ break buy cut eat find give pass sell send stop			
•	'Somebodyhas broken the window.			
1	'Johnus a postcard.'			
2	'I a hat.'			
3	'l my finger.'			
4	'The rain			
5	'Look what Peter me.'			
6	'l my car.'			
7	'l too much.'			
8	'Ian earring.'			
9	'l my exam!'			
0	'l my arm.'			



#### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in the present perfect verbs.

break 🗸	change	close	find	forget	go	leave	lend	lose	see	
---------	--------	-------	------	--------	----	-------	------	------	-----	--

0	Joe. has broken his leg,	A	'Sorry. I know him, but I his name.'
1	Molly can't get into her house	В	'Yes, his girlfriend him.'
2	'He's looking unhappy.'	C	because she her keys
3	'Who's that?'	D	'No, I it.'
4	'That's a good film. Shall we go?'	E	so he can't go skiing
5	'Where's Louise?'	F	'Yes, she her hair-style'
6	'Can I borrow your bicycle?'	G	'We can't. It
7	Antona new job.	Н	'I think she to Ireland.'
8	'Shall we have lunch at the Cantina?'	1	'Sorry, I it to Maria.'
9	'Denise looks different.'	J	He's working in a bank now

#### Note the difference between gone (to) and been (to) in present perfect sentences.

'Where's John?' 'He's gone to Paris.' (He's there now.) Mary's gone swimming. She'll be back at 6.00. I've been to Italy lots of times (and come back), but I've never been to Spain.

#### Put in been or gone.

- 1 'Where's Zoe?' 'She's ..... shopping.'
- 2 Gary's ..... shopping. The fridge is full.
- 3 Have you ever ..... to the United States?
- 4 They're not here. They've all ..... out.
- 5 I haven't ..... to the cinema for weeks.
- 6 Katie's ..... to live in Greece.

We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions.
l've seen Ann. OR I saw Ann yesterday. BUT NOT <del>I've seen Ann yesterday.</del>
We use the simple past, not the present perfect, in stories (see page 47).
A man walked into a police station and said (NOT A man has walked)

### time words: present perfect or simple past?

#### We don't normally use the present perfect with finished-time expressions. We've found oil in the garden. BUT NOT We've found oil in the garden vesterday. A plane has crashed at Heathrow Airport. BUT NOT A plane has crashed at 3.15 this afternoon. Circle the words for a finished time. a few days ago always this week last week never now then today vesterday when in 1990 Correct (√) or not (x)? My father has changed his job. .... 8 Mary has written to me three weeks ago. .....

- Andy has gone to Scotland last week. .....
- 1 Look what Peter has given me yesterday! .....
- 2 I've seen a great programme last night. .....
- 3 I think everybody has arrived now. .....
- 4 When have you talked to Ann? .....
- 5 We've bought a new car in April. .....
- 6 I've met my wife when we were students. .....
- 7 Look what Peter has given me! .....

- 9 Sorry I've forgotten your name. .....
- 10 I've forgotten Mike's birthday last Tuesday. .....
- 11 Everybody has gone home at 10 o'clock. .....
- 12 There's nobody here! What has happened? .....
- 13 Sally has left school in 2006. .....
- 14 When have you arrived in London? .....
- 15 I think Mary has missed the train. .....
- 16 What have you done then? .....

We can use the **present perfect** to ask if things **have happened up to now**, or to say that they **haven't happened up to now**. This often happens with words for an **unfinished time** (for example *today*, *ever*, *never*).

Has the boss phoned today?Have you ever broken your leg?We haven't been to Scotland this year.Mary hasn't written to me this week.

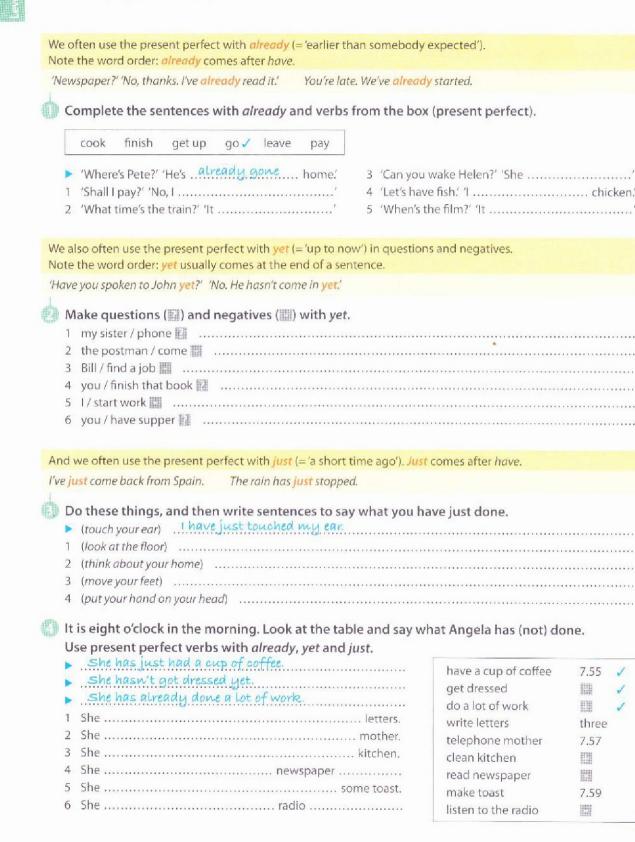
	Have you ever seen a ghost? I've never seen one.
PAST	
	ake present perfect sentences.
•	Steven / pay / for his lessons?
1	you / ever / write / a poem ?
2	
3	Charles / speak / to you / today ?
4	Clara / not / tell / me / her new address
5	you / ever / lose / your memory ?
6	We / not / play / football / this year
7	Alex / never / write to me
8	you / see Henry / this week ?
9	my father / never / drive a car
10	the cat / have / anything to eat / today ?
11	you / finish / those letters ?
12	I / not / pay / for the lessons / this month
13	Sally / have a baby
14	Lucy / not phone / today
15	Corinne / come back / from India ?
16	It / stop / raining
17	the postman / come / this morning ?
18	We / eat / everything in the house
10	the reaction of the mode

We ca	can use the <b>present perfect</b> to say <b>how often</b> things have happened <b>up to now</b> .	
That'	t's a wonderful film. I've seen it three times. Sally has only been to Ireland once.	
We've	ve often wanted to come and see you.	
	Ake present perfect sentences.         I / break / my arm / three times	
1		
1	Joe / change / his job / twice this year	
2	how often / she / ask / you for money ?	
~	now orcent she task you for money :	
3	/ often / try / to stop smoking	
4	Tom / phone / me / six times this week	
5	My father / meet / the Prime Minister / twice	
6	The police / question / Annie / more than once	
100		
/	/ only / play / rugby / once in my life	
0		
8		
9	Nobody / ever / understand / her	
,	Hobody / ever / understand / her	
10	I / never / want / to go to the moon	
PI	Present perfect or simple past? Circle the correct answers.	
1		ar.
1221		
3		
4		
5	5 Shakespeare never went / has never been to Athens. 10 When did John phone. / has John phoned?	
w 🔊	Vrite five things that you didn't do yesterday, and five things that you have never done.	
	l didn't yester	day.
3		
4		
5	i	
6		
	·	
	3	
9		
10	)	• • • • • • •
-> Fo	or the present perfect with just vet and gliegdy see page 64	

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

T I I I I

### already, yet and just



### since and for since Tuesday; for ten years

	TUESDA	YY Five been here since Tuesday	NOW
We use since when we give the beginning of the time (for example since Tuesday).   We use for when we give the length of the time (for example for three days.)   I've been here since Tuesday.   I've known Mary for a very long time.   I've had this car since April.   I've had this car since April.   I've had this car since or for.   1   1   2   Sunday   6   7   a long time   11   a day   4   3   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   5            1 I've known   1 I've known   6   1 I've known   7   1 I've known day for six months.      1 I've known day for six months.         1 I've known day for six months.   1 I've known   6   1 I've known   7   1 I've had things? Write sentences.   •	We use the present perfect, r	not the present, to say how long somethi	ng has continued <b>up to now</b> .
We use since when we give the beginning of the time (for example since Tuesday).   We use for when we give the length of the time (for example for three days.)   I've been here since Tuesday.   I've known Mary for a very long time.   I've had this car since April.   I've had this car since April.   I've had this car since or for.   1   1   2   Sunday   6   7   a long time   11   a day   4   3   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   1996   7   a long time   11   a day   4   5            1 I've known   1 I've known   6   1 I've known   7   1 I've known day for six months.      1 I've known day for six months.         1 I've known day for six months.   1 I've known   6   1 I've known   7   1 I've had things? Write sentences.   •	and the second	Concernence of the second s	
I've known Mary since 2005. I've known Mary for a very long time.   I've had this car since April. I've had this car for six months.   Put in since or for. 1   1	We use since when we give th	ne <mark>beginning</mark> of the time (for example <mark>sir</mark>	
1	I've known Mary since 2005.	I've known Mary for a very long time.	ince three days.)
2       Sunday       6       breakfast time       10       last week         3       1996       7       a long time       11       a day         4       ten years       8       five minutes       12       this morning         Phow long have you known people? Write sentences.       If we known my Emglish teacher since September.       11       this morning         1       If we known       for       for       12       this morning         3       for       for       for       for       for       for         2       If we known       for       for       for       for       for       for         3       for       for <td< th=""><th></th><th>5 vortextax</th><th>0 kulu</th></td<>		5 vortextax	0 kulu
<ul> <li>3</li> <li>4</li> <li>5</li> <li>How long have you had things? Write sentences.</li> <li>I've had these shoes for six months.</li> <li>1 I've had my</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> <li>4</li> <li>5</li> <li>Make present perfect questions with How long ?</li> <li>you / be / in this country</li> <li>How long have you been in this country?</li> <li>you / be / have / her job</li> <li>How long has Rachel had her job?</li> <li>1 you / know / Mike</li> <li>2 you / be / a student</li> <li>3 your brother / be / a doctor</li> <li>4 Andrew / have / that dog</li> </ul>	3 1996 4 ten years 3 How long have you known ▶	7a long time 8 five minutes <b>own people? Write sentences.</b> glish teacher since September. for	11 a day 12 this morning
<ul> <li>I've had these shoes for six months.</li> <li>I've had my</li></ul>	3 4 5		
<ul> <li>2</li></ul>	I've had these shoes	s for six months.	
<ul> <li>you / be / in this countryHow long have you been in this country?</li> <li>Rachel / have / her jobHow long has Rachel had her job?</li> <li>you / know / Mike</li></ul>	2 3 4		
	<ul> <li>you / be / in this count</li> <li>Rachel / have / her job</li> <li>you / know / Mike</li> <li>you / be / a student</li> <li>your brother / be / a do</li> <li>Andrew / have / that do</li> </ul>	ry How long have you been in th How long has Rachel had her job octor og	0?

Be, know and have are non-progressive verbs (see pages 30–31). With most other verbs, we use the present perfect progressive (see next page) to say how long things have continued up to now.

How long have you been waiting?

### present perfect progressive\* It's been raining since Sunday.

	I have been workingyou have been workinghe/she/it has been working etchave I been working?have you been working?has he/she/it been working? etcI have not been workingyou have not been working etc
	For contractions (l've, he's, haven't etc), see page 301.
Ve m	nake the present perfect progressive with have/has been +ing.
Ne h	ave been living here since April. John's been working in the bank for three months.
	se the <b>present perfect progressive</b> (with most verbs) to say <b>how long</b> things <mark>have been continuin</mark> g <b>5 now</b> . (For <i>be, have</i> and <i>know</i> , see page 65.)
	peen learning English for four years. It's been raining all day. A you been waiting long?
	We've been travelling for six hours.
PAS	NOW MALER
M	lake present perfect progressive sentences. Use for or since (see page 65).
	John started learning Chinese in February. Now it's July. (for) John has been learning Chinese for five months.
•	It started raining on Sunday. It's still raining. ( <i>since</i> ) It's been raining since Sunday.
1	Mary started painting the house on Monday. Now it's Friday. (for)
2	We started driving at six o'clock. Now it's ten o'clock. (for)
3	Anna started working at Smiths in January. (since)
4	Joseph started building boats when he was 20. Now he's 40. (for)
5	We started waiting for the bus at 8.30. ( <i>since</i> )
6	Prices started going up last year. ( <i>since</i> )
7	
8	My father started teaching 40 years ago. ( <i>for</i> )
9	It started snowing at midnight. Now it's midday. ( <i>for</i> )
	The team started training together in June. Now it's September. (for)
10	The team started durining together in suite. Now it's september, (b)

They'**ve been living** here since 1998. (NOT <del>They are living here since 1998.</del>) I'**ve been learning** English for three years. (NOT <del>I'm learning English for 3 years.</del>)

\* Also called 'present perfect continuous'

### 2 How long have you been learning English?

### $\bigcirc$ Correct ( $\checkmark$ ) or not (x)?

- I'm waiting for her since this morning. .....
- I've been waiting for her for four hours. ....
- 1 I have been sitting in this office since 9.00. .....
- 2 She's working here since 1998. .....
- 3 We have been driving for about six hours. .....
- 4 How long are Ann and Peter working here? .....
- 5 Sue has been talking on the phone all day. .....
- 6 How long are you learning English? .....
- 7 My brother's living in Glasgow since March. .....
- 8 That man has been standing outside all day. .....
- 9 I'm only playing the piano since Christmas. .....
- 10 Have you been waiting long? .....

Look at the pictures and say what the people have been doing. Use the verbs in the box (present perfect progressive).

	play	play	swim	teach	travel 🗸	write
•	She	has be	en travi	elling.		
1						.the piano
2						.football.
3						
4						.letters.
5						
2						













### past perfect It had already begun when we arrived.

	I had seen	you <b>had</b> seen	he/she/it had seen etc		
囿	had I seen?	had you seen?	had he/she/it seen? etc		
Ш	I had not seen	you had not seen	he/she/it had not seen etc		
	Contractions: I'd, you'd etc; hadn't				

To make the past perfect, put had with the past part	iciple (worked, seen, lost etc).
She didn't phone Alan because she <b>'d lost</b> his number.	It was a film that I <b>hadn't seen</b> before.
Make past perfect sentences.	

- 1 The woman told me that she ..... in China a few years before. (work 📳
- 3 The bathroom was full of water. What ......(happen 🔝
- 4 I knew I ..... that man somewhere before. (see 📳
- 5 We were surprised to see Mark, because we ..... his letter. (get 📄
- 7 They gave me some money back because I ...... too much. (pay 📳
- 8 There was nothing in the fridge. I could see that Peter ..... the shopping. (do ##)

### We use the **past perfect** when we are already talking about the **past**, and want to talk about an earlier **past** time.

Our train was late, and we ran to the cinema. But the film had already begun.

#### EARLIER PAST

I got out of the car and went into the school. It was empty. Everybody had gone home. I was glad that I had caught the early bus. Anna wondered if anyone had told Jim. We couldn't understand why Sue hadn't locked the door.

### 0

### Gircle the correct answers.

- I (didn't recognise) / hadn't recognised Helen, because she cut / had cut) her hair very short.
- 1 No one understood / had understood how the cat got / had got into the car.
- 2 Joe didn't play / hadn't played in the game on Saturday because he hurt / had hurt his arm.
- 3 When I looked / had looked in all my pockets for my keys, I started / had started to get very worried.
- 4 Liz never travelled / had never travelled by train before she went / had gone to Europe.
- 5 I arrived / had arrived at the shop at 5.30, but it already closed / had already closed.
- 6 I didn't have / hadn't had much money after I paid / had paid all my bills last week.

### Put in the simple past or the past perfect.

- Bill ........ into the house. (not tell; get)
- 1 When their mother ...... home, the children ...... all the sweets. (get; eat)
- 2 Yesterday I ..... a man who ..... at school with my grandmother. (meet; be)
- 3 It ..... to rain, and I ..... that I ..... my window. (start; remember; not close)
- 5 | ..... Bob I couldn't go to the theatre, but he ..... the tickets. (*already tell; buy*)

We use the past perfect after when to show that something was completely finished.

When I had watered all the flowers, I sat down and had a cool drink. When Susan had done her shopping, she went to visit her sister.

#### Make sentences using the past perfect after when.

- Jan finished her dinner. Then she sat down to watch TV. When Jan had finished her dinner, she sat down to watch TV.
- David phoned his girlfriend. Before that he did his piano practice. David phoned his girlfriend when he had done his piano practice.
- 1 George ate all the chocolate biscuits. Then he started eating the lemon ones.

2 | turned off the lights in the office. Then I locked the door and left.

.....

3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper. Before that she read it.

4 Mark had a long hot shower. Before that he did his exercises.

5 Barry phoned his mother with the good news. Then he went to bed.

.....

### Nothing had changed

When I went back to my old school nothing had changed.

Well, OK, the place had closed down.

Doors stood wide, windows had lost their glass, ceilings had fallen. Travellers had camped in the dining-room, and left their names on the walls.

Wind blew through the rooms where I had sat for so long and learnt so little. Rubbish piled up in the corners.

But nothing important had changed.

→ For the past perfect in indirect speech, see page 265.

## perfect tenses: more practice

	erb forms. Make questions or negative sentences.
	She has finished the book.
	The rain has stopped. Has the rain stopped?
1	All those people have gone home. 🗱
2	Peter has told us everything.
3	The postman has been.
	Pat has spoken to Robert.
4	
5	Tim and Angela have bought a house.
6	Emma's boyfriend has forgotten her birthday. 🔢
7	Monica has been working in London all this week. 📰
8	I've phoned Joseph. 🧱
9	Robert and Sally have moved to Ireland. 🔢
10	We've been working all day. 🏭
🚇 Pi	resent perfect or simple past? Somebody has just said these sentences.
C	hoose the best answers.
•	'Harry has found a new girlfriend.' Has he still got this girlfriend? YES/PERHAPS
	'Then a cat came into the house.' Is the cat in the house now? YES (PROBABLY NOT)
1	'I've made coffee.' Is there coffee now? YES / PROBABLY NOT
2	
3	
4	'Jill and Bob opened a driving school.' Is the school running now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
5	
6	'Alan has gone to America.' Is he there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
7	'We had a good time in Bulgaria.' Are they there now? YES / NO
8	'July has been a good month for business.' Is it still July? YES / NO
	'Tony and Maria went to China.' Are they there now? YES / WE DON'T KNOW
10	'Polly has just bought a new coat.' Has she got the coat now? YES / PERHAPS
Q	uestion formation. Make questions (simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive).
•	The letter arrived. (when)
•	Somebody has told her. (who)
	Everybody has already gone home. ( <i>why</i> )
	Anna's been learning Chinese. (how long)
3	
4	Sue and Jeanne have gone on holiday. (where)
1	Sue une seame nove gone on nonauly. (mere)
5	
5	
6	
-	
7	5 11 2 3
8	
9	
10	Somebody has taken my bicycle. ( <i>who</i> )

#### Simple past or past perfect? Complete the sentences.

- 1 When I ...... him, I ..... that I ..... him before. (see; know; meet)
- 2 He ..... enough money for food because he ..... so many clothes. (not have; buy)
- 3 The meeting ...... when I ...... (already start; arrive)
- 4 The car ..... down because I ..... to put oil in. (break; forget)
- 5 1 ..... Mary for the first time thirty years ago. (meet)
- 6 After our conversation I ..... everything that she ..... (forget; say)
- 7 The house was empty. Everybody ..... out. (go)
- 8 When he ..... work he .... out for a walk. (finish; go)
- 9 When I looked in the fridge, I ..... some cheese that I ..... six weeks before. (find; buy)
- 10 He ..... his keys in the door, and then realised that he ..... his keys in the house. (*close*; *leave*)

### 🕑 Grammar in a text. Put in the correct forms of the verbs.

not be 🗸 happen have lose not pass spend

be buy change open pass

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: housework. Put simple past verbs into the story. Use a dictionary if necessary.

### Now put present perfect verbs into the conversation.

 SISTERS:
 Well, Cinderella, have you done everything?

 10
 the floors? 11
 the beds?

 12
 the furniture? 13
 the clothes? And 14

 the dishes?
 And 16
 them? 15

 17
 all the rooms?
 them away?

 17
 all the rooms?
 This many the prince. Goodbye!



Internet exercise. Read the two texts on page 57. Then use the internet to find out information about two other people (one living, one dead), and write a few sentences about their lives. Be careful to use the simple past or the present perfect correctly.

pronunciation for grammar

### perfect tenses: revision test

### Put in the past participles.

gogone	break	bring	come	drink	eat
forget	give	leave	make	stand	stay
stop	take	think	try		

5 Who has ..... my coffee? (drink)

7 John ..... off his bicycle yesterday. (fall)

8 I'm sorry, I've ...... your name. (*forget*)9 I've ..... my address to the police. (*give*)

10 Somebody has ..... my umbrella. (take)

#### Complete the sentences with simple past verbs or past participles.

- I ... wrote ... to my brother yesterday. (write)
- I haven't ..... to my sister for a long time. (write) 6 We ..... too much last night. (eat)
- 1 The lessons ..... last week. (begin)
- 2 You've ..... three cups today. (break)
- 3 Why have you ..... home early? (come)
- 4 We ..... what they wanted. (know)

#### Circle the correct forms.

- Jenny slept / has slept very badly last night.
- 1 We know / We've known / We've been knowing John and Andy for / since years.
- 2 I work / I'm working / I've been working here since last summer.
- 3 'Mary went / has gone to London.' 'When did she leave? / has she left?'
- 4 Our football team *already has lost / has already lost* ten games this year. It *lost / has lost* all its games last year too.
- 5 Did you ever drive / Have you ever driven a bus?
- 6 My brother speaks good English, but he has never had / never had lessons.
- 7 Did you see / Have you seen Paul yet?
- 8 | started / have started this job for eight weeks / eight weeks ago / ago eight weeks.
- 9 I'm / I've been in this school for / since five years.
- 10 How long do you know / have you known Rebecca?

#### Complete the sentences with the simple past, present perfect or present perfect progressive.

- I have bought tickets for the match. Do you want to come with me? (buy)

- 1 When ..... Mike ..... his new watch? (lose)
- 2 That child ..... chocolate all day. (*eat*)
- 3 Andrew isn't here today he ..... an accident. (just have)
- 4 It ..... non-stop since Sunday. (snow)
- 5 1..... mathematics from 1996 to 1998. (study)
- 6 'You're looking happy.' 'Yes, I ..... my exam.' (just pass)
- 7 How long ...... Emma? (know)
- 8 .....a poem? (write)
- 9 The company ...... a lot of money last year. (lose)
- 10 'Do you like the book I gave you?' 'I ..... it yet.' (not start)

### SECTION 6 modal verbs

### grammar summary

MODAL VERBS: can, could	may, might	shall, should	will, would	must	ought to
PAST AND FUTURE OF MODALS:	be able to	have to			

The **modal verbs** are a special group of **auxiliary verbs**. We use them **before other verbs** to express certain meanings – for example **permission**, **ability**, **possibility**, **certainty**.

Modals have **different grammar** from other verbs. For example, they have **no** -**s** on the third person singular: we say *he can*, NOT *he cans*.

*Have to, be able to and used to* are similar to modals in some ways, and they are included in this section. For *will*, see pages 39–40.



If you can't live without me, why aren't you dead yet?

(Unknown)

### Letters to a magazine

Should I give up smoking? Should I marry Bob? Should I move to Woking? Should I change my job? Should I dye my hair green? Should I dye my hair green? Should I tell his wife? Should I ask a magazine How to live my life?

(Lewis Mancha)

There are three kinds of people: those who can count, and those who can't. (George Carlin)

Money can't buy you love.

(Traditional)

### modal verbs: introduction can, must, should etc

e <b>modal verbs</b> are a special gro ey are <b>different</b> from most othe		
	er verbs <mark>in four ways</mark> .	
NFINITIVES WITHOUT TO		
ter modals (except ought), we u	use infinitives without	t to. (After other verbs, infinitives have to.)
<b>an I use</b> your phone? (NOT <del>Can I to</del> JT I want to use her phone. I'd		t <mark>swim.</mark> I <b>may be</b> out tonight. Joe <b>seems to have</b> a cold.
Circle the correct answers.		
<ul> <li>Can you play/ to play the gu</li> <li>I don't want play / to play fo</li> <li>Ann seems be / to be very the</li> <li>Peter hasn't phoned. He mutation</li> </ul>	ootball today. ired.	<ul> <li>3 Could you pass / to pass the orange juice?</li> <li>4 We hope get / to get a bigger flat soon.</li> <li>5 Chris may be / to be here at the weekend.</li> <li>6 I forgot speak / to speak to Janet.</li> </ul>
D-S	10	•
hn <b>can</b> speak Korean. (NOT <del>John</del>		e/she/it form). ( <b>Other</b> verbs have -s.) may be late. This must be your coat.
3 She must pay now. 4	Harry work in Lo	Our cat like fish. 2 It may rain. ondon. 5 Kim should phone her mother. come and see us. 8 Tom want to go home.
O DO	and pogatives (III) wit	thout do. (Other verbs have do.)
	ind negatives (mil) with	
e make <b>modal questions</b> ([[]) a	n help me?) You mi	<mark>ust not</mark> tell Philip. (NOT <del>You don't mus</del> t) ook very well.
le make <b>modal questions</b> () a an you help me? (NOT <del>Do you can</del> UT <b>Do</b> you <b>know</b> my friend Jerem,	n help me?) You <mark>mu</mark> ny? Sally <mark>doesn't co</mark>	
e make modal questions (III) a an you help me? (NOT <del>Do you can</del> UT Do you know my friend Jerem, Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercise)	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). e: cannot/can't; must	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not)
e make modal questions (III) a an you help me? (NOT <del>Do you can</del> UT Do you know my friend Jerem, Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercises	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (ﷺ). :: cannot/can't; must (Chinese ﷺ)Caw.s	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak Chinese?
e make modal questions (III) a an you help me? (NOT <del>Do you can</del> UT Do you know my friend Jerem, Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercises	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (ﷺ). :: cannot/can't; must (Chinese ﷺ)Caw.s	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak Chinese?
<ul> <li>We make modal questions (III) a can you help me? (NOT Do you can UT Do you know my friend Jerem)</li> <li>Make questions (IIII) or negotives in this exercises</li> <li>Claire can't speak Russian. (III)</li> <li>Katy must wash her clothes</li> </ul>	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (ﷺ). c: cannot/can't; must (Chinese ﷺ)	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not)
<ul> <li>de make modal questions (III) a can you help me? (NOT Do you can UT Do you know my friend Jerem)</li> <li>Make questions (III) or neg (Negatives in this exercises</li> <li>Claire can't speak Russian. (</li> <li>Katy must wash her clothes</li> <li>Mike can't swim. (ski III) .</li> <li>John can play football. (pol</li> </ul>	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). cannot/can't; must (Chinese )	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak. Chinese? he mustn't do it now.
<ul> <li>de make modal questions (III) a constraint of the second second</li></ul>	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). c: cannot/can't; must (Chinese )	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak Chinese? he mustn't do it now.
<ul> <li>de make modal questions (III) a can you help me? (NOT Do you can UT Do you know my friend Jerem)</li> <li>Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercises</li> <li>Claire can't speak Russian. (III)</li> <li>Katy must wash her clothes</li> <li>Mike can't swim. (ski III)</li> <li>John can play football. (pok 3 Maria must play the piano.</li> <li>Robert may go to Italy. (go</li> </ul>	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). c cannot/can't; must (Chinese )	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak Chinese? he mustn't do it now.
<ul> <li>de make modal questions (III) a can you help me? (NOT Do you can UT Do you know my friend Jerem)</li> <li>Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercises</li> <li>Claire can't speak Russian. (III)</li> <li>Katy must wash her clothes</li> <li>Mike can't swim. (ski III)</li> <li>John can play football. (pok 3 Maria must play the piano.</li> <li>Robert may go to Italy. (go</li> </ul>	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). c cannot/can't; must (Chinese )	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not) she speak Chínese? he mustn't do ít now.
e make modal questions (III) a an you help me? (NOT <del>Do you can</del> JT Do you know my friend Jerem Make questions (IIII) or neg (Negatives in this exercise)	n help me?) You mu ny? Sally doesn't co gatives (). e: cannot/can't; must	ook very well. t not/mustn't; may not)

Instead, we use other verbs: can — be able to (see page 81); must — have to (see page 78).

### must You must be home by eleven. Must you go?

	e√ go	e sentences wit		ор	study	write	
						write	
		must be		eleve	n. 4		E: You the tax now.
		u			5		Your daughter harder
		••••••					politely on the phon
5 0	OCTOR: TO	u	smoking	].	7	MOTHER: I	hat child to bed now
Put	the begin	nnings and end	ls together.	Add	must a	and verbs	from the box.
1		3	3				
g	et up gi	ve go go	have pł	none	read	🗸 see	
							4 
0	Smith's la	itest book is her l	hest Lthink	А	1		her tonight
1		heard from Anni		B			d it. Shall I lend it to you?
2		ny handbag in th					e it; youa piece
3		is delicious.	e restaururu	D			it. It's a cinema classic
4		is a wonderful fi	lm.	E			for a walk this weekend
5	1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1. 1	lot of work to do		F			me your phone number
6		see you again.		G			back and get it
		ds are full of flow	/ers.				early
7		ne are rain er nen	0.01				

7 ..... if I finish early?

#### Have to (see pages 76–77) means the same as must.

3 ..... in ink?

Must has no past (musted) or infinitive (to must). Instead, we use had to and (to) have to (see page 77).

### have to Do you have to teach small children?

a	lo l/you/we/they have to go? does	he/it <b>has to</b> go he/she/it <b>have to</b> go? he/it <b>does not have to</b> go
C	Contractions: don't; doesn't	
<mark>le use</mark> ou <b>ha</b> ly siste	er <b>has to</b> work on Saturdays. Do your ch	
	oe√ be carry√ do have have	
<ul> <li>E</li> <li>1</li> <li>2</li> <li>3</li> <li>4</li> <li>4</li> </ul>	An accountant <u>has to be</u> good with nu Builders <u>have to carry</u> heavy A soldier <u>a</u> u Students <u>a lot of</u> A schoolteacher <u>c</u> Cooks <u>very clean</u>	things. 6 Footballers a lot of train niform. 7 A secretary a good mem books. 8 A gardener about flow nildren. 9 Doctors about dr hands. 10 A musician a
	the beginnings and ends together. A	
0	'Mary's a swimming teacher.'	A ' finish it today?'
1	'Here is some work for you and lan.'	B ' speak Spanish?'
2	, <u> </u>	C ' tell you now?'
3		D ' stay until the end?'
4	,	E 'Does she have to teach small children?'
5		F ' pay it all now?'
6		G ' travel a lot?'
7	'Peter works in marketing.'	H 'So babysit?'
	te five things that you have to do eve I have to take the train to work.	ry day, or most days.
5		
	te five things that you never have to I never have to speak Chinese.	do.
1		
1		
1		
1 2 3		

 $\rightarrow$  For negatives (do not / don't have to) see page 77.

### mustn't and don't have to We mustn't wake the baby.

	/it <b>must not</b> go etc /it <b>does not have to</b> go etc
I do not have to go you do not have to go he/she Contractions: mustn't; don't have to	
st has two negatives (); we use mustn't or must not we use don't / do not have to be	nen we mean <b>'Don't do this</b> '. when we mean <b>'This isn't necessary</b> '.
mustn't smoke here. You mustn't take pictures here.	We <b>mustn't</b> wake the baby.
don't have to pay now; you can pay when the work is finished	ed.
don't have to hurry – we're early.	
Complete the sentences with <i>mustn't</i> and the verbs	in the box
complete the sentences with mushir tand the rens	
let light 🗸 make play play smoke wasł	
it d campsiter	3 animals run around
for musch cugne fires.	in the toilets.
	5 football.
Put the beginnings and ends together. Add <i>don't</i> h	5 noise after 10 pm.
2loud music. 6 Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't he drive give make make post speak wa	5 noise after 10 pm. ave to and verbs from the box. ke ✓
2	ave to and verbs from the box. ke ✓ A I can walk
2       loud music.       0         You       dow't have to wake.       me up;         1       You       breakfast for me;	A I can walk B I'll buy <i>The Times</i> at the station
2       loud music.       0         Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to make post speak wa       0         0       You       dow't have to wake.       me up;         1       You       breakfast for me;       2         2       You       lunch for me;       1	A I can walk B I'll buy <i>The Times</i> at the station C Cathy's going to the post office
2       loud music.       0         Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to make post speak wa         0       You       dow't have to wake.         0       You       dow't have to wake.       me up;         1       You       breakfast for me;         2       You       lunch for me;         3       You       me to the station;	A I can walk B I'll buy <i>The Times</i> at the station C Cathy's going to the post office D I'll just have coffee
2       loud music.       out music.         Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to make make post speak wa         0       You       dow't have to wake.         0       You       dow't have to wake.         1       You       breakfast for me;         2       You       lunch for me;         3       You       me to the station;         4       You       me your newspaper;	A I can walk B I'll buy <i>The Times</i> at the station C Cathy's going to the post office D I'll just have coffee E I've got an alarm clock
2       loud music.       0         Put the beginnings and ends together. Add don't have to make post speak wa         0       You       dow't have to wake.         0       You       dow't have to wake.       me up;         1       You       breakfast for me;         2       You       lunch for me;         3       You       me to the station;	A I can walk C Cathy's going to the post office D I'll just have coffee E I've got an alarm clock

- 8 You ..... drive so fast we've got a lot of time.
- 9 I ..... look in the cupboard again I've looked in there twice.
- 10 I ..... look in the cupboard Holly has put my birthday present in there.
- 11 You ..... phone Maxine now she's probably asleep.
- 12 You ..... phone Maxine now tomorrow will be fine.

### had to, will have to I didn't have to pay.

	PAST: HAD TO	FUTURE: WILL HAVE TO
#	l/you/he etc had to go	l/you/he etc will have to go
浦	did I/you/he etc have to go?	will I/you/he etc have to go?
1	l/you/he etc did not have to go	l/you/he etc will not have to go
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; didn't; won't	
	t has no past or future: <del>musted</del> ; <del>will must</del> .	
Ve	use <i>had to</i> for the <b>past</b> and <i>will have to</i> for the fut	ure of both <i>must</i> and <i>have to</i> .
Ay I	mum <b>had to</b> leave school at sixteen. <b>Did</b> you <b>ha</b>	ive to tell Jo? I didn't have to pay.
lice	e <b>will have to</b> start school next September. Aled	won't have to come.
		(###) and didu/t because to die (IIII) as ach and
	Vrite about the things that John had to do ( (learn French IIII) He had to learn French	
	(rearring)	
	(P)	
1		
- 23	(learn maths )	
101	(,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	*
2	4 2 4000	
5	· · · ·	
e	(write stories 🔛)	
1	Make questions with Did have to?	
	you / learn French at school Did you have	to learn French at school?
	Annie / work last Saturday Did Annie hav	e to work last Saturday?
1		
2	Tina / take an exam last year	
3	Joe and Sue / wait a long time for a train	
Z	you / show your passport at the airport	
5	the children / walk home	
6	Peter / cook supper	
	Complete the sentences. Use 'll have to, w	//// have to? or won't have to with
t	he verbs in the box.	
	and and made and the state	
	ask get get go learn play stu	dy 🗸 tell work
1	Cara wants to be a doctor. She 'll have to stu	dy bard
1		
	2019년 2월 19일 - 19g - 19	
2	Edward's dot a new car so he	TO WORK DV DUIS

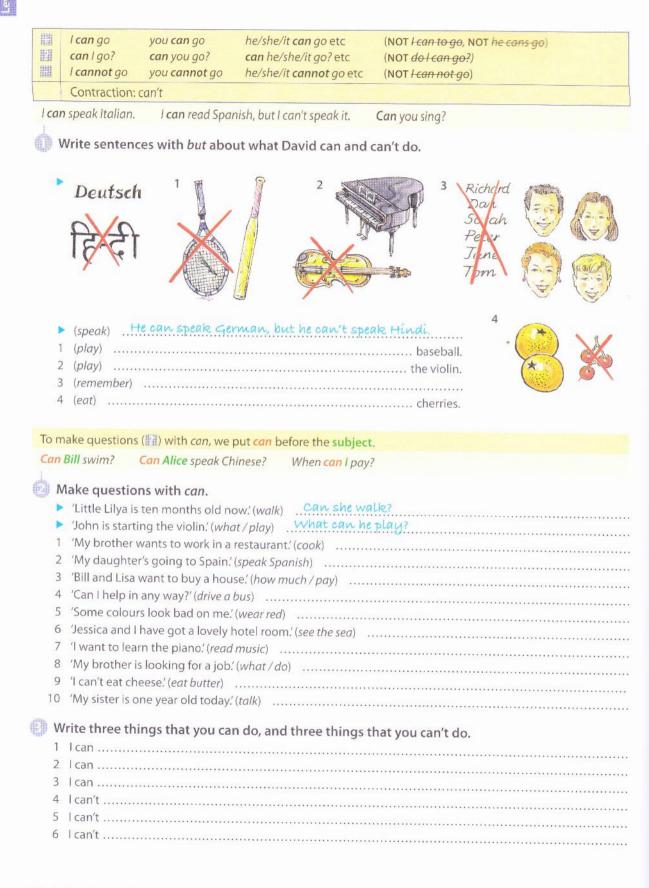
- 4 'Jack wants to be a pianist.' 'He ..... for hours every day.
- 5 'Can I go home early?' 'I don't know. You ..... the boss'
- 6 I'm working next Sunday, but I ..... on Saturday.
- 7 'Liz wants to go to the US.' '..... she ..... she .....
- 8 I don't know the answer now. I ...... you tomorrow.

### should What should I tell John?

	l <b>should</b> go <b>should</b> I go? I <b>should not</b> go	you <b>should</b> go <b>should</b> you go? you <b>should not</b> go	he/she/it <b>should</b> go etc <b>should</b> he/she/it go? etc he/she/it <b>should not</b> go etc	(NOT <del>I should to g</del> o) (NOT <del>do I should go?</del> )
	Contractions: sho	uldn't		
	ld is like must, but It to is like should, l		should for suggestions, opinio	ons and advice.
Contractory of	hould / ought to be		ole <b>shouldn't</b> drive fast in the ra	in. Should I wear a tie?
CL	a a c c tha hast u	when and complete	the contenees with should	and shouldn't
			the sentences with should careful with your mone	
			your baggage with yo a foreign language. ()	
			thing in the newspapers. ( <i>writ</i>	
4			fruit or vegetables every day.	(annk, eut, sen)
5 6			(work, smoke, get up) the truth. (tell, sell, brea	(k)
7			with knives. (think, play,	
8			neir children's letters. ( <i>read, co</i>	
			st in towns. ( <i>drive, run, walk</i> )	ok, iie)
9	People		SUM LOWINS. (UNVE, TUN, WURK)	
10	Vou	always		play)
10	You	always	what you think. (say, pay, p	play)
			what you think. ( <i>say, pay, p</i>	
	ake questions w	vith <i>should I</i> , the que	what you think. ( <i>say, pay, p</i>	m the box.
	QUESTION WORDS	vith should I, the que	what you think. (say, pay, pay, pay, pay, pay, pay, pay, p	m the box.
	QUESTION WORDS	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit	what you think. ( <i>say</i> , <i>pay</i> , <i>p</i> estion words and verbs from hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	<b>m the box.</b> ere Where Who
M	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit (tell	what you think. ( <i>say</i> , <i>pay</i> , <i>p</i> estion words and verbs from hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who 
M	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit I tell	what you think. ( <i>say</i> , <i>pay</i> , <i>p</i> estion words and verbs fro hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left ear 'At about 7.00
M	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit (tell	what you think. ( <i>say, pay, µ</i> estion words and verbs from hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left ear 'At about 7.00 first?' 'Mr Andrews
M	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit ( tell	what you think. (say, pay, p estion words and verbs fro hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left earl 
M 1 2 3 4	ake questions w QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit (tell	what you think. (say, pay, p estion words and verbs fro hat time What time Whe tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left ear 
M.	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit ( tell	what you think. (say, pay, pestion words and verbs from hat time What time Whet tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left earl 'At about 7.00 first?' 'Mr Andrews 'Your blue dress 'At the end of the tabl this box?' 'On the she
M.	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit ( tell	what you think. (say, pay, pestion words and verbs from hat time What time Whet tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left ear 
M. 1 2 3 4 5 6	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit (tell	what you think. (say, pay, pestion words and verbs from hat time What time Whet tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left ear 'At about 7.00 first?' 'Mr Andrews 'Your blue dres 'Your blue dres 'At the end of the tabl this box?' 'On the she you up?' 'Not too early, pleas
M. 1 2 3 4 5 6	QUESTION WORDS VERBS: arrive What should	vith should I, the que 5: What ✓ What W put phone sit ( tell out what's necessary, a	what you think. (say, pay, pestion words and verbs from hat time What time Whet tell ✓ wake wear	m the box. ere Where Who John?' 'Tell him I left earl 

- 'Do I look OK?' 'You ...should ..... get a haircut.'
- 1 | can't go; I ..... finish this work.
- 2 1 ..... take more exercise.
- 3 You .....n't smoke near babies.
- 4 The sign says we .....n't smoke.
- 5 What ..... I do to get a visa?
- 6 You ..... be over 16 to buy cigarettes.
- 7 'What music ..... I play?' 'Mozart.'

### can He can play the piano.



	PAST
	I could goyou could gohe/she/it could go etc(NOT / could to go)could   go?could you go?could he/she/it go? etc(NOT did / could go?)I could not goyou could not gohe/she/it could not go etc(NOT did / could go?)Contraction: couldn'tcould not gohe/she/it could not go etc(NOT did / could go?)
	FUTURE
and the second	<pre>//you etc will be able to go will I/you etc be able to go? I/you etc will not be able to go Contractions will not be able to go</pre>
	Contractions: I'll, you'll etc; won't
t	alk about the <b>past</b> , we use <i>could</i> .
01	<i>Ild</i> talk when I was thirteen months old. I <b>could</b> walk when I was ten months old.
01	<i>Idn't</i> understand the teacher yesterday. How <i>could</i> you say that to me?
	hoose the best verbs, and use them with <i>could</i> to complete the story.
S	00. At three she (3 <i>read / learn</i> ) easy books. She (4 <i>not think / not write</i> ) he (5 <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though.
5	
5	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b>
s 1	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b> <b>Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.</b>
s 1	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b> <b>Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.</b>
5	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b> <b>Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.</b>
s N N N N N N N N N N N N N N	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b> <b>Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.</b> climb trees dance fight play chess play the piano read run fast sing write
s s \ l	he (s <i>play / tell</i> )
s s \ 1	he (s <i>play / tell</i> ) wonderful stories, and she (6 <i>remember / believe</i> ) every tory that she heard. She (7 <i>not walk / not cry</i> ) until she was nearly two, though. <b>Vhat could you do at six years old? Look at the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary</b> <b>Then make some sentences with I could or I couldn't.</b> climb trees dance fight play chess play the piano read run fast sing write
	he (s play / tell)
	he (s <i>play / tell</i> )
	he (s play / tell)
	he (s play / tell)
s s I I I I I I	he (s <i>play / tell</i> )
s s I I I I I I	he (s <i>play   tell</i> )
	he (s <i>play / tell</i> )
	he (s <i>play / tell</i> )
	he (s play / tell)
	he (s play / tell)
s s N T C an Wa	he (s play / tell)

### may and might It may snow. I might have a cold.

	l <mark>may</mark> go you <mark>may</mark> go he/she/it <mark>may</mark> go etc l <mark>may not</mark> go you <mark>may not</mark> go he/she/it <mark>may not</mark> go etc					
	No contractions: <i>mayn't</i>					
We us	e <i>may</i> to say that things are <b>possible – perhaps</b> they are (not) true, or perhaps they will (not) happen.					
'What's that animal?' 'I'm not sure. It <b>may</b> be a rabbit.' I <b>may</b> go to Wales at the weekend. We <b>may not</b> be here tomorrow.						
We do	o not use may in this way in questions.					
It may	snow. BUT NOT May it snow?					
1 2 3 4 5	write the sentences with may.         Perhaps Sarah's ill.         Perhaps Sarah's ill.         Perhaps we won't go out.         Perhaps it won't rain.         Perhaps we'll buy a car.         Perhaps Joe is not at home.         Perhaps Anna needs help.         Perhaps the baby's hungry.					
6	Perhaps I won't change my job.					
	Perhaps she's married Perhaps he doesn't want to talk to you.					
	Perhaps you're not right.					
	Perhaps I won't be here tomorrow.					
	It the beginnings and ends together; put in <i>may</i> with words from the box.					

not be decide give go 🗸 go not have snow stay

0	'What are your plans for next year?'	А	'I'm not sure. I
1	'Are you going to buy that coat?'	В	'Not sure. They at home.'
2	'Where are your parents going on holiday?'		'No. I to study physics.'
3	'Shall we phone Pete now?'	D	'Yes. I think it
4	'It's getting very cold.'	Е	'Perhaps; I enough money.'
5	'What are you doing this evening?'	F	'I don't know. I him a sweater.'
6	'Are you going to study medicine?'	G	'It's early; he out of bed yet.'
7	'What are you giving Oliver for his birthday?'	Н	'We round to Sophie's place.'
	100 TT 100 TT 100 TT		

We may live without poetry, music and art; We may live without conscience, and live without heart; We may live without friends, we may live without books; But civilised man cannot live without cooks.

(Owen Meredith)

Science fiction is the literature of might be. (CJ Cherryh)

Note the difference between may not and can't.	
She <b>may not be</b> at home – I'll phone and find out. ( = 'Perhaps she's not at home') She <b>can't be</b> at home: she went to Spain this morning. ( = 'She's certainly not at home')	
We can use <i>can't</i> to express great surprise or disbelief.	
'Karen's going to marry Des.' 'It <b>can't be</b> true. She hates him!'	
9 Put in may not or can't.	
1 We can try that restaurant, but they have a table free.	
2 There are no lights in the house, and they're not answering the doorbell. They be at how	me.

- 3 He says he's got lots of money, but it ..... be true.
- 4 'You've won 1 million Euros in the lottery.' 'No, it ..... be true!'
- 5 She says her dog talks to her, but dogs ..... talk.
- 6 I'll ask that policeman, but he ..... speak English.
- 7 'Can you come tomorrow?' 'I'll see. I ...... have time.'
- 8 1 ..... pass the exam, but I'm hoping for the best.
- 9 'They've found elephants in Antarctica.' 'That ..... be right.'
- 10 I'm going to see my old primary school teacher tomorrow, but she ..... remember me.'

	l might go	you <b>might</b> go	he/she/it might go etc	
E	might   go?	might you go?	might he/she/it go? etc	
13	l might not go	you might not go	he/she/it might not go etc	
	Contraction: mig	ghtn't		

#### We can use *might* in the same way as may - especially if we are not so sure about things.

'Are you ill?' 'Not sure. I **might** have a cold. Or perhaps not.' I **might not** be here tomorrow. Might is unusual in questions.

### John has no money. He is thinking about things that might happen. Put in verbs from the box with *might*.



#### Might or might not? Circle the correct answers.

- Kate had a big lunch, so she *might want (might not want*) to eat this evening.
- 1 It's getting late. I might finish / might not finish this work on time.
- 2 If the traffic gets very bad we might miss / might not miss the train.
- 3 If he's had a good day, your dad might give / might not give you money for the cinema.
- 4 Andrew's story is so good that his teacher might believe / might not believe he wrote it.
- 5 Helen's not feeling well today I'm afraid she might pass / might not pass her exam.
- 6 Alan wasn't at the last meeting. He might know / might not know the new members.
- 7 'Where's Tom?' 'He might be / might not be in the kitchen.'
- 8 I've got toothache. I might have to / might not have to go to the dentist tomorrow.
- 9 I'll do my best, but I *might have / might not have* time to help you.
- 10 I hope we can take the car, but it might / might not start.

### can, could and may: permission Can I use the phone?

We use can I? or can we? to ask if it	t is <b>OK</b> to do things: to ask per	mission.
Can I use the phone, please? Mum, ca	n I leave the table now? Ca	n we wait here?
We often use Can I have? and Can we	have? to ask for things.	
Can I have your address, please? Can	we have some water?	
Make questions with Can I?		
DON'T SAY THIS!	SAY THIS (to your sister, a fr	riend, a waiter, your secretary)
Lend me your pen.	(borrow) Can I borrow	your pen (, please)?
1 I want a glass of water.	(have)	
2 I'm going to use your pencil.		
3 I want some more coffee.	(have)	
4 I'll put my coat here.	(put)	
5 Give me some bread.	(have)	
6 Show me those photos.	(look at)	

*Could* ...? is more formal and polite than *can* ...?, so we use it, for example, with strangers, older people, teachers and bosses. *Could I possibly* ...? is very polite.

Could we leave our luggage here until this afternoon?

Could I possibly borrow your paper for a moment?

### Make polite questions with Could I ...?

1	DON'T SAY THIS!	SAY THIS (to a stranger, a teacher, a boss, an older person)
	Lend me your pen.	(borrow) Could I borrow your pen, please?
1	I need to use your calculator.	(use)
2	I'm leaving early today.	(leave)
3	I want to take your photo.	(take)
4	Lend me your newspaper.	(borrow)
5	I'm going to turn on the TV.	(turn on)
6	I want to open a window.	(open)

We use *can/can't*, but not *could/couldn't*, to say that it is or isn't OK to do things. (You can't is like you mustn't – see page 77.)

You can leave your books here if you want. (NOT You could leave your books ...) You can't use the gym between 1.00 and 2.00.

Put the beginnings and ends together. Add *can* and verbs from the box.

borrow 🗸 eat park play turn on watch

0	lf you don't have a torch,	A	in this car park
1	The children	В	they the cake in the kitchen
2	Tell the boys that	C	you . can borrow mine
3	If you're cold,	D	you the heating
4	If you're bored,	E	in the garden
5	Only teachers	F	you television

### What do the signs tell you? Use You can't ... here with words and expressions from the box.

L	cycle	park 🗸	smoke	take photos	use mobi	le phones			
(	8					(AFC)	)		
•	You	can't p	ark here.			3			
(							)		
1			••••••	•••••		4			••••
2									
e u	se Can	l/we?	to offer he	lp.					
n I	help yo	u? C	an we book	the tickets for y	ou? Can	I carry those	for you?		
	Your fi	riend has	s just come me shoppi	home from hos home from hos ng for you? p of tea for you	pital. Offer t				
2				tomer walks in.					
3				r to the station.					
4				dache. Offer to g	-				
				we need to be w		ve often use	May I? to	ask if somet	ning is <b>OK</b> ,
			e, please, sir	nething is/isn't ? May Luse		ase. Mrs Robe	erts?		
ur	nay ope	en your b	ooks now.		questions a	fter the Prince	has finished		
A	teach	er is tell	ing her cl	ass what to do	o. Complet	e the text w	vith <i>may</i> ar	nd verbs fro	m the box.
	do	leave	not leave	take talk	/ not talk	use use	2		
Yc Yc 4.	ou 1 ou 3			to another your diction them from the s	group, and y naries. If you .helf; but on	ou 2 want to use ly one persor	other books	the ro , you	om. the
yc	ou whe	n it is you		6 ou finish before y.					

### can/could you?: requests Can you lend me a stamp?

We can **ask people to do things** (make requests) with *can you* ...? This is **informal**; we often use it when we are talking to **friends**; and also, for example, in **shops** and **restaurants**.

Joe, can you lend me a stamp? Can you bring me some more butter?

*Could you ...?* is more **formal** and **polite**; we often use it, for example, when we are talking to strangers, older people, teachers or bosses. *Could you possibly ...?* is very polite.

Excuse me, Mr Andrews, could you lend me a stamp? I'm sorry to trouble you, but could you possibly watch my luggage while I get a coffee?

#### Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

	babysit clean drive give 🗸 hold lend pass put speak tell 🗸 tell wait
•	Can you
	Could youtell
1	Could you me the rice? 7 Could you possibly me a pen?
2	Can you my suit? 8 Can you these papers away?
3	Can you me the time? 9 Could you more slowly?
4	Could you me to the station? 10 Could you here for a few minute
Fi	nd better ways of asking people to do these things. (I = informal, P = polite, PP = very polit Open the window. (I) Can you open the window? Lend me a pen. (P) Could you lend me a pen?
•	Help me. (PP) Could you possibly help me?
1	Open the door. (I)
2	Give me an envelope. (P)
3	Pass me the sugar. (I)
4	Watch my children for a minute. (P)
5	Tell me the time. (P)
6	Change some dollars for me. (PP)
7	Wait outside. (I)
8	Translate this letter for me. (PP)
9	Come back tomorrow. (I)
0	Say it in English. (P)

#### Put the words of the caption in the right order.



Ē

### shall in questions What shall we do?

We of	ten use <i>shall I?</i> or <i>shall we?</i> when we are asking or suggesting what to do.
Shall	I put the lights on? Where shall we meet tomorrow? Shall we go and see Bill?
	ake sentences with shall I? put / the meat / in the fridge?
	what / tell / the police? What shall I tell the police?
1	what / buy / for Sandra's birthday ?
2	when / phone you ?
3 4	pay / now ?
5	how many tickets / buy ?
6	where / leave the car ?
7	what time / come this evening ?
8	shut / the windows ?
9 10	when / go shopping ?
<b>D</b> NA	ake sentences with <i>shall we</i> ?
	what time / leave?
	watch / a film tonight?
1	go out / this evening ?
2	have / a game of cards ?
3	how / travel to London ?
4 5	what / do at the weekend ?
6	look for / a hotel ?
7	what time / meet Peter ?
8	how much bread / buy ?
9	have / a party ?
10	when / have the next meeting?

### We can use Shall I ...? to offer politely to do things for people.

Shall I take your coat? Shall I make you some coffee?

N	Make sentences offering to:
	carry somebody's bag Shall I carry your bag?
1	post somebody's letters
2	2 do somebody's shopping
3	3 make somebody's bed
4	l read to somebody
5	6 drive somebody to the station
6	5 make somebody a cup of tea
7	7 clean somebody's car
8	3 phone somebody's secretary
9	9 cut somebody's hair
10	) bring somebody an aspirin

### would Would you like a drink? I'd like to be taller.

We often use *would* in the expression *I'd like* (= '*I would like'*), to ask for things. It is more polite than *I want*. *I'd like* a return ticket, please. *I'd like* a seat by the window. We can offer things with *would you like ...? Would you like* a drink? How many eggs *would you like*?

#### Make sentences with I'd like ..., please or Would you like ...?

- two tickets III I'd like two tickets, please.
- coffee Would you like coffee?
- 1 a black T-shirt
- 2 an aspirin 2 .....
- 3 the newspaper 🔛 .....
- 4 an ice cream 📰 .....
- 5 some more toast 📰 .....
- 6 a receipt 🛗 .....

#### We can use would like to talk about things that people want to do.

I'd like to learn Chinese. What would you like to do on Sunday? Would you like to have lots of brothers and sisters? I wouldn't like to be an astronaut.

Which of these things would you like to be or do? Write sentences beginning *I'd like to* ... or *I wouldn't like to* ...

- ▶ be shorter . I'd like to be shorter OR I wouldn't like to be shorter.
- 1 be taller .....
- 2 be younger .....
- 3 be older .....
- 4 go to the moon .....
- 5 live in a different country
  6 have a lot of dogs
- 7 write a book
- 8 (your sentence)

We often use *Would you like to ...?* in invitations.

Would you like to come to Scotland with us?

Don't confuse *would like* (='*want*') and *like* (='*enjoy*'). Compare:

I'd like some coffee, please. (NOT Hike some coffee, please.) I like Would you like to go skating today? (NOT Do you like to go ...?)

### Circle the correct forms.

- 1 Do / Would you like to come to dinner?
- 2 'Would you like coffee?' 'Yes, I do.' / 'Yes, please.'
- 3 | like / would like mountains.
- 4 Do / Would you like to go out tonight?
- 5 | like / 'd like to go home now.

- 6 Do you like dancing? Yes, I do. / Yes, please.
- 7 I like / would like to get up late tomorrow.
- 8 I don't / wouldn't like old music.

I like coffee but I don't like tea.

Do you like skating?

- 9 I don't / wouldn't like to be an animal.
- 10 'An apple?' 'Yes, I like / 'd like one.'

### used to I used to play the piano.

	used to playyou used to playhe/she/it used to play etcdid I use to play?did you use to play?did he/she/it use to play? etcdid not use to playyou did not use to playhe/she/it did not use to play etc
	I used to play the piano. I don't play now.
	<b>to play</b> the piano, but I stopped. Pat <b>used to have</b> long fair hair. <b>did</b> you <b>use to live</b> before you came here? I <b>didn't use to like</b> fish, but now I do.
	Ike sentences about people hundreds of years ago. Begin (Most) people used to         (Most) people didn't use to or A lot of people used to         be farmers       Most people used to be farmers.         have cars       People didn't use to have cars.         travel on foot or on horses       go to school         learn to read          trave long          work very long
To t	about present habits and situations, we use the simple present, NOT use to.
	a lot of tennis. (NOT luse to play a lot of tennis.) Ike sentences about past and present habits and situations. John / rugby / tennis John used to play rugby. Now he plays tennis. Emily / study German / French Paul / live London / Glasgow Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdresser Alice / coffee / tea Peter / lots of girlfriends / married
	a lot of tennis. (NOT luse to play a lot of tennis.) Ike sentences about past and present habits and situations. John / rugby / tennis <u>John used to play rugby</u> . Now he plays tennis. Emily / study German / French Paul / live London / Glasgow Grace / read a lot / TV Dan / driver / hairdresser

FAILURE

### modal verbs: more practice

### Forms of modal verbs. Make questions or negatives.

	Carol can't speak German. (Spanish iii) Can she speak Spanish?
	Emma may phone you. (do it today )
1	Albert can't ski. (swim 🗐)
2	Lucy must go to the police. (go immediately 🔝)
3	Tom may go to Washington, (but go this week 📖)
4	Olivia has to work on Wednesday evening. (Thursday evening 📰)
5	Paul can play rugby. (hockey 🏭)
6	Sarah should see the secretary. (today 📰)
7	
8	The boss would like some coffee. (now 📳
9	We may go away next weekend, (but might take the children 🏢)
10	I must stay awake during the opera. (go to sleep 🔛)

#### Past and future. Change the times of these sentences.

- Helen can ski. Helen could ski when she was three years old.
- 1 I can speak French now. ..... on holiday next year.
- 2 Everybody must fill in a big form. ..... last year.
- 3 Everybody must fill in a big form. ..... next year.
- 4 Can you play the guitar? .....at the next school concert?
- 5 Must you wear a tie to work? ..... in your last job?
- 6 John can't read very well. ..... when he was younger.
- 7 We can't buy a car. ..... before next year.
- 8 I must see the doctor. ..... last week.

9 Everybody can say what they think. ..... in the year 3000.

10 You can't sing now. You ..... last year.

And you ..... next year, either.

### Advice with should. Put the beginnings and ends together.

1	Aunt Mary's thirsty.	A	You should give her a saucer of milk
2	I'm getting fat.	В	You should buy some new clothes
3	My girlfriend's angry with me.	C	You should buy a new one
4	The cat needs a drink.	D	You should make her a cup of tea
5	My hair's falling out.	E	You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets
6	I'm tired.	F	You should take more exercise
7	l don't like Anna's new hairstyle.	G	You should practise your service
8	l never have any money.	Н	You should study grammar
9	l don't play tennis very well.	1	You shouldn't go to bed so late
10	The car won't go.	J	You shouldn't tell her
11	My clothes are all out of fashion.	К	You should change your shampoo
12	My English teacher says I make too many mistakes.	L	You should tell her you love her

	ermission and requests. Make these sentences more polite. (Different answers are possible.)
•	Give me some water. Can/Could/May I have some water?
1	I want a cup of coffee.
2	Can I take a photograph of you?
3	Close the door, John.
4	I need you to help me.
5	Give me that newspaper.
6	Will you clean my bicycle, please?
7	Can I borrow some money from you?
8	Let me use your phone.
9	Hold this.
10	Wash all my clothes before tomorrow.

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: eight useful things. Complete the sentences with you can and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.







a washing machine





phone



a dishwasher a camera

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jobs. Complete the sentences with might be and words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

a businessman	a chef	a farmer 🗸	a gardener	a lawyer	
an opera singer	a pilot	a politician	a vet 🗸		

Little Henry likes animals. When he grows up he might be a farmer or a vet.
Little Angela loves aeroplanes. She might
Little George is interested in money.
Little Amrita likes singing and she has a very loud voice.
Little Peter likes talking
Little Alice likes arguing
Little John likes cooking.
Little Ruby likes flowers.

### 🕼 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find three short simple sentences with "will be able to" and three with "will have to".

1	 4	
2	 5	
3	 6	

### modal verbs: revision test

### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- John cans swim. .X..
- ▶ I must go now. ....
- 1 I don't must see Andrew today. .....
- 2 Anna can't to speak English. .....
- 3 Last year I must sell my car. ...
- 4 Would you like to have some coffee? .....
- 5 It may rain tomorrow. .....
- 6 Can you singing? .....
- 7 Must you go? .....
- 8 I may not be here this evening. .....
- 9 Do you use to smoke? .....
- 10 Alex musts work harder. .....

### ② Circle the correct verbs.

- Can / Might / Mustn't I help you?
- 1 If you travel to Morania you can / should / must have a visa.
- 2 You shouldn't / don't have to / couldn't laugh at old people.
- 3 Passengers must / must not / should not smoke in the toilets.
- 4 I think you should / must / may eat less and take more exercise.
- 5 You mustn't / may not / don't have to tell me if you don't want to.
- 6 You may / have to drive on the left in Britain.
- 7 We don't have to / mustn't pay now, but we can if we want to.
- 8 I may not / could not be here this evening.
- 9 She isn't answering the phone. She *shouldn't* /*can't* be at home just now.
- 10 People should / have to smile more often.

### Choose the correct verbs to rewrite the sentences with the same meaning.

•	I know how to swim. (can/may) I can swim.
1	
2	
3	It is not necessary for you to wait. (mustn't/don't have to)
4	It's not good for people to watch TV all the time. (mustn't/shouldn't)
5	Do you want me to open a window? (shall/will)
6	It is important for people to cooperate. (may/should)
7	
8	It is possible that it will rain. (can/may)
9	Alan knows how to speak Spanish. (can/could)
10	I would like you to help me. (Can/Should)

### Grammar in a text. Choose the best modal verbs to complete the quotations.

- 1 Those who can / can't / shall, do. Those who can / can't / shall, teach. (Traditional)
- 2 We may / can / must love one another or die. (W H Auden)
- 3 It is not enough to succeed. Others can / may / must fail. (Gore Vidal)
- 4 You *shall / could / may* fool all the people some of the time; you *must / can / shall* even fool some of the people all the time; but you *can't / couldn't / wouldn't* fool all of the people all the time. (*Abraham Lincoln*)

### **SECTION 7** passives

### grammar summary

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'.

- We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject.
   Mrs Harris cooks our meals. Andrew broke the window.
- We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject.
   Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. The window was broken by Andrew.

We make **passive verbs** with *be* (*am, are, is* etc) + **past participle** (*cooked, broken* etc). **Passive** verbs have the **same tenses** (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as **active** verbs. For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

'I'm afraid, Mr Klesmerod, that your blood type has been discontinued.



### Do you know? (Answers at the bottom of the page)

1		e <mark>is used to boil</mark> v B a sink		D a hot water bottle
2		sident was killed B Kennedy	in a theatre?	
3		is played with a r B cricket		D tennis
4		n <mark>g served, where</mark> B in a church		D in hospital
5	<b>The Olympic (</b> A Melbourne	Games have neve B Tokyo	r <mark>been held in:</mark> C London	D Chicago
6	Which of thes A uranium	e metals was dis B radium	<b>covered by Marie</b> C gold	Curie? D platinum
7	Which of thes A Hamlet		<b>n by Shakespeare</b> Music C Othello	
8	<b>Which countr</b> A Sweden	<b>y was governed l</b> B China	<b>by the Pharaohs?</b> C Egypt	D Japan

### passives: introduction English is spoken in Australia.

When A does something to B, there are often two ways to talk about it: 'active' and 'passive'. We use active verbs if we want A to be the subject. We use passive verbs if we want B to be the subject. We make passive verbs with be (am, are, is etc) + past participle (cooked, seen etc).							
ACTIVE				PASSIVE			
<b>A</b> Mrs Harris Andrew Somebody The government	cooks broke saw will close	B our meals. the window. her the hospital	in Belfast. next year.	B Our meals The window She The hospital	are cooked was broken was seen will be closed	(by A) by Mrs Harris. by Andrew.	in Belfast. next year.

Passive verbs have the same tenses (simple present, present progressive, present perfect etc) as active verbs. For a list of active and passive tenses, see page 300.

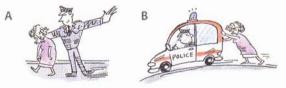
Note the use of by in passives, to say who or what does the action.

Our meals are cooked by Mrs Harris. (NOT ... from Mrs Harris.)

#### Which picture goes with which sentence?

- 1 The policeman was helped by the old lady. .....
- 2 The car hit a tree. .....
- 3 The car was hit by a tree. .....

- 4 Annie loves all dogs. .....
- 5 Annie is loved by all dogs. .....
- 6 The Queen photographed the tourists. .....
- 7 The Queen was photographed by the tourists. .....









### Circle the correct answer.

- 1 English speaks / spoken / is spoken in Australia.
- 2 I studied / was studied French for three years at school.
- 3 We spent / was spent too much money on holiday.
- 4 This window broke / was broken by your little boy.
- 5 Her clothes made / are made in Paris.
- 6 This book written / was written by my brother.
- 7 The new university will open / will opened / will be opened by the Prime Minister.
- 8 Ann was driving / was driven much too fast, and she stopped / was stopped by the police.
- 9 This house built / was built in 1800.
- 10 Everybody had / was had / was have a good time at the party.

he/she/it is woken etc

翻

lam woken

you are woken

		am I woken? are you woken? is he/she/it woken? etc I am not woken you are not woken he/she/it is not woken etc
10561		For contractions ( <i>I'm, isn't</i> etc), see pages 2, 301.
	1 23	or contractions (m, isn't etc), see pages 2, 501.
		e the <b>simple present passive</b> like the simple present active, for things that are <b>always true</b> , and that happen <b>all the time, repeatedly, often, sometimes, never</b> etc (see page 17).
lan	n p	aid every two weeks. Is Jeremy liked by the other children? Stamps aren't sold here.
→ I	For	spelling rules for adding -ed to verbs, see page 46; for irregular past participles, see page 299.
0	Co	mplete the sentences with <i>am/are/is</i> .
		A lot of paper
		What this called in English?
		Jane paid on the first of every month.
		I often sent to the Singapore office.
		any classes taught on Wednesdays?
		More chocolate eaten in the US than in any other country.
(		Not very much known about Shakespeare's childhood.
		We woken by the birds every morning.
		you seen by the same doctor every week?
0	Pu	t simple present passive verbs into these sentences.
		A lot of olive oil . is used
		Arabic from right to left. ( <i>write</i> )
		Those programmes by millions of people every week. ( <i>watch</i> )
		Stamps in most newsagents in Britain. ( <i>sell</i> )
		The police say that nothing about the child's family. (know)
		In English, 'ough' in a lot of different ways. (pronounce)
		Spanish in Peru. (speak)
		Cricket by two teams of eleven players. ( <i>play</i> )
		Our windows once a month. ( <i>clean</i> )
		ake simple present negatives and questions.
		'Those computersare not made in America' (not make) 'Whereare they made?' 'In China.'
	1	'My name with a Y.' (not spell)
	5	'How
	2	'That kind of bird around here, usually.' (not see)
	2	'Where
	3	'Where like were.' (not pronounce)
	5	'How
	4	'Diamonds in Scotland: (not find)
	- 16 	'Where
	5	'My sister very well.' (pay)
	-	

'How much ......' 'I don't remember.'

# future passive Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen.

l <b>will be</b> woken <b>will   be</b> woken? I <b>will not be</b> woken	you <b>will be</b> woken <b>will</b> you <b>be</b> woken? you <b>will not be</b> woken	he/she/it <b>will be</b> woken etc will he/she/it <b>be</b> woken? etc he/she/it <b>will not be</b> woken etc			
For contractions (I'll, won't etc), see page 301.					

We use the **future passive** like the future active (see page 39), to say things that we **think**, **guess** or **know** about the future, or to ask questions about the future.

One day all the work will be done by machines. Where will the match be played?

Make future passive sentences with the verbs from the box.

clean close 🗸 finish open send speak

- 1 The museum ..... by the Queen.
- 2 One day English ..... everywhere.
- 3 This job ..... in a few days.
- 4 Your room ..... while you're out.
- 5 Your tickets ..... to you next week.

#### Make future passive negatives and questions.

- 1 'The visitors ..... to the hotel by bus.' (take)
- 'How ...... there?' 'By taxi.'
- 2 'The new library ..... in the Central Square' (build)
- 'Where ......' 'Behind the Police Station.'
- 3 'English ..... at the conference' (speak)
- 'What language .....' 'Chinese.'

#### Make five future passive sentences from the table.

Next year	your	1 1 1 1		
Tomorrow	bed / bicycle /	clean / cook /		
Next week	breakfast / food /	do / eat / make /		
Tonight	clothes / dinner /	send to Canada /		
One day	glasses / house /	steal / wash /		
In 20 years	room / work	take away		

a small man in a raincoat / a black cat / two old ladies / a beautiful woman / people from another world / the President / a big dog / your old friend Peter / a machine

by

Tomorrow your bicycle will be stolen by your old friend Peter.



[.....

# simple past passive I was stopped by a policeman.

1	vas I woken? were you woken? was he/she/it woken? etc was not woken you were not woken he/she/it was not woken etc
F	
	for contractions (wasn't etc), see page 301.
Ne use	e the simple past passive like the simple past active, for complete finished actions and events
	age 47).
This tai	ble was made by my grandfather. Was the letter signed? We weren't met at the door.
	mplete the sentences with <i>was/were</i> .
1 7	The fireseen in Renton, a kilometre away.
2 1	Most of the matcheswon by Indian teams.
3 1	These keysfound in the changing room yesterday – are they yours?
	We couldn't find the station, but wehelped by a very kind woman.
	stopped by a policeman in Green Road this morning.
6 \	Yesterday a mancaught trying to burn down the Town Hall.
Dud	
	t simple past passive verbs into these sentences.
	Our passports
	These books in the classroom on Monday. ( <i>leave</i> )
	don't think this room yesterday. ( <i>clean</i> )
	We at the airport by a driver from the university. (meet)
	Nobody what was happening. ( <i>tell</i> )
6 1	He away to school when he was twelve. ( <i>send</i> )
Ma	ke simple past passive negatives and questions.
	We weren't paid when we finished the work.' (not pay)
,	When were you paid?
	'My father in England.' ( <i>not educate</i> )
	Where
	The letters on Tuesday.' (not post)
	When
	(This in butter.' ( <i>not cook</i> )
	'How
	'My suit in England.' ( <i>not make</i> )
	'Where
	The restaurant bill in cash.' (not pay)
	'How' 'With a credit card.'

We use a past passive structure – *to be born* – to give somebody's date or place of birth. *I was born in 1964*. (NOT <del>*I born in 1964.*</del> NOT <del>*I am born in 1964.*)</del> My sisters were born in Egypt.

Write a sentence about your date and place of birth.

# present progressive passive It's being cleaned.

 I am being watched
 am I being watched?

 I am not being watched
 I am not being watched

ched you **are being** watched ched? **are** you **being** watched? watched you **are not being** watched

he/she/it is being watched etc is he/she/it being watched? etc he/she/it is not being watched etc

For contractions (I'm, isn't etc), see pages 2 and 301.

We use the **present progressive passive** like the present progressive active, for things that are happening **now** (see page 24), or for things that are **planned for the future** (see page 38).

'Where's the carpet?' 'It's being cleaned.' When are you being seen by the doctor?

Questions and answers. Use the words in the box to complete answers to the questions. Use the present progressive passive.

the grass / cut 🧹 he / watch I / send it / clean it / paint it / rebuild my hair / cut she / interview the engine / repair my watch / repair we / follow

- 'Can we play on the football pitch?' 'No, the grass is being cut.
- 1 'Can't you wear your blue suit tonight?' 'No, ......'
- 2 'Did Alice get that new job?' 'Not yet ..... today.'
- 3 'What time is it?' 'Sorry, I don't know: ......'
- 4 'Why the big smile?'..... to Hawaii for a week.'
- 5 I usually read a magazine while .....
- 6 I think ..... by a police car.
- 7 'Where's your car?' 'At the garage. ......'
- 8 The school is closed this year.
- 9 George doesn't know that ..... by the police.
- 10 I can't use my office this week because .....

Imagine you are in a busy hotel at midday. Make sentences to say what is being done.

(beds / make) ...Beds are being made.
(bills / pay) ....
(coffee / make) ....
(drinks / serve) ....
(food / prepare) ....
(baggage / bring down) ....
(money / change) ....
(new guests / welcome) ....
(reservations / take) ....
(phones / answer) ....
(rooms / clean) ....





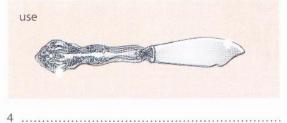
# present perfect passive The house has been sold.

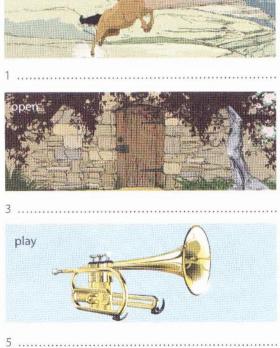
eu	For contractions (/'ve		he/she/it has not been seen etc
le u		etc), see page 301.	
Ve u			
			perfect active (see pages 60-65), to talk about past
			xample, when we give people news.
The l	house on the corner <b>has</b>	been sold. We haven	<b>'t been invited</b> to Anna's party.
N	lows: put the verbs	nto the present perfec	t passive
1			for drunk driving. ( <i>arrest</i> )
2			for \$250,000
2	by an American muse		101 \$250,000
3			in an accident in Devon. ( <i>kill</i> )
4			
5			to star in the new film of 'Macbeth'. ( <i>choose</i> )
6			(close)
7			
8	1	to write	e something for the local newspaper. (ask)
9	All the papers for nex	kt week's meeting	(lose)
10	Everybody in the clas	ss	to Stacey's party. (invite)
1	t's never been done	.' Make a sentence for e	each picture.
	cut	(j=1)	ride





2 .....





In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### passives: more practice

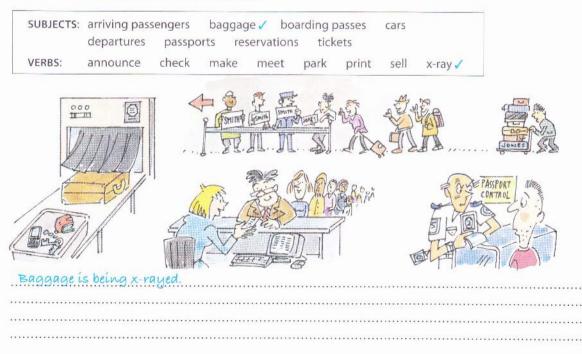
Tenses. Put in simple present, simple past or future passive verbs.

- 'Frankenstein' ...was written
   by Mary Shelley. (write)
- 1 Butter ..... from milk. (make)
- 2 Last night two men ..... in a fight in a nightclub. (kill)
- 3 One day all our work ..... by machines. (do)
- 4 English .....as a second language by millions of people. (speak)
- 5 This computer ..... in Japan. (make)
- 6 All the footballers ...... by a doctor before the match last Sunday. (examine)
- 7 This room ..... every day. (clean)
- 8 You ..... of the test results as soon as possible. (inform)
- 9 The new road ..... in July next year. (open)
- 10 Diamonds ..... in several countries in Africa. (find)

Present progressive passive. Imagine that you are in a busy hotel at one o'clock. All the hotel staff are on strike (they have stopped work) because they want more money. Write sentences about six things that are not being done. Some useful words:

baggage new guests	bills rese	coffee rvations	drinks rooms	food telep	money hones					
	1 hort									
seds are no	tbeing	j maae.						 	 	
seas are no						·····				·····
	•••••	••••••	•••••				•••••	 	 	

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: travelling by air. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then imagine you are in an airport, and write six or more sentences about what is being done.



	enses. Put in present perfect passive or present progressive passive verbs.
•	'Is the Army Museum still in Green Street?' 'No, ithas been closed
1	Don't look now, but I think we
2	Hello, police? I'd like to report a theft. My handbag/(steal)
3	'Why did you take the bus?' 'My car
4	I think someone's been in my room – some books (move)
5	'There's nobody here.' 'No, all the students home.' (send)
6	'When
7	'Tomorrow morning.' ( <i>interview</i> ) A group of suspected terrorists
/	
8	Another group of suspected terrorists (not arrest, watch)
9	The hospital will be closed for two years, while it
10	James to join the local football team. ( <i>ask</i> )

### **G** Grammar in a text. Put in simple present active or passive verbs.



Gorillas	( Find)are found
1.6 met	es tall, and they (1 <i>cover</i> ) Gorillas' lives
(2 spend	in groups. Each group has five to ten gorillas in it. The gorillas
in a gro	up (3 <i>walk</i> ) about 0.5 to 1.0 km per day, looking for food. They
	t)all the leaves in one part of the forest before moving on;
some le	aves (s <i>leave</i> )
At night	gorillas (6 <i>sleep</i> ) in nests; these nests
(7 make	of branches and leaves. The number of gorillas living in Africa
today (a	not know)but it is certain that this number is getting smaller.
Why? Be	cause in the countries where the gorillas (9 live)
trees (10	cut down) every year.

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find short simple sentences with the following verbs. Write the sentences.

"are made"
"is spoken"
"will be spent"
"are being built"
"have been seen"
"were given"
"were sent"
"was arrested"

### زبان امید www.languagecentre.ir

# passives: revision test

#### Circle the correct passive or active verb form.

- This book written was written by my uncle.
- 1 Derek posted / was posted his letter to the university today.
- 2 We did a lot of work for the school, but we didn't pay / weren't paid.
- 3 My friend Douglas speaks / is spoken seven languages.
- 4 The letter H doesn't pronounce / isn't pronounced in French.
- 5 A new hospital will build / will be built in the town centre.
- 6 You can't come in here the room is cleaning / is being cleaned.
- 7 We have invited / have been invited to John's party tonight.
- 8 This sauce makes / is made with oil and vinegar.
- 9 French speaks / is spoken in Belgium.
- 10 John broke / is broken his leg last week.

#### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- English is spoken in New Zealand. .....
- I am born in Manchester. .X...
- 1 I was studied German for three years. .....
- 2 Emma invited to a party by her boss. .....
- 3 How is written your name? .....
- 4 'Where's your coat?' 'It's being cleaned' .....
- 5 Our car has been stolen. .....
- 6 When is that window broken? .....
- 7 This book was written from my father. .....
- 8 I was taken to the opera by a friend of mine. .....
- 9 The new road will finished in July. .....
- 10 Our house was built in 1850. .....

#### Put in the correct passive tenses.

- 'The Birds' ...was directed ..... by Alfred Hitchcock. (direct)
- You will be paid next week. (pay)
- 1 'Is the library still downstairs?' 'No, it ......'(move)
- 2 A new hospital ..... here next April. (open)
- 3 Somebody has been in my handbag. Some money ...... (take)
- 4 'Where's your black sweater?' 'It ......'(wash)
- 5 You ...... your examination results before the weekend. (tell)
- 6 'My car ......' 'Well, tell the police: (steal)
- 7 This phone ..... in China. (make)
- 8 Spanish ..... in most of South America. (speak)
- 9 The windows ..... nearly every week. (clean)
- 10 | ..... to help you. What can I do? (ask)
- 11 There was a fight at the football match on Saturday, and one man ...... (kill)
- 12. Do you think all translation ...... by computers one day? (do)
- 13 'When .....?' 'Tomorrow.' (play)
- 14 Three computers ...... from the school since Christmas. (steal)
- 15 The factory closed suddenly last week, and all the workers ...... away. (send)
- 16 This kind of cheese ..... from goats' milk. (make)
- 17 Alice ...... by a car the other day, and her leg ..... (hit; break)
- 18 Your letter ..... for a now it will be ready in five minutes. (translate)
- 19 It says in today's paper that gold ..... in Scotland. (find)
- 20 'Have you done those letters?' 'Not yet. They ..... by five o'clock.' (finish)

# **SECTION 8** questions and negatives

### grammar summary

To make **negatives**, we put **not** or **n't after an auxiliary verb**. John **is** working. —— John **is not** working. I **could** swim —— I **couldn't** swim.

If there is **no other auxiliary** verb, we use *do*. *I live in Manchester.* — Where *do* you live? He said 'Hello'. — What *did* he say? She likes cold weather. — She *doesn't* like cold weather.

We do **not** use *do* when a **question word** is the **subject**. *What* happened? (NOT <del>What did happen?</del>)

### Who are you?

Who were you talking to when I came in just now and you put down the phone? Who were you thinking about when I asked you and asked you again and you answered 'Why, no one'? Who were you with last night when you came home late and said you'd been walking alone?

What was I hoping for that first day when I knocked on your door? What was I thinking about when I first asked you out? Who was I looking at when I first sat looking at you?

#### Who are you?

### I didn't do the housework

I didn't feed the goldfish, I didn't make the bed, I didn't study algebra. I watched a film instead.

I didn't practise on the flute, I didn't write to Jean, I didn't visit Aunty May. I read a magazine.

I didn't do the housework. I started. Then I quit, and wrote a poem just to say I love you. This is it.

# yes/no questions Is the taxi here? Do I need a visa?

### AM I? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

AIVI I:	HAVE	100?	CANS	HE!	D0 Y00?	DOES HE?		
All <b>yes/no questions</b> begin with a <b>verb</b> . To make questions: put an <b>auxiliary verb</b> before the <b>subject</b> . (Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.)								
STATEMENT : The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay.								
QUESTION ##: Is the taxi coming? Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late? Can you pay?								
Put the words in the right order to make questions.								
	<ul> <li>you ready are <u>Are you ready</u>?</li> <li>telephoned she has Mary <u>Has she telephoned Mary</u>?</li> </ul>							
						u?		
8	your sister	is playing	tennis				*	
9	coffee son	ne like you	would .					
10	your home	e secretary	gone has					
If there	e is <mark>no aux</mark>	iliary verb	: put do/d	loes/di	d before the su	bject and use the infin	itive (without to).	
STATE	AENT 🔝:	I need a v	visa.					
QUEST	ION 🔝 :	Do I need	l a visa? (N	OT Nee	<del>d I a visa?</del> , NOT	Do I to nee <del>d a visa?</del> )		
STATE	AENT	John war	nts to go ho	ome.				
QUESTION II: Does John want to go home? (NOT Does John wants to go home?)								
STATEMENT III: She knew Naomi.								
QUESTION : Did she know Naomi? (NOT Did she knew Naomi?)								
101-	Make questions with you.							
You want to know if somebody:								
understands								
called you <u>Did you call me?</u>								
	1 drinks coffee at bedtime							
2 likes classical music								

- 2 likes classical music
- 3 knows your friend Andrew
- 4 went skiing last winter .....
- 5 works in London .....
- 6 lives in a flat or a house
- 7 watches a lot of TV .....
- 8 remembered to buy bread .....
- 9 saw Barbara last weekend
- 10 plays tennis .....

#### Make questions with she.

You want to know if somebody:

- plays football Does she play football?
- 1 speaks Arabic .....
- 2 knows Mr Peters .....
- 3 works at home .....
- 4 lived in Birmingham .....
- 5 went home last week .....
- 6 plays the piano .....
- 7 rides horses .....
- 8 likes working with children
- 9 travelled a lot last year .....
- 10 drives to work .....

#### We don't put do with other auxiliary verbs.

Can you swim? (NOT Do you can swim?)

### Choose the correct question.

- ► (A) Will you be ready soon? B Do you will be ready soon?
- A Live you in London? B Do you live in London? C Are you live in London?
- 1 A Do you are tired? B Do you tired? C Are you tired?
- 2 A Do you must go now? B Must you go now?
- 3 A Do you speak Japanese? B Speak you Japanese? C Are you speak Japanese?
- 4 A Do you have been to New York? B Have you been to New York?
- 5 A Were you go to work by car? B Did you go to work by car? C Went you to work by car?
- 6 A Can she sing? B Does she can sing?
- 7 A Is Judy looking for a job? B Does Judy looking for a job? C Is Judy look for a job?
- 8 A You said something? B Did you said something? C Did you say something?

#### Only put one verb before the subject.

Is her father working today? (NOT Is working her father today?) Has your brother got children? (NOT Has got your brother children?) Did those people telephone again? (NOT Did telephone those people again?)

### Put the verbs in the right place to make questions.

	Are / your parents / to dinner (coming) Are your parents coming to dinner?
1	Did / the police / the drug dealers (catch)
2	Have / Lucy and Felicia / from their holiday (come back)
3	When do / English children / school (start)
4	What is / that man / in the garden (doing)
5	Are / the buses / next week ( <i>running</i> )
6	Has / the film (started)
7	Has / John's letter / yet (arrived)
8	Is /Alicia / today ( <i>working</i> )
9	Does / Paul / your girlfriend (know)
10	Why is / Kate (cry)

→ For more practice with present questions, past questions etc, see Sections 2–5.

→ For question tags like It's late, isn't it?, see pages 288–289.

# question words When will you see her?

### WHERE IS ...? WHEN CAN ...? WHY DOES ...?

Questions with *where, when, why* etc normally have the same word order as *yes/no* questions (pages 104–105). We put *am/are/is/was/were* or another auxiliary verb (*have, will, can* etc) before the subject.

STATEMENT :	Anna is in Russia.	I will see her on Tuesday.
QUESTION	Where is Anna?	When will you see her? (NOT When you will see her?)
If there is no oth	ner auxiliary verb, we use do/o	does/did + infinitive (without to).
STATEMENT	He likes his job.	I came here to learn English.
QUESTION #	How does he like his job?	Why did you come here? (NOT Why you came here?)

Make questions with the words in the boxes.

how when </br>

- ► (you staying?) 'Where are you staying?' ....... 'At the Park Hotel.'
- (you arrive?) "When did you arrive?" Last night."
- 1 (you here?) ...... 'To see Scotland.'
- 2 (you been today?) ...... 'To Edinburgh.'
- 3 (you going to Glasgow?) .....'Next weekend.'
- 4 (you like Scotland?) .....'It's great!'

how when when where why

- 5 (you come here?) ...... 'By car.'
- 6 (you come by car?) ......'l like driving.'
- 8 (you leaving?) ...... 'Next Tuesday.'
- 9 (we see you again?) ......'I'll be back next summer.'

#### We often ask questions with how + adjective/adverb.

How old is your sister? How tall are you? How fast can you run?

Here are some common expressions with *how*. Use them to complete the questions.

	How old? ✓ How far?	How long?	How tall?	
	How big? How fast?	How often?	How well?	
•	How old are	you?' '37 r	next birthday.'	
1	i	your hous	e from here?' 'About 5 km.'	
2	·····	John?' 'Ve	ery tall – nearly two metres.'	
3	·	she drivin	g?' 'The police say she was doing 160 km/h.'	
4	·	you see yo	our parents?' 'Every week.'	
5	,	Petra's flat	?' 'Very small – just one room and a bathroo	om.'
6	, 	you stay ir	China?' 'I was there for six months.'	
7	·····	you speak	Spanish?' 'Not very well.'	

Some questions begin v	Mill White Houri.
What time is the film?	What time does the train leave? (NOT USUALLY At what time?)
What colour are her eyes	s? (NOT What colour have?) What colour is your car?
What size are you? (buyi	ing clothes) What size would you like?
What sort of books do yo	ou read? What sort of films do you like? (OR What kind of?)

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in an expression with What ...

(	)	A	'Eight o'clock, if it's not late.'
	I ' is the baby's hair?'	В	', small or large?'
1	2 ' music do you play?'	С	'She hasn't got any.'
1	3 'l'd like a packet of rice, please.'	D	'Pop, mostly.'
4	4 'Can I borrow one of your sweaters?'	Е	'I don't remember – it was very late.'
5	5 ' holidays do you prefer?'	F	'Sure would you like? Blue? Green?'
6	5 ' did you get home?'	G	'Extra large.'
	/ / pood a sweater' /are you?'	ш	'Mousually go to the mountains'

'I need a sweater,' '...... are you?' H 'We usually go to the mountains.' .....

#### To ask for descriptions, we often use What is/are/was/were ... like?

'Where have you been?' 'In Ireland.' 'What was the weather like?' 'OK.' 'What's your new boyfriend like?' 'He's very nice.' 'My brother writes detective stories.' 'Yes? What are they like?' 'Not very good, really.'

#### Make guestions with What ... like?, using expressions from the box.

your new job your new girlfriend your new house your new car your new boss 🗸 your new school your new neighbours

	What's your new boss like?	'He's not very good at his job.'
1		'She's a lot of fun.'
2		'Very noisy. They have parties all night.'
3		'OK – it's a bit slow.'
4		'Great – we've got much more room.'
5		'It's interesting. I travel a lot.'
6		'The teachers aren't much good.'

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some more useful questions Where are you from? Where do you come from? (NOT From where ...? - see page 111) How long have you been here? How long are you here for? (= 'Until when ...?') How long does it take to learn English? How long does it take to get to London? How do you pronounce this word? How do you spell that word?

→ For questions with who, what and which, see page 108.

I keep six honest serving-men (They taught me all I knew): Their names are What and Why and When And How and Where and Who.

(Rudyard Kipling)

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# question-word subjects Who phoned? What happened?

When <b>who</b> and <b>what</b> are <b>subjects</b> , we make question	ns without <i>do/does/did</i> . Compare:
'Who <sup>subj</sup> phoned?' 'Mike <sup>subj</sup> phoned.' (NOT <del>'Who did ph</del>	one?')
'Who <sup>oBJ</sup> did you see?' 'I saw Mike <sup>oBJ</sup> .'	
What <sup>50BJ</sup> happened?' 'Something <sup>SUBJ</sup> terrible happened	d.' (NOT <del>'What did happe</del> n?')
'What <sup>OBJ</sup> did he say?' 'He said something <sup>OBJ</sup> terrible.'	
The same thing happens when subjects begin with <mark>w</mark>	vhich, what, or how much/many.
Which team won? (NOT Which team did win?) Who	at country won the World Cup in 1966?
How many people work here? (COMPARE How many pe	eople <sup>obj</sup> did you <sup>subj</sup> see?)
Circle the correct form.	
Who lives / does live in that house?	3 Who married she? / did she marry?
What happened) did happen to Joe?	4 What means this word? / does this word mean?
1 Who plays / does play the piano?	5 What said you? / did you say?
2 What made / did make that noise?	6 Who told / did tell you?
Make present (DD) or past (DA) questions	
Make present (PR) or past (PA) questions.	car below as to Maria?
car / belong / to Mary (which – PR)	car belongs to mary:
	iany glasses did you buy?
6 music / keep / the baby quiet ( <i>what sort</i> – PR)	
n.	Ann Fred
Look at the picture and complete the sente	nces.
Who loves Fred? Alice and Mary.	
1 Who does Fred love?	
2 Ann?	
3love? Joe.	
4 Alice?	
5love? Mary.	Pete Alice
6love? Ann.	Alle
7 Nobody.	Mary Joe
	indiy you sold
Can you write four more questions and ans	wers about the picture?

1 ...... 2 ...... 3 ...... 4 .....

		- La servición de la contrata de la
9		ake questions. Ask about the words in italics. (a) John broke <i>the window</i> . (b) <i>John</i> broke the window.
	1	<ul> <li>(a) What did John break?</li> <li>(b) Who broke the window?</li> <li>(a) Melissa bought a coat.</li> <li>(b) Melissa bought a coat.</li> </ul>
	n	(a) The bus hit <i>that tree</i> . (b) <i>The bus</i> hit that tree.
	Z	
	3	(a) Rose lost the office keys. (b) Rose lost the office keys.
	4	(a) Paul teaches <i>Arabic</i> . (b) <i>Paul</i> teaches Arabic.
	5	(a) <i>Mike</i> hates computers. (b) Mike hates <i>computers</i> .
		*
		rite questions about the pictures, using the words in the box. Do you know the answers? 'hey are at the bottom of the page.)
	-	build ✓ build paint first reach write
	-	Who built the Eiffel Tower?
	1	
	2	
	4	
	1	The North Pole
	2.5	Unital Close
		1. 6 ALC VICE OF CONTRACTOR
		SAMONT REAL
		2 War and Peace
-		3 The Great Wall of China     4 Sunflowers
		<b>/rite questions about books, plays or songs. Ask some people.</b> /ho wrote
	Fo	or the difference between which and what, see page 322. For whom, see page 322.
		Custave Eiffel, 1 Robert Peary in 1909 2 Leo Tolstoy 3 The emperor Shi Huangai (and a lot of other people). 4 van Gogh

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# questions with long subjects Are Ann and her mother and father coming?

Be ca	Be careful when questions have long subjects. The word order does not change.				
ls /	Ann	coming tomorrow?			
Are	Ann and her mother	coming tomorrow?			
Are	Ann and her mother and father and Uno	cle George coming tomorrow? (NOT Are coming tomorrow Ann?)			
		nce leave? (NOT What time the bus will leave?)			
	Bill and Jenny and their children arrived				
		OT Where stayed? OR Where did stay?)			
Is the	food for the children's party ready? (NO	IT Is ready?)			
A M	aka was/na quastions				
- CAP	ake <i>yes/no</i> questions.				
	The boss's secretary travels a lot. Does the boss's secretary travel	a Lot?			
1	Your sister Caroline is talking to the po	olice.			
2	All the people here understand Spanis				
3	Most of the football team played well.				
4	The man at the table in the corner is a	sleep.			
🕗 м	ake questions with question word	s.			
•	The President and her husband live in				
	where do the President and her	husband live?			
1	A ticket for Saturday's concert costs €1	15.			
	How much				
2	The film about skiing in New Zealand	starts at 8.00.			
	What time				
3	The second word in the first sentence				
	What				
4	The man in the flat downstairs wants t				
		· · · ·			
alle					
PI	It the words in the correct order.				
1	laughing / why / all those people / are	/?			
2	is / eating / that big black dog / what /	?			
3	going / everybody in your family / to 9	<pre>Scotland / for Christmas / is / ?</pre>			
4	what game / those children / playing /	' are / ?			
5	Lola and her friends / studying / are / v	where / ?			
6	those people over there / French / are	/ speaking / ?			

# prepositions in questions Who did you go with?

We often put a preposition (with, at, for etc) at the end of a question with Who ...? or What ...?,

specially in spoken English.	
<pre>/ho did you go with? (More natural than With whom did /hat are you looking at? What's she talking about?</pre>	you go?) Who is that letter for?
e also ask questions with Where from? and Where .	to?
Vhere do you come from?' (OR 'Where are you from?') 'N	Aalaysia.' Where shall I send the letter to?
Put in prepositions from the box.	in on to to to with with
What are you lookingfor?	7 Who are you in love now?
1 Who did Ann send the money?	8 What are you all waiting?
2 Where is your wife?	9 Who are you writing?
3 What's your book?	10 Who are you going on holiday
4 What are you thinking?	11 Who shall I send the money?
5 What subjects are you interested?	12 Which flight are you travelling
6 Where does Franz come?	

### Write questions beginning Who/What and ending with prepositions.

•	Who did you buy your car from?	'I bought my car from Henry.'
1		'l'm thinking about life.'
2		'Alice works for my aunt.'
3		'We were talking about you.'
4		'I'm interested in most things.'
5		'We're looking at that aeroplane.'
6		'I stayed with Eric.'
7		'I work with Sylvia.'
8		'I spent the money on travel.'
9		'The film was about Russia.'
0		'You can get tickets from my office.'

In conversation, we often ask short questions with Who/What/Where + preposition.

'I'm going camping.' 'Who with?' 'William wants to talk to you.' 'What about?'

### Complete the questions with one word.

1 'I'm thinking.' '..... about?'

- 2 'l've got a letter.' '..... from?'
- 3 'She hit him.' '..... with?'
- 4 'She's getting married.' '..... to?'
- 5 'I'm going to America.' '..... with?'
- 6 'Jamie's writing a book.' '..... about?'
- 7 'I'm writing postcards.' 'Who .....?'
- 8 'I've bought a present.' 'Who .....?'
- 9 'Jane has arrived.' ..... from?'
- 10 'I've got a question.' '..... about?'
- 11 'Send this box.' 'Where .....?'
- 12 'I'm making a cake.' 'Who .....?'

# negatives Dogs can't fly. I don't know why.

### AM NOT HAVE NOT WILL NOT CANNOT DO NOT

(Auxiliary verbs are: be (am etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might, must.) It is not raining. I have not seen Bill. She cannot understand me.
In conversation we usually use contractions (see page 301):
aren't isn't wasn't weren't haven't hasn't hadn't won't (= 'will not') wouldn't
can't couldn't shan't shouldn't mightn't mustn't
We say I'm not, NOT lamn't. We can also say you're not (= 'you aren't'), he's not, she's not etc.
It isn't / It's not raining. We weren't at home. I haven't seen Ben.
She can't understand me. You mustn't tell anybody. I'm not ready.
Make negative sentences. Use contractions.
Dogs can swim. (fly) Dogs can't fly.
1 Milk is white. ( <i>red</i> )
2 The children are at school. ( <i>at home</i> )
3 Max has been to Japan. ( <i>Egypt</i> )
4 You must give this letter to Erica. ( <i>her mother</i> )
5 I'll be here tomorrow. (in the office)
6 I could talk when I was two years old. (swim)
7 We were in London yesterday. ( <i>Birmingham</i> )
8 I'm Scottish. ( <i>English</i> )
Write five things that you can't do. Here are some suggestions.
dance draw drive play chess/bridge etc play the piano/guitar etc
remember faces remember names ride a horse sing
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths  I can't speak German.
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths          I can't speak German.         1         2
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths  I can't speak German.  There are three things that
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths  I caw't speak German.  There are three things that I can't remember: names, faces,
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths  I caw't speak German.  There are three things that Can't remember: names, faces,
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         Icaw't speak German.       Icaw't speak German.         Icaw't speak German.       Ican't remember: names, faces, and I've forgotten the other.'
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths  I caw't speak German.  There are three things that I can't remember: names, faces, and I've forgotten the other.'
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I can't speak German.       Image: Can't speak German.         1       Image: Can't speak German.         2       Image: Can't speak German.         3       Image: Can't speak German.         4       Image: Can't speak German.         5       Image: Can't speak German.         6       Image: Can't speak German.         7       Image: Can't speak German.         8       Image: Can't speak German.         9       Image: Can't sp
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I caw't speak German.       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         1       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         2       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         3       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         4       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         5       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         5       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         8       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         9       Image: Cambridge o
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I can't speak German.       Image: Can't speak German.         1       Image: Can't speak German.         2       Image: Can't speak German.         3       Image: Can't speak German.         4       Image: Can't speak German.         5       Image: Can't speak German.         6       Image: Can't speak German.         7       Image: Can't speak German.         8       Image: Can't speak German.         9       Image: Can't sp
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I caw't speak German.       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         1       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         2       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         3       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         4       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         5       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         5       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         6       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         7       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         8       Image: Cambridge of the speak German.         9       Image: Cambridge o
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         Ican't speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.         Image: Construction of the speak German.       Image: Construction of the speak German.
speak French/Chinese etc understand maths     I can't speak German.     I can't speak German.   There are three things that   I can't remember: names, faces,   and I've forgotten the other.'   Write five things that you probably won't do next week. Here are some suggestions.   go to New York   get married   get rich   play football   become President   write a poem   buy a car   make a cake   read Shakespeare   climb Mount Everest   I probably won't go to Paris next week.
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I caw't speak German.       Image: Carrier control of the control of t
speak French/Chinese etc       understand maths         I caw't speak German.

#### If there is no auxiliary verb, we use $\frac{do}{does}/\frac{did}{did} + \frac{not}{n't} + \text{infinitive}$ (without to).

*I like* — *I* don't like She knows — *She* doesn't know (NOT <del>She doesn't knows</del>) He arrived — *He* did not arrive (NOT <del>He did not arrived</del>) It rained — *It* didn't rain

#### Make negative sentences.

	Cats eat meat. (potatoes) Cats don't eat potatoes.
•	Cervantes wrote 'Don Quixote'. (Mozart) Mozart didn't write 'Don Quixote'.
1	Shakespeare lived in London. (New York)
2	Dictionaries tell you about words. (phone books)
3	The earth goes round the sun. (round the moon)
4	Most Algerians speak Arabic. (Russian)
5	Fridges keep food cold. (cookers)
	The Second World War ended in 1945. (1955)
7	John knows my parents. (my sister)

#### 💮 Use expressions from the two boxes, and write eight things that you don't do.

buy socks dance go to sleep play football play the violin ride a bicycle speak English sing study mathematics write poetry

after breakfast at Christmas at school in London in the bath in the middle of the night in the middle of the road in the sea on the bus on the telephone on Tuesdays

### 

### Complete these negative sentences. Use *aren't, haven't, doesn't* etc.

- 1 'What's the time?' 'I ..... know.'
- 2 'What was the film like? 'It ..... very good.'
- 3 'Would Stella like some coffee?' 'No, she ...... drink coffee.'
- 4 1 ..... seen William for weeks. Is he OK?
- 5 Pat and Jim ..... very happy with their new car.
- 6 'Can I see you tomorrow?' 'I ..... be here. How about Tuesday?'
- 7 'Was the lesson any good?' 'I ..... understand a word.'
- 8 She ..... buy the coat; it was too expensive.
- 9 The baby ..... got much hair.
- 10 'Can we go?' 'In a minute. I ..... ready.'

→ For more practice with present negatives, past negatives etc, see Sections 2–5.

**NOTE: one negative word is enough (see page 115).** Nobody understands me. (**NOT** Nobody doesn't understand me.) She never phones me. (**NOT** She doesn't never phone me.)

## not and no

#### We use not to make a word, expression or clause negative.

**Not surprisingly**, we missed the train. (NOT No-surprisingly...) The students went on strike, but **not** the teachers. (NOT ... no the teachers.) I can see you tomorrow, but **not** on Thursday. I have **not** received his answer.

#### We use no with a noun or -ing form to mean 'not any' or 'not a/an' (see page 115).

No teachers went on strike. (= There weren't any teachers on strike.) I've got no Thursdays free this term. (= ... not any Thursdays ... ) I telephoned, but there was no answer. (= ... not an answer.) NO SMOKING

#### Put in not or no.

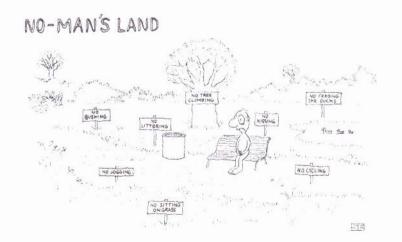
- 1 I work hard, but ..... at weekends.
- 2 She was ..... able to understand him.
- 3 They had ..... butter left in the shop.
- 4 They repaired my watch, but ..... properly.
- 5 We've got ..... time to talk now.
- 6 I can come round, but ..... tonight.
- 7 They did ..... want to help.
- 8 'Do you smoke?' '..... usually.'
- 9 She's a woman with ..... sense of humour.
- 10 'Shall I put some music on?' 'OK, but ...... too loud.'

#### Change not any/a to no.

# I haven't got any money. <u>I've got no money</u>. 1 There aren't any newspapers. 2 There isn't any time.

- 3 There weren't any letters.
- 4 I didn't see a light.
- 5 He didn't give an answer.

### We **don't usually put** *not* with the **subject**. Instead, we use a structure with *it*. *It wasn't Bill* who phoned, it was Pete. (NOT Not Bill phoned ...)



# negatives with nobody, never etc Nobody loves me.

	n make negative sentences with <b>nobody, nothing, nowhere, never, no, hardly</b> (= 'almost not') milar words. With these words, we <b>do not</b> use <b>not</b> or <b>do/does/did</b> .
	dy loves me. (NOT <del>Nobody doesn't love me.</del> )
	d nothing. (NOT He didn't say nothing.)
	ever writes to me. (NOT <del>She doesn't never write to me.</del> )
	nt <b>no</b> money. (NOT <del>I haven't got no money.</del> ) Mardly understand him. (NOT I-can't hardly understand <del>him.</del> )
canr	rarary understand him. (NOT Fearl Chardiy understand him.)
	t the words in order to make sentences.
•	up father early my gets never
1	lives house nobody that in
2	my understand I'll dog never
	children me the nothing told
	money I no have
	the could road I see hardly
2	
Ch	ange the sentences.
	She didn't say anything. (nothing)
1	I didn't see anybody. (nobody)
	We didn't have any trouble. (no)
	My parents don't go out. (never)
	I looked for the dog, but it wasn't anywhere in the house. ( <i>nowhere</i> )
	risolica for the dog, but it was it any where in the nodel (normal of
5	l didn't eat anything yesterday. ( <i>nothing</i> )
	It didn't rain for three months. ( <i>hardly</i> )
	John didn't speak, Mary didn't speak, Bill didn't speak. (nobody)
7	John didn't speak, Mary didn't speak, bil didn't speak. ( <i>Nobody</i> )
) M	ake the sentences negative.
	I drink coffee. (not) I don't drink coffee.
	I drink coffee (never) I never drink coffee.
	Somebody telephoned. (nobody)
1	My grandmother drives fast. ( <i>never</i> )
2	Andrew plays the guitar. ( <i>not</i> )
	When she talked, I understood. ( <i>nothing</i> )
	I like Ann's new shoes. ( <i>not</i> )
	Something happened this morning. (nothing)
	There's somewhere to sit down in the station. ( <i>nowhere</i> )
D	There's somewhere to sit down in the station. ( <i>nownere</i> )
7	
	I watch TV. ( <i>hardly</i> )
8	Somebody wants to play tennis. (nobody)

I never hated a man enough to give him diamonds back. (Zsa Zsa Gabor) I have nothing to say, and I am saying it, and that is poetry. (John Cage) Sometime they'll give a war and nobody will come. (Carl Sandburg)

n some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full orms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# questions and negatives: more practice

電

Q	uestions with and without <i>do/did</i> . Ask about the words in <i>italics</i> .
	She said something. Who said something?
	La la cha cha cauz
1	Julia cooked dinner.
2	Julia cooked <i>eggs</i> .
3	The ball hit Joe.
4	The ball hit Joe.
5	Sarah plays the guitar.
6	Sarah plays the guitar.
7	Beth speaks eight languages.
8	Beth speaks eight languages.
9	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.
10	Dad ate Mum's breakfast.

#### Prepositions in questions. Write questions for these answers.

	I was thinking about you
1	I went with Henry.
2	I'm writing to Margaret.
3	I bought it for my mother.
4	The letter's from my uncle.
5	We were talking about life.
6	I carried it in a paper bag.
7	I sold my car for €1000.
8	She hit him with her umbrella.
9	I sent the flowers to Caroline.
10	She comes from Denmark.
調 Lo	ong subjects. Put in auxiliary verbs to make questions. why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year <u>Why did Jake and his wife go to Moscow</u> last year?
	why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year
Lu	why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year       Why did Jake and his wife go to Moscow         uhy / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year       Why did Jake and his wife go to Moscow         last year?       the 7.15 train / run on Saturdays         why / all those people / looking at me       why / all those people / looking at me
Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu Lu	why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year
1	why / Jake and his wife / go / to Moscow last year

5 what / those children / doing / in the garden
6 what / the first word in this sentence / mean

#### Not, nobody, never etc. Make negative sentences.

۲	I read newspapers. (not) I don't read newspapers.
•	I read newspapers. (never) I never read newspapers.
•	Somebody spoke. (nobody) Nobody spoke.
1	My father eats meat. (never)
2	Peter likes jazz. (not)
3	There's something to do in this town. (nothing)
4	I understood everything. (nothing)
5	Sally plays the piano. (not)
	I go to the cinema. ( <i>hardly</i> )
7	Something happened. (nothing)
8	Somebody wants to talk to you. (nobody)
9	I've got some money. (no)
10	l've got enough money. (not)

#### Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself.

Just	you	wait	and	see	
------	-----	------	-----	-----	--

I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't speak German or climb mountains.
I can see
I'm not going to be a ballet dancer or an opera singer.
I'll never discover a new planet or run a two-hour marathon or write the novel of the century.
But I'll do something good.
Just you wait and see.

Your poem
I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything.
I can't
or
I can see
I'm not going to
or
I'll never
or
or
But I'll
Just you wait and see.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY. Make sure you know the words in the box, Use a dictionary if necessary. Then read statements 1–6 and correct the five that are wrong.

	cat dinosaur elephant grizzly bear hunt insect penguin spider tiger
	Penguins can fly. Penguins can't fly.
1	Adult grizzly bears can climb trees.
2	Elephants live for 50–70 years.
	Tigers live in Africa.
4	The first people hunted dinosaurs.
5	Spiders are insects.
6	Cats can see when there is no light.

Internet exercise. Get information from the internet (in English) about some of the animals in Exercise 6, or about some other animals. Then write some negative information about the animals, using can't, don't, aren't etc.

# questions and negatives: revision test

Co	prrect the mistakes or write 'Correct'.		
•	Speak you English? . Do you speak	10	Did Sarah phoned yesterday?
•	Did you understand?Correct		Not speak English.
1	Does your brother living with you?		I couldn't find my glasses nowhere.
2	Are coming to the party all your friends?	13	I'm no ready yet.
		14	I had no money
3	Did you see Tom yesterday?	15	At what are you looking?
4	Play you football?	16	I never work at weekends.
5	Why you are tired?	17	She didn't say nothing.
6	What time does the lesson start?	18	This sentence is no right.
7	What is your boss like?	19	Nobody didn't help me.
8	Where I can pay?	20	She works in China, but no in Beijing.
	Who did tell you that?		
	21 36 504 YOF		
	omplete the questions.		
	". What time is the film?" 'Eight o'clock.'		' music do you like?' 'Pop.'
	' is that?' 'My brother.'	8	' can you sprint?' 'I can do
	' did you go home?' 'I was tired.'		100m in 12.4 seconds.' •
	' were you born?' 'In Scotland.'		' are your shoes?' '42.'
	' is Roger?' '27 next birthday.'	10	' is John's new girlfriend?'
5	' is her hair?' 'Black.'		'She's very nice.'
6	' are you?' '1 metre 84.'		
49 M	ake negative sentences.		
C.P. IVI	I can speak French. (Spanish) I can't speak Spa	anis	h
	Kelly is at home. ( <i>at work</i> )		
	I've forgotten your name. (your face)		
	Peter drives buses. ( <i>taxis</i> )		
	We went to Spain. ( <i>Portugal</i> )		
	You must use this phone. ( <i>that one</i> )		
	Henry eats fish. ( <i>meat</i> )		
	These people play rugby. (soccer)		
8			
	Luke broke his arm. (his leg)         I'll be at home in the morning. (the afternoon)		
10	Elisabeth reads magazines. (books)		
() M	ake questions with she and her sisters.		
-11P	live in England? Do she and her sisters live i	n Er	ngland?
1	been to America?		

1	been to America?
2	like dancing?
	can swim?
4	be here tomorrow?
5	go to the party yesterday?
	ever studied history?
	can drive?
8	phone last night?
9	talking to Philip when you saw them?
	get married soon?

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *i'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *I am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# **SECTION 9** infinitives and *-ing* forms

### grammar summary

INFINITIVES: (to) go, (to) break, (to) see etc -ING FORMS (ALSO CALLED 'GERUNDS'): going, breaking, seeing etc

We can use both -ing forms and infinitives as subjects (but -ing forms are more common). Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.)

We can use **infinitives** to say **why** we do things. *I got up early to catch the 7.15 train.* 

After some verbs we use infinitives; after others we use *-ing* forms. *I expect to pass my exams*. (NOT *I expect passing* ...) *I'll finish studying in June*. (NOT *I'll finish to study* ...)

We can use **infinitives after some adjectives** and **nouns**. She's **ready to leave**. I'm **glad to see** you. I've got **work to do**.

After **prepositions** we use *-ing* **forms**, not infinitives. You can't live **without eating**. (NOT ... without to eat.) I usually watch TV **before going** to bed. (NOT ... before to go to bed.)

Infinitives often have to before them; but not always. I want to go home, but I can't go now.

# How I stopped smoking

I started smoking when I was 16. I didn't really want to smoke, but at that age it's important to imitate your friends. Once I had started, of course, it was hard to stop. And smoking gave me something to do with my hands. Whenever I met strangers, I couldn't help reaching for a cigarette to give me confidence, to make me look (I thought) cool and sophisticated.

Soon I couldn't get through a day without smoking twenty or thirty cigarettes. But smoking made me feel ill and smell bad, and I was tired of feeling ill and smelling bad. And I realised that it was stupid to spend so much money on a ridiculous habit. So I tried to stop. Hundreds of times. I kept on giving up. I became an expert on giving up smoking. Nothing worked: I always started again.

At last I had a piece of luck. I got terrible bronchitis – so bad that I simply couldn't smoke. It lasted for months. And when I finally recovered, I realised that I had broken the habit. I didn't have to start smoking again. And I never did.



# infinitives: using to I want to go. Must you go?

We usually put to with infinitives.	
l want <mark>to go</mark> home. (NOT <del>l want go home.</del> ) It's impo l telephoned my sister <mark>to say</mark> sorry.	ortant <mark>to get</mark> enough sleep.
But we use infinitives without to after do/does/did in	questions and negatives (see pages 104 and 113).
Does John speak Russian? (NOT Does John to speak	-?) I didn't understand.
We also use infinitives without to after modal verbs must – see Section 6).	(can, could, may, might, will, would, shall, should,
<pre>/ can't swim. (NOT / can't to swim.) Must you go no // Put in to or nothing (-).</pre>	w? We <b>should find</b> a hotel.
<ul> <li>I don't want</li></ul>	<ul> <li>4 It may snow this weekend.</li> <li>5 I must remember phone Andy.</li> <li>6 Do we have buy petrol?</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>It's nice be at home again.</li> <li>Sorry – I can't help you.</li> </ol>	<ul><li>7 Jane seems be tired today.</li><li>8 Thope see you again soon.</li></ul>

### Put in words from the box, with or without to.

	stop	send	see	lend 🗸	learn	help	hear	go	buy	ask 🗸	
those boots?	ou	ere did y	4 Wh		or your h						
from my family soon		pect	5 lex	ney?	ome mor	me se		id	oulev	Can yo	۲
by bus		n't want	6 I da	lish.	Eng		ica	Amer	went to	Maria	1
Tom some money.			7 lm	ing?	the cook	ne with	r		ou	Can yo	2
smoking	nould	really sh	8 You	ent.	r a mom	you fo				I'd like	3

#### We make negative infinitives with not (to) + verb.

Try not to forget your keys. (NOT ... to not forget ...)Be careful not to wake Paul up.I told you not to telephone me here.I'm sorry not to stay longer.The company did not make any money last year.You must not park in front of the school.

### Put in *not to* with infinitives from the box.

break	go to sleep	have	have	laugh 🗸	make	play	see	talk	tell	wake
-------	-------------	------	------	---------	------	------	-----	------	------	------

- Please try ...not to laugh ...... when David sings.
- 1 It's nice ...... a headache any more.
- 2 Be careful ..... those glasses.
- 3 Please try ..... in the lessons.
- 4 Tell the children ..... so much noise.
- 5 I'd like ..... so much work.
- 6 Hannah must learn ..... about herself all the time.
- 7 Remember ..... me up tomorrow morning.
- 8 It's important ...... Sheila about Peter and Sandra.
- 9 We'll be sorry ..... you tomorrow.
- 10 Please tell Amir ..... the trumpet after midnight.

# infinitive of purpose She went to Paris to study music.

#### We use an infinitive with to to say why we do something.

I turned on the TV to watch the news. Joanna went to Paris to study music.

#### Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

ask for buy catch drive finish hear learn meet relax turn on 🗸 wait for

- 1 Oliver got up early ...... Mark to the station.
- 2 I was late, so I ran ..... my bus.
- 3 Ann wrote to me ..... Joe's address.
- 4 I sat in the waiting room ..... the doctor.
- 5 Bob's gone to the airport ..... his uncle.
- 6 I went to town on Saturday ...... a present for my cousin's birthday.
- 7 I stayed up late last night ..... my English homework.
- 8 Alice went to Beijing ..... Chinese.
- 9 I turned on the radio ..... the latest news.
- 10 I listen to music .....

#### Complete the sentences with the infinitives of the verbs in the box.

buy clean earn get get up go 🗸 go make open tell wish

- Mum gave us some money  $\frac{t\rho}{2\rho}$ .......... to the cinema.
- 1 I stood on a chair ..... the top of the fridge,
- 2 Roger's gone to town .....a book.
- 3 We moved closer to the fire ..... warm.
- 4 Use this key ..... the front door.
- 6 Jane got a part-time job ..... some pocket money.
- 7 I bought some good boots ...... walking in the mountains.
- 8 Alice phoned Sue ..... her a happy birthday.
- 9 I put the kettle on .....a cup of tea.
- 10 I set the alarm clock ..... early.

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, using verbs from the box with to.

buy cut dry open see wash 🗸

0	You use soap	Ato wash yourself
1	You use a knife	B things in shops
2	You use a torch	C and close doors
3	You use money	D yourself
4	You use a key	E things into pieces
5	You use a towel	F in the dark

# verb + infinitive I hope to be an airline pilot.

#### After some verbs we use infinitives, usually with to.

I hope to go to Ireland later this year. Did Jeremy agree to help you with your work?

#### Read the texts, and write down the verbs that are followed by an infinitive with to.

I'm eighteen, and I hope to be an airline pilot. My parents have agreed to pay for lessons if I do well in my exams. My brother says girls shouldn't be pilots, but I refuse to listen to him.

When I started to work here, my boss promised to give me interesting work, travelling to Europe and Asia. I expected to enjoy my job. But all my work is boring, and I don't do any travelling. I've tried to talk to my boss, but she doesn't listen. Now I've decided to look for another job.

I've always been afraid of water. Then one day last year I thought, 'I don't want to live like this'. So I found some special lessons for people like me. I'm learning to swim, and next summer I plan to take water-skiing lessons.



I needed to be at work early this morning. But I forgot to set my alarm clock, and I woke up at 7.30 instead of 6.30. Then everything seemed to go wrong. I had no clean shirts, the bus was late, ...

I began to learn karate four years ago, and I've continued to go to lessons twice a week since then. I love it. I've visited some other karate clubs, but I prefer to learn at my own club, because the teaching is so good.

•			0	1	2	1	1	2.	e	0	!		t.	0				
1	•	•	•	•	•					•	*		*		•	•	•	÷
2							9											
3			•	•	•			•	•	•			•		•	•	•	÷
4			•		•	c,			•	•	;			•		•		8
5			•		• )		3		•	÷	4		4	ų,				ŝ
6	•	•	•	•	•	2	2	•		•	2		•	•	•	•	*	•
7																		
8			•	•				•	•		ł					•		ŝ
9	•		•	•	• ?	0		•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	
10			•															
11	12	2			2	3		4		4	2						4	ŝ
12				•	• •			•	•	•	,	•	•	•	•		•	

#### After begin, start, continue and prefer we can also use -ing forms with the same meaning.

When did you **begin to learn / begin learning** karate? I **started to have / started having** these headaches about a month ago. The President **continued to speak / continued speaking** for an hour and a half. I **prefer to live / prefer living** in the country – the city is too noisy.

→ For -ing forms after try and forget, see page 308.

Love . . . Everyone feels it, has felt it, or expects to feel it. (Anthony Trollope, 1883)

We must learn to live together as brothers . . . (Martin Luther King, 1964)

He preferred to be good rather than to seem good. (Sallust, of Cato, 54 B.C.) War will stop when men refuse to fight. (Pacifist slogan, 1936)

> Gentlemen always seem to remember blondes. (Anita Loos, 1925)

Stop the world, I want to get off! (Anthony Newley, 1961)

#### Complete the sentences with verbs from the boxes and to.

		÷	
	•		

1–4: agree decide expect 🗸 need plan 🗸 try

- ALICE: 'The exam seemed easy. I was surprised when I got a low mark.' Alice ...expected to pass the exam; she was surprised when she got a low mark.
- 1 Annie is going to Singapore. A visa is necessary, and she hasn't got one.
- Annie ...... get a visa. 2 JANE: 'Could you possibly lend me £5?'
  - ANDY: 'Sure.'

Andy has ..... lend £5 to Jane.

- 4 Lizzie was expecting a call from Sarah. Sarah rang the number, but it was engaged. Sarah ...... phone Lizzie, but the number was engaged.

5-10: forget learn promise refuse start want

- 5 Oliver lives in the US, but he took all his driving lessons in France. Oliver ...... drive in France.
- 6 PATRICK: 'I will write to you every day, Barbara.' Patrick has ...... write to Barbara every day.
- 7 BOB: 'I was going to post a birthday card to my mother, but I didn't remember.' Bob ...... post his mother's birthday card.
- 8 PHILIP: 'Please, please lend me your car.'

AGNES: 'No, no, no and no.'

Agnes has ..... lend her car to Philip.

- 9 Helen's parents are sending her to England for two weeks. Helen is not happy. Helen doesn't ...... go to England.
- 10 Susan said her first word when she was seven months old. Susan ...... talk when she was seven months old.

11-15: begin continue hope prefer seem

- 11 Mark plays the piano and the trumpet. The trumpet is his favourite. Mark can play the piano, but he ...... play the trumpet.
- 12 Ling usually stops work at 5.00, but yesterday she didn't stop until 7.00. Ling ...... work until 7.00 yesterday.
- 13 John swims every day; he's going to try for the national team next year.
- John ..... be in the national swimming team next year.
- 14 'I'm not sure, but I think Rebecca was worried yesterday evening.' Rebecca ..... be worried yesterday evening.
- 15 Irene sat down to write a letter to her brother yesterday, but she didn't finish it. Irene ...... write a letter to her brother yesterday.

→ For infinitives in indirect speech (after *tell, ask* etc), see pages 125 and 269.

→ For sentences like I don't want to, see page 293.

# verb + object + infinitive He wants me to cook.

We o	ften say that we want somebody to do something.
My b	oyfriend wants me to do all the cooking. (NOT wants that I do all the cooking.)
We c	an use <i>would like</i> in the same way.
	e you to listen to this song. (NOT I'd like that you listen)
M	lake sentences with want or would like.
•	MRS LEWIS: Ann, can you post my letters, please? ( <i>want</i> ) Mrs Lewis wants Ann to post her letters.
1	SARAH: John, could you cook tonight? (would like)
2	POLICEMAN: Please move your car, sir. ( <i>want</i> )
	the man
3	
	Helen's mother
4	BILL: Andy, can you help me? ( <i>would like</i> )
	him.
5	
	lend him
6	JESSIE: Be quiet for a minute, Peter. ( <i>want</i> )
7	DAVID: Alice, can you have dinner with me? ( <i>would like</i> )
8	MIKE: The government should put more money into schools. (would like)
9	LUCY: Bill, stop playing that terrible music. ( <i>want</i> )
10	MARY: Gordon, could you make the bed for once? ( <i>would like</i> )

Different people want Alice to do different things. Complete the sentences.

	buy a better guitar buy him do something 🗸 go to America with him go to Russia with her lend her spend every weekend stop study take him for work
	Everybody wants her to do something.
1	Her boss harder.
2	Her little brother a bicycle.
3	
4	Her boyfriend
5	Her friend Martha a blue dress.
6	Her guitar teacher
7	Her mother at home.
8	Her sister
9	The people downstairs playing loud music at night
10	Her father economics.

### We can use some other verbs like this. For example: ask, expect, help, need, tell.

*I asked Peter to go to America with me.* The doctor **told me to take** a holiday. We don't **expect you to work** at weekends. I **need you to translate** this letter.

C	hange the sentences.
	They thought that we would be late. (expect)
1	l didn't say to Alan 'Go home.' ( <i>tell</i> )
2	I said to Fred 'Please be quiet.' (ask)
3	Do you think she'll phone? (expect)
4	I carried the books with Joe. (help) I helped
5	The policewoman said to me 'Show me your driving licence.' (tell)
	her
6	Ann finished the work with me. ( <i>help</i> ) Ann
7	I said to the shop assistant 'Can you help me?' (ask)
8	You must stay with me. ( <i>need</i> ) I need
9	I think she'll pass her exam. (expect)
10	
D	an's family wanted different things from him. Write sentences.
	His mother: 'Be happy'. His mother wanted him to be happy.
	His grandfather: 'Don't be a politician'
1	His father: 'Get rich'
2	His sister Isabel: 'Be good at sport'.
3	His brother Andy: 'Go to university'.
4	His sister Nicole: 'Don't got to university'.
5	
9	
6	
0	his grandmother. De a doctor.
7	His friend Anthony: 'Have an easy life'.
1	his mena Anthony. Have all easy life.
0	
8	His maths teacher: 'Study maths'.
~	
9	His literature teacher: 'Study literature.'
10	His music teacher: 'Don't study music. Please.'
	,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
N	What do /did noonlowant way to do /bo in life?
v	Vhat do/did people want you to do/be in life? My parents want me to be a doctor.
1	Multiproper upperted we to the due on the section of
•	My cacher wincen me to string engineering.

# it with infinitive subjects It's nice to be here with you.

More	on't often begin sentences with <b>infinitive</b> subjects (like <b>To be</b> here with you is nice). often, we begin with <i>it</i> and put the <b>infinitive</b> later. tructure <i>It is/was</i> etc + adjective + <b>infinitive</b> (with <b>to</b> ) is very common.
It's ni	ce to be here with you. It was good to see you again. It's important to remember people's names.
C	nange these sentences to make them more natural.
	To take your passport is necessary. It's necessary to take your passport.
	To phone John was not necessary.
2	To understand that woman is impossible.
-	
3	To stay in bed late on Sundays is nice.
4	To say 'No' is sometimes difficult.
5	To make our children happy was easy.
6	To tell the truth is sometimes dangerous.
0	
7	To eat out in restaurants is expensive.
8	To learn a foreign language perfectly is almost impossible.
9	To travel is nice.
10	To visit my parents was good.
10	to visit my parents was good.
C) C	omplete these sentences about a summer holiday. Use It was and words from the box.
	a bit hard to understand dangerous to swim expensive to eat impossible to be
	interesting to see nice to have really good to get away 🗸 very easy to make
	the use we fill use and the east of use use
•	It was really good to get away
1	sunshine every day.
2	how other people live.
3	Sometimes the language if people
	talked fast.

4 ..... friends.

- 5 ..... in restaurants, but the food was wonderful.
- 6 The sea was beautiful, but .....
- 7 There were so many things to do that..... bored.

### What do you think? Make sentences beginning *It's*, using words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

always often sometimes never right wrong good bad necessary stupid dangerous

	take exercise
1	tell the truth
2	relax
3	save money
4	give money to beggars
5	drive fast
6	fight
7	be polite to older people
	dress well
9	smoke

10 work very hard .....

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: learning and using a language: what is important?

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then make sentences with *It's important to ..., It's not necessary to ...* or *It's important not to ....* Different answers are possible: for ours, see the answer key.

	bilingual comprehension correctness immediate mistake practise pronunciat regularly results rules translate vocabulary	ion
	EARNING	
•	<ul> <li>study regularly</li></ul>	
	<ul> <li>study six hours a day</li></ul>	
	expect immediate results	
1	I	
	translate everything	
	read a lot	
4	read things that interest you	•••••
PF	PRONUNCIATION	
5	have perfect pronunciation	
	have good enough pronunciation	
G	SRAMMATICAL CORRECTNESS	
	<sup>7</sup> make too many mistakes	
8	speak without mistakes	
-	COMPREHENSION	
9	practise listening to English	
V	/OCABULARY	
0	) know 3,000–5,000 words	
1	know 50,000 words	
2	2 have a good English-English dictionary	
3	3 have a good bilingual dictionary	

We can use **infinitives** (with *to*) after **adjectives** to say **why we feel** *afraid*, *glad*, *happy*, *pleased*, *sad*, *surprised*, *unhappy* etc.

Mum will be glad to find you at home. I'm pleased to meet you.

#### Put in suitable adjectives or infinitives.

- 1 Hello. I'm very glad ..... you. (meet, tell, like)
- 2 I was sorry not ..... Barbara at the party. (forget, talk, see)
- 3 I'm ..... to say that I've got bad news for you. (glad, sorry, surprised)
- 4 I'm ..... to wake her up she always shouts at me when I do. (excited, pleased, afraid)
- 5 We were pleased ...... a free weekend at last. (work, have, know)
- 6 When I got home, I was surprised ...... a policeman in the kitchen. (get, leave, find)
- 7 I was not ...... to hear that I had failed my exam. (surprised, sorry, sad)
- 8 Anna was not ...... to find that the cat had brought a mouse in. (sad, pleased, unhappy)
- 9 I was sorry ...... home and go to America. I knew I would miss my family. (get, stay, leave)
- 10 We're always ..... to go on holiday. (surprised, sad, happy)

We can use **infinitives** (with *to*) after **adjectives** to say **what we think** of things that people do. We do this with adjectives like *clever, crazy, right, silly, stupid* and *wrong.* 

You're crazy to think you can get there in an hour. You were clever to bring an umbrella.

	Wri	te sentences with infinitives.
		Angela carries all her money in one bag. She's wrong. Angela's wrong to carry all her money in one bag.
		Annie got to the airport early. She was clever. Annie was clever to get to the airport early.
	1 E	Eleanor listens to Mark. She's silly.
	2 E	Elizabeth took the train without a ticket. She was wrong.
	3 I	sat on my glasses. I was stupid.
		washed a white shirt with a red one. I was wrong.
	5 Y	′ou believe Luke. You′re silly.
	6 Y	'ou eat a good breakfast. You're right.
	7 Y	/ou lent money to Chris. You were crazy.
	8	thought the new Prime Minister was a good man. I was stupid.
	9 F	Rebecca told Peter she loved him. She was wrong.
1	 10 1	stayed in bed until lunchtime. I was right.

#### After adjective + enough, we can use an infinitive (with to). Note the word order - see page 176. Julie's old enough to drive now. (NOT Julie's enough old ...) John isn't strong enough to carry that.

Make sentences with is/isn't old enough to ....

Alice is 13. Mark is 16. Cathy is 17. John is 18. Liz is 21.

- John is old enough to drive a car. Alice isn't old enough to drive .... a car.
- Alice ...... part-time. 1 2 Alice ...... home.
- 3 Mark ..... school.
- 4 Cathy ...... home.
- 5 Cathy ..... vote.
- 6 John ..... his name. 7 Liz ...... a bus.
- IN BRITAIN AT WHAT AGE CAN YOU ...? When you are vou can 13 work part-time 16 leave home leave school 17 drive a car 18 18 vote 18 change your name drive a bus 21

### Rewrite these sentences using ... enough ... to ....

1	Laurie is not very tall, so he can't play basketball. He's
2	Annie's only 14, so she can't vote.
3	I'm not very strong. I can't open this bottle.
4	My French is good. I can read a newspaper.
5	Peter isn't very old. He can't go out by himself.
6	Rob is intelligent. He will do well at university.

### After too + adjective, we can use an infinitive (with to).

I'm too tired to sing.

Alice was very afraid - too afraid to speak.

### Change two sentences into one. Use too ... to ....

	I'm very sleepy. I can't drive
1	Helen is very ill. She can't work.
2	My grandfather is very old. He can't travel.
	I'm very bored. I can't listen any longer.
	Cara's very hot. She can't play tennis.
	I'm very hungry. I can't work
6	l'm very tired. I can't drive.
	I was very afraid. I couldn't move.
	Molly was very ill last week. She couldn't go to school.
	Our dog's very fat. It can't run.
10	My mother's very deaf. She doesn't understand what people say.

Middle age: the age when you are too old to play tennis and too young to play golf. (Ansel Adams)

# noun/pronoun + infinitive some letters to write

#### We can often use infinitives with to after nouns.

I've got some letters to write. Sorry - I haven't got any money to lend you.

Complete the sentences with the expressions from the box.

dress to wear film to watch friend to see homework to do letters to post shopping to do stories to tell 🗸

- 1 Please can I go out tonight, Dad? I've got no .....
- 2 I'm going to the post office have you got any .....
- 3 I think I'll stay at home tonight. I'm a bit tired, and there's a good ..... on TV.
- 4 Have you got a ..... to the party, or will you have to buy one?
- 6 I'll be home a bit late tonight I've got a ...... after work.

#### We can use infinitives with to after words like somebody, anything and nowhere (see page 172).

Would you like something to drink?I haven't got anything to read; can I borrow this book?There's nothing to eat in the fridge.Those poor people have nowhere to live.

#### Complete the sentences with somebody etc and the verbs in italics.

- 1 I can't go to the party: I don't have (wear) .....
- 2 Could I possibly use this table? I need (work) .....
- 3 When I arrived, there was (do) ...... all the work was finished.
- 4 Everyone in our class was ill today, so our teacher had (teach) .....
- 5 I'll be with you in a few minutes I have (finish) .....
- 6 All my friends are out of town tonight, and I've got (go) .....
- 7 Everybody needs (*love*) ......
- 8 My brother couldn't find (stay) ..... in Bristol.
- 9 I'm looking for (help) ..... me with the disco on Saturday.
- 10 Your arms are full give me (carry) .....

#### NOTHING TO EAT

She had nothing to eat. They made a film about her because she had nothing to eat.

Her husband was killed in the war. They wrote a book about how he was killed in the war.

Her mother and brother were executed by the revolutionaries. There was an opera about it. Both her children died (there was no hospital). You can see the photographs at an exhibition in London.

Then somebody wrote a poem.

Still she had nothing to eat.

### -ing forms as subjects Smoking is bad for you.

We often use -ing forms (also called 'gerunds') as subjects - more often than infinitives. Smoking is bad for you. (More natural than To smoke is bad for you.) Swimming is good exercise. Driving makes me tired. Travelling takes a lot of my time.

#### Complete the sentences.

►	Swimming	is slower than	(running; swimming)
1		is more dangerous than	(reading; skiing)
2		is faster than	(flying; going by train)
3		costs more than	(washing; eating)
4		is easier than	(speaking; writing)
5		is harder than	. (listening; understanding)
б		is more interesting than	(shaving; shopping)
7		is more tiring than	(resting; working)
8		is more dangerous	(smoking; driving)

Make three more sentences like the ones in Exercise 1. Use some of the words in the box.

(	cycling	learning	running	shopping	sleeping	teaching	thinking	writing
1.								
2.								
3.								

#### We can put objects after -ing forms.

Learning languages is difficult and takes time. (NOT ... are difficult ... – learning is singular.) Eating chocolate does not make you slim.

🞒 Complete this list of activities with verbs from the box (use -*ing* forms). Then number them in order of interest: 1 = most interesting (for you); 8 = least interesting.

		2.00						
buy	cook	learn	listen to	look after	meet	play	read	
		meals			la	nguage	s	music friends
In notices, y	ou ofter	see NO	before -ing	forms.				
NO SMOKING	NO	WAITING						

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: public notices Which words go with which notice?

Use a dictionary if necessary.

NO PARKING ..... NO SMOKING ..... NO FISHING ..... NO CYCLING ..... NO CAMPING .....



### preposition + ...ing Thank you for coming.

#### After prepositions, we use -ing forms of verbs.

The children are tired of going to the same place every summer. (NOT ... are tired of to go to ...) She spoke for an hour without using notes. (NOT ... without to use ...) Thank you for coming. I worry about spending too much money. We're thinking of going to Jamaica for Christmas.

→ For spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

#### Put the beginnings and ends together.

0	Every morning, my dad worries about	A	being late for his train
1	Please don't leave without	В	watering my garden while I'm on holiday
2	l don't like the idea of	C	telling me that you're going
3	Are you interested in	D	going to Vienna with us next weekend?
4	I'll pay you for	E	working all my life
5	I never get tired of	F	being able to fly
6	Thank you very much for	G	selling his house
7	My brother's thinking of	Н	drinking lots of coffee
8	l can't work without	1	reading
9	Sometimes I dream of	J	babysitting

#### Add -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

	ask	be 🗸	close	get	go	hear	ski	smoke	wash	watch	work
•	Alice	dream	s ofbei	ng		an	opera	singer, bu	t she can	't sing ver	y well.
1											e's boring us
2	Whic	h Britisl	h Prime I	Ministe	r was f	amous f	or			big cigars	?
3	l'm tł	ninking	of			to G	ireece	next sumr	ner – hav	e you eve	r been there
4	Eric's	interes	ted in				footba	ll on televi	ision, but	not in pla	ying it.
5	Don't	worry	about				the dis	shes – I'll w	ash then	n in the m	orning.
6	She r	an out	without				. the c	loor.			
7	They	didn't p	bay me n	nuch fo	r			in thei	r garden		
8	Jessi	ca and I	Rob are t	alking a	about			m	narried.		
9	l'm n	ot very	good at				., but	l like it.			
10	She t	ook my	bike wit	hout							

People talking without speaking, People hearing without listening, . . . Fools,' said I, 'You do not know Silence like a cancer grows.'

(from 'Sound of Silence', song by Paul Simon)

drawn attended to the original method to the the

#### Make sentences with very / quite / not very good at ...ing or bad at ...ing.

JANE ★		CYCLE	DRAW	SING	KEY
	•	Xaf	0	the second se	★ VERY GOOD
BOB	•	0	*	☆	🔯 QUITE GOOD
SUE \star	*	ŵ	0	**	O NOT VERY GOOD
MARK \star	\$	*	125	O	BAD
(Sue / draw, run) (Mark / swim, run) (Bob / swim, sing) . (Jane / run, cycle) . (Mark / sing, draw)					۱f
se bying and with	outing to s	sav <b>how</b> peo	nle do some		
n my pocket money <mark>by</mark> 1ake sentences wit	working in a	petrol station	n. She pa <b>ing.</b>	issed her exami	s without studying.
h my pocket money by lake sentences wit When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful	working in a h bying c se this morni his morni job. He was i	petrol station or without ng, l didn't cl ng without n the right pl	n. She pa <b>ing.</b> ose the wind closing th lace at the rig	lows. e windows. ght time.	
n my pocket money by lake sentences wit When I left the hous I left the house t	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by	petrol station or without ng, I didn't cl ng without n the right pl being in t	n. She pa <b>ing.</b> ose the wind closing th lace at the rig	lows. e windows. ght time.	
n my pocket money by lake sentences wit When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wonderful	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i nful job by She drank lot	petrol station or without ng, I didn't cl og without n the right pl being in t s of coffee.	n. She pa <b>ing.</b> ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right pu	lows. e windows. ght time.	
n my pocket money by <b>lake sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Alí got a wonder Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by 5he drank lot	petrol station or without ng, I didn't cl og without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st	n. She pa <b>ing.</b> ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right pu	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	
n my pocket money by <b>Take sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Alú got a wonder Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla Charles woke us up	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i nful job by She drank lot asses of water . He turned th	petrol station or without ng, I didn't cl og without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on.	n. She pa ing. ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right plu	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	
n my pocket money by <b>lake sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Alí got a wonder Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i nful job by She drank lot asses of water . He turned th	petrol station or without ng, I didn't cl og without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on.	n. She pa ing. ose the wind closing th lace at the right he right pu cop.	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	
n my pocket money by <b>Take sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Alú got a wonder Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla Charles woke us up	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by 5he drank lot asses of water . He turned the e meaning of	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clong without n the right plotting in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on. a word. Use	n. She pa ing. ose the wind closing th lace at the right he right plu cop.	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	pht time.
n my pocket money by <b>Take sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house the Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wonderful Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla Charles woke us up You can find out the Mike paid for his ne	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by She drank lot asses of water He turned the meaning of w house. He	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clang without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on. a word. Use didn't borrow	n. She pa ing. ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right pla cop. a dictionary.	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	jht time.
a my pocket money by lake sentences wit When I left the house I left the house Ali got a wonderful Alí got a wonderful Alí got a wonder Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla Charles woke us up You can find out the Mike paid for his ne Helen lost her drivin	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by 5he drank lot asses of water . He turned the e meaning of w house. He	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clong without on the right plot in the being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on. a word. Use didn't borrow	n. She pa ing. ose the wind closing th lace at the right he right plu cop. a dictionary. w any money fast, too ofte	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	pht time.
<b>1ake sentences wit</b> When I left the house I left the house the ho	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by She drank lot asses of water the turned the meaning of w house. He ing licence. Sh ework. He dic	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clang without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on. a word. Use didn't borrow ne drove too	n. She pa ing. ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right pla cop. a dictionary. w any money fast, too ofte ny help.	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	jht time.
a my pocket money by lake sentences wit When I left the house I left the house t Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wonderful Ali got a wonderful Ellie stayed awake. Paul drank three gla Charles woke us up You can find out the Mike paid for his ne Helen lost her drivin Carl did all his home	working in a h bying c se this mornin his mornin his mornin job. He was i rful job by She drank lot asses of water the turned the meaning of w house. He ing licence. Sh ework. He dic	petrol station or without ng, I didn't clang without n the right pl being in t s of coffee. r. He didn't st ne TV on. a word. Use didn't borrow ne drove too	n. She pa ing. ose the winc closing th lace at the right he right pla cop. a dictionary. w any money fast, too ofte ny help.	lows. e windows. ght time. ace at the rig	pht time.

I look forward to hearing from you. (NOT Hook forward to hear from you.)

### verb + ...ing I can't help feeling unhappy.

#### After some verbs we use -ing forms.

Some of these verbs are: *keep* (*on*) (= 'continue', 'not stop'), *finish, stop, give up* (= 'stop', for habits), *go*, *can't help* (= 'can't stop myself'), *spend* (time), *mind*, *suggest*, *practise*, *enjoy*. *I can't help feeling unhappy*. Do you *mind sharing a* room? Alex has *gone swimming*.

#### Complete the sentences with -ing forms. (For spelling rules, see page 23.)

- 1 Has Julia finished ..... her photos? (take)
- 2 Robert's given up ..... sweets. (eat)
- 3 'Where's Helen?' 'She's gone .....' (shop)
- 4 I have to practise ..... so I can pass my test. (drive)
- 5 Alec suggested ..... at the supermarket. (stop)
- 6 On Sunday I spent three hours ..... in the garden. (work)

3

6

Write sentences using the expressions in the box with -ing forms.

He can't helpShe enjoys ✓They've just finishedHe's given upThey're goingAll that week, it keptShe's practisingShe's suggesting ✓It's just stopped

WHERE SHALL

WE GO?

HOW AROUT

ROME

She's suggesting going to Rome.

> LOOK- IT'S NOT SNOWING NOW



She enjoys skiing.











.....



4

#### Put in -ing forms of the verbs in the box.

cook eat get up v play shop study wash watch watch wear work

- I hate ...getting up in the winter before the sun is up.
- 1 George dislikes ..... dishes, so he often eats out.
- 2 I don't like playing baseball, but I like ..... it.
- 3 I don't mind ..... late if my boss asks me.
- 4 Joe's two-year-old sister loves ...... with her toys in the bath.
- 5 Jenny and her sister like ...... each other's clothes.
- 6 When I was at school, I hated ..... history.
- 7 | like ..... nature programmes on TV.
- 8 | hate ..... in supermarkets.
- 9 My father likes ....., so we go well together.

# Write about ten things you love/hate etc doing. Use expressions from the box or write about other things.

	cooking dinner for friends listening to loud music travelling to new places	dancing until 1 a.m. lying on a sunny beach walking in the mountain	eating out with fr reading novels s walking in the	swimming in	ng up early the ocean ning old films
	I love walking in the	mountains.		1	1.
1				15	5/11/2/41. 1
2				1/181	A. 1.1.1
3				INTER	11 Hates !!!!
4				Shi I Ku	LAX RITY 1/1
5				1.1/134	HAR DIII
6				THE STAX	12X/1/X //-1/
7	·····			0/11/12/11	with RIMIL
8					A A HE
9					V. K. X. //
10				100	go COH

After love, like and hate we can also use infinitives with to with the same meaning.

/ love to sing. = | love singing. Rachel likes to go out / going out with friends. Mum hates to cook / cooking on an electric cooker.

(BUT NOT I dislike to listen to opera. AND NOT Do you mind to wait for a few minutes?)

## infinitives and -ing forms: more practice

### Adjective or noun + infinitive. Complete the sentences with infinitives.

•	(I saw Daniel.) I was happy . to see Daniel.
•	(I need to do some shopping.) I've got some shopping to do.
	(I found a cat in my bed.) I was surprised
2	(She left her job.) She was wrong
3	(I can't buy a car.) I've got no money
	(I gave Peter money.) I was crazy
5	(We said goodbye to Aunt Emma.) We were glad
6	(I didn't have time to phone you.) I was sorry
7	(I couldn't work because I was tired.) I was too
8	(Somebody must post these letters.) Here are some
9	(Somebody must wash the dishes.) I've got no time
10	(I need a drink.) I need something

#### Infinitive of purpose. Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in infinitives (with to) from the box.

catch cut impress keep lear	n look for make 🗸 make pay stop watch
0 Toby gave Lucy some flowers	Ato make her feel better
1 Alicia went to America	B coffee
2 I switched the TV on	C my head warm
3 I took two aspirins	D English
4 Carolyn went to the kitchen	E the news
5 I'm wearing a hat	F my headache
6 I have to work in the evenings	G food
7 lused a small knife	H for my new car
8 Jack bought some new clothes	I the potatoes into pieces
9 We all ran as fast as we could	J his girlfriend
10 The cat got up on the table	K the train

#### -ing form subjects. Put these activities in order of interest (for you) and make sentences with more interesting.

driving talking to		 olaying chess rds watchin	-	studying English ing	studying history
	g is more ening to n	g than watcl	hing birds	. Watching birds	is more interesting
		 		•••••••	
	••••••	 ••••••	••••••		
•••••		 			
•••••		 •••••		••••••	
•••••	••••••	 			
		 		·····	
	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	 •••••	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	••••••	

#### Grammar in a text. Complete the text with expressions from the boxes.

1–4: glad to leave / happy not to have pleased to find sorry to say unhappy to think

5-7: happy to be pleased to see surprised to find

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: vehicles. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the advertisements and say what the advertisers want you to buy.





Trakta Tractors Quality & Performance Trakta Tractors (UK) Ltd., Belmarsh Court, Belmarsh Park, Cheltenham,



Heathield H300 Hybrid

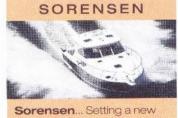


- 4130 Molloy frame - 24-speed Hitalo gears

#### CELGA 113A



1000 hours AF/E. CofA to November. New leather seats



standard in design and performance.



Internet exercise. Find three advertisements on the internet. Write some words from each advertisement, and say what the advertisers want you to do or buy.

## infinitives and -ing forms: revision test

STATISTICS. STATISTICS.

ath p			
	ut in the correct form of the verb.		
	I promise to phone you every day. (phone)		The boss refused to me. (talk)
	She suggested	7	I thought of you a birthday card,
1	We agreed together. (work)		but I forgot. (send)
	I didn't expect John there. (see)		They still haven't finished (talk)
	I'm really going to stop (smoke)		Bill doesn't want with us. ( <i>come</i> )
4	I can't keep – I'm too tired. (drive)	10	Your English is good, but you must practise
5	Iris has decided a car. (buy)		(speak)
C C	orrect the mistakes or write 'Correct'.		
Th College	I want seeing you to see	9	I'm glad to see you.
	Can I help you? Correct.		Learning languages is difficult.
	It's necessary to get a visa.	11	I don't want that you pay for me.
	I hope to not have problems at university.		It's dangerous to smoke.
_			We need getting tickets.
3	I went to Mexico for learning Spanish.		You can't live without to eat.
2	went to mexico for rearring opanish.		l often think about change my job.
4	His parents wanted him to be a doctor.	15	
-	nis parents wanted him to be a doctor.	16	I was wrong to say that to her.
5	You can get there faster by take the train.		I would like see you again.
5	for can get there laster by take the train.		Is it necessary to buy a ticket now?
6	l stopped to smoke last year.	10	is reflected by a decernow.
7	She keeps telephoning me.	10	Try to not forget your keys.
0	We decided going by bus.	20	You must pay now.
() W	/rite sentences with <i>want</i> .		
•	ROBERT PAUL: tell / everything Robert wav	uts P	aul to tell him everything.
1	ANNA> BETH: look after / children		
2	JOE JACK: lend / money		
3	PETER'S MOTHER PETER: clean / room		
4	SAM JOE: go shopping		
10	rite sentences with would like.		
		iper	Olivia to make coffee.
C	TOM — SARAH: pass / newspaper		
6	MIKE'S PARENTS MIKE: study / medicine		
0	3		
7	THE BOSS EMMA: answer / phone		
/	The BOSS EMIMA. answer / phone		
	rite sentences with not want.		
•	CAROL ROBERT: drive fast Carol doesn't w	<i>ant</i>	Robert to drive fast.
8	MARY — JACK: look / her / like that		
9	HARRY> JIM: say / anything / police		
10	MARIA'S MOTHER MARIA: fall in love / pop singe	r	

# SECTION 10 special structures with verbs

Get out!

#### grammar summary

Several different structures are practised in this section:

- structures with get
   It's getting late.
   I got a letter.
- verbs followed by prepositions Look at this.
- phrasal verbs
   Hurry up we're late.
- verbs with two objects Can you lend me some money?

- have something done
   *have my hair cut* every week.

Let's go and see a film tonight.

imperatives
 Come in and have some coffee.





'Don't embarrass me again, spell-checker.'

### structures with get get up; get your coat; it's getting cold

Get has different meanings in different structures. Get + direct object: 'receive, fetch, obtain, buy'
Get your coat – it's time to go. She got a letter from her mother.
Get + adjective: 'become'
It's getting cold. The problem is getting worse.
Get + adverb particle / preposition: 'move, change position'
What time do you usually <b>get up</b> ? It takes me an hour to <b>get to</b> work. I couldn't <b>get on</b> the bus because it was full.
<ul> <li>Complete the sentences using expressions with get.</li> <li>My English is <u>getting better</u>.</li> <li>I need to <u>some</u> out of the bank.</li> <li>Antonia <u>some</u> from Arthur this morning.</li> </ul>

- 4 What are you doing in my room? .....!
- 5 If you go out in the rain without a coat, you'll .....
- 6 If you don't put on a sweater, you'll .....
- 7 We have to ..... the bus at the next stop.
- 8 If I don't have breakfast, I ..... really ..... about eleven o'clock.
- 9 I'm ...... ing ...... , I think I'll go to bed.
- 10 It ..... early in winter.

Get is often used with a past participle. Common expressions: get burnt get dressed get undressed get changed get hurt get lost get married get divorced get broken

This structure can be similar to a passive verb.

Joe **got arrested** for drunk driving last week. (= ... 'was arrested' ... ) We never **get invited** anywhere.

Complete the sentences with get and verbs from the box (use past participles).

	break	burn	change	divorce	dress	invite	lose	marry	send 🗸	steal	undress
•	When h	ne was 1.	2 hegot s	sent		away	to boar	ding scho	ol.		
			the chicker								
2	Anna a	nd Brian	have only b	been marrie	ed for a y	ear, but th	ney're				
3	His glas	ses			wher	n he fell o	ff his bil	ke.			
4	l'm goir	ng to			and	l go to be	d.				
5	Every ti	me he g	oes walking	g in the cou	ntry he .						
6	lf you le	ave you	r bag there	, it'll							
7	That ch	ild takes	hours to				n the m	orning.			
8	'Shall w	e go swi	imming?' 'C	)K. I'll just g	o and				. '		
9	Do you	think we	e'll			to Rog	er's part	y?			
0	Sarah a	nd Olive	r			in a beau	itiful litt	le church	in the cou	ntry	

### verbs with prepositions Wait for me.

#### With some verbs, we put a preposition (for, to, at etc) before an object.

Wait for me! (NOT Wait me!) I listen to a lot of music. (NOT Histen a lot of music.)

Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in verbs from the box.

0-4: ask believe ✓ belong laugh wait 5-9: happened listen look talks think

#### 0 Do you believe

- 1 I know my English is bad, but please don't .....
- 2 If you're late, I'll .....
- 3 If you want anything, just .....
- 4 Does this coat .....
- 5 I've got something important to say: please .....
- 6 Their garden is wonderful. .....
- 7 Megan lives from day to day. She doesn't .....
- 8 He's very boring: he always .....
- 9 Paula's an hour late. What's .....

- A at my pronunciation. .....
- B for it and I'll give it to you. .....
- C for you. .....
- D in life after death? ...?.
- E to you? .....
- F about himself. .....
- G about the future. .....
- H at those roses! .....
- l to her? .....
- J to me. .....

#### Look again at Exercise 1, and write the preposition after each verb.

ask <u>ter</u>	believe	belong	happen	laugh
listen	look	talk	think	wait

You arrive at a place, or in a very big place (NOT to).
The train <b>arrives at</b> Oxford Station at 17.15. When did you <b>arrive in</b> Britain?
You get into/out of a car; you get on/off a bus, train, plane or ship.
I got out of the taxi at Piccadilly Circus. We got off the bus at Trafalgar Square.
Look after = 'watch and take care of'; look for = 'try to find'.
Could you look after the children this evening? I'm looking for my glasses.
You <i>pay</i> a person or a bill; you <i>pay for</i> something that you buy.
'Have you paid Joe?' 'Yes, I paid his bill last week.' Can you pay for the drinks?

#### Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

- 1 Don't wait ..... me if I'm late.
- 2 What time did you arrive ..... the airport?
- 3 Don't listen ..... him he's being stupid.
- 4 I'm looking ...... John's house while he's away.
- 5 We're looking ..... a bigger house.
- 6 Did you ask ..... coffee?
- 7 We need to talk ..... money.
- 8 'Whose is that car?' 'It belongs ...... Carola.'
- 9 I forgot to pay ..... the tickets.
- 10 I don't want to think ..... the future.
- 11 She got ..... her car and drove away.
- 12 I couldn't get ..... the bus because it was full.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full

forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

For more about prepositions, see pages 273–286.

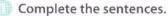
- 13 'What's happened ..... your hand?' 'I cut it on some glass.'
- 14 The children still believe ...... Father Christmas.
- 15 When I got ..... the train I realised I'd forgotten my ticket.
- 16 Can you pay ..... the taxi driver?
- 17 When did you arrive ..... Ireland?
- 18 She got ..... the car and went into her house.
- 19 Why are you looking ..... me?
- 20 We had to get ..... the plane because there was a bomb.

Some verbs have **two parts**. The second part is a small **adverb** (*back, away, out* etc). These verbs are called 'phrasal verbs'. The small adverbs are not the same as prepositions (but some of them look the same).

#### SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS

be in/out/away/back get out get up go away go/come back go on (='continue') go in/out hurry up lie down look out look round sit down stand up turn round wake up

'Can I speak to Ann?' 'She's not in.' **Come back** soon. This headache won't **go away**. **Look out! Come in** and **sit down**. It's time to **get up**.



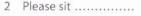
- The door opened and I went ......
- Come.... back and see us soon.
- 1 I usually ..... up at seven o'clock in the morning.
- 2 Shall we ..... out this evening?
- 3 I heard a noise behind me and turned .....
- 4 I can't go ..... Can we stop for a minute?
- 5 I'm going home for a bit. I'll be ..... after lunch.
- 6 Hurry ..... We're late.
- 7 I'm not feeling well. I'm going to ..... down for an hour.
- 8 'l love you.' '..... away!'

#### Look at the pictures and complete the captions.











3 Come .....!

#### Some phrasal verbs can have objects.

#### SOME COMMON PHRASAL VERBS THAT CAN HAVE OBJECTS

bring back fill in (a form) fill up give back give up (= 'stop doing') let in look up (something in a dictionary etc) pick up put down put on (clothes) switch/turn on/off (lights, electrical appliances) take away take off (clothes) throw away turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) wash up (cups, plates etc)

Please fill in this form and post it.I'm trying to give up smoking.I put on my best clothes for the interview.Shall I switch on the lights?Could you turn down the radio?Don't throw away the newspaper.

#### In phrasal verbs, up often means 'completely'.

I'll cut up the wood. Let's clean up the house.

Fill up your glass.

I tore up her letter.

#### Here are some sentences from books and conversations. Complete the phrasal verbs with words from the boxes.

back down down off on on up

- 1 It was a good feeling to put ..... dry clothes and eat a large cooked breakfast.
- 2 Switch ..... the kettle and sit on that chair while I make tea.
- 3 Put ..... your paper and listen to me.
- 4 Switch ..... the lights when you are not using them.
- 5 It's hot in here. Do you mind if I turn ..... the heater a bit?
- 6 If you find a café, could you bring .....a couple of sandwiches?
- 7 I think I'll wash ..... the plates and cups now.

break fill give let look pick take

- 8 If you want to know what grammar is, ..... up the word in the dictionary.
- 9 You can't ..... up a newspaper these days without reading about terrible things.
- 10 She got ill and had to ..... up her job.
- 11 He ..... in six goals in four games.
- 12 Why did you have to ..... in the form?
- 13 I ..... off my shoes whenever I can.
- 14 ..... up the firewood into little pieces, can you?

#### The small adverb can usually go before or after the object.

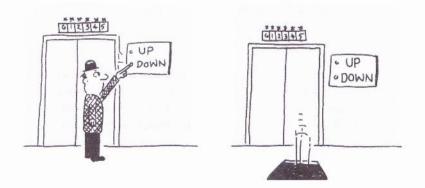
Switch on the kettle. OR Switch the kettle on. He let in six goals. OR He let six goals in.

When the object is a pronoun (him, her, it etc), the small adverb must go after it.

Switch it on. (NOT Switch on it.) He let them in. Take it away.

#### Change the sentences twice.

- She put on her coat. She put her coat on. She put it on.
- I washed up the plates. I washed the plates up. I washed them up.
- 1 Could you turn down the TV?
- 2 You can throw away the potatoes.
- 3 Why don't you take off your glasses?
- 4 Please put down that knife.5 Shall I fill up your glass?
- 6 I'll switch on the heating.



n some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# verbs with two objects Take the boss these letters.

SOME VERBS THAT CAN HAVE TWO OBJECTS

bring	buy	cook	fetch	find	get	give	lend	m	ake	offer	pass
pay	promise	read	send	show	t	each	take	tell	writ	е	

	2 VERB + THING + TO/FOR + PERSON
I <b>gave Peter lunch</b> yesterday. Could you <b>take the boss these letters</b> ? I <b>'ve made everybody tea</b> .	l <b>gave lunch to Peter</b> yesterday. Could you <b>take these letters to the boss</b> ? I' <b>ve made tea for everybody</b> .
ost often, we use verb + person + thing, especially wit	th personal pronouns ( <i>me, you</i> etc).
I wrote her a long letter,	
going to put John to bed and <b>tell him a story</b> . I've l	
<ol> <li>I often read stories to Lucy.</li> <li>Carol teaches small children maths.</li> <li>Ruth showed the photo to the others.</li> <li>Amanda often gives her mother flowers.</li> </ol>	ue tea.
<ul> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> </ul>	
<ul><li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li><li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li><li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li></ul>	person before the thing.
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates —&gt; SALLY: a book&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>&gt; MARY: a camera&gt; JOE</li> </ul>	e person before the thing. wers ————————————————————————————————————
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates -&gt;&gt; SALLY: a book -&gt;&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>-&gt;&gt; MARY: a camera -&gt;&gt; JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> </ul>	person before the thing.
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates —&gt; SALLY: a book&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>&gt; MARY: a camera&gt; JOE</li> </ul>	e person before the thing. wers LUKE: a sweater
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates -&gt; SALLY: a book -&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>-&gt; MARY: a camera -&gt; JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li></ul>	e person before the thing. wers ANNIE: a picture LUKE: a sweater 3 4 5
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates -&gt; SALLY: a book -&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>-&gt; MARY: a camera -&gt; JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li></ul>	e person before the thing. wers ANNIE: a picture LUKE: a sweater 3 4 5
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flow</li> <li>→ MARY: a camera → JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li></ul>	e person before the thing. wers
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates -&gt; SALLY: a book -&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>-&gt; MARY: a camera -&gt; JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li></ul>	e person before the thing. wers ANNIE: a picture LUKE: a sweater 3 4 5 ds from the box? wur ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar')
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates → SALLY: a book → FRED: flow</li> <li>→ MARY: a camera → JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li> <li>Can you complete these quotations with word</li> <li>buy find give give lend ✓</li> <li>Friends, Romans, countrymen,lend me yo</li> <li>1 A four-year-old child could understand this. Run of</li> </ul>	e person before the thing. wers ANNIE: a picture LUKE: a sweater 3 4 5 ds from the box? wur ears. (Shakespeare: 'Julius Caesar')
<ul> <li>7 I found a hotel room for my parents.</li> <li>8 Pass this paper to Mr Andrews.</li> <li>9 Luke has written a letter to Joy.</li> <li>10 I want to get a good watch for Peter.</li> <li>Who gave who what? Write sentences. Put the</li> <li>JOE: chocolates -&gt; SALLY: a book -&gt; FRED: flow</li> <li>-&gt; MARY: a camera -&gt; JOE</li> <li>Joe gave Sally chocolates.</li> <li>1 Sally</li></ul>	e person before the thing. wers

If you have something done, you don't do it yourself; somebody does it for you.I have my hair cut every week.I have my car serviced at the garage every 10,000 km.



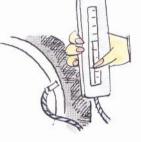


Fred cuts his hair himself.

Eric has his hair cut at Franco's.

Ann is very practical: she likes doing things herself. Bill is not so practical: he has things done by other people. Complete the sentences.







	Ann checks her oil herself.	Bill has his oil checked	at the garage.
1	Ann checks her tyres herself.	Bill	at the garage.
2	Ann changes her oil herself.	Bill	at the garage.
3	Ann repairs her car herself.	Bill	at the garage.
4	Ann cleans her shoes herself.	Bill	on the way to work.
5	Ann does the gardening herself.	Bill	for him.
б	Ann types her letters herself.	Bill	by his secretary.

# Make sentences with should have ... John's car is running badly. (check) ... He should have it checked.

- 1 Mary's watch isn't going. (*repair*)
- 2 Mike's trousers are dirty. (clean)
- 3 Steve and Helen's kitchen window is broken. (repair)
- 4 Pete's hair is getting very long. (*cut*) .....
- 5 Tom and Janet's new car has done 10,000 km. (service)
- 6 Emma's eyes are giving her trouble. (check)
- 7 Jasper's roof lets water in. (repair)
- 8 Daniel's phone makes funny noises. (check)

## imperatives Come in. Don't worry.

Imperatives are like infinitives without to. We use them, for example, to tell people what to do, to give them advice, or to give them friendly invitations.

Turn left at the next crossroads.Always hold the tennis racket like this. (NOT Hold always ...)Pay here.Try again.Come and have dinner with us.Have some more meat.

#### Negative imperatives begin do not, don't or never.

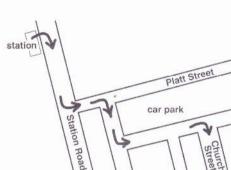
Please do not park here. Don't listen to him.

Never tell her that she's wrong. (NOT Tell her never ...)

#### Which words go with which picture?

- DRIVE SLOWLY .....
- 1 TURN LEFT .....
- 2 DON'T TOUCH .....
- 3 DO NOT PICK FLOWERS .....





How do you get from the station to Church Street? Complete the directions.

go 🗸 go take turn turn turn

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common imperative expressions

Make sure you know the expressions in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences.

	1 5: Be careful! Have a good journey/holiday Help! Hurry up! Look out! ✓ Sleep well 6–11: Come in Don't forget Don't worry Follow me Have some (more)
	Make yourself at home Sit down Wait for me!
	Look out! There's a child crossing the road in front of you!
1	
2	There's ice on the steps.
3	l can't swim!
4	'' 'Thanks. I'll send you a postcard.'
5	'I'm going to bed.' 'Goodnight
6	
7	l can't walk as fast as you!
8	coffee.' 'No thanks. If I drink any more I won't be able to sleep.'
9	'I'd like to speak to the manager, please.' 'Of course, sir
10	'Jill's gone into hospital.' '
11	Hello in and in and
	Please

We don't use imperatives, even with *please*, to ask for things politely (see page 86). Could you tell me the time? (NOT Tell me the time, *please*.)

## let's (suggestions) Let's go.

We can make suggestions with *let's* (or *let us* – very formal) + infinitive without to.

I'm tired. Let's go home. Let's eat out this evening.

The negative is *Let's not* ... or *Don't let's* ... (informal).

Let's not go camping this summer. Let's not tell John about Mary and Pete. Don't let's invite that fool Raymond.

<ul> <li>Look at the pictures and complete the suggestions, using Let's (not)</li> <li>Let's go for a walk.</li> <li>1 Let's not</li></ul>		
5 6 7 watch 8 go	2 Contraction of the second se	

Let's see what's on TV.



#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: cities and countries

Do you know the English names for cities and countries round the world? Complete the conversations using names in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Athens Copenhagen Istanbul Lisbon 🗸 Marrakesh Bangkok Beijing Mexico City Moscow Prague Vienna Warsaw Rio 'I'd like to visit Portugal'. 'Let's go to Lisbon.' 1 'I'd like to visit Greece.' 'Let's go to ......' 2 'It would be nice to see Denmark.' 'Let's go ..... 3 'I want to see Austria.' 'Let's ......' 4 'I've always wanted to see the Czech Republic.' 5 'l'm interested in seeing Poland.'..... 6 'What about a holiday in Russia?'..... 7 'Morocco sounds interesting.' 8 'I've never been to Turkey.' ..... 9 'What about Thailand this year?' ..... 10 'I'd love to see China.' 11 'It's time to see Mexico.' 12 'Brazil this summer. OK?' .....

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *l am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### special structures with verbs: more practice

I'm really tired. I'm going to ...... down for half an hour.

Phrasal verbs. Put in the missing words.

1	Hurry! We're late.
2	Don't turn, but somebody is following us.
3	Can you in this form?
4	The radio's too loud. Can you it down?
5	It's dark. I'll switch the lights.
6	It's cold on your coat.
7	Shall I wash these plates?
8	She borrowed my shoes and never brought them
9	'I must talk to you.' 'No!away!'
10	It's 6.30. Time to up.
PI	nrasal verbs with objects. Change the sentences twice.
•	He put on his glasses. He put his glasses on. He put them on.
	I turned the radio down. I turned down the radio. I turned it down.
1	Could you wash up the cups?
2	You can throw away those papers.
	t
3	Why don't you take your coat off?
4	You need to fill in this form.
5	Please bring my bicycle back
6	Let me fill up your glass.
7	Please put down that gun.
8	I'll switch the TV on.
9	Can you cut up the onions?
10	Pick your coat up
d'h v	the with the achieves. Changes the structure
	erbs with two objects. Change the structure.
	Send John this letter. Send this letter to John. Can you make some coffee for me? Can you make me some coffee?
•	
1	
	Sarah bought ice creams for the children.
3	Let's send Granny a postcard.
4	Ruth showed the photo to the others.
5	I gave some flowers to the secretary.
6	Can you find John's address for me?
7	I found a hotel for Aunt Patsy.
8	Take these papers to Mrs Lewis.
9	I've given George all the information.

10 I want to buy a nice present for my sister.

#### Imperatives. Complete the sentences.

- Be ...careful. with those glasses they break easily.
- 1 ..... in and close the door.
- 2 Don't ..... Everything will be all right.
- 3 Goodbye! .....a good journey.
- 4 Look .....! There's a car coming.
- 5 ..... yourself at home.
- 6 .....! I can't turn the water off!
- 7 Goodnight. ..... well.
- 8 'Where's the Director's office?' 'I'll show you. ..... me.'
- 9 ' .....a good holiday.' 'Thanks. I'm sure we will.'
- 10 Don't ..... to phone us when you arrive.

#### Grammar in a text. Read the text and put in imperatives from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

1–5: fetch hold let pick put6–10: continue get get open throw11–16: blow drink find kneel remove telephone

#### Instructions for giving a cat a pill

up the cat. 2 ..... it in your left arm like a baby.
 ..... your right forefinger and thumb at the sides of the cat's mouth and push the mouth open, holding the pill in your left hand. Put the pill into the cat's mouth.
 ..... the cat close its mouth and swallow the pill.

Pick up the pill from the floor and 5 ..... the cat from behind the sofa. Pick up the cat. Hold it in your left arm like a baby and 6 ..... as before.

10 ..... the pill out of the goldfish bowl. Get the cat down from the top of the wardrobe. Wrap the cat in a towel. 11 ..... on the floor, holding the cat firmly between your knees. Put the pill in the end of a drinking straw. Force the cat's mouth open with a pencil and 12 ...... down the drinking straw.

16 ..... a new home for the cat. Get a dog.

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the following phrasal verbs: *pick up, bring back, switch on, throw away, fill up*. Write them here.

### special structures with verbs: revision test

#### Which is/are correct? Circle the letter(s) of the correct sentence(s). One, two or more answers may be correct for each question.

- 1 A He picked up the plate.
  - B He picked the plate up.
  - C He picked up it.
  - D He picked it up.
- 2 I don't repair my car myself. I ...
  - A repair it in the garage.
  - B let it repair in the garage.
  - C let repair it in the garage.
  - D have repaired it in the garage.
  - E have it repaired in the garage.
  - F have it repair in the garage.
- 3 A I sent some flowers to my mother.
  - B I sent some flowers my mother.
  - C I sent to my mother some flowers.
  - D I sent my mother some flowers.
- 4 A DO NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - **B** NOT OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - C DON'T OPEN THIS WINDOW
  - D OPEN NOT THIS WINDOW
- 5 A Let's to play cards.
  - B Let's playing cards.
  - C Let's play cards.

Put in the correct preposition or – (= no preposition).

- 1 What's happened ...... Tom? He's an hour late.
- 2 I usually arrive ..... the station at 8.30.
- 3 'Have you lost something?' 'I'm looking ...... my keys.'
- 4 'You look happy.' 'Yes, I'm thinking ..... my holiday.'
- 5 I had to wait ..... the bus for half an hour this morning.
- 6 Have you paid ..... the tickets?
- 7 Could you look ..... the children for half an hour?
- 8 Who's paying ..... the bill for lunch?
- 9 My parents don't like me to ask ..... money.
- 10 I got ..... the bus and sat down.
- 11 Listen ..... this it's really interesting.
- 12 Anna still believes ..... Father Christmas.
- 13 Do you belong ..... a political party?
- 14 I'll sing, but please don't laugh ..... me.
- 15 I need to talk ..... the secretary.
- 16 Look .....! There's your brother.
- 17 I send money ..... my parents every week.
- 18 You can pay ..... the driver when you get ..... the bus.
- 19 They talked ..... sport all evening it was very boring.
- 20 My girlfriend comes ..... Ireland.

- 6 A Let's not go home.
  - B Let's don't go home.
  - C Not let's go home.
  - D Let's go not home.
- 7 A l got out the bus at the station.
  - B I got off the bus at the station.
  - C I got on the bus at the station.
  - D I got down from the bus at the station.
- 8 A Don't listen to!
  - B Don't listen him!
  - C Don't listen!
  - D Don't listen to him!
- 9 A They're looking at a hotel.
  - B They're looking a hotel.
  - C They're looking for a hotel.
  - D They're looking to a hotel.
- 10 A l'm getting cold.
  - B Can you get some bread?
  - C Get out of here.
  - D Let's get married.

## SECTION 11 articles: a/an and the

#### grammar summary

A/An shows that we are talking about one person or thing. We often use a/an:

- in **descriptions** She's **an** interesting person. He's got **a** loud voice.
- when we say what something is, or what somebody's job is. This is a return ticket. I'm an engineer.

The usually means 'You know which one(s) I'm talking about'. Can I use the phone? (The hearer knows that this means 'your phone'.)

Nouns used without articles often have a special meaning. *I dislike cats*. (This means 'all cats'.)

Most Western European languages have articles. So if you speak (for example) French, German, Spanish or Greek, you will not have too many problems with *a/an* and *the*: they are used mostly in the same way as your articles. There are a few differences: see pages 156–161. If you speak a non-Western-European language (for example Russian, Polish, Arabic, Chinese, Japanese), you may find articles more difficult. Study all of this Section, especially pages 154–155.

There is a mountain far away. And on the mountain stands a tree. And on the tree there is a branch. And on the branch there is a nest. And in the nest there is an egg. And in the egg there is a bird. One day the bird will fly. One day we will be free.

(old folk song)

An Englishman, an Irishman, a Scotsman and a Welshman went into a pub. The Englishman . . .

Shut the door and turn off the lights when you go, will you?

We've got offices in Australia, Canada and the United States.

He's a doctor and she's an engineer.

There's some bacon in the fridge if you're hungry.

My wife's from California.

I'll meet you at the Palace Hotel in Clark Street at 8.00.

He's got a very nice smile.

You have beautiful eyes.

We went to the Czech Republic on holiday last year.

I'm afraid Ann's in hospital again.

We both studied at Birmingham University.

People are strange.

### a/an; pronunciation of the

Imaddress       an egg       an idea       an old house         Put in a or an.	Ve use an before a vo	wel sound (for example	e, the normal sound o	f a, e, i, o, u).	
Put in a or an.         •, holiday       • Althened and the product of					
<ul> <li>A. ticket</li> <li>A. t</li></ul>	-				
4, holiday       5, exercise       6 day       7 American       8 student         We choose a or an because of pronunciation, not spelling.       a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /auo/ (the h is silent, so hour is like our)         a nuncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'you-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book         a norange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')         Put in adjectives.         > a car (expensive)         a we expensive car         5 an uncle (rich)         a naddress (new)         a view address         6 a job (easy)         1 a friend (old)         2 an apple (big)         3 a child (unhappy)         9 a book (small)         4 a train (early)         Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /do/ (like the end of mother).         Before a vowel sound we say/di/ (it rhymes with see).         Pronounce:       the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end of the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform	197	0.0	. Internation		
We choose a or an because of pronunciation, not spelling.         a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /aua/ (the h is silent, so hour is like our)         a nuncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'you-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book         a norange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')         Put in adjectives.         a car (expensive)       Aw expensive car         b a car (expensive)       Aw expensive car         car (expensive)       5 an uncle (rich)         a anddress (new)       A wew address         car (expensive)       6 a job (easy)         car an apple (big)       8 a language (European)         g a child (unhappy)       9 a book (small)         4 a train (early)       9 a book (small)         Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /ða/ (like the end of mother).         Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).         Pronounce:         the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform					
<ul> <li>a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /aua/ (the h is silent, so hour is like our)</li> <li>an uncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'you-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book</li> <li>an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')</li> <li>Put in adjectives. <ul> <li>a car (expensive)</li> <li>awew address</li> <li>a job (easy)</li> <li>an apple (big)</li> <li>a child (unhappy)</li> <li>a train (early)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /ða/ (like the end of mother). Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).</li> <li>Pronounce: <ul> <li>the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	4 nonday	o exercise	6 uay	/ American	o student
<ul> <li>a house, a hand, a head BUT an hour /aua/ (the h is silent, so hour is like our)</li> <li>an uncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'you-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book</li> <li>an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')</li> <li>Put in adjectives.</li> <li>a car (expensive)</li></ul>	We choose a or an be	cause of pronunciation	, not spelling,		
<ul> <li>an uncle, an umbrella, BUT a university (pronounced 'you-niversity'), a European (pronounced 'you-ropean'), a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book</li> <li>an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun)</li> <li>Put in adjectives.</li> <li>a car (expensive)</li></ul>				is like our)	
<ul> <li>a uniform (pronounced 'you-niform'), a useful book</li> <li>an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')</li> <li>Put in adjectives. <ul> <li>a car (expensive)</li> <li>aw expensive car</li> <li>an address (new)</li> <li>a new address</li> <li>a job (easy)</li> <li>an exercise (hard)</li> <li>an apple (big)</li> <li>a child (unhappy)</li> <li>a train (early)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /ðo/ (like the end of mother).</li> <li>Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).</li> <li>Pronounce: <ul> <li>the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform</li> </ul> </li> </ul>					nced 'you-ropean'),
an orange, an opera, an office BUT a one-pound stamp (pronounced 'wun')         Put in adjectives.         > a car (expensive)				//	
<ul> <li>a car (expensive) an expensive car</li> <li>an address (new) a new address</li> <li>a friend (old)</li></ul>				ed ' <b>w</b> un')	
<ul> <li>a car (expensive) an expensive car</li> <li>an address (new) a new address</li> <li>a friend (old)</li></ul>					
<ul> <li>an address (new)a wew address</li> <li>a friend (old)</li></ul>	Put in adjectives	j.			
1       a friend (old)       7       an exercise (hard)         2       an apple (big)       8       a language (European)         3       a child (unhappy)       9       a book (small)         4       a train (early)       9       a book (small)         Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /ðo/ (like the end of mother).       Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).         Pronounce:       the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform	🕨 a car (expensive	) an expensive car	5 an		
<ul> <li>2 an apple (big)</li></ul>	🕨 an address ( <i>nev</i>	v) a new address	6 а јс	b (easy)	
<ul> <li>3 a child (unhappy)</li></ul>	1 a friend (old) .			exercise (hard)	
<ul> <li>4 a train (<i>early</i>)</li> <li>Before a consonant sound we pronounce <i>the</i> as /ðɔ/ (like the end of <i>mother</i>).</li> <li>Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with <i>see</i>).</li> <li>Pronounce: the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform</li> </ul>	2 an apple (big)		8 a la	nguage (European)	
<ul> <li>4 a train (<i>early</i>)</li> <li>Before a consonant sound we pronounce <i>the</i> as /ðo/ (like the end of <i>mother</i>).</li> <li>Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with <i>see</i>).</li> <li>Pronounce: <ul> <li>the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform</li> </ul></li></ul>	3 a child (unhapp	y)		ook (small)	
Before a consonant sound we pronounce the as /ðo/ (like the end of mother).         Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).         Pronounce:         the beginning       the woman         the child       the time       the place         the old man       the office       the address         the hour       the university       the European		500 C			
Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).  Pronounce: the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform	11 - 20-49 dona október y restrandor "Jeren				
<ul> <li>Before a vowel sound we say /ði/ (it rhymes with see).</li> <li>Pronounce: the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform</li> </ul>	Refore a consonant s	ound we pronounce the	as /ða/ (like the end (	of mother).	
Pronounce: the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform				on moundary.	
the beginning the woman the child the time the place the house the horse the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform	1				
the end the old man the office the address the American the hour the one the university the European the uniform	Pronounce:				
the hour the one the university the European the uniform	i follounce.	the woman the child	the time the pl	ace the house the	e horse
dhe i	030*		e address the Ame	erican	
Ha.	the beginning t	man the office th			
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: seven useful things	the beginning t the end the old			niform	



> You use ... A tin-opener ..... to open tins.

1 You can use ..... when you send a letter.

- 2 ..... is useful for mathematics.
- 3 You can see at night with .....

4 You can put nails into wood with .....

5 ..... is useful for cutting things.

6 ..... wakes you up in the morning.

### countable and uncountable a car, cars; petrol

**Countable nouns** are words like *car*, *book*, *chair*. They are the names of things that you can count: you can say 'one car', 'two books', 'three chairs'. They can be **singular** (*a cat*, *one book*) or **plural** (*two chairs*, *lots of books*).

Uncountable nouns are words like *smoke, rice, water, petrol*. These are things that you can't count: you can say 'smoke', but not 'one smoke' or 'two rices' or 'three waters'. Uncountable nouns are only singular. (For more information, see page 198.)

#### Singular countable, plural countable or uncountable? Write 'SC' (singular countable), 'PC' (plural countable) or 'U' (uncountable) against the words.

bird SC.	bottles PC.	blood . <mark></mark> .	children	flower	love
meat	mountains	music	nose	oil	photos
piano	river	snow	songs	table	windows

We use *a/an* only before singular countable nouns. (*A/An* is a bit like *one*: you can't say *one houses* or *one air*.)

SINGULAR COUNTABLE	PLURAL COUNTABLE	UNCOUNTABLE	
a house	houses (NOT <del>a houses</del> )	air (NOT <del>an air</del> )	
a car	cars	petrol	

#### Put in *a/an* or nothing (–).

- Jake's father makes ..... films.
- I need .....<sup>9</sup>.... new bicycle.
- 1 I never drink ..... milk.
- 2 Jane is ..... old friend.
- 3 Most ..... cars use ..... petrol.
- 4 I often listen to ..... music.

- 5 The police are looking for him with ...... dogs.
- 6 My room has got ..... really big window.7 That child wants ..... new shoes.
- 8 She was wearing ..... orange skirt.
- 9 They live in ..... very nice house.
- 10 I never have ...... sugar in ...... coffee.

We often use an **uncountable noun** (without *a/an*) to say what something is **made of**.

The walls in the house were all **made of glass**. This sweater is **made of silk**.

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials. Put in words from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	brick	cotton	glass	leather	metal	plastic	silk	stone	wood	wool	
•	Shoes are made of leather or plastic.						3 Hou	ses are m	ade of		
1	Socks are made of						4 Shir	ts are mad	de of		
2	Cars ar	re made of	f				5 Tabl	es are ma	de of		

We use one instead of a/an when the exact number is important. Compare:

Can I have a cheese sandwich? (NOT Can I have one cheese sandwich?) No, I asked for one sandwich, not two! I only want one sandwich.

#### Put in *a/an* or one.

- She's got ...... nice coat.
- She's only got ... coat.
- 1 Can I have ..... boiled egg?
- 2 No, I said ..... egg, not two.

- 3 I've got ..... problem. Can you help?
- 4 She's only got ..... child.
- 5 John's got ..... beautiful sister.
- 6 ..... girlfriend is enough.

### the and a/an Let's see a film. I didn't like the film.

We use *the*, not *a/an*, to talk about somebody or something, when the speaker and hearer **both know about** this person or thing; when they both know **which one(s)**. In other cases we use *a/an*.

Can I borrow the car?



Could you close the door? (You know which door.) I'm going to the post office. (You know which one – the one near here.) Can I use the phone? ( = 'your phone') I didn't like the film. (= 'the one that we saw') He looked at the moon. (There's only one.) She's in the front room. (You know which room – I'm telling you.) She came on the 8.15 train. (You know which train – I'm telling you.) How much is the red coat? (You know which coat – I'm telling you.)

#### Put in a/an or the.

- I walked up to her house, rang ...... bell and opened ...... door.
- He lives in ....... small village.
- 1 Look that's John walking across ..... street.
- 2 Can I use ..... bathroom?
- 3 I need ..... English-French dictionary have you got one?
- 4 I know ...... good restaurant shall I reserve .......... table for tonight?

Could you open a window? (I don't mind which window.) Is there a post office near here?

Have you got **a phone**? Let's go and see **a film**. He looked at **a tree**. I need **a room** for tonight.

She arrived in an old taxi.

I've just bought a new coat.

- 5 Where's ..... teacher? She's very late.
- 6 I want ..... long holiday in ..... sun.
- 7 Who's ..... man in your office?
- 8 I'm leaving on ...... 4.30 bus.
- 9 'Which is your coat?' '..... green one.'
- 10 Claire's looking for ..... new job.
- 11 Why are you looking at ..... sky?
- 12 I'll meet you at 4.30 at ..... bus stop outside ......... police station.

#### We use the before only; first, second etc; and superlatives like oldest, most (see page 223).

She's **the only** woman for me. I live on **the second** floor. It's **the oldest** restaurant in Glasgow. He bought **the most expensive** one.

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in a/an or the.

 0
 Sarah's ...the...
 A
 cup of coffee? .....

 1
 I've got ......
 B
 first train tomorrow morning? .....

 2
 John's ......
 C
 hottest day of the year. .....

 3
 What time is ......
 D
 most intelligent person in our family. ....

 4
 Yesterday was .......
 E
 only boy in the class. .....

 5
 Would you like .......
 F
 present for you. .....

#### 154 ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE

We often use *a/an* to talk about a person or thing for the first time; and *the* when we talk about the person or thing again.

A man walked up to a policeman. The man took out a map and asked the policeman ...

#### Put in *a/an* or the.

#### A BAG IN A BAG

This is ......... true story. Once I went into 1 ......... big sports shop because I wanted 2 ......... sports bag. 3 ......... assistant came up to me, and I told him what I wanted. 4 ....... assistant brought me three different bags. I chose 5 ........ smallest one and paid for it. 6 ....... assistant put 7 ....... bag in 8 ....... large plastic bag. I told him one bag was enough, and asked him to take 9 ....... bag out of 10 ....... other bag. He did so, but he looked very unhappy as I walked out of 11 ....... shop.

REMEMBER: we don't use *a*/*an* with **plurals**. We can use *the* with **plurals**.

She's wearing black shoes. (NOT ... a black shoes.) She bought the shoes last week.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: animals, birds and other creatures

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then look at the groups of pictures and complete the sentences. Put in *a/an* or *the*.

-								_		
â	ant	camel 🗸	eagle	frog	monkey	mouse ( <i>plural</i> mice)	parrot	pigeon	snake	spider
	OUP A									
• 1	This is	acam	eL It's	the	bigges	t animal inthe	group.			
						animal in o				
						elligent	50			
	OUP B									
			lt's		fastest b	ird in grou	n			
						e and yellow				
	11115 13	*	11.5		smanest					
GRC	DUP C									
5 7	This is	5	lt's		only crea	ature with eight legs in				
7	This is	5	lt's			creature with six le	gs in			
3 1	This is	5	lt's			with no	legs			
9 7	This is	5	lt's			green creature				
			2		3	4		×		9
and the	4	v _ ] ]		1	5			1	The second	+ am 124

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *I am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE 155

### a/an She's a doctor.

We use *a/an* when we say what something is, or what job somebody does. *A pony is a small horse.* Canada is a big country. My sister is an electrician. REMEMBER: we don't use *a/an* with plurals.

Ponies are small horses. (NOT ... a small horses.)

Say what these people's jobs are. Use the words in the box.

		✓ driver hairdresser ssistant teacher
•	She's a doctor.	
1	He's a	
2	He's	
3	She's	
4	Не	3 4 0 3 5
5	She	
6	She	
7	Не	
8	She	
9	Не	

Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

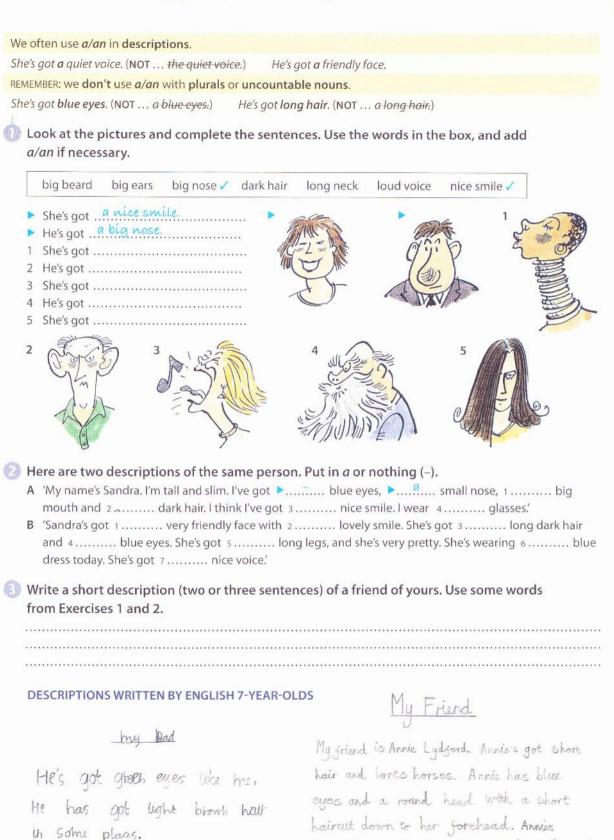
1	 is a good film.
2	 is a bad film.
3	 is a terrible singer.
4	 is an interesting book.
5	 is a great man/woman
6	 are beautiful animals.
7	 is a/an

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: kinds of things

Look up these words in a dictionary if necessary: building, (musical) instrument, vehicle, tool, container. Now change these to true singular sentences.

- Cars are buildings. A car is a vehicle.
- Houses are instruments. A house is a building.
- 1 Bags are vehicles. .....
- 2 Hammers are containers.
- 3 Pianos are buildings. .....
- 4 Buses are tools.
- 5 Screwdrivers are containers.
- 6 Guitars are tools.
- 7 Boxes are instruments.
- 8 Hotels are vehicles. .....

### a/an: describing people She's got a nice smile.



always happy and the makes a really good friend.

#### ARTICLES: A/AN AND THE 157

We do not normally use *the* to talk about people or things in general. *The* does not mean 'all'. We use *the* to talk about particular people or things (see page 154).

GENERAL	PARTICULAR
People are funny.	The people in that house are funny.
l like music.	The music's too loud – can you turn it down?
Sugar is fattening.	Could you pass the sugar?
She's interested in dogs and horses.	'Why are the dogs barking?' 'There's somebody outside.'

#### Make some sentences from the words in the boxes.

Artists Builders Cats	build don't eat d	on't like	cats dogs grass	
Dogs Horses	eat learn li		houses meat	
Photographers Pianists				
	paint play sell	take	music photos	
Shop assistants	teach		pictures things	
Students Teachers	teach		pictores timigs	
<ul> <li>Dogs don't like cats.</li> </ul>			*****	
<ul> <li>Teachers teach things.</li> </ul>				
1				
2				
3				

#### Circle the correct forms.

- The old people / Old people often forget the things / things.
- I like talking to the old ladies / old ladies who live in that house.
- 1 The books / Books are expensive in my country.
- 2 'Where shall I put the books / books?''On the floor.'
- 3 Japanese is a difficult language for the English people / English people.
- 4 The flowers / Flowers are beautiful. Thank you very much!
- 5 The life / Life is sometimes hard.
- 6 I don't understand the words / words of that song.
- 7 The food / Food in this restaurant is very expensive.
- 8 The water / Water turns into the ice / ice at 0°C.
- 9 Why are the windows / windows open in this room?

Here are some common sayings about men and women (not all true!). Complete the sentences with words from the box, and give your opinion.

#### drivers lost 🗸 money things things think think understand understand

- 1 Men are better ..... than women. TRUE / NOT TRUE
- 2 Women are more careful with ..... than men. TRUE / NOT TRUE
- 3 Women ...... women. TRUE / NOT TRUE
- 4 Women ...... that men will change, but they don't. TRUE / NOT TRUE
- 5 Men don't ..... that women will change, but they do. TRUE / NOT TRUE
- 6 Men pay too much for ...... that they want. Women buy ...... that they don't want because they're cheap. TRUE / NOT TRUE

#### Read the two texts and then write one yourself.

l love snow.

I like poetry, art and walking. I don't like football, big dictionaries or hot weather. I hate telephones, banks, vegetable soup, pop music and small dogs.

I hate writing letters. I don't like swimming or opera. I like children, apples, sport, television and cheese. I love computers, history, dancing, cats, nice clothes and shopping.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: interests

Choose some words from the box to complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary. Don't use *the*!

art chess dancing football history music opera photography poetry politics (*singular*) skating swimming tennis travel

- 1 I like .....
- 2 I don't like .....
- 3 I like ..... better than .....
- 4 | love ...... but | hate .....
- 5 l enjoy .....
- 6 | think ...... is interesting, but ..... is boring.
- 7 ..... is difficult.
- 8 I'm good at ....., but I'm not so good at .....
- 9 | prefer ..... to ......
- 10 I'm not interested in .....
- 11 Most people are interested in .....
- 12 Not many people are interested in .....



in some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm, don't*) and full mines for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

## names Mary, Africa, the USA

people: the	PEOPLE, LANGUAGES, MOST PLACES
	Andrews. (NOT The Mary the Dr Andrews.) Prince Charles Aunt Elizabeth
languages: the	
Sorry, I don't speak	Russian. (NOT <del> the Russian.</del> )
most place-names	(for example continents, countries, states, lakes, mountains, towns, streets): the
	(NOT <del> the Texas.</del> ) Queensland Dublin Lake Geneva Mount Everest adilly Circus Hyde Park Times Square <b>entences with words from the boxes.</b>
Lake Superior	London Oxford Street Peru Queensland 🗸 Spanish Uncle Eric
1 They speak 2 Here's a postca	rd from is in Australia. 
Africa Franc	e Kilimanjaro Napoleon Switzerland
	The second s
IAMES WITH THE: SOM	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): <i>the</i>
IAMES WITH THE: SOM	ME PLACES
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): <i>the</i>
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea the Sahara Desert	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): <i>the</i>
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): the the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands expressions with P	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): the the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic the United States / the USA the Alps
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands expressions with P	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): the the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic the United States / the USA the Alps Republic/Kingdom/etc: the the United Kingdom
AMES WITH THE: SOM deserts, rivers, sea the Sahara Desert plural names: the the Netherlands expressions with H the Czech Republic large areas of the	ME PLACES as and oceans (but not lakes!): the the Thames the Rhine the Mediterranean the Atlantic the United States / the USA the Alps Republic/Kingdom/etc: the the United Kingdom

#### **BUILDINGS WITH THE**

#### most names of buildings: the

the Hilton Hotel the Globe Theatre the Eiffel Tower t the Great Pyramid

**the** Old Mill Restaurant **the** British Museum **the** Taj Mahal

#### EXCEPTIONS

 place-name + Airport, Station, Cathedral, University, Palace, Castle, School: the

Oxford Airport Glasgow Central Station Exeter Cathedral Cambridge University Buckingham Palace Didcot Junior School

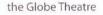
• name + possessive 's: the

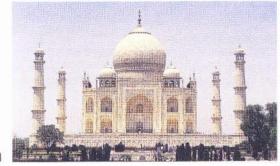
St Paul's Cathedral McDonald's



Edinburgh Castle

the Tower of London





the Taj Mahal

#### Put the before five of these buildings, and nothing (–) before three.

...the... Taj Mahal
 ........ Halloran's Restaurant
 1........ Old Steak House
 2....... National Gallery of Modern Art
 3....... Central Museum
 4....... Birmingham Airport
 5....... Sheraton Hotel
 6....... New Theatre
 7....... Jenner's Hotel
 8....... Canterbury Cathedral

#### Put in the or nothing (–).

 1
 American English
 2
 Asia
 3
 Blue Train Restaurant

 4
 Dominican Republic
 5
 Florida
 6
 Gobi Desert

 7
 Lake Michigan
 8
 Metropolitan Museum
 9
 Mississippi (River)

 10
 Mount Kenya
 11
 New York
 12
 North Sea
 13
 Paris

 14
 Regent Street
 15
 Rocky Mountains
 16
 Trafalgar Square

 17
 Egypt
 18
 White House
 19
 Whitehall Theatre
 20
 Far East

## special cases in bed; after lunch; a hundred; ...

#### NO ARTICLE (THE): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (1)

- meals: the to have breakfast/lunch/dinner: before/at/after/for breakfast etc
- days, dates, public holidays, months and years: the on Tuesday(s); on September 17th; at Christmas; in July; in 2006
- this/next/last + a day or longer period of time: the this Monday; next Friday; last week; next month; this summer; last year

#### Complete the sentences with words from the boxes.

- breakfast 🗸 Easter lunch next Saturdays Tuesday winter
- I usually just have toast and coffee for ...breakfast.....
- 1 Let's have ..... together on .....
- 2 We usually go to Scotland at .....
- 3 I'm working at home ..... week.
- 4 It got very cold last .....
- 5 I play tennis with Rob on .....

August 23rd Christmas last September 1616 this

- 6 My holiday is in ..... year.
- 7 Lindsay's birthday is on .....
- 8 Shakespeare died in .....
- 9 The whole family always comes together at .....
- 10 We went to California ..... summer.

#### NO ARTICLE (Ĵ₩Ē): COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITHOUT THE (2)

#### places and activities: the

to/at/from school/university/college; to/in/out of church/prison/hospital/bed; at home; to/at/from work; on holiday

#### transport: expressions with by: the

by car/bus/bicycle/plane/train/underground/boat and on foot

Complete the sentences with words from the box.

bed	car	church	foot	home	holiday	hospital	prison	school	university	work
-----	-----	--------	------	------	---------	----------	--------	--------	------------	------

- 1 I usually stay in ..... late at the weekend.
- 2 Jake's going to ..... to study business.
- 3 Most of the people in our village go to ..... on Sundays.
- 4 I was in ..... for a week when I broke my leg.
- 5 If I go to ..... it takes half an hour.
- 6 Uncle George comes out of ..... in June.
- 7 I'm not going there on ..... it's raining.
- 8 'Is Kirsten at .....?' 'No, sorry, she's out.'
- 9 'Are you working in August?' 'No, I'm on ......'
- 10 We had to learn Latin at .....

• after with, without and as

I did the translation with a dictionary. (NOT ... with dictionary.) You can't get in without a ticket. (NOT ... without ticket.) She's working as a bus-driver.

- after haven't/hasn't got
  - We haven't got a fax. (NOT We haven't got fax.)
- in exclamations with What ...!
   What a crazy idea!
- before hundred/thousand/million

a hundred days a thousand people a million dollars

#### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in *a/an*.

0	What	A	American passport
1	l didn't listen to the programme; l haven't got	В	<sup>8</sup> terrible day!
2	l want a house with	C	garden
3	I went to sleep on the sofa and used my coat as	D	hundred times
4	I've told you	E	million people in our city
5	There are about	F	blanket
6	You can't work there without	G	radio
7	Phil's working as	Н	stupid idea!
8	What	1	job
9	It's hard to live without	J	tourist guide

#### THE: COMMON EXPRESSIONS WITH THE

the same; the country/sea/mountains; on the right/left; at the top/bottom/side/front/back; in the middle; at/to the cinema/theatre; on the radio (BUT on TV)

Her hair is the same colour as her mother's. (NOT Her hair is same colour ...)We live in the country.I prefer the mountains; she prefers the sea.Our house is the second on the right.Write your name at the top of the page.I don't often go to the cinema.

#### Make sentences.

Anne's house / the first / left Anne's house is the first on the left.

1	Patrick and I work / same office
2	We / going / theatre / tonight
3	My room / top / house
4	Would you like / live / country?
5	We usually go / mountains / Christmas
6	Joe always sits / back / class
7	Suzie's office / right
	I would like / live near / sea
9	Why are you driving / middle / road?
10	Please sign your name / bottom / this paper

#### POSSESSIVES

We don't use *a/an* or *the* with *my*, *your* etc (see page 188). *your* address (NOT the your address) *my* friend / a friend of mine (NOT a *my* friend)

### articles: more practice

#### Mixed article uses. Put in a, an, the or nothing (-).

- 1 My sister lives in ..... big flat.
- 2 'Where's ..... phone?' 'In ..... kitchen.'
- 3 Andy's brother is ..... architect.
- 4 I'm taking ..... 10.15 train.
- 5 Most people like ..... animals.
- 6 Do you play ..... tennis?
- 7 ..... music's too loud please turn it down.
- 8 All our furniture is made of ..... wood.
- 9 Carola has got ..... beautiful brown eyes.10 I don't want to be ..... student for the next
- five years.

- 11 I'm not interested in ..... politics.
- 12 Can I switch on ..... lights?
- 13 ..... vegetarians don't eat ..... meat.
- 14 ..... petrol is very expensive these days.
- 15 We haven't seen ..... sun for a week.
- 16 Where did you put ..... butter?
- 17 I often listen to ..... music when I'm driving.
- 18 ..... life is sometimes hard.
- 19 I don't like ..... fish.
- 20 Perhaps ..... people are more interesting than ...... grammar.

#### Names and special article uses. Correct (I) or not (X)?

- 1 The Canada is a big country. .....
- 2 Have you ever seen Eiffel Tower? .....
- 3 Andy works at Apollo Theatre. .....
- 4 The River Rhone runs into the Mediterranean Sea. .....
- 5 Hello. I'm at the Oxford Station. .....

- 6 Would you like to work as teacher? .....
- 7 He was in bed at 10.00. .....
- 8 We live in a small town in south. .....
- 9 Please write your address at the top of the page. .....
- 10 I don't eat much for the lunch. .....

Countable or uncountable? How many countable and uncountable nouns can you find in these advertisements?



COUNTABLE:
UNCOUNTABLE:

#### Grammar in a text. Put in *a, an, the* or nothing (–).



#### A TRUE STORY

In 1...... 1969, in 2...... Portland, 3..... Oregon, 4..... man went to rob 5...... bank. He didn't want 6..... people in 7..... bank to know what was happening, so he walked up to one of 8..... cashiers, wrote on 9..... piece of 10..... paper, 'This is 11.... robbery and I've got 12..... gun', and showed 13.... paper to 14... cashier. Then he wrote, 'Take all 15.... money out of your drawer and put it in 16... paper bag.' 17... cashier read 18.... message, wrote at 19... bottom of 20... paper, 'I haven't got 21... paper bag' and gave 22..... paper back to 23... robber. 24... robber ran out of 25... bank.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: materials

Learn some or all of the words in the box. Use a dictionary. Then write some sentences to say what your clothes and other possessions are made of.

china diamond gold leather metal brick cotton glass paper plastic rubber silk silver stone synthetic fibre wood wool ▶ My shoes are made of leather and rubber. (NOT ... the leather ... ) .....

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find the names of the following in Britain, Australia, Canada or the USA. Write them using articles correctly.

1	a river
2	a lake
3	a mountain
4	a part of the country
5	a hotel
6	a station
	an airport
8	a tourist attraction
9	a cathedral
10	a museum

### articles: revision test

#### Put in *a* or *an*.

- 1 ..... address
- 2 ..... student
  - lent
- 3 ..... English student
- 7 ..... house

6 old woman

5 ..... bus

4 ..... university student 8 ..... hour's lesson

#### Countable or uncountable? Put in a or nothing (–).

- 1 I don't like ..... beer.
- 2 Peter is ..... very good friend.
- 3 Does your car use ..... petrol or ..... diesel?
- 4 Do you listen to ..... music while you're studying?

#### Put in a, an, the or nothing (–).

- 1 Rob has got ..... very long hair.
- 2 ..... books are very expensive.
- 3 ..... life can be difficult.
- 4 Ayesha's leaving on ..... 10.30 plane.
- 5 Do you drink ..... beer?
- 6 'Where's ..... toilet?' 'At the top of ..... stairs.'
- 7 I like watching ..... sport on TV.
- 8 My second brother is ..... engineer.
- 9 It's hot in here. Can I open ..... windows?
- 10 She stood at her door for a long time looking at ...... moon.
- 11 Most people like ..... children.

#### Correct the mistakes or write 'Correct'.

- I live in the France. France.
- I was born in London, Correct.
- 1 Can I speak to the Professor Anderson? .....
- 2 Greek is a difficult language. .....
- 3 We've just been to Czech Republic.
- 4 The Soviet Union was founded in 1922.
- 5 She's from Texas. .....
- 6 Carol has just spent two months in hospital.
- 7 I'll see you the next Tuesday. .....
- 8 You can't go there without passport. .....
- 9 Joe's studying to be doctor. .....
- 10 In Britain people drive on the left.

- 5 | prefer ..... dogs to ..... cats.
- 6 My flat has got ..... very small kitchen.
- 7 I need ..... new jeans.
- 8 Nadia was wearing ..... blue dress.
- 9 They live in ..... small town.
- 10 I never have ..... milk in ..... tea.
- 12 John's very interested in ..... science.
- 13 I liked everything in the film except ...... music.
- 14 Why did you put ..... shoe in ..... fridge?
- 15 These socks are made of ..... silk.
- 16 I watch ..... football, but I don't play it.
- 17 I'd like to be ..... student again.
- 18 My mother thinks ..... animals are nicer than ...... people.
- 19 ..... children don't usually like ...... vegetables.
- 20 Andy lives in ..... houseboat.

- 9 ..... one-pound coin
- 10 ..... uncle

# **SECTION 12** determiners

### grammar summary

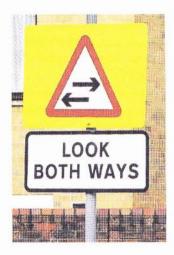
this, that, these, those some, any, no enough all, each, every, both, either, neither much, many, a little, a few more, most a lot, lots (a/an, the) (my, your etc)

Determiners are words that come at the beginning of noun phrases, before adjectives. Determiners help to show which or how many people/things we are talking about. this old coat some strange ideas all English words enough people

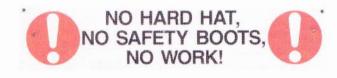
Most determiners are explained and practised in this section. *A*/*An* and *the* have a separate section on pages 151–166. *My*, *your* etc are explained together with pronouns on pages 188–189.

*Somebody, anything, nowhere* etc are included here. These are not determiners, but it is more convenient to deal with them in this section.







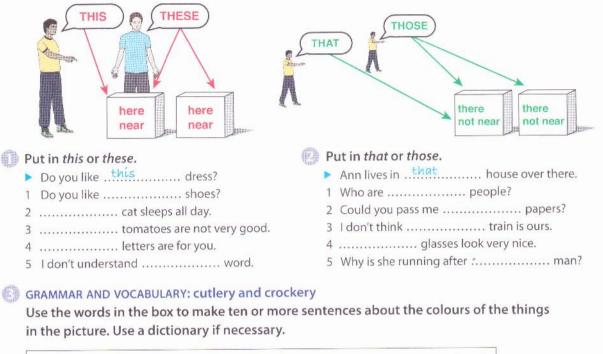






## this, that, these and those

We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are **here**, **near** to us. We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are **there**, **not near**.







#### We can use *this* and *these* to talk about things that are **happening now** or **starting now**. We can use *that* and *those* to talk about things that are **finished**.

I like this music. Listen to these sentences. That lesson was boring. Did you answer those letters yesterday?

#### Oircle the correct answer.

- Do / Did you like that film?
- 1 I'm enjoying / I enjoyed these lessons.
- 2 This game was / will be hard.
- 3 These / Those potatoes weren't very nice.
- 4 That holiday is / was great!
- 5 Do you remember this / that funny hotel in France?
- 6 May I have this / that dance with you?
- 7 I'm going to enjoy this / that meal.
- 8 That political speech is / was really stupid.
- 9 Did you understand this / that explanation?
- 10 Listen to this / that letter from Karen.

#### We can use this, that, these and those without nouns.

I don't like this. Look at these. Who said that? Those are pretty. We can use this to introduce people, and to introduce ourselves on the telephone. This is my friend Carla. This is Alex. Can I speak to Fred?

#### Put in this, that, these or those.

- I don't like living in ...this ............ country.
- 1 Could you bring ..... box to me, please?
- 2 Why did you say .....?
- 3 ..... is Peter is Mary at home?
- 4 Who are ..... people over there?
- 5 Listen you'll like ..... story.
- 6 Wait I can't walk fast in ..... shoes.
- 7 '..... is my sister Helen.' 'How do you do?'
- 8 ..... was a wonderful meal thanks.
- 9 I'm not enjoying ..... conversation.
- 10 Do you remember ...... people that we met in Greece?
- 11 Let's leave ..... party.
- 12 The meal was nice, but I didn't like ..... wine much.
- 13 Could you take ..... letters to the post office?
- 14 I thought Geoff looked silly in ..... shorts.
- 15 Is ...... your mother coming out of the police station?
- 16 Where are you? I can't see very well with ..... glasses.
- 17 We're going to win ..... match. You wait and see.
- 18 What are ..... birds on the roof?
- 19 | can't eat ..... apple it's too hard.
- 20 I'll never forget ..... ten days with Barbara.

# some and any I need some sugar. Have you got any?





He's got some problems.

She hasn't got any problems.

We u	se some and any, not a	a/an, with u	incountable and plur	al nouns.				
They	mean 'a limited numb	er or quant	ity'.					
We u	se some in affirmative	(E) senter	nces.					
We u	se any in negative (ﷺ	sentences	, and in most questio	ns.				
I'd lik	e some water. Here	are some f	lowers for you.					
Thave	en't got any money.		n't any trains today.					
	you got any sugar?		eak any other languad	ges?				
1	, , , , ,	, ,						
🕼 Ci	ircle the correct ans	wers.						
•	I'd like some / any hel	p.		5 Are th	ere some / any re	staurants near here?		
1	There aren't some / ar	y letters fo	r you.	6 I'm having some / any problems with my car.				
2	Have you got some / a	any brothe	rs or sisters?			/ breakfast today.		
3	We need some / any r	and solution and second growth		8 He hasn't done <i>some / any</i> work for ten years.				
4	She's got some / any i		friends.		u know some/ar			
(f)) (	omplete the senten	res with a	way and words from	the box				
1420	ompiete the senten	ces with a	iny and words non	r the box	•			
	English newspapers	games	foreign languages	help 🗸	more to drink	sleep		
•	Harriet likes to do thi	ngs by hers	self: she doesn't want	any he	elp.			
1	No, I'm not thirsty – I							
2	Joe doesn't speak							
3	Our team hasn't won				vear.			
4	l didn't get				Protocological and a second			

5 I couldn't find ..... at the shop.

We use *some* in questions which expect the answer 'Yes' – for example offers or requests. Would you like *some* more coffee? Could I have *some* bread?

#### Write sentences with some.

- 1 (Ask for coffee) Could I have .....
- 2 (Offer bread) Would you like .....
- 3 (Offer rice) .....
- 4 (Ask for tomatoes) .....
- 5 (Offer more potatoes) .....
- 6 (Ask for more milk) .....

We use any with words like never, without or hardly (= 'almost not'), which have negative meanings.They never give me any help.I got there without any difficulty.You made hardly any mistakes.

Put the beginnings and ends together.

0	I finished the work without	A	any rain
1	I was tired, so I went to bed without	В	some rain, at last
2	I'm going to do	C	any work in the garden
3	Yesterday we had	D	some work in the house
4	In July we hardly had	E	any supper
5	She never does	F	some supper
6	You're hungry. I'll make you	G	any help <mark>?</mark>

#### We can use some and any without nouns if the meaning is clear.

'Can you lend me some money?' 'Sorry, I haven't got any.'

'I need some more envelopes.' 'I'll bring you some.'

Complete the answers with words from the box and put in *some* or *any*.

buy good got 🗸 more 🗸 put tomorrow want you

- 'How many children has he got?' 'He hasn't ...got any.......'
- 1 'How much did the flowers cost?' 'I didn't ......'
- 2 'We need light bulbs.' 'I'll get ......'
- 3 'Where's the sugar?' 'There's ...... in front of ...... '
- 4 'Why didn't you buy any cheese?' 'Because I didn't ......'
- 5 'Shall we go to the cinema?' 'There aren't ..... films.'
- 6 'The car needs oil.' 'But I've just ..... in.'

NOTE: Any is used in negative sentences, but is not negative. Not ... any (or no – see page 114) is negative. Sorry, I haven't got any time / I've got no time. (NOT Sorry, I've got any time.)

Complete the sentences with negative past-tense verbs. Use words from the box.

ask be do find get 🗸 have

- I didn't ...get any letters today.
- 1 There ..... any fruit in the shops.
- 2 John .....any work at university.
- 3 The hotel ..... any free rooms.
- 4 The policeman ..... me any questions.
- 5 We ..... any open petrol stations.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: possessions

Have you got any of the things in the box? Use a dictionary if necessary. Write some sentences with *some* or *any*.

aspirins make-up	ballpoint pens red shoes	dollars stamps	e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e e	keys white	love letters socks
-	- helle for the		Ling would be	-	ad classes
ve apt so	me ballpoint	pens.	I NUVER C GO	c unu i	EU SHOES.
ve got so	ne ballpoint ;	pens.	Thuventgo	c ung i	eu snoes.
ve got so	ne oalipoint j		Thuven C go		

# somebody, anything, nowhere, ...

omebody and someone mean the same; so do anybody a	and <i>anyone</i> etc.
he difference between <b>somebody</b> etc and <b>anybody</b> etc is t	the same as the difference between
ome and any (see pages 170–171). For every, see page 179	
omebody telephoned for you. Has anybody seen my ke	
ve got something for you. Do you want anything from	n the shops? He lives <b>somewhere</b> in London. e <b>ryone</b> knew that.
he never goes anywhere. Nothing happened. Ever	ryone knew that.
Complete the words.	
Is	7 'Where did you go at the weekend?'
1 'What did you say?' 'No'	where – we stayed at home.'
2 I haven't seen Amywhere.	8 I want to tell you some
3 There'sone at the door.	9 Every in my family has blue eyes.
4 Can I do any to help?	10 I don't knowbody who plays rugby
5 You can find Coca-Cola every	11 Every in this shop is expensive.
6 No understands me.	12 I want to livewhere warm.
These are sentences from real conversations. Can y	you complete them with somebody, anything et
1 Does want to speak about that?	5 Ten people in one room with no bath, no
2 The poor woman has to go.	water,
3 It doesn't cost	6 What can you buy for a woman who has
4 said 'thank you': not one man.	······································
fter nobody/no one, everybody/everyone, everything and	d nothing we use singular verbs.
verybody knows. (NOT Everybody know:) Everything is (	
Verybody knows. (Not Everybody knows) - Everybody	on norming rappens to to to
Put in verbs from the box. Use singular forms.	
agree be be happen have know	
1 Nobody where she lives.	4 everybody here?
2 Everything to me.	5 everybody got a drink?
3 Everything interesting to somebody.	

#### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- 1 We couldn't find a hotel nowhere. .....
- 2 Does anybody know Penny's phone number? .....
- 3 Can I ask you something? .....
- 4 Nobody want to go home. .....
- 5 I don't want something, thank you. .....

- 6 Don't say nothing to Alan about Olivia. .....
- 7 Everybody needs help sometimes. .....
- 8 Do anybody want another drink? .....
- 9 Anybody doesn't understand me. .....
- 10 I don't never want to take nothing from nobody. .....

Note the difference between *no one* and *none*. *No one* means 'nobody'; *none* means 'not any'. *No one* can help me. I wanted some plums, but there were **none** in the shop.

evel 1

# much and many How much milk? How many languages?

#### We use much with singular (uncountable) nouns, and many with plurals.

Do you listen to much music? Do you go to many concerts?

#### Put in *much* or *many*.

- 1 I haven't got ..... time.
- 2 Do you play ..... football?
- 3 There aren't ..... people here.
- 4 Are there ..... Americans in your company?
- 5 We don't have ..... rain in summer.
- 6 I don't eat ..... meat.
- 7 Have you travelled to ..... countries?
- 8 We don't watch ..... films.
- 9 Was there ..... traffic on the road?
- 10 Not ..... tourists visit our town.
- 11 Do you know ..... songs?
- 12 She doesn't have ..... trouble with English.
- 13 There aren't ..... birds in the garden.
- 14 She doesn't get ..... money in her new job.
- 15 There hasn't been ..... rain this year.

So many worlds, so much to do, so little done.

(Alfred Lord Tennyson)

We use *how much* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *how many* with plurals. How much milk do you want? How many languages are there in the world?

🕗 Write the questions. Do you know the answers? (See the bottom of the page.)

We can use *much* and *many* without nouns if the meaning is clear.

'Have you got any money?' 'Not much.' 'How many people were there?' 'Not many.'

*Much* and *many* are used mostly in **questions** and **negatives**. They are unusual in spoken affirmative (**[**]) sentences. In an informal style, we prefer expressions like *a lot of* (see page 174).

'Do you get **much** snow in winter?' 'Not **much**, but we get **a lot of** rain.' (NOT ... <del>we get much rain.</del>) 'Have you got **many** English friends?' 'No, I haven't got **many** English friends. But I've got **a lot of** American friends.' (NOT USUALLY ... I've got many American friends.)

# a lot of and lots of

A lot of and lots of are common in an informal style. They mean the same. I haven't got a lot of time just now. He's got lots of money and lots of friends. We can use both expressions before singular (uncountable) or plural nouns. # a lot of / lots of + singular subject: singular verb

A lot of his work is good. Lots of his work is good. (NOT Lots of his work are good.)

a lot of / lots of + plural subject: plural verb A lot of his ideas are good. (NOT A lot of his ideas is good.) If we use a lot or lots without a noun, we don't use of. 'Have you got a lot of work?' 'Yes, a lot.' (NOT Yes, a lot of.)

#### Circle the correct answer.

- 1 Lots of people have / has computers now.
- 2 There is / are lots of cinemas near here.
- 3 Lots of snow has / have fallen today.

more natural than much/many (see page 173).

4 'Problems?' 'Yes, a lot / a lot of.'

(NOT We eat many vegetables.)

(NOT This car uses much petrol.)

In affirmative ( conversation, a lot of and lots of are

We eat a lot of vegetables.

This car uses lots of petrol.

- 5 A lot of my friends work / works in London.
- 6 'Any letters for me?' 'A lot / A lot of.'
- 7 A lot of things need / needs to change.
- 8 There is / are lots of food in the fridge.



a lot of / lots of hair

a lot of / lots of teeth

Plenty of can be used in the same way as a lot of / lots of.

Put in plenty of with words from the box.

eggs food ideas paint 🗸 patience time warm clothes water

What do you need:

- if you're painting a big house? ...plenty of paint
- 1 if you're very hungry? .....
- 2 if you've got a lot of work? .....

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: towns

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write four sentences about a town, using a lot of / lots of / plenty / not much / not many.

bookshops cinemas hotels industry libraries markets nightlife parks restaurants theatres traffic

In Oxford there are a lot of museums; there is not much industry. 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 .....

#### **174 DETERMINERS**

4 if you're in the Arctic? ..... 5 if you're making a big omelette? ..... 6 if you're crossing the desert? .....

Lots of his ideas are good.

# a little and a few a little English; a few words

#### We use *a little* with singular (uncountable) nouns, and *a few* with plurals.

If you're hungry, we've got a little soup and a few tomatoes.

#### Put in a little or a few.

- 1 I know ..... English.
- 2 I speak ..... words of Spanish.
- 3 I'll be on holiday in ..... days.
- 4 Can you give me ..... help?
- 5 Grace will be ready in ..... minutes.
- 6 Could I have ..... more coffee?
- 7 I'd like to ask you ..... questions.
- 8 I'm having ..... trouble with the police.
- 9 The soup needs ..... more salt.
- 10 I'm going away for ..... weeks.

# *Little* and *few* (without *a*) have a rather **negative** () meaning (like *not much/many*). *A little* and *a few* have a more **positive** () meaning (like *some*).

We've got a little food in the house if you're hungry. (= 'some, better than nothing') There was little food in the house, so we went to a restaurant. (= 'not much, not enough') His lesson was very difficult, but a few students understood it. (= 'more than I expected') His lesson was so difficult that few students understood it. (= 'not many, hardly any')

#### Circle the correct answer.

- I have little / a little time to read newspapers and no time at all to read books.
- 1 Come about 8 o'clock; I'll have *little / a little* time then.
- 2 There was *little / a little* water on the mountain, and we all got very thirsty.
- 3 Foreign languages are difficult, and few / a few people learn them perfectly.
- 4 I'm going to Scotland with few / a few friends next week.
- 5 I've brought you few / a few flowers.
- 6 Life is very hard in the Arctic, so few / a few people live there.
- 7 She was a difficult woman, and she had few / a few friends.
- 8 'Would you like something to drink?' 'Little / A little water, please.'

#### Little and few are rather formal; in conversation we use not much/many or only a little/few.

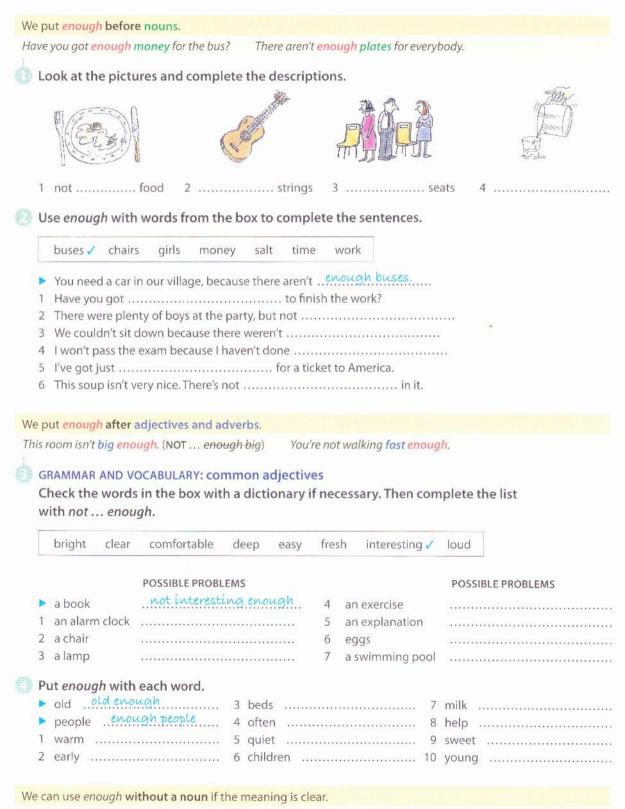
There wasn't much food in the house. OR There was only a little food in the house. The lesson was so difficult that not many / only a few students understood it.

#### Make these sentences more conversational.

۲	I speak little English I only speak a little English OR I don't speak much English.
1	There was little room on the bus.
2	Few people learn foreign languages perfectly.
3	She has few friends.
4	We get little rain here in summer.
5	This car uses little petrol.
6	There are few flowers in the garden.
7	Our town gets few tourists.
8	We have little time to catch the train.

#### We can use (a) *little* and (a) *few* without nouns if the meaning is clear.

'Have you got any money?' 'A little.' 'Did you buy any clothes?' 'A few.'



'More coffee?' 'No, thanks. I've got enough.'

## too, too much/many and not enough

We use <b>too</b> with <b>adjectives</b> and <b>adverbs.</b> We use These give the opposite meaning to 'not enoug		1000	mh
This coffee's <b>too cold</b> . (NOT too much cold) "ve got too much work and not enough time.	He drives <mark>too fast.</mark> You ask too many questions.	not hot enough	too hot
Put in too, too much or too many.			
1 old	6	work	
2 trouble	7	hot	
3 problems	8	students	
4 money	9	cars	
5 ill	10	difficult	
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: common a	djectives		

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then change the expressions.

	cheap dry expensive fast ✓ hard he narrow short slow ✓ soft tall thick	
	not fast enough =too.slow	
	too slow =not fast enough	. 5 too narrow =
1	not high enough =	. 6 too expensive =
	not tall enough =	
3	not heavy enough =	. 8 too thick =

A man is going walking in the mountains for three days. Look at the things that he is taking and give your opinion, using (not) enough or too much/many. Use a dictionary if necessary.

HE IS TAKING		YOUR OPINION
1 packet of soup	•	not enough soup
1 camera	•	enough cameras
8 maps	•	too many maps
5 pairs of socks	1	
1 pair of boots	2	
3 pocket torches	3	
1 tube of sun-cream	4	
2 waterproof jackets	5	
2 pairs of sunglasses	6	
10 kg of bread	7	
2 kg of cheese	8	
100 cl of water	9	
1 orange	10	
1 bar of chocolate	11	
1 small bar of soap	12	
3 toothbrushes	13	



# all all my friends are here; my friends are all here

All can go with a noun or with a verb.
All the trains stop at Cardiff. The trains all stop at Cardiff.
All the courses begin on Monday. The courses all begin on Monday.
All birds lay eggs. Birds all lay eggs. All my clothes need cleaning. My clothes all need cleaning.
Change the sentences.
<ul> <li>All my family like travelling. My family all like travelling.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>The buses all run on Sundays.</li> <li>All the buses run on Sundays.</li> </ul>
1 All the films start at 7 o'clock.
2 Our secretaries all speak Arabic.
3 The children all went home.
4 All these coats cost the same.
5 All languages have grammar.
6 The people all voted for the Radical Conservatives.
7 All my friends live in London.
8 These houses all need repairs.
9 All those shops belong to the same family.
10 Children all need love.
Note the word order when all goes with a verb. All goes:
1 before one-word verbs
The guides <b>all speak</b> German. The visitors <b>all arrived</b> this morning. We <b>all got</b> up late.
2 after auxiliary verbs (will, have, can etc) and after are and were.
The guides <b>can all</b> understand Spanish. (NOT <del>all can understand Spanish.</del> )
The visitors have all arrived. (NOT all have arrived.) We were all tired. (NOT We all were tired.)
Put <i>all</i> with the verb.
<ul> <li>Cars break down sometimes. Cars all break down sometimes.</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>Mark's friends have gone home. Mark's friends have all gone home.</li> <li>The offices close at weekends.</li> </ul>
2 The lessons will start on Tuesday.
3 These children can swim.
4 Our windows are dirty.
5 Sorry, the tickets have gone.
6 We went to New York for Christmas.
7 The shops will be open tomorrow.
8 We stopped for lunch at 12.30.
9 These watches are too expensive.
10 The lights have gone out.

We don't normally use *all* without a noun to mean 'everybody' or 'everything'. *Everybody* knows that. (NOT <u>All know that</u>.) I've forgotten everything. (NOT <u>I've forgotten all</u>.)

All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. (Universal Declaration of Human Rights) Justice is open to all people in the same way as the Ritz Hotel. (Judge Sturgess)

**178 DETERMINERS** 

# all and every; each

#### We use every with singular nouns and verbs. Compare: Every person is interesting. (NOT Every person are ...) All people are interesting. All teachers make mistakes. Every teacher makes mistakes. We can use other determiners (the, my, this etc) after all, but not after every. Compare: All the shops were closed. *Every* shop was closed. (NOT *Every* the shop ...) Rewrite the sentences with every. All the buses were late. Every bus was late. 1 All animals breathe air. 2 She's read all the books in the library. ..... 3 | paid all the bills. ..... 4 All the computers are working today. 5 All languages have verbs. 6 All London trains stop at Reading. 7 I've written to all the customers.

8 All the glasses are dirty.
9 All children can be difficult.
10 All the roads were closed.

#### Each and every are similar. We use each for two or more, but we use every for three or more.

She had a bag in each hand. (NOT ... in every hand.) She had a ring on each/every finger.

#### Can you change each to every in these sentences?

>	He's got six earrings in each ear.
	I work each day except Sunday. Yes every day except Sunday.
1	There's a pub on each side of the road.
2	She wrote a careful answer to each letter.
3	He works in London and Paris, and he's got a girlfriend in each city.
4	She wears a watch on each wrist.
5	My parents are strange, but each one is strange in a different way.
6	Each house in this street looks the same.

Note the difference between *every day* (= 'on Mondays, Tuesdays, Wednesdays etc') and *all day* (= 'from morning to night').

The restaurant is open *all day*, *every day* except Sunday.

'Behind every successful man is a good woman.' (*Traditional*)

'Behind every successful woman stands a good man, looking rather confused.' (E Stabetsi)

'Behind every successful man stands a surprised mother-in-law.' (*Hubert Humphrey*)

'Behind every successful man is a woman, behind her is his wife.' (*Groucho Marx*)

in some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# both, either and neither

We use *both*, *either* and *neither* to talk about two people or things. *Both* (• • 'one and the other') has a plural noun. *Either* (• • 'one or the other') has a singular noun. *Neither* (• 'not either, not one and not the other') has a singular noun.

'Are you free on Monday or Wednesday?' 'I'm free on **both days**.' 'Which day is better for you?' 'Either day is OK.' 'About four o'clock?' 'No, sorry, I'm not free on either afternoon.' 'What about Thursday or Saturday, then?' 'No, neither day is any good.'

#### Put in both, either or neither.

- 1 ..... children are very tall.
- 2 I'm busy on ..... afternoons.
- 3 'Which room can I have?' 'You can have ..... room. ..... rooms have a view of the sea.'
- 4 ..... students tried the exam, but ..... student passed.
- 5 I'm lucky I can write with ..... hand.
- 6 It's very heavy: use ..... hands to carry it.
- 7 ..... coat will look good on you. Why don't you buy one of them?
- 8 I don't like ..... coat. And ..... coats are very expensive.
- 9 'Do you want your holiday in July or August?' '..... month will be fine.'
- 10 ...... my brothers studied medicine, but ..... brother works as a doctor.
- 11 I paid for ..... tickets Ann's and mine.
- 12 'What do precipitate and recursion mean?' 'I don't know ...... word.'

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that come in twos

# Make sure you know all these words. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then complete the sentences, using *both*.

	ankle 🗸	direction	earring	end	eye	knee	parent	sex	side	sock	team	
--	---------	-----------	---------	-----	-----	------	--------	-----	------	------	------	--

- I hurt . both ankles ...... playing football.
- 1 Cars are parked on ..... of the road.
- 2 ..... her ..... are doctors.
- 3 Traffic on the road was very slow in .....
- 4 ..... are playing really badly.
- 5 She hurt ..... skiing.
- 6 I've lost ..... my ..... have you seen them anywhere?
- 7 Police were stopping cars at ..... of the bridge.
- 8 That child has got holes in ..... of his .....
- 9 I need new glasses. Both ..... are getting worse.
- 10 His shop sells clothes for .....

# determiners and of most people; most of us

We use **determiners** (*some, any, much, many, more, most, few, enough* etc) with **of** before **other determiners** (*the, this, my* etc) and before personal pronouns (*it, us* etc).

DETERMINER + OF	DETERMINER WITHOUT OF					
# before the: some of the people here	some people (NOT some of people)					
	too many books I've got too many.					
	a few friends She has a few.					
before it, us etc: enough of it most of them	enough milk most students					
Change the expressions.						
some houses (those) some of those houses	6 most mistakes ( <i>these</i> )					
1 not much milk ( <i>the</i> )						
2 any friends ( <i>my</i> )						
3 enough meat (that)						
	10 not enough work ( <i>his</i> )					
5 a few ideas ( <i>her</i> )						
Put in <i>of</i> or nothing (–).						
Some people don't like her.	6 There wasn't enough food for everybody.					
Some	er. 7 I didn't have much time to talk to her.					
1 Can you lend me some more money?	8 A few us want to change things.					
2 I've lost some the addresses.	9 I spend a lot my time in Scotland.					
3 I don't like many his books.	10 We haven't got any more eggs.					
4 She knows a few those people.	11 I've got some bread, but not much					
5 'Do you like jazz singers?' 'Some'	12 She didn't understand much it.					
	general) and most of the people/things (particular ones).					

Note the difference between most people/things (in general) and most of the people/things (particular ones).Most people like dancing.You can pay by credit card in most shops.Most of the shops here are open on Sundays.

#### Put in most or most of the.

- 1 ..... people talk to themselves.
- 2 | know ..... people in our village.
- 3 ..... people on the bus had no tickets.
- 4 ..... people like music.
- 5 ..... cars are expensive.
- 6 There are students in ..... houses in this street.
- 7 ..... cats eat fish.
- 8 Our cat eats ..... things: fish, meat, biscuits, cheese, ...
- 9 I understand ..... words in this book.
- 10 She's very friendly: she gets on well with ..... people.

NOTE: we often drop of after all and both. After a lot / lots / plenty we always use of with a noun or pronoun (see page 174).

All (of) my friends. Both (of) her parents. a lot of problems, (NOT a lot problems)

# determiners: more practice

#### Demonstratives; some and any. Put in the correct forms.

- 1 Listen to ...... You'll love it! (this / that)
- 2 I didn't like ..... film yesterday. (this / that)
- 3 Who are ..... people in John's car? (these / those)
- 4 '..... is my friend Beth.' 'How do you do?' (this / that)
- 5 'Look at ...... earrings.' 'Where?' 'On my ears, of course!' (these / those)
- 6 You never tell me ..... about your work. (something / anything)
- 7 I didn't have ..... breakfast this morning. (some / any)
- 8 'This is good ice cream.' 'Would you like ..... more?' (some / any)
- 9 'What are you thinking about?' '.....' (Anything / Nothing)
- 10 We got to London ..... any difficulty. (with / without)

Mixed determiners. Put in all, each, every, everybody, everything, both, either or neither.

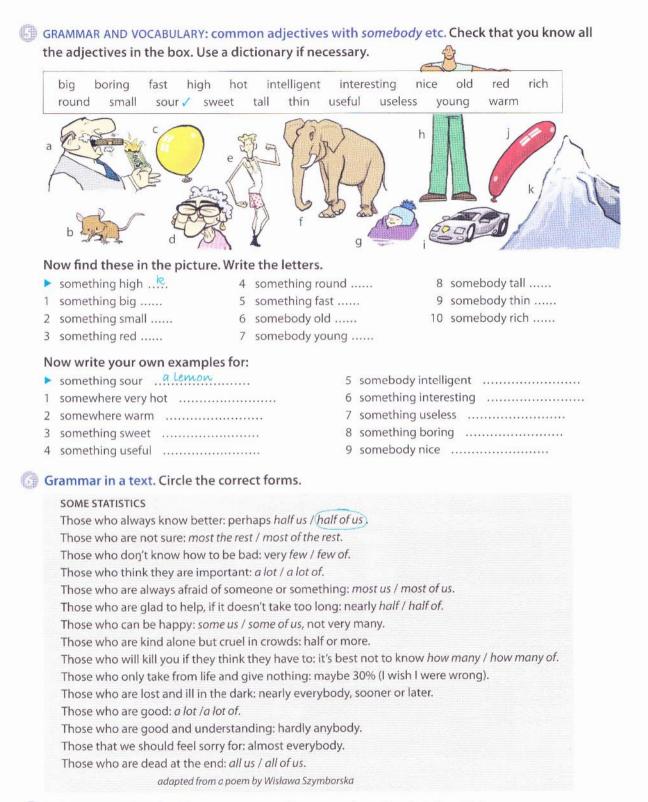
- 1 Has ..... student arrived?
- 2 Hold the string at ..... end.
- 3 Tell me .....
- 4 She stayed in bed ..... day yesterday.
- 5 We're open ..... day except Tuesday.
- 6 'Tea or coffee?''No, ....., thanks.'
- 7 I can write with ..... hand.
- 8 I can write with ..... hands.
- 9 Do you know ..... here?
- 10 Not ..... animals can swim.

#### Mixed determiners. Circle the correct forms.

- 1 Can I give you my answer tomorrow? I need little / a little time to think.
- 2 His ideas are so difficult that few / a few people understand them.
- 3 There were only a little / a few people at the meeting.
- 4 I'd like to ask you few / a few questions, if I may.
- 5 Too much work, too little / few time.
- 6 James always has much / lots of money.
- 7 Were there much / many girls at the party?
- 8 A lot of my friends think / thinks I'm wrong.
- 9 Am I driving too / too much fast?
- 10 Are those shoes big enough / enough big?

#### Of with determiners. Put in the correct forms.

- 1 ..... the children enjoyed the show. (Most / Most of)
- 2 ..... people like animals. (Most / Most of the)
- 3 ..... us are meeting at Joe's tomorrow evening. (A few / A few of)
- 4 Have you seen ...... good films recently? (any / any of)
- 5 I've invited ...... my friends to come round this evening. (some / some of)
- 6 She finished ..... it. (most of / all / all of)
- 7 Have you got ..... milk? (enough / enough of)
- 8 You ask ..... questions. (too many / too many of)
- 9 'How many books have you got to read?' '.....' (A lot / A lot of)
- 10 I don't like ..... these books. (many / many of)



#### Internet exercise: checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google).

#### How many hits are there for these expressions? So which are correct?

"too much fast"	40,700
"everybody is"	
"everything are"	
"most people"	

"too fast" .	10,900,000: Correct
"everybody	are"
"everything	is″
"most of peo	pple"

### determiners: revision test

	Correct	the	mistakes	and	rewrite	the	sentences.
--	---------	-----	----------	-----	---------	-----	------------

	Would you like little more coffee?
1	
2	I'm hungry, but there isn't nothing to eat.
	She has much money.
	A lot of us was at the party last night.
5	Most of people think I'm right.
	He was carrying a heavy bag in every hand.
	Everything are very difficult.
8	I like every kinds of music.
	I think you're driving too much fast.
	If everybody are ready, we can go.

#### Circle the correct forms.

- 1 I'm enjoying this / that game.
- 2 This / That lesson was really hard.
- 3 I've had a postcard from these / those people we met in America.
- 4 What's this / that thing in the tree over there?
- 5 Hello. This / That is Mike. Can I speak to Anna?
- 6 There's somebody / anybody on the phone for you.
- 7 Ineed / I don't need some help.
- 8 Could I have some / any more coffee?
- 9 Anna hardly said anything / nothing all evening.
- 10 We never go somewhere / anywhere interesting.

#### Put in the correct forms.

- 1 Let me tell you ..... my problems. (all / every / each)
- 2 ..... everybody ready to leave? (Is /Are)
- 3 ..... her parents are doctors. (Either / Each / Both)
- 4 I pronounced ...... word separately, very slowly. (all / each / both)
- 5 Not ..... bird can fly. (all / every / either)
- 6 'Is there anything to drink?' 'There's ..... orange juice.' (a little / a few / any)
- 7 There was ...... to do in the town, so we stayed at home most evenings. (a little / little / anything)
- 8 It's nice to spend ..... time alone, sometimes. (a little / little / a little of / little of)
- 9 I've been to Scotland ..... times. (a little / a few / a little of / a few of)
- 10 'Do you speak Russian?' '.....' ( A little / A little of / A few / A few of)
- 11 Children ask ..... questions. (lots / lots of / much / many)
- 12 I don't go to ..... parties. (a lot / many / many of)
- 13 I've got ..... problems. (too / too much / too many / too many of)
- 14 She didn't eat ..... breakfast. (much / many / many of)
- 15 There ..... lots of time before the shop closes. (is / are)
- 16 There's a pub at ..... end of our street. (each / every / all / both)
- 17 She thinks she knows ..... (all / all of / everything)
- 18 I practise karate ..... day except Tuesday. (all / either / every)
- 19 'Which car can I have?' 'Sorry ..... car is free.' (neither / either / any / both)
- 20 I'd like ..... sweet. (something / something of)

# **SECTION 13** personal pronouns; possessives

### grammar summary

I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their mine, yours, his, hers, ours, yours, theirs myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves each other

We use **pronouns** when it is not necessary, or not possible, to use a more exact noun phrase. *Mrs Parker phoned.* **She** said ... (The speaker uses the personal pronoun *she* because it is not necessary to repeat *Mrs Parker.*) *Ann talks to berself all the time.* (It is uppercessary to repeat *Ann*.)

Ann talks to **herself** all the time. (It is unnecessary to repeat Ann.)

In this section we explain **personal pronouns** (*l, me, you* etc); **possessives** (*my, your* etc and *mine, yours* etc); **reflexive pronouns** (*myself, yourself* etc); and *each other*.

Indefinite pronouns (somebody, anything etc) are explained in Section 12, together with some and any. Relative pronouns (who, which etc) are explained in Section 19.



when you buy your furniture from us!

#### Your next car!

LET US use our experience to find you a first-class second-hand car



CANADIANS BELIEVE WHEN YOU LOSE YOURSELF YOU FIND YOURSELF. Presents for him, her, you and them!



"IT'S NOT JUST HAIR, IT'S YOUR HAIR" Charles Worthington



diamond eartings

a new idea in banking: it's **your** money, not **ours** 

FIND YOURSELF IN ONE BITE Iuxury **Belgian** chocolates

# personal pronouns: I and me etc

SUBJECTS	1	you	he	she	it	we	you	they
OTHER USES	me	you	him	her	it	us	you	them
SUBJECTS: I, H	EETC		I like Mary.	He need	s help. Th	ey want yo	ur address.	
OBJECTS: ME, I	HIM ETC		Mary doesn'	t like <mark>me</mark> .	Help <mark>him</mark> .	Don't te	ll <mark>them</mark> anythi	ing.
AFTER PREPOS	TIONS: M	IE, HIM ETC	Look <mark>at me</mark> .	Why is .	lane <b>with hin</b>	? Is the	at for us?	
AFTER BE: ME,	HIM ETC		'Who's there	?' 'It's <mark>me</mark> .' (I	NOT <del>'<i>l am.</i>'</del> OR	<del>'lt is l.'</del> )	'Is that Joe?'	'Yes, that's <mark>him</mark> .'
INFORMAL ANS	WERS: M	E, HIM ETC	'Who said th	at?' <mark>'Me</mark> .'	'l'm tired.'	'Me too.'		
Circle the	correct	answer						
~	n't under				5 'Where's	your broth	er?' 'That's he	e/him over
0		It was she /	her!		there.'			
2 Tell we/	us your a	ddress.			6 Where a	re the child	ren? Can you	
3 This isn'	t for you,	it's for he / h	nim.		see they	/them?		
4   don't t	hink they	/ them are h	nere today.		7 Ask she	her why sh	ne/her is cryir	na

#### Put in he, him, she, her, they or them.

- 1 'Does your father speak English?' '..... understands a little.'
- 2 'I'm seeing Lucy and Pete on Tuesday.' 'Oh, give ...... my love.'
- 3 'Mr Carter's here.' 'Ask ..... to wait downstairs.'
- 4 Where are your friends? ......'re very late.
- 5 'Have you spoken to Mrs Lewis?' 'Not yet. I'm going to speak to ...... this evening.'
- 6 'Where's Ann?' '.....'s in Germany all this week.'

#### We use it, they and them for things, including (usually) countries and animals.

I like Scotland, but it's cold in winter. She sold her horse because it cost too much.

#### Put in *it, they* or them.

- 1 'Where are my keys?' '.....'re on that chair.'
- 2 'Where did that cat come from?' '..... came in through the window.'
- 3 'What did you think of the film?' '.....'s not very good.'
- 4 'What shall I do with these letters?' 'Just put ..... on the table.'
- 5 'Can I have John's address?' 'I'll give ...... to you this afternoon.'
- 6 'Did you enjoy your holiday in Ireland?' 'Yes, .....'s a wonderful place.'
- 7 'Where are your glasses?' 'I've lost ......'
- 8 'Would you like tickets for the concert?' 'How much do ...... cost?'

#### We use it to talk about times, dates, distances and the weather.

It's five o'clock. It's Tuesday. It's December 17th today. It's my birthday. It's 20 miles from my house to the centre of Oxford. It's cold today. It's raining.

#### Write true answers to these questions beginning It's ...

1	What time is it? It's	3 What's the date?
2	What day is it?	4 How far is it to London?

#### We don't usually leave out personal pronouns. (For exceptions in spoken English, see page 293.)

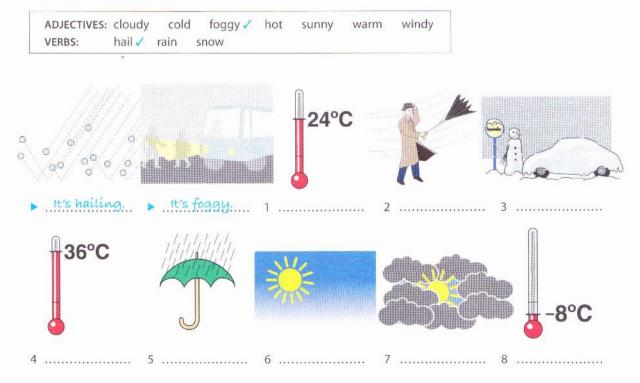
Jan arrived in America in 1976. **He** found a job in a clothes shop. (NOT Found a job ...) 'What languages do you know?' 'I can speak some German.' (NOT 'Can speak ...') 'Is your room OK?' 'Yes, I like **it**.' (NOT 'Yes, I like.')

Write answers, using I, you etc.

- 'What time is the next train?' (8.30 / leaves / at) It leaves at 8.30.
- 1 'Where's John?' (has / London / to / moved)
- 2 'Have you seen my glasses?' (on / chair / are / that)
- 3 'What do you think of my new shoes?' (*like*)
- 4 'What's Elisabeth going to do?' (medicine / study / going to / is)
- 5 'I'm learning Greek.' 'Is it easy?' (No / difficult / is)
- 6 'Where's my bicycle?' (put / in / the garage)
- 7 'What do you do at weekends?' (play / tennis)
- 8 'Do you like my picture?' (is / beautiful)

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: weather

Make sure you know the adjectives and verbs in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then label the pictures.



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### possessives: my, your etc This is my coat.

1		my	This is <b>my</b> coat.
you	jp	your	That's <b>your</b> problem.
he	)p-	his	John's visiting <b>his</b> mother.
she		her	Ann looks like <b>her</b> brothers.
it		its	The club has its meetings on Tuesdays.
we		our	Our friends Joe and Pat are staying with us.
they		their	The children have spent all their money.
who?	·····)p.	whose?	Whose coat is this?

#### Possessives don't change for singular and plural.

our friend our friends (NOT ours friends)

Note how we use *his* and *her*: if a boy or man has something, we use *his*; if a girl or woman has something, we use *her*.

*I saw John and his sister yesterday.* (NOT ... John and her sister ...) Mary and her brother are students. (NOT Mary and his brother ...)

#### We often use possessives with parts of the body and clothes.

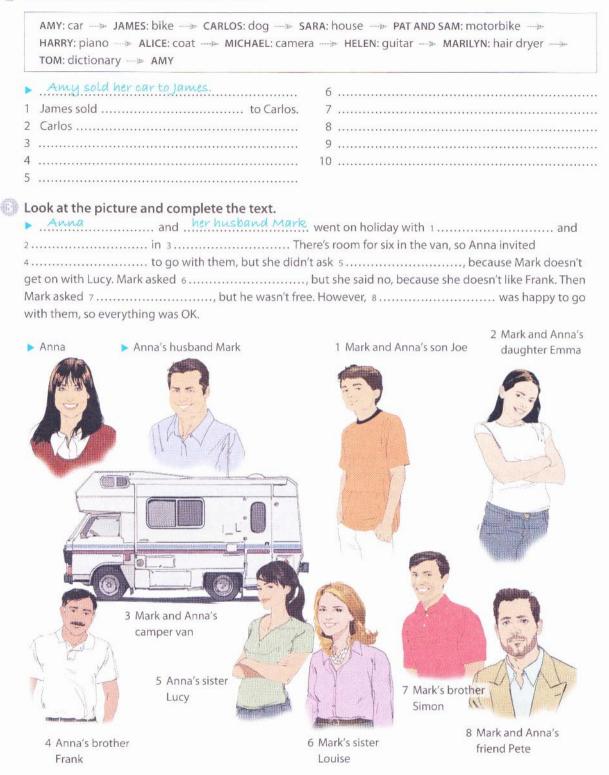
Phil has broken **his arm**. (NOT Phil has broken the arm.) She stood there with **her eyes** closed and **her hands** in **her pockets**.

#### Put in the correct possessives.

- We're taking ...... holiday in June.
- 1 Tina's lost ..... keys.
- 2 Peter says ..... wife is ill.
- 3 ..... car is that outside?
- 4 My bank has changed ..... name.
- 5 I'm going to sell ..... motorbike.
- 6 My students have got ..... exam next week.
- 7 Stephen writes to ..... girlfriend every day.
- 8 Maria lives with ..... father in Portugal.
- 9 Come in and take ..... coats off.
- 10 Robert broke ..... leg skiing last winter.
- 11 'What film did you see?' 'Sorry, I've forgotten ...... name.'
- 12 Elizabeth did well in ..... exams.



'Your loving son,'



We don't use a/an, the, this or that before possessives.my car (NOT the my car)this idea OR my idea (NOT this my idea)Don't confuse its (possessive) and it's (= 'it is' or 'it has' - see page 301). Compare:The company had its annual meeting yesterday. It's losing a lot of money.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# Level 1

### possessives: mine, yours etc This is mine.

DETERMINER	PRONOUN
my coat	mine
your car	yours
his chair	his
her book	hers

DETERMINER	PRONOUN
its price	
our house	ours
their problem	theirs

#### We use *mine, yours* etc without nouns. Compare:

That's not my coat. This is mine. (NOT This is the mine.) Is that your car? I thought yours was a Ford. Their garden is much bigger than ours. (NOT ... ours garden)

We can use the question word whose with or without nouns.

Whose coat is that? Whose is that coat?

#### Rewrite the sentences with possessive pronouns.

- That's my newspaper. That's mine.
- 1 | prefer our house to their house. | prefer our house to .....
- 2 Her hair looks better than your hair. Her hair .....
- 3 Your hair looks terrible.
- 4 That dog looks like our dog.
- 5 That car's not her car.
- 6 This coat isn't my coat.
- 7 My cooking is better than his cooking. .....
- 8 Is this bike your bike?

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: the bathroom

Look at the pictures of David and Natasha's bathroom, and use the words in the box to make sentences with *his, hers* or *theirs*. Use a dictionary if necessary.

8 Mary's



9 Mary's

10 John and Mary's

11 John and Mary's

190 PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES

Mary's

6 Mary's

I⊪ myself we⊮ ourselves	you <del>→&gt; your</del> self you →> <b>your</b> selves	he — <b>&gt;&gt; him</b> self they — <b>&gt;&gt; them</b> selves	she → <b>her</b> self	it → <b>» it</b> self
We use myself, yourse	elf etc when an object is the	ne same person/thing as	s the <b>subject</b> .	
	<i>is morning</i> . ( <b>NOT <del>  cut me</del> .</b> (Different from <del>He</del> tried to		elves some questions.	
Circle the correc	ct answer.			
1 She doesn't lov	e him / himself.	4 l'm goir	ng out tonight, so you w	/ill all have to
2 She likes lookir	ig at her / herself in the mi	rror. cook fo	r yourself / yourselves.	
	en talk to them / themselve		l, but I don't understand	d him / himself.
Put in myself, yo	urself etc.			
1 I'm teaching	to play the g	guitar. 5 Mary ta	Iks about	all the time.
	king to?'		airs for	
3 Get a drink for		7 They ju	st want to make money	for
4 We really enjoy	ed last nig	ght.		
We can also use myse	l <b>f</b> etc to <b>emphasise</b> – to s	ay 'that person/thing an	d nobody/nothing else'.	
It's best if <b>you</b> do it <b>you</b>	<b>urself.</b> I want to speak to	t <mark>he manager himself</mark> , no	t his secretary.	
💧 Put in myself, yo	urself etc.			
1 Did you cut you	ur hair	? 4 Can you	u repair this, or must we	do it
	built their house			
	letters		a letter from the Queer	
			1 2	

# Note the difference between *ourselves* etc and *each other*.



They're looking at themselves.



They're looking at each other.

#### Each other or -selves?

- 1 Henry and Barbara write to ..... every week.
- 2 Joe and Pat have bought a flat for .....
- 3 Do you and Julia tell ..... everything?
- 4 You'll need photos of ..... for your passports.
- 5 Ruth and I have known ..... for years.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: some common expressions with reflexive pronouns

by myself/yourself etc ( = 'alone') enjoy myself/yourself etc Take care of yourself. Help yourself. ( = 'Take what you want.') Make yourself comfortable.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *Im, don't*) and full forms (for example *I am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# personal pronouns and possessives: more practice

#### Forms. There is one mistake in each column. Find the mistakes in columns 2–5 and correct them.

1	2	3	4	5
1	me	my	mines	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	hers	hers	herself
it	it	its	-	itself
we	our	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
its they	them	their	theirs	theirselves

#### Mixed structures. Correct the mistakes.

- Her didn't say 'Hello'. ....
- 1 John and her wife have gone to Greece. .....
- 2 This coat is my. .....
- 3 Their house is much bigger than our. .....
- 4 That dog has hurt it's ear. .....
- 5 'What about this music?' 'I like.' .....
- 6 There are five miles to the nearest station.

#### •••••

- 7 We are Tuesday. .....
- 8 Where's the station?' 'He's over there.' .....
- 9 Their were all late. .....
- 10 'Did you like France?' 'I thought was wonderful.'

- 11 'Where are your gloves?' 'I've lost its.' .....
- 12 'Who did that?' 'It was I.' .....
- 13 'Which girl is your sister?' 'That's she in the red dress.'
- 14 Is cold again today.
- 15 'What's her name?' 'Have forgotten.' .....
- 16 Lucy broke the leg skiing. .....
- 17 'What's the date?' 'Is December 17th.'
- 18 Is that the my coat? .....
- 19 Who's car is this? .....
- 20 'Who's that?' 'I am.' .....

#### Reflexives and *each other*. Complete the captions.







# Mixed pronouns. Put in a personal pronoun (*me*, *you* etc), a reflexive pronoun (*myself*, *yourself* etc), *each other* or nothing (–).

- She looked at ...... and I looked at ....... but we didn't say anything.
- 1 When I'm alone I don't always cook for .....
- 2 We love ..... very much, but we fight all the time.
- 3 When he looks at ..... in the mirror, he gets very depressed.
- 4 Don't help ..... I want to do it by .....
- 5 Anna and I write to ..... every week.
- 6 The children really enjoyed ..... at your party.
- 7 I'm sorry. I haven't got time to teach ..... to cook. You'll have to teach .....
- 8 'Can we have some coffee?' 'Sure. Help ......'
- 9 My girlfriend doesn't speak much Italian, and I don't speak much Chinese, so we sometimes have trouble understanding .....
- 10 Come in and make ..... comfortable.

#### **192** PERSONAL PRONOUNS; POSSESSIVES

#### Reflexives. Circle the right pronouns.

- 1 Of all my wife's relations I like *myself / herself* the best. (*Joseph Cook*)
- 2 Novels are about other people and poems are about *themselves / yourself*. (*Philip Larkin*)
- 3 An egotist: a person more interested in *himself / yourself* than in me. (*Ambrose Bierce*)
- 4 'How do you know you're God?' 'Simple. When I pray to Him I find I'm talking to *myself / himself*.' (*Peter Barnes*)
- 5 We grow neither better nor worse as we get old, but more like *ourselves / themselves*. (*May Lamberton Becker*)
- 6 You can always get someone to love you even if you have to do it *ourself / yourself*. (*Tom Masson*)

#### Grammar in a text. Choose words from the boxes to complete the text.

each other her his its themselves they your

My brother and 1 ..... girlfriend have known 2 ..... for about five years, but 3 ..... 've only been going out together for six months.

he her him she their they we

Before that, he didn't like 4..... and 5..... didn't like him, but later 6..... became good friends, and started going out together.

her hers his its it's our their they they're

7 ...... both have small flats. His flat is in the town centre, and 8 ...... very comfortable.
9 ...... is a long way out, and it's not so nice. So they spend most of 10 ...... free time at 11 ...... place.

he her hers herself him himself its it's she's

He works in a garage, and 12 ...... a teacher, but she doesn't let 13 ..... touch 14 ...... car – she looks after it 15 .....

each other I my they them their themselves they're

 I like 16
 16
 good for 18
 17

 so 19
 hope 20
 will stay together.
 will stay together.

# Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of these three expressions gets most hits? Can you see why?

"She broke her arm." ...... "She broke the arm." ...... "She broke his arm." .....



# personal pronouns and possessives: revision test

#### Complete the table.

	me	my	mine	myself
	you			
he		his		
			hers	
	it			
		our		
				yourselves
they				

	orrect the mistakes.
•	I him haven't seen today. haven't seen him
1	'Is the soup OK?' 'Yes, I like.'
2	There are 20 miles to the shopping centre.
3	We are Friday.
4	Peter and her sister are in Brazil.
5	I like our garden better than their.
б	Olivia and Karl are nice. But theirs children!
7	Who's is this bag?
8	Ann and I write to ourselves every week.
9	I really enjoyed at your party.
10	I'm teaching me to play the guitar
11	Where's the my bike?
12	Is April 1st today.
13	James fell off his horse and broke the arm.
14	'What's Joe's phone number?' 'Have forgotten.'
15	I sat down, made me comfortable, and waited for her to say something.
~	
	ut in a personal pronoun (me, you etc), a possessive (my, your etc), a reflexive
	nyself, yourself etc), or each other.
•	t. is five o'clock.
	I don't like and he doesn't like
	Don't help She must do it by
	Oliver and his girlfriend phone every day.
4	Thanks for yesterday evening. We really enjoyed
5	l like cooking for other people, but I don't much like cooking for
6	Let's work together: the work will go much faster if we help
7	
8	'Will you teach the piano?' 'No, sorry, you'll have to teach
	'Who broke the cup?' 'It wasn't'
	'Which is your mother?' 'That's over there by the window.'
11	My parents don't understand
	and sometimes I don't understand
	That girl keeps losing shoes.
	Bill's coming this evening with three sisters.
14	I don't like looking at photos of always look so old.

15 Mary's mother's really nice, but I don't like ..... father much.

# **SECTION 14** nouns

### grammar summary

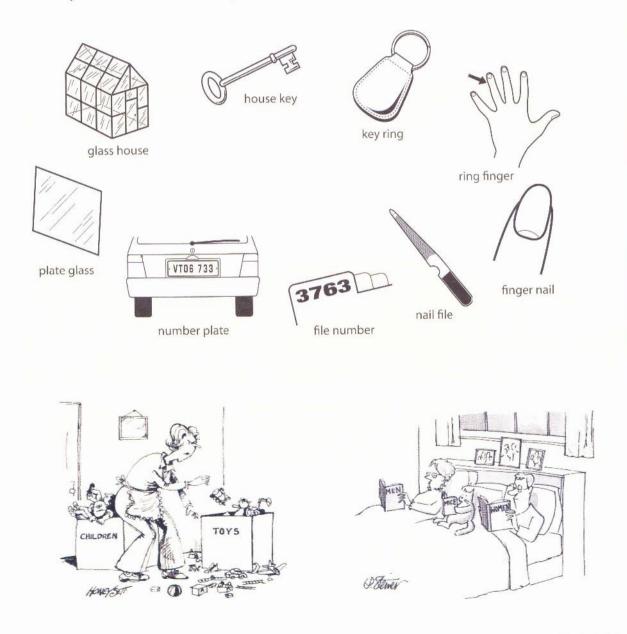
**Nouns** are mostly words for things and people – for example *house, tree, driver, child, water, idea, lesson.* Most nouns can come after *the*.

English nouns can be **countable** (we can say *two houses*) or **uncountable** (we can't say *two waters*). **Countable** nouns have **plurals** (*houses*), and we can use *a/an* with them (*a house, an idea*). **Uncountable** nouns have **no plurals**, and we **can't** use *a/an* before them.

Some English uncountable nouns are countable in some other languages (like furniture).

We can join two nouns:

- with a possessive 's or s' (for example my brother's wife, my parents' house).
- with a preposition (for example a piece of cake).
- directly one after the other (for example chocolate cake, a shoe shop).

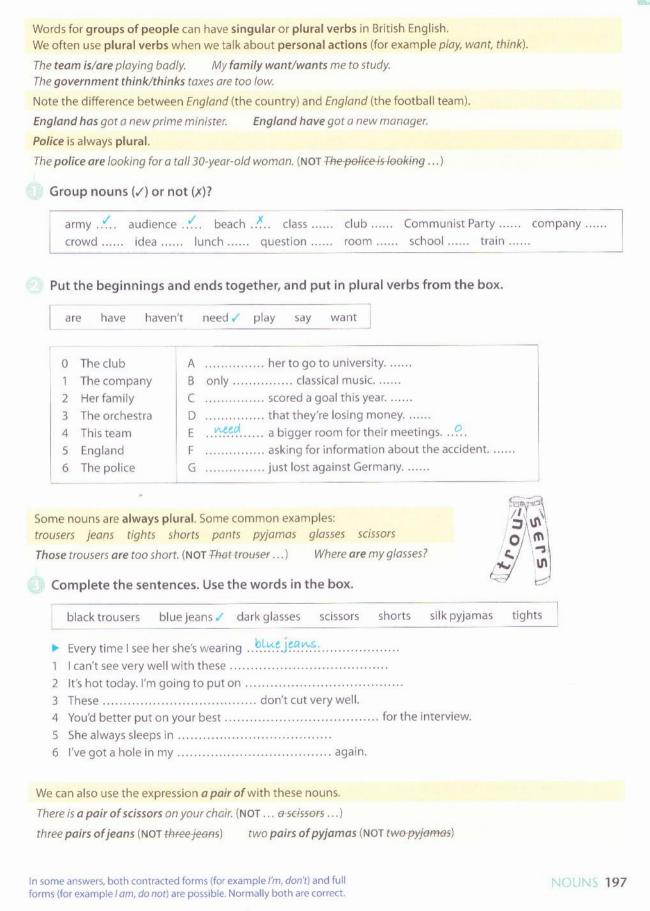


Countable nouns have different forms for singular and plural. one child six children one car four cars one day ten days one baby four babies HOW TO MAKE PLURALS book ----- books home --- homes car --- cars most nouns: + -s bus --- buses wish ----- wishes fox ----- foxes " -s. -sh. -ch. -x: + -es church ----- churches Write the plurals. boss 🗸 box brush chair church class dress garden apple 🗸 cat gas wish glass hotel plane ship table time tree watch apples +-S: bosses + - FS. NOUNS ENDING IN -Y monkey ---- monkeys · -ay, -ey, -oy, -uy: + -s day -->> days toy ---- toys baby ---- babies lady ----- ladies lorry ---- lorries 💮 Write the plurals. boy 🗸 city 🗸 copy party country family guy holiday kev wav boys +-S: cities **COMMON IRREGULAR PLURALS** child ----- children half ---- halves mouse ----- mice foot ->> feet knife -- knives penny ----- pence leaf ----- leaves tooth ---- teeth wife --- wives person --- people man ----- men life ---- lives loaf ---- loaves sheep --- sheep woman --- women potato ----- potatoes self ---- selves tomato ---> tomatoes fish ---- fish Simple present verbs have different forms after singular and plural nouns (see page 16). This bus runs at weekends. Most of the buses run at weekends. My brother has a small flat. Both my brothers have good jobs.

#### Put in plural nouns or simple present verbs.

- 1 Our ..... play a lot of football. (*child*)
- 2 Those ...... don't look English. (student)
- 3 Some people ..... to talk to you. (want)
- 4 Big ..... are always dirty. (city)
- 5 Their ..... are travelling with them. (wife)
- 6 These knives .....n't cut very well. (do)
- 7 My ..... are giving me trouble. (tooth)8 Those ..... cost too much. (watch)
- 9 Most ..... cry at night. (baby)
- 10 The ..... are all wet. (*match*)
- 11 Who are those .....? (guy)
- 12 My parents ..... at home. (work)
- 13 How many ..... live here? (person)

# singular/plural team, family; jeans, scissors



# countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns are words like *car*, *book*, *chair*. They can be singular or plural. Uncountable nouns are words like petrol, rice, water. They are only singular. Circle the uncountable nouns. cup dog flower quitar love meat music ear oil photo river salt snow sugar women wool The following words are uncountable in English (but countable in some other languages). They are normally only singular. We can use some with them, but not a/an. (NOT a travel, a furniture) advice baggage bread furniture hair information knowledge luck luggage news spaghetti (and macaroni etc) travel work I need some advice. This furniture is too expensive. His hair is very long. Travel teaches you a lot. Put *a* with the countable nouns and *some* with the uncountable nouns. ..... bread ..... cheque ..... baggage ..... fridae ..... furniture ..... handbag .....holiday ..... knowledge ..... luck ..... newspaper ..... problem ...... station ..... travel ..... work Put in suitable uncountable nouns from the box. information advice baggage furniture hair spaghetti travel work 

1 'Have you got much .....?' 'No, just one small bag.'

2 I live 50 kilometres from my work, so I spend a lot of money on .....

3 This ..... isn't very good. You've cooked it for too long.

4 I've stopped reading the papers. The ..... is always bad.

5 I don't know what to do. Can you give me some .....?

6 All this ..... is from my mother's house.

7 I've got too much .....and not enough free time.

8 | like your ...... when it's long like this.

To give a countable meaning, we usually use a longer expression or a different word.

Can you give me a piece of advice? Did you have a good journey?

Put in words or expressions from the box.

a piece of advice a piece of baggage a piece of news a job a journey

- a suitcase a piece of baggage
- 1 selling cars
- 2 driving from London to Edinburgh
- 3 'Don't marry him, dear.'
- 'The next train leaves at 10.15.' 4
- 5 'There has been a big train crash.'

→ For articles with countable and uncountable nouns, see page 153.

#### Some words can be countable or uncountable, with different meanings.

 A light was on in the house. (= 'a lamp')
 Light travels at 300,000 km a second.

 I've seen that film three times.
 Time goes fast when you're having fun.

 I had a strange experience yesterday.
 We need a secretary with experience.

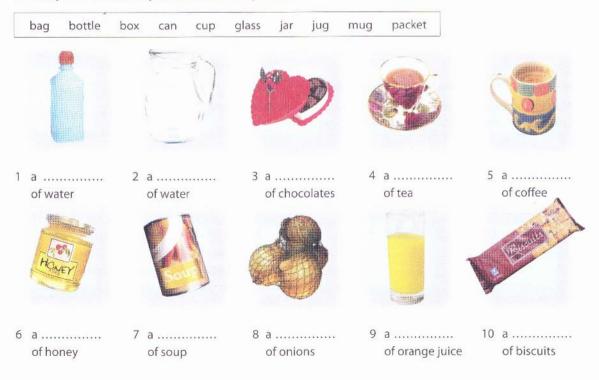
 Three coffees, please. (= 'cups of coffee')
 I drink too much coffee.

#### Look at the pictures and put in descriptions from the box.



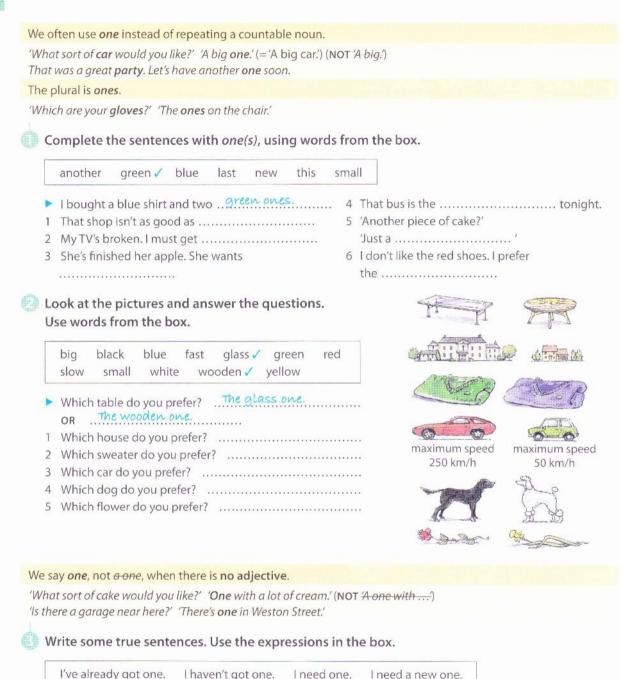
#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: containers

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then use them to complete the descriptions under the pictures.



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm, don't*) and full forms (for example *l am, do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# one and ones a big one; the ones on the chair



 I've already got one.
 I haven't got one.
 I need one.
 I need a new one.

 I don't need one.
 I'd like one.
 I don't want one.

 a computer
 I don't need one.
 4 a cup of coffee

 1 a bicycle
 5 a tennis racket

2 a fast car ......
 6 a raincoat .....
 3 a camera ......
 7 a rich uncle .....

#### We only use one for countable nouns (see page 198).

'Would you like some coffee?' 'Yes, black (coffee), please.' (NOT 'Yes, black one ....')

# 's and s' possessive: forms son's, sons', men's

	ngular nouns: + 's my son's car John	n and Iris's flat the cat's leg
m	ost plural nouns: +' those boys' passpo.	rts the <b>babies'</b> toys our <b>wives'</b> stories
pl	urals without s + 's most children's poe	ems three men's names the people's voices
N	lake possessive forms by adding 's or '.	
	my mother.'s nose	10 my aunt and uncle shop
•	my sisters names	11 Patrick books
1	Alice and John house	12 a photographer job
2	artists ideas	13 our postman cat
3	my dog ears	14 postmen uniforms
4	those dogs ears	15 Joyce pen
5	those men faces	16 the thief bag
6	his girlfriend piano	17 the thieves car
7	their grandchild birthday	18 that woman brother
8	their grandchildren school	19 most women desks
9	ladies hats	20 your mum and dad bedroom
C	orrect the mistakes and write the correc	t sentences.
•	This is the childrens' room. This is the c	hildren's room.
1		
1 2	Is this your mothers once:	
2	May I speak to the bosses secretary?	
2 3	May I speak to the bosses secretary? What's Jane and Peters' address?	
2 3 4	May I speak to the bosses secretary? What's Jane and Peters' address? This is a picture of my grandparent's weddir	ng
2 3 4 5	May I speak to the bosses secretary? What's Jane and Peters' address? This is a picture of my grandparent's weddir Do you know John' new girlfriend?	ng.
2 3 4 5 6	May I speak to the bosses secretary? What's Jane and Peters' address? This is a picture of my grandparent's weddir Do you know John' new girlfriend? She writes for a womens' magazine	
2 3 4 5 6 7	May I speak to the bosses secretary? What's Jane and Peters' address? This is a picture of my grandparent's weddir Do you know John' new girlfriend? She writes for a womens' magazine Is that Roberts' car?	ng

John's mother's cat Helen's boss's car My father's secretary's sister's baby

#### Write the possessive expressions.

-	My son has a teacher. She has a husband. <u>my son's teacher's husband</u>
1	My sister has a secretary. She has an office
2	Jane has children. They have bicycles.
	Rob has a family. They have a holiday flat.
4	Olivia has a boyfriend. He has a cat.
5	The Prime Minister has a wife. She has a problem.
6	Luke has an uncle. He has a farm.
	Mr Patterson has a doctor. She has a car.
8	The President has a niece. She has a business.
	Charlotte has a boss. He has a wife.
10	The Director has a husband. He has a friend. She has a mother. She has a cousin.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

# 's and s' possessive: use lan's car; the boss's car

Posse	ssive nouns with 's or s' <b>take the place</b> of <b>the</b> .				
the co	ar that belongs to lan lan's car (NOT lan's the car) the shoes that belong to Jo Jo's shoes				
But a possessive noun can have its own article.					
	ar that belongs to the boss				
the sl	hoes that belong to the children —>>> the children's shoes				
•	ake 's or s' possessive structures.         The dog belongs to Joe.       Joe's dog         The dog belongs to the postman.       the postmaw's dog         The house belongs to Astrid.       the postmaw's dog         The house belongs to the doctors.       the book belongs to Oliver and Carla.         The car belongs to the teacher.       the money belongs to the girls.				
6	The money belongs to Susan.				
1	hange the sentences.         The classes are using the new books. (the French teachers)         The French teachers' classes are using the new books.         The car is parked in front of the house. (the builder; Anna)				
4	The brothers are all in the army. (Alice and Pat)				
0.000					
We use <b>possessive</b> 's and s' mostly to talk about people and animals, not things: for example their poeple and animals, not the poeple anity, not the poepl					
Ann's purseAnn's English lessonsAnn's holidayAnn's husbandAnn's friendmy dad's book (NOT the book of my dad)my horse's ears (NOT the ears of my horse)BUT the roof of the house (NOT the house's roof)the top of my desk (NOT my desk's top)					
Write two sentences for each item.					
•	Is the door open? (Paul; the library) Is Paul's door open? Is the door of the library open?				
1	What's the name? (your brother; that book)				
2	Is there anything in the pockets? (the children; that coat)				
3	You can see the church from the window. ( <i>Emma; the living room</i> )				
4	Why are the arms so dirty? ( <i>John; your chair</i> )				

#### With some common time words, we add 's to say how long something takes.

a second's thought a minute's silence

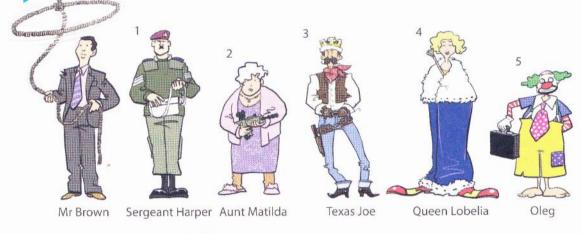
Choose a time expression for each sentence. Use the words in the box.

second 🗸 minute hour day week year

'Who was it?' I asked. There was a pause before she answered. <u>A second's pause</u>
After university, Les took a course to become a teacher.
Lin had a holiday with her mother earlier this year.
Oxford is nearly 600 km from Edinburgh – that's a journey.
Sita's new job will mean a drive to work every morning.
There was a wait while the computer started up.

We can use noun + 's or s' without another noun, if the meaning is clear.
'Whose coat is that?' 'Harry's.' My hair is dark, but my children's is fair.
We also use noun + 's or s' without another noun for offices, churches and some shops.
I bought this at Sainsbury's. I hate going to the dentist's. She sings at St. John's.

Look at the picture. There is some confusion. Complete the sentences as in the example.



- The rope is probably ...Texas Joe's.
- 1 The handbag is probably .....
- 2 The gun .....
- 3 The crown .....
- 4 The big shoes .....
- 5 The document case .....

#### We often use noun + 's or s' without another noun to talk about people's homes.

I saw Monica at June and Barry's on Friday. Lee is going to his sister's next weekend.

C)	Other people's homes: write about two or more things in your past. Use at's or ats'.
	I met my girlfriend at Judy's. I went to my grandparents' for Easter.

## noun + noun Milk chocolate is a kind of chocolate.

We can put one noun before another when we are talking about a kind of thing or person. The first noun is usually singular, even if it has a plural meaning.

milk chocolate = a kind of chocolate, with milk in itchocolate milk = a kind of milk, with chocolate in itflower shop = shop that sells flowers (NOT flowers shop)corner shop = a shop on a cornerhotel receptionist = a receptionist in a hotelhistory teacher = a teacher who teaches history

Use the words in the box to make noun + noun structures. You can use some of the words more than once.

garden army aspirin business corner email flower home police prison village jazz kitchen milk opera perfume pop

- 3 kinds of shop flower shop, corner shop, village shop
- 1 3 kinds of address
- 2 3 kinds of bottle .....
- 3 3 kinds of singer .....
- 4 2 kinds of wall 5 3 kinds of uniform
- 6 2 kinds of chair

Change the expressions in the box to noun + noun structures, and put the beginnings and ends together. Remember: don't make the first noun plural.

clothes for babies make-up for eyes ✓ building with offices in it food for dogs engineer who works on computers school of languages drawer for knives

We often use noun + noun structures to talk about what things are made of.

#### Write noun + noun names for these.

- soup with chicken in it chicken soup
- 1 a box made of metal .....
- 2 cakes with chocolate in them .....
- 3 a fork made of plastic
- 4 soup made of vegetables .....
- 5 a jacket made of leather
- 6 shirts made of cotton
- 7 a plate made of paper .....
- 8 salad with tomatoes in it
- 9 a wall made of stones

We often use **noun + noun** structures when the second noun is made from a **verb +** *er*.

a truck driver = a person who drives a truck a hair dryer = a machine for drying hair

#### What do we call these people or things?

- This person drives a bus. a bus driver
- 1 This person manages an office.
- 2 This machine makes coffee.
- 3 This person drinks coffee.
- 4 This person loves animals. .....
- 5 This stuff cleans floors. .....
- 6 This person plays tennis.
- 7 This thing opens letters.
- 8 This person smokes cigars. .....
- 9 This person climbs mountains.

#### NOUN + NOUN STRUCTURE OR 'S / S' POSSESSIVE STRUCTURE

We mostly use 's or s' when the **first noun possesses**, **experiences** or **has a relationship** with the **second noun**. We use a **noun + noun** structure for **other kinds of meaning**. So **things** do **not usually** take 's / s'. Compare:

the dog's name (possession: the dog has a name)
 Rita's accident (experience: Rita had an accident)
 Ed's brother (relationship: Ed has a brother)
 Annie's secretary is Ellen's best friend. (relationships)
 BUT a shoe brush (the shoe doesn't possess or experience the brush; shoes don't have relationships)

#### Circle the correct answers.

- 1 Could I borrow your telephone's book / telephone book for a minute?
- 2 Is that your teacher's book / teacher book, or is it yours?
- 3 Elizabeth's journey / Elizabeth journey took her to five continents.
- 4 The train's journey / train journey from Huntsville to Victoria was very boring.
- 5 My aunt's home / aunt home is full of beautiful furniture.
- 6 Our holiday's home / holiday home is in the French Alps.
- 7 My brother's interview / brother interview with the president will be on the radio today.
- 8 I was very nervous about my job's interview / job interview.

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: one-word noun + noun structures

Some short **noun** + **noun** structures are so **common** that we write them as **one word**, for example: armchair bathroom bedroom bookshop businessman businesswoman hairbrush handbag raincoat postman postwoman schoolchild suitcase toothbrush toothpaste



# nouns: more practice

SHORE:

Sth C.	ountable or uncountable? Dut in a /an er serre		
10002	ountable or uncountable? Put in <i>a/an</i> or <i>some</i> .	-	Proc. In the second
	We need new bed.		l've got difficult job to do today.
-	We need		Ann gave me good news.
1	Can you give me advice?	/	l need a taxi, because l've got
2	I found money in the street	-	heavy luggage.
2	this morning.		Did you have good journey?
	Can you buy bread while you're out?		I've just had good idea.
4	I've got work to do this evening.	10	I must give you important information.
S S	pecial plurals. Put in three different plural noun	s w	hich have no singular.
1	a pair of 2 a pair of		3 a pair of
🛞 Si	ngular or plural? Correct (✓) or not (メ)?		
1	The team are playing well	6	People are all different
2	The police don't usually carry guns in Britain	7	Are those your pyjamas?
3	My family have moved to Manchester		I need a new pair of glasses
4	He buys too much clothes		I don't like that people very much
5	l bought two new blue jeans yesterday		The government are in trouble again
	ossessive forms. Correct the mistakes.		
	What's your mothers' phone number?		
1	That's the Peter's house.		
2	She writes childrens' books.		
3	That building is a boy's school.		
4	This is my fathers office.		
5	I want to talk to the boss secretary's.		
6	We're going round to Jane's and Peter place		
7	Here's a photo of my parent's wedding.		
8	Is this the teachers book?		
9	Johns' friends are all here.		
10	He only reads mens' magazines.		
A N	oun + noun. Write shorter descriptions of these	ne	onle and things
	chocolate with fruit and nuts in it fruit and nut		
	a person who makes toys <u>a toy maker</u>		
1	a shop that sells shoes		
2			
3	juice taken from orangesa jacket made of leather		
1000	The state of the s		
4	a person who drives trains		
5	a table where you can drink coffee		
7			
	people who read the news (on TV)		
8	a magazine about computers		
1997	a market in the street		
10	a watch made of gold		

# Noun + noun. What are these people? Put together words from the two boxes and write the descriptions.



#### Grammar in a text. Read the text and circle the correct forms.

In the centre of Mappleford/ Mappleford centre there's a large ancient covered market with all sorts of interesting shops: 1 shops of clothes / clothes shops, butchers, grocers, jewellers etc etc. But my favourite place in the market is Joe's Café. It's a real 2 business of family / family business: Joe, 3 the wife of Joe / Joe's wife, his sons, his 4 son's / sons' wives, his daughter and his 5 daughter's / daughters' boyfriend all work there at different times. It's not luxurious – there are 6 tables and chairs of plastic / plastic tables and chairs – but it's excellent value. Joe's café is the best place in town for a full English breakfast. For a few pounds, you get a big plate of eggs, bacon and sausages, as much toast and butter as you can eat, and an enormous cup of tea. All sorts of people 7 have / has breakfast at 8 Joe / Joe's, from professors to 9 drivers of buses / bus drivers / bus's drivers. When they've all gone off to work, Joe and his family have time for a short rest, and then the café starts filling up with tourists who have come to try Joe's famous 10 cake of chocolate / chocolate cake. If you're ever in Mappleford, take my advice and visit Joe's Café.

## Internet exercise. Checking correctness. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following expressions get most hits? So which are correct?

rene mig expressions ger most ma	
"a heavy baggage"	"some heavy baggage " . <u></u>
"a coffee table"	"a table coffee "
"the President's birthday"	"the birthday of the President "
"a bus driver" "a bus	s's driver " "a driver of bus"
"a gold watch "	"a watch of gold"

### nouns: revision test

#### Write the plurals.

bus buses	. fox	journey	match	book
table	foot	person	knife	mouse
dog	day	family	woman	leaf
man	child	car	wife	baby

#### Which nouns can be plural? Write the plural or x.

notenotes	3 idea	7 furniture
▶ money	4 duck	8 government
1 information	5 knowledge	9 class
2 bread	6 journey	10 traffic

#### Circle the correct forms.

- 1 My cousin is a tennis player / player of tennis / tennis's player.
- 2 The police is / are looking for a tall thin man.
- 3 I'm going to have a sleep of an hour / an hour sleep / an hour's sleep now.
- 4 Do vou read woman's / womans' / women's / womens' magazines?
- 5 I like travelling to other countries / countrys / countreys.
- 6 'Coffee?' 'Yes, please. One large / Large one / A large one / A large'.
- 7 Could you give me some information / informations?
- 8 England is / are leading by 4 goals to 2.
- 9 My sister works in a flower shop / flowers shop / shop flower / shop's flower.
- 10 I can't find her number in the phone book / phone's book / book of phone / book of the phone.

#### Correct the mistakes.

#### He's bought two new trousers. pairs of trousers 1 I like eating chocolate milk. 2 My parents lived all their lifes in Dublin. 3 I like looking round books shops. 4 Who was the people who came to see you? 5 Peter is my son's sister. 6 I like those gloves. How much are the blue? 7 It's a nice jacket, but I'd like a one with pockets. 8 You will never be a player of football. 9 Marco Polo wrote a book about his journies. 10 'Where did you buy it?' 'In the market of street.' 11 We spent the weekend at my brother. 12 A vet is a doctor of animals. 13 The mother of Anna speaks good Spanish. 14 My father gave me earrings of silver for my birthday. 15 Can I have some oranges juice? ..... 16 Birmingham, Liverpool and Manchester are three important citys in England. 17 I couldn't open the house's door 18 There's the Peter's house 19 Do you have the address of Emma? ..... 20 I've got a big work to do today.

## **SECTION 15** adjectives and adverbs

#### grammar summary

Adjectives are words like *easy, slow, sorry, important*. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after some verbs (e.g. *be, seem, look*).

an **easy** job a **slow** train I'm **sorry**. This letter looks **important**.

Adverbs are words like *easily, slowly, yesterday, there*. Adverbs tell you, for example, how, when or where something happens.

I won the game easily. Please speak slowly. She arrived yesterday.





'A wonderfully funny and moving book'

## DELICIOUSLY\_CREAMY

**'AN UNFORGETTABLE NOVEL'** 

# Generation Hot socks:

the perfect way to warm cold feet and make you feel good

## adjectives a beautiful little girl who was not stupid

1 2	1 2	
a long journey (NOT <del>a journey long</del> )	loud music (NOT music loud)	
Adjectives don't change for singular an	d plural.	
a <b>fast</b> car <b>fast</b> cars (NOT <del>fasts cars</del> )		
Before nouns, we <b>don't</b> usually put and	between adjectives.	
a <b>big bad</b> wolf (NOT <del>a big and bad wolf</del> )		
Colour adjectives usually come after oth	ners.	

#### Put in the adjectives and write the story.

<ul> <li>One fine day, a long time ago</li> </ul>
1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9

#### Put the words in the correct order and continue the story.

'good little , girl morning', said	1 'Good
big the bad wolf.	2
'going you where are	3
that with bag heavy	4
day this fine on?'	5
'going my see to grandmother I'm old'	6
girl the said little.	7
'lives small she in house a	8
new the supermarket near.'	9

#### Put in adjectives from the box to finish the story.

big friendly stupid little

'OK,' said the wolf in a 1..... voice. 'I'll see you later.' 'I don't think so,' said the 2..... girl, who was not 3..... She took a 4..... pistol out of her bag and shot the wolf dead.

(from an idea by James Thurber)



'I don't think so,' said the little girl.

Adject	ives can go after <i>be, become, get, seem, look</i> (='seem') and <i>feel</i> .
	ter is cold. Everything became clear. It's getting late. You seem tired.
	oks happy. I feel hot.
	hese verbs, we put and before the last of two or more adjectives.
He was	s tall, dark <b>and</b> handsome. (NOT He was tall, dark, handsome.) You look well <b>and</b> happy.
Loc	ok at the pictures and complete the sentences, using words from the box.
a	and and beautiful cold hungry intelligent tired
	$\int \int $
1 5	She is
A CONTRACTOR OF A CONTRACTOR OFTA CONTRACTOR O	ke sentences.
	Jack / very / tall / be' Jack's very tall.' 'Yes, he's nearly 2 metres.'
	expensive / that / look / car' 'No, it's cheap.'
	seem / happy / Adele '
	'ill / tired / and / feel / I'
	dark / very early here in winter / get / it
attra.	ke sentences with adjectives from the box.
F	Australian bad beautiful hot 🗸 late rich
175	This water is the bat
	This water / not be very /
	'The train / be /'
	'He / look /'
	'Your hair / look /'
	My memory / getting very /
5 1	want / become / and lamous

#### We don't usually use adjectives without nouns.

'Polly's ill.' 'The poor girl.' (NOT 'The poor.')

## adverbs of manner He ate quickly.

#### ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Adjectives are connected with nouns and pronouns. They usually tell you more about people or things. They can go before nouns, or after *be, seem, look* etc (see pages 210–211). Adverbs are connected with other words – for example verbs. Some adverbs tell you how something happens. These often end in -/y.

	A CONTRACTOR OF
lt's an easy language.	You can <b>learn</b> this language <b>easily</b> .
×	
The music is slow.	The pianist is playing slowly.
Her <b>ideas</b> are interesting.	She spoke interestingly about her ideas.
-	
Joe looked hungry.	Joe <b>ate hungrily</b> .
1	
🚺 Choose an adjective or an	adverb.
And the second se	

- Could I have a ... quick / quickly)
- 1 This is a ..... train it stops everywhere. (slow / slowly)
- 2 He talked very ...... about his work. (interesting / interestingly)
- 3 You've cooked the meat ...... (beautiful / beautifully)
- 4 I've got an ..... job for you. (easy / easily)
- 5 She writes in ..... English. (perfect / perfectly)
- 6 I sing very ..... (bad / badly)
- 7 I feel ..... today. (happy / happily)
- 8 You seem very ..... (angry / angrily)
- 9 Anne's a ..... swimmer. (strong / strongly)
- 10 Could you talk more ..... please? (quiet / quietly)

#### HOW TO MAKE -LY ADVERBS

÷	usually: adjective + -ly	quick — quickly	real really (NOT realy)	complete completely
0	-y≫ -ily	easy —> easily	happy	
ф	-ble	possible possibly		

#### Write the adverbs.

- 3 loud ...... 7 nice ...... 11 comfortable ......



## other adverbs I like sport very much.

	oing away <b>tomorro</b> i	w. We ran do	wnhill. The	accident happ	pened there.		
Ve d	on't go out <b>much</b> .	I watch TV a lo		guitar <b>a bit</b> .	He sings <mark>a li</mark>	ttle.	
hese	e adverbs often cor	ne at the end of	a sentence. The	ey do <mark>not</mark> com	ne between th	e verb and the obj	ject.
	VERB	OBJECT	ADVERB				
he	speaks	English	well.	(NOT <del>S</del>	he speaks well	English.)	
hey	make	very good bread	d here.			very good bread.)	
	bought	a lot of clothes	yesterday			ay a lot of clothes.)	
Ve	didn't enjoy	the holiday	much.	(NOT H	Ve didn't enjoy i	much the holiday.)	
	like	sport	very muc	h. (NOT H	l <del>ike very much</del>	sport.)	
M	ake sentences w	ith adverbs fro	om the box. (C	) ifferent ans	wers are pos	sible.)	
Γ	carefully clearly		perfectly slo			yesterday	
-	carefully clean	y conectly	perfectly sic	ivery contor	TOW THUCH	yesterday	
•	soup / cook / the	Cook the sou	up slowly. C	DR Cook th	e soup carefi	uly.	
1	the / read / I / lette	er					
2	computer / bough	nt/a/l					
3	name / your / writ	.e					
4	see / must / the / d	doctor/you					••
5	languages / speak	s/he/four					
6	the / you / write /	address / didn't					
7	skiing / don't like ,	/1					
8	speak / and / plea						
	rite about six thi		••••••				
1	l like		very much.	4			
2				5			
3				6			
	rbs can go before a	adjectives, and b	pefore past part	ciciples (for ex	ample broken,	finished).	
dve		le corry) nea	rly ready co	mpletely finis	hed		
	oly sorry (NOT terrib						
	oly sorry (NOT terrib	ic sorry) near				no mossible)	
errit	oly sorry (NOT <del>terrib</del> omplete the sent	ana ana ang ang ang ang ang ang ang ang	rds from the l	box. (Differe	nt answers a	re possible.)	
errit	omplete the sent	tences with wo		box. (Differe		ribly very well	1
erril	omplete the sent	tences with wo	y extremely	happily 🗸	nearly ter		
erril	omplete the sent badly beautifu Joe and Ann have	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily	y extremely	happily 🗸 arried for twei	nearly ter nty-five years.		]
erril	omplete the sent badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily	y extremely	happily 🗸 arried for twer e have no more	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets.		]
erril	omplete the sent badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm There's nothing to	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily sorry to beat – the fridge	y extremely ma tell you that we	happily 🗸 arried for twei e have no moi em	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty.		]
errit	omplete the sent badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily sorry to beat – the fridge	y extremely ma tell you that we	happily 🗸 arried for twei e have no moi em	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty.		]
erril	omplete the sent badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm There's nothing to	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily beensorry to beat – the fridge	y extremely d ma tell you that we is written but it's	happily 🗸 arried for twer e have no mor em not very inter	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty.		]
erril Co 1 2 3	badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm There's nothing to The book's	tences with wo lly completely been <u>happily</u> sorry to beat – the fridge day, David was	y extremely ma tell you that we is written but it's	happily arried for twer e have no mor em not very inter tired.	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty. esting.	ribly very well	
errib Co Co 1 2 3 4	badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm There's nothing to The book's After walking all o The food here is . 'Is your new house	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily beat - the fridge day, David was e ready yet?' 'No	y extremely tell you that we is written but it's cooked bu , but it's	happily arried for twen e have no mon em not very inter tired. ut they don't o	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty. esting. give you enoug finished.	ribly very well	
erril Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu Cu	badly beautifu Joe and Ann have I'm There's nothing to The book's After walking all o The food here is .	tences with wo lly completely beenhappily beat - the fridge day, David was e ready yet?' 'No	y extremely tell you that we is written but it's cooked bu , but it's	happily arried for twen e have no mon em not very inter tired. ut they don't o	nearly ter nty-five years. re tickets. pty. esting. give you enoug finished.	ribly very well	

## adverbs with the verb often, certainly etc

Some a	adverbs, f	or example	e always o	or certai	nly, usua	ally go wit	th the ve	rb.	
how of how ce other:		always certainly already	definit	usually tely just	probabl	metimes y even	ever only	<i>hardly ever</i> (='almost never')	never
	adverbs g e/is/was/v	51 C	nost verb	s, but a	fter auxi	liary verb	s (have, v	<i>vill, can, must</i> etc) and after	
I <b>alway</b> Andy <b>o</b> She <b>ha</b> I <b>certai</b> We <b>onl</b>	<mark>ften goes</mark> rdly ever inly like Lo ly want to	the evening to New Yo sees him.	rk. ra.	l h He He It v	ave alwa can ofte is hardl will certa are onl	ILIARY VER ays enjoye en get cheo y ever at h ainly rain t y here to so Iready met	d reading ap flights. ome. omorrow. ee Barbar		
Dut	t the adv	verbs in th	ne correc	t place	s.				
► 1	speak Fr	ench, but p speak Fro	people kn ench, bu	ow that t peopl	l'm Engl e alway	lish. (often Js know	; always) that I'm	. English.	
1.	Jake eats	fish. He ea	ts fish for	breakfa	st. (alwa	ys; even)			
•					· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				
2 /	Ann plays	i tennis, bu	it she play	's in the	evening	gs. (often; d	only)		
3 I	Edward p	uts tomato	sauce or	n everyt	hing. He	puts it on	ice crear	m. (usually; probably)	
4 I	l forget na	ames. I forg	get faces.	(sometir	nes; nev	 er)			
5.	Jane gets	angry, and	d she shou	uts at pe	eople. (h	ardly ever;	never)		
0	i get to th	e station c	on unie, ar	id the t		te. (anvays	s, aiways)		
7	I will pho	ne you ton	norrow, ar	nd I will	write ne	xt week. (	definitely;	; probably)	
8	l drink tea	a. I drink co	offee. ( <i>usu</i>	ally; son	netimes)				
							· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
9	Your siste	er is a good	singer. St	ne is a v	ery inter	esting per	rson. (ceri	tainly; also)	
10	My moth	er is asleep	o. I think sl	ne is ill.	(still; pro	bably)			
A CHARTER SHEARES		ese advert	15 00-01 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 0	With the state of the state of					
Do you	<mark>u ever</mark> wri	te poems?	Has N	lary <mark>al</mark> w	<mark>ays</mark> lived	d here?	Are you	often in London?	
Put	t the adv	verbs in tl	he correc	t place	es.				

1	Do you play cards? (often)
2	Have you been to Tibet? (ever)
3	Are you happy? (always)
4	Does the boss take a holiday? (ever)
5	Do you eat in restaurants? (usually)
6	ls Bethany ill? ( <i>still</i> )

#### Longer expressions usually go at the end of a sentence. Compare:

She often plays tennis.She plays tennis two or three times a week.She hardly ever wins a game.She wins a game once or twice a month.She always practises.Does she practise every afternoon?

#### Look at the table and make some sentences with often, once a day etc.

ACTIVITY	EVA	том	Eva often goes swimming. Eva goes swimming once a day / every day.
goes swimming	1/d*	1/m	Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year.
plays football		3/w	
plays tennis	1/w	1/y	
goes skiing	5-6/y	19 <u>88</u>	
goes to the theatre	1/w	2-3/y	
goes to the cinema	3-4/y	2/m	
goes to concerts		1/w	
*1/d = once a day;			
2/m = twice a month; e	etc		

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: go with spare-time activities

Look at the pictures, and put the correct numbers with the activities. Use a dictionary if necessary.

IN YOUR SPARE TIME YOU CAN: go walking ..... go climbing ..... go swimming ...... 3 go sailing ..... go wind-surfing ..... go skiing ..... go skating ..... go fishing ..... go shopping ..... go to the opera ..... go to the theatre ..... go to concerts ..... 0000000000 9 10 11 12

Write some sentences about your spare-time activities. Use words from Exercises 1–4.

	Thever go cumbing.	4	
•	I go swimming every day.	5	
1		6	
2		7	
3		8	

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

#### ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS 215

## interested and interesting etc

#### Interested, bored, excited etc say how people feel. Interesting, boring, exciting etc describe the things (or people) that cause the feelings.

She's very interested in the lessons. (NOT She's very interesting in the lessons.) The lessons are always interesting. (NOT The lessons are always interested.) I'm often bored at work, because I've got a boring job.

Write these words under the pictures: interested, interesting, bored, boring.



2



#### Put in words from the box.

1

annoyed (= 'a little angry') 
annoying excited exciting frightened frightening surprised surprising

4

3

- 2 A woman hears noises at night. She is ...... The noises are ......
- 3 A family makes ...... holiday plans. The children are very .....
- 4 Your exam mark is very good. This is ...... And you are ......

Here are the beginnings of five books. Write what you think of the books. Use very interesting, quite interesting, not very interesting, quite boring or very boring.

- After King Leofric died in 1342, ...
   I think this book is probably
- 3 Since the beginning of history, cats ...
- 4 The man in black had already killed five people that morning. The sixth ...
- 5 Four billion years ago, our world ...

#### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: adverbs of degree; subjects of study

Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then write how interested you are in some of the subjects. You can use *extremely* (= +++), *very*, *quite*, *not very*, *not or not at all* (= ---).

art	biology	economics	history	literature	mathematics	philosophy	physics	politics
l'm extr	emely inte	rested in			l'm			
I'm very	y bored by							

## fast, hard, hardly, well, friendly, ...

#### Fast, hard, late, early, daily, weekly and monthly are adjectives and adverbs.

He's got a **fast** car. He drives It's **hard** work. She works The train was **late**. Trains are

He drives **fast**. She works **hard**. Trains are running **late**. I got an **early** flight. I w It's a **weekly** paper. I b

t. I went home <mark>early</mark>. r. I buy it <mark>weekly</mark>.

Hardly and lately have different meanings from hard and late. Hardly = 'almost not'; lately = 'recently', 'not long ago'

He hardly works these days – maybe one day a week. Have you heard from John lately?

*Well* can be an adjective (the opposite of *ill*) or an adverb (the opposite of *badly*).

'How are you?' 'Very well, thanks.' The team are playing well.

These are sentences from real conversations. Put in words from the boxes.

early hard hardly weekly well

- 1 And I really understand Italian quite .....
- 2 You've got no playschool tomorrow so you haven't got to get up ......, have you?
- 3 Why should I work ..... when you never do anything?
- 4 Departures from the UK are ..... mid-morning on Sundays from Dover.
- 5 She was really, you know, nervous, and ..... came out of her flat at all.

#### 🕗 Choose the best answer.

- You look ........., Mike. (early / lately / well)
- 1 Your father read the ..... Express when he was alive. (hardly / Daily / lately)
- 2 You haven't seen the window cleaner ....., have you? (lately / hard / weekly)
- 3 I ran as ...... as I could, along the Tottenham Court Road. (early / fast / hardly)
- 4 | ..... sleep an hour at a time. (well / hard / hardly)
- 5 | got up ..... to finish some work. (well / hardly / early)
- 6 My daughter cooks really ......(hardly / well / lately)
- 7 I went to bed very ..... last night. (late / lately / hardly)
- 8 I go to Cambridge ..... for a business meeting. (well / hardly / weekly)
- 9 I need a rest. I've been working ...... all week. (lately / hard / hardly)
- 10 My grandfather hasn't been very well ..... (early / lately / daily)

#### Friendly, lonely, lovely, silly are adjectives, not adverbs.

She gave me a **friendly** smile. (BUT NOT She smiled friendly:) He was very **lonely**. (BUT NOT <del>He walked</del> lonely through the streets.) Her voice is **lovely**. (BUT NOT <del>She sings lovely.</del>) Don't be silly.

There are no adverbs *friendlily, lovelily* etc. Instead, we use other words or expressions.

She spoke in a friendly way. She sings beautifully.

#### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- 1 He spoke very friendly, but I didn't like him. .....
- 2 You have a lovely smile. .....
- 3 He's not stupid, but he sometimes talks really silly. .....
- 4 He doesn't speak English very well, but he writes it lovely. .....
- 5 I gave her a friendly look, but she turned away. .....

## adjectives and adverbs: more practice

#### Word order.

#### Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- She's a cook. (good)
- 1 She was driving a fast car. (red)
- 2 She speaks Chinese. (perfect)
- 3 She speaks Chinese. (perfectly)
- 4 I lost my keys. (yesterday)
- 5 I've got a meeting tomorrow. (very important)
- 6 Anna read Peter's letter. (slowly)
- 7 Tim plays the piano. (brilliantly)
- 8 Lucy is unhappy. (terribly)
- 9 They make very good ice cream. (here)
- 10 She's been unmarried for 15 years. (happily)

#### Adjective or adverb?

#### Circle the correct answers.

- 1 You are making a terrible / terribly mistake.
- 2 She walked up the steps *slow / slowly*.
- 3 It was raining very hard / hardly when I got up.
- 4 The boss is a really friend / friendly person.
- 5 I cook very bad / badly.
- 6 Amelia looks very unhappy / unhappily.
- 7 I'm extreme / extremely sorry I arrived so late / lately.
- 8 I drove very careful / carefully on the snow.
- 9 I was late / lately because of a problem with the trains.
- 10 I've complete / completely forgotten his name.
- 11 Your hair looks beautiful / beautifully.
- 12 He doesn't work very hard / hardly.
- 13 I can't understand her. She talks very unclear / unclearly.
- 14 The President spoke in *perfect / perfectly* French.
- 15 This letter isn't very good / well written.

#### Adverbs with the verb. Write sentences about yourself.

1	l often
2	I never
	l am sometimes
4	I usually
	I have often
6	I have never
7	I have always
	l am certainly
9	I will probably
10	I will definitely

Adjective or adverb? Choose the correct words for the caption.



'Be careful / Be carefully, these plates are extreme & extremely dirty.'

#### Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

1	inted structures. These sentences are all wrong, can you correct the mistakes:
	She was wearing a red beautiful coat. A beautiful red coat
1	There are films interestings on TV tonight.
2	There's a good and cheap restaurant in Dover St.
3	He's tall, dark, good-looking.
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	
10	I often have thought of changing my job.
11	There were some difficults questions in the test.
12	
13	My mother speaks very well Arabic.
14	
15	
16	Please drive careful.
17	The manager welcomed us in perfectly English.
18	John always is ready to help people.
19	
20	

#### Grammar in a text. Put in adjectives or adverbs from the box.

daily early 🗸 fast friendly hard hardly late lonely silly

I don't like getting up and run for my train. On the train I read the 2...... paper, because after I get to work there's no more time for reading. The boss is nice, but she makes us work very 3......, and I often have to stay 4...... to finish everything. There's a nice new secretary in the office. I 5...... know her, but she always gives me a 6..... smile when I arrive. She hasn't lived here long. Perhaps it's a 7...... idea, but I wonder if she's 8...... I think I'll ask her out.

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: nouns and adjectives. Find the answers. Use a dictionary to help you. Different answers are possible.

L	a bed	a light	apples	children	coffee	hair	holidays	milk	skin	water 🗸	water
	lt can b	e cold, wa	rm or hot.	water		6	lt can be ha	ard or so	ft		
1	lt can b	e strong d	or weak			7	It can be ro	ugh or s	mooth.		
2	lt can b	e deep or	shallow.			8	It can be fre	esh or so	our		
3	They ca	n be long	or short.			9	They can be	e sweet	or sour.		
4	lt can b	e dark or	fair			10	They can be	e quiet d	or noisy.		
5	lt can b	e bright o	rdim								

and some with *hardly*. Write three of each.

1	 4
2	 5
3	 6

## adjectives and adverbs: revision test

#### Write the adverbs.

quickquickly	real	complete	possible
happy	nice	easy be	autiful
probable	usual	incredible	•••
unhappy	right	. sincere	hungry
careful	perfect	warm	angry
comprehensible	slow		

#### Where do the adjectives and adverbs go?

- It's a day. (nice)
- 1 I saw a good film. (yesterday)
- 2 Andy can help you. (definitely)
- 3 You speak Russian. (very well)
- 4 She smiles. (never)
- 5 Alice had some ideas. (really interesting)
- 6 They sell very good clothes. (here)
- 7 I have been to Norway. (never)

#### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- I had a headache very bad. .....
- Read this now. .....
- 1 She makes wonderfully soup. .....
- 2 I spoke to them very slow and clear. .....
- 3 It snowed very hard yesterday. .....
- 4 That secretary isn't very friendly. .....
- 5 I sing terribly bad. .....
- 6 Your baby looks really happy. .....
- 7 I'm sorry I got here so lately. .....

- 8 Karl plays the violin. (very badly)
- 9 I have paid. (already)
- 10 He was wearing a new suit. (blue)
- 11 We see Annie and Seb. (often)
- 12 Emma read the report. (slowly)
- 13 Judy and Simon are late. (always)
- 14 You are right. (probably)
- 15 I go to the cinema. (hardly ever)
- 8 Fill in this form very carefully. .....
- 9 I complete forgot to phone Paul. .....
- 10 She studied very hardly for the exam. .....
- 11 Everybody spoke perfect English. .....
- 12 This fish isn't very well cooked. .....
- 13 They asked some difficults questions. .....
- 14 Do you know a hotel good and cheap? .....
- 15 I never have understood maths. .....

#### These sentences are all wrong. Can you correct the mistakes?

He was wearing <del>black old boots</del> old black boots
He's short, fat, stupid-looking.
We usually are at home on Saturdays.
I am boring in the science lessons.
People never will stop fighting.
l listen always to the news at breakfast.
'Jenny's in hospital.' 'The poor!'
We often have been to India
We're terrible late.
They stood up slow when we walked in.
The weather already is getting better.
Never you tell me what you are thinking.
Your hair looks beautifully today.
John probably has forgotten my name again.
I don't like you driving so fastly.
Please speak slow.

# comparison

## SECTION 16 comparison

#### grammar summary

We can **compare** people and things with each other using *as* ... *as*, *-er than* or *more* ... *than*. Joe's *as tall as* me. Jane's *taller than* me. She works *more carefully than* me.

We can use *-est* or *most* to compare people and things with all of their group. John is the oldest of Mary's children. Nasima's the most intelligent person in the class.

We use *-er* and *-est* with **shorter adjectives** and some **short adverbs**; we use *more* and *most* with **other adjectives and adverbs**.





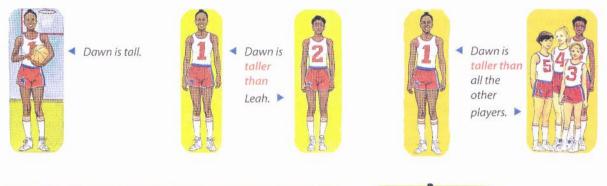
## comparative and superlative adjectives: forms

Comparative adjectives are forms like *colder, more famous.* Superlative adjectives are forms like *coldest, most famous.* 

<ul> <li>most short (one-syllable) adjectives: +-er, -est</li> <li>short adjectives ending in -e: + -r, -st</li> </ul>	old
<ul> <li>Write the comparative and superlative adjective.</li> <li>cold .colder.coldest.</li> <li>late .later.latest</li> <li>green</li></ul>	<ul> <li>s.</li> <li>5 strange</li> <li>6 fine</li> <li>7 high</li> <li>8 wide</li> <li>9 near</li> <li>10 white</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>short adjectives ending in one vowel + one consonant</li> <li>double consonant + -er, -est</li> <li>BUT don't double w:</li> </ul>	test thin thinner, thinnest
<ul> <li>Write the comparative and superlative adjective</li> <li>red .redder, reddest</li> <li>slow .slower, slowest</li> <li>big</li></ul>	s. 3 new 4 wet 5 slim
two-syllable adjectives ending in -y: y>+ i+-er, -est	happ <b>y —</b> happier, happiest
<ul> <li>Write the comparative and superlative adjective</li> <li>friendlyfriendlier, friendliest</li> <li>1 lazy</li></ul>	s. 3 sleepy 4 angry 5 dirty
most other longer adjectives: + more, most	hopeful —» more hopeful, most hopeful
<ul> <li>Write the comparative and superlative adjective</li> <li>famous</li> <li>more famous, most famous</li> <li>careful</li> <li>beautiful</li> <li>intelligent</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>s.</li> <li>4 dangerous</li> <li>5 important</li> <li>6 boring</li> <li>7 interested</li> </ul>
<ul> <li>irregular adjectives:</li> <li>good — better, best bac far — further, furthest OF</li> </ul>	
<ul> <li>Put in irregular comparative adjectives.</li> <li>I know that my handwriting is bad, but Jenny's is</li></ul>	e trains are there.

## comparative or superlative?

We use comparatives to compare people and things with other people and things. *A is bigger than B. A is bigger than B and c.* John is a more careful driver than Robin.



We use superlatives (usually with the) to compare people and things with all of the group that they are in. A is the biggest of the three letters A, B and c. John is the most careful driver in the family.



 Dawn is the tallest player in the team.

#### Circle the correct answer.

- Dawn is older / the oldest than all of her sisters.
- Leah is taller / the tallest person in her family.
- 1 All of the players are nice, but Sarah is certainly the nicer / the nicest.
- 2 This is the better / the best women's basketball team in the country.
- 3 Basketballs are more expensive / the most expensive than footballs.
- 4 Ice hockey is a more dangerous / most dangerous sport than basketball or tennis.
- 5 Of all the sports in the Olympics, which sport is more dangerous? / the most dangerous?
- 6 A basketball court is usually bigger / the biggest than a tennis court.
- 7 Which is the faster / the fastest game? Not chess.
- 8 Which is the more / most expensive game? Poker?

#### Choose a comparative or a superlative. Remember to use *the* before the superlatives.

- 'The Marriage of Figaro' is ... the most beautiful ..... of all Mozart's operas. (beautiful)
- 1 My mother and her sisters are all ..... than their children. (short)
- 2 I think Annie is ..... person in our class. (intelligent)
- 3 Let's meet in the library it's ..... than all the other rooms. (quiet)
- 4 My bedroom is ..... room in the house. (cold)
- 5 A 3-year-old's voice is ..... than 200 people in a busy restaurant. (loud)
- 6 Brazil is ...... South American country. (big)
- 7 My computer is much ..... than me. (intelligent)
- 8 Which is ..... thing to study? (boring)

## comparatives: use brighter than the moon

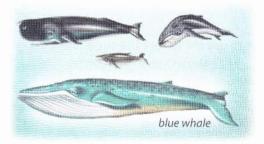
#### We use *than* after comparative adjectives.

Russia is bigger than China. (NOT ... that China.)

Rob and Tina are older than Emma.

Compare each pair of things in the box. Write two sentences for each pair. More than one answer may be possible.

	COMPARE: the sun and the moondogs and catstrain travel and air travelthe Sahara and the HimalayasEnglish and ChineseCanada and Ireland
	ADJECTIVES: big bright cheap cold easy difficult fast friendly hot intelligent small
	The sun is brighter than the moon. 5
>	The moon is smaller than the sun. 6
1	
2	
3	
4	
1	Alaska is larger than all the other US states. The Amazon is 6,670km long. No other river in South America is so long.
2	Blue whales can weigh 120 tonnes. No other whales are so heavy.
3	Mont Blanc is 4,807m high. No other mountain in the Alps is so high.
4	Cheetahs can run at 110km/h. No other big cats are so fast.
5	The Atacama desert has no rain. No other deserts are so dry.
6	Redwoods can grow up to 110 metres. No other trees are so tall.



whales



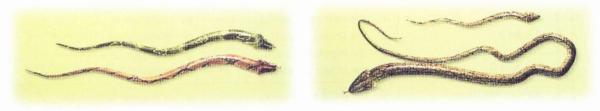
big cats

With comparatives, we can say ... than I am / than you are / than John is etc. But in informal spoken English, we usually prefer ... than me/you/him/her/it/us/them.

Write two endings for each sentence: one with than me, than you etc and one with than I am, than you are etc.

#### We can use a lot / a bit (more conversational) or much / a little before comparatives.

Your cooking is **much better** than my sister's. (NOT ... very better... AND NOT ... too better ...) This book is a lot more interesting than that one. You sound a bit happier today.



a bit longer

much longer

Use the table. Write sentences about Mark and Simon with *a bit / a little* and *a lot / much* with the adjectives from the box.

short 🗸 / tall old / young rich fast / slow comfortable quiet / noisy

	How	How	How		How	How somfortable?	How	
	tall?	old?	rich?		fast?	comfortable?	quiet?	
Mark	1m95	35	€900,000/year	Mark's car	190km/h	***	**	
Simon	1m85	36	€250,000/year	Simon's car	130km/h	**	****	

Simon is a bit (OR a little) shorter than Mark.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	



#### We can use more than and less than without adjectives.

Liz spent more than a week's pay on that dress. It took us less than ten minutes to get home.

## superlatives the highest mountain in the world

After superlatives, we normally use in	n before the names of places.
Everest is the <b>highest</b> mountain <b>in the</b> v Jamal is the <b>most intelligent</b> person <b>in</b> Sirius is the <b>brightest</b> star <b>in the sky</b> .	
After superlatives, we also use in befo	ore singular words for groups of people.
Sam is the <b>youngest</b> player <mark>in the orch</mark> Wilkins is the <b>oldest</b> minister <b>in this go</b> v	
In most other cases, we use of after si	uperlatives.
Anna's the <b>tallest of</b> the three sisters.	This is the <b>shortest</b> day <b>of</b> the year.

#### Put the beginnings, middles and ends together.

0 Jonathan is	A the biggest state	k in the group
1 My great-great-aunt is	B the longest river	l in my family
2 London is	C the best musician	m in the team
3 Alaska is	D the fastest runner	n in Africa
4 The guitar player is	E the biggest city	o in Britain
5 The Nile is	F the oldest person	p in the USA
6 My parents' room is	G the most expensive	q of the four bedrooms
7 The Mercedes is	H the longest day	r of the five girls
8 Sarah is	I the youngest	s of the three cars
9 June 21st is	J the biggest	t of the year

#### Write sentences with superlatives.

•	In my job, Friday / busy day / week In my job, Friday is the busiest day of the week.
1	In the 1970s, the Beatles / rich musicians / world
2	Eric says that Eleanor / good singer / group
3	When I was a child, my father / tall man / our town
4	In this country, February / cold month / year
5	Who / old / your three aunts?
6	Helen is very intelligent, but she / quiet person / my class
7	Which / good / these three bikes / ?
8	Which / big city / Argentina / ?
	There is so much good in the worst of us, and so much bad in the best of us.

(Author unknown)

## comparison of adverbs More slowly, please.

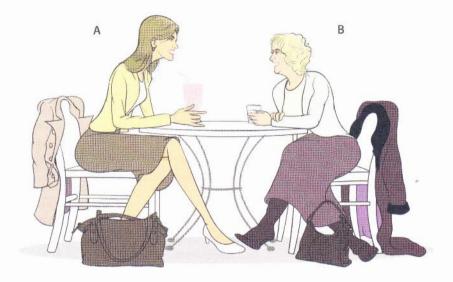
To make the <b>comparative</b> of <b>most adverbs</b> : <i>more</i> + adverb ( <i>than</i> )
Can you speak <b>more quietly</b> , please? I'm working <b>more slowly</b> today <b>than</b> yesterday. Angela writes <b>more clearly than</b> Ellie.
Write sentences with comparative adverbs and <i>than</i> .
Jacob drives / dangerously / Sam Jacob drives more dangerously than Sam.
1 Lee talks to people / politely / Ben
2 Liam works / carefully / John
3 Simon goes swimming / often / Karen
4 My car runs / quietly / my sister's car
5 Annie talks / slowly / Rob
6 Olivia thinks / clearly / most people
7 Jack dresses / expensively / me
8   live / cheaply / my friends
Some short adverbs have comparatives with -er, like adjectives. Examples: early, late, fast, hard, high, long, near and soon.
I got to the station <b>earlier</b> than Mary. Bill lives <b>nearer</b> to school than Pete, so he gets up <b>later</b> .
Irregular comparatives: well better badly worse far further/farther little less a lot/much more
My mother drives <b>better</b> than my father. He sings badly, but I sing <b>worse</b> . She talks <b>less</b> than he does, but she thinks <b>more</b> . I live <b>further</b> from the centre than you.
Use the comparatives of the adverbs in the box to complete the advice.
early fast hard 🗸 high late little long much near
'I want to earn more money.' 'Workharder'
1 'I want to eat my breakfast slowly in the morning.' 'Get up
2 'I want to get more sleep.' 'Get up'
3 'I want to be stronger.' 'Exercise
<ul> <li>4 'I hate driving to work.' 'Live to your work and walk.'</li> <li>5 'I get a lot of headaches.' 'Try to worry'</li> </ul>
6 'I'm afraid I'm going to miss the train.' 'Walk'
7 'l'm no good at basketball.' 'Practise jumping
8 'I want to learn everything there is.' 'Live'
Sentences with superlative adverbs (for example John drives the most dangerously) are not very common.

## (not) as ... as Your hands are as cold as ice.

We use (not) as ... as to say that people and things are (not) the same in some way. I don't think Tom is going to be as tall as his sister. Your hands are as cold as ice. Can you read this for me? My eyes aren't as good as yours.

Read the sentences and decide: which picture is Jenny and which picture is Cassie?

Jenny isn't as old as Cassie. Jenny's hands aren't as small as Cassie's. Cassie's hair isn't as long as Jenny's. Jenny isn't as fair as Cassie.



Picture A is .....

Picture B is .....

#### Now write some more sentences about Jenny and Cassie with not as ... as.

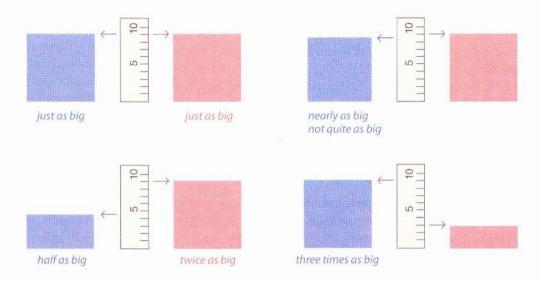
1	slim
	tall
3	skirt / long
4	bag / big
	coat / heavy
6	glass / big

With *as* ... *as*, we can say ... *as I am / as you are / as John is* etc. But in informal **spoken** English, we usually prefer ... *as me/you/him/her/it/us/them*.

	<ul> <li>Change the sentences in two ways, but keep the same meaning.</li> <li>Nicole's prettier than her sister. Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as her. Nicole's sister isn't as pretty as her.</li> </ul>
	1 You're nicer than the other doctor. The other doctor
	2 He's more interesting than his boss.
8	3 I'm slimmer than my mother.
4	4 We're more careful than the Browns.

#### We can put just, nearly, not quite and half, twice, three times etc before as ... as.

He's **just as** handsome **as** his brother. My hair is **not quite as** fair **as** my sister's hair. The twins are **nearly as** tall **as** their mother. Brazil is **half as** big **as** Russia.



Think of a member of your family. Compare yourself to him or her, using *as* ... *as* and some of the words and expressions from the box. Write five sentences.

BEFORE AS: jus	st nearly	/ not quit	e half	twi	ce thre	ee times et	C		
ADJECTIVES: d	lark fair old prett		handso short			intelligent	kind	nice	
					5				
I'm nearly I'm not qu	íte as tall	as her.			4				

#### We can use as much as and as many as with nouns.

Deborah doesn't work as many hours as I do, but she makes just as much money as me.

1	<ul> <li>Make sentences with as as or not as as, and some of the expressions from Exercise 3.</li> <li>Alice has \$200 and Matt has \$100.</li> <li>Alice has twice as much money as Matt.</li> </ul>
	1 Eric has 20 cousins, and Tony has 10. Eric
	2 Ben eats 3 sandwiches every day; Jo eats 1.
	3 Helen has 23 computer games and Adrian has 25.
	4 Liz drinks 6 cups of coffee a day; Chris drinks 12.
	5 Mike has 600 books, and David has 600 too.
1	6 Rebecca only has a little free time; Fred has a lot.

## comparison: more practice

#### Mixed structures. Put in the correct words.

- 1 I'm not ..... tall ..... my sister.
- 2 This is the ..... expensive restaurant ..... the town.
- 3 Anna is a bit older ..... her husband.
- 4 Who's ..... best player ..... the family?
- 5 Smith is good, but Jones is ..... and Ericsson is the .....
- 6 Please drive ..... slowly.
- 7 How much fruit can I have? Take ...... much ...... you want.
- 8 Texas is bigger ..... France.
- 9 You're ..... beautiful than I .....
- 10 A metre is more ...... a centimetre and ..... than a kilometre.

#### Mixed structures. These sentences are all wrong (x). Can you correct the mistakes?

- 1 She's the best pianist of the world.
- 2 My sister is much taller that me.
- 3 Katie is the more beautiful person here.
- 4 Please drive slowlier.
- 5 This is the more expensive hotel in London.
- 6 You drive much faster of me.
- 7 My hands are cold like ice.
- 8 James is much older as his wife.
- 9 Everest is more high than Mount Fuji.
- 10 We all sing badly, but I'm the worse.
- 11 My sister is the intelligentest person in the family.
- 12 I'm happyer this year than last year.
- 13 Tokyo is the biggest city of Japan.
- 14 Robert is the youngest from the three children.
- 15 Sunday is best day of the week.

#### Mixed structures. Look at the pictures and make sentences.



A £17, 999 Maximum speed 120km/h



B £62, 999 Maximum speed 200km/h



C £24, 300 Maximum speed 150km/h

- B/fast/A Bis faster than A.
- 1 B/fast/C ..... 2 A/fast/B A is not as .....
- 3 C/fast/B .....
- 4 B / fast B is the .....
- 5 C / expensive / A .....
- 6 A / expensive / B .....
- 7 B / expensive B is the .....
- 8 B/big/C .....
- 9 C/big/A .....
- 10 C/big .....

# GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: time. Make sure you know the words in the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Then answer the questions, using *more* and *less*.

decade century dav hour minute month second week vear How much is a minute? More than a second and less than an hour. 1 How much is a decade? 2 How much is a month? 3 How much is a week? 4 How much is an hour? 5 How much is a day? 6 How much is a year?

#### Grammar in a text. Read the text carefully, and then answer the questions.

John lives in Birmingham. He is a bus driver. He is very interested in history. He is taller than Tom, and betterlooking, but he doesn't have as much money as Tom. Tom works in an import-export firm in Liverpool. He collects antique furniture. He is deeply in love with Julia. He's much older than she is, but not as tall as she is, and he's really not very good-looking. Julia's friend Hannah lives in Birmingham, near her cousin Pete. She's exactly as old as he is, and they're both very interested in information technology. Pete runs a very successful computer business. He has much more money than Tom, but not nearly as much as Hannah. He has dark hair and blue eyes, and he's better looking than Tom, but not as tall as Tom. Pete and John are old friends. They often play tennis together. John is twice as old as Pete (he's nearly as old as Tom), but he usually wins when he and Pete play. They are both deeply in love with Julia. Julia works in a travel agency. She likes fast cars, travel, horse-riding and fashionable clothes. She often goes on holiday with Hannah. Hannah usually pays for the holidays, because Julia doesn't have as much money as Hannah. Hannah is taller than Julia, (but not as tall as John) and very beautiful. Hannah is deeply in love with the tallest of the three men. Julia is deeply in love with the oldest.

- 1 Who is Hannah in love with? .....
- 2 Who is Julia in love with? .....
- 3 Who is the richest of the five people? .....

#### Than, that or as? Complete the caption.



'There, dear! I think we've left the world a better place ...... we found it!'

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

"beautifuller" .8,100
"more beautiful"
"more happy"
"happier"
"older that"
"older than"
"the highest mountain of Britain"
"the highest mountain in Britain"
"the best player of the team"
"the best player in the team"

## comparison: revision test

Write the comparativ	ves and superlatives.			
	t	11	fat	
		12	happy	
1000 - 1000 - 100			late	
3 cheap		14	hot	
		15	slow	
		16	big	
6 beautiful		17	expensive	
7 lazy			dirty	
			important	
9 good			strong	
			5	
Put in as, than or tha	t.			
1 My feet are	cold ice.	6	He's as funny toothache.	
2 She looks older	her sister.	7	The car I saw was too small.	
3 I think	he's Chinese.	8	The cat seems worse yesterday.	
	er her brother.	9	It's not as cold last week.	
5 Can't you eat faster .	that?	10	She's got a more interesting job me.	
Put in the correct wo	rde			
	1 A kilogram is lessa tonne and than a gram.			
	2 Jake is bad at languages, but he's not as bad as I			
	3 I get up early, at 6.30; George gets up, at 6.15, and Pam is the, at 6.00.			
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	4 Please speak slowly.			
	5 Karl is oldest player the team.			
	6 'How many people can l invite?' ' many you like.'			
	7 We stayed in the expensive hotel the city.			
	8 She's not nice her brother.			
the second s	<ul> <li>9 Siberia is bigger Europe.</li> <li>0 Phil is a bad teacher, and Annie is and Douglas is the</li> </ul>			
10 Phil is a bad teacher,	and Annie is and		Suglas is the	
These sentences are	all wrong. Can you correct th	ne r	nistakes?	
He's the intelligenter	t man I have ever met	int	telligent	
	mountain of Europe?			
2 We all play badly, bu	2 We all play badly, but I'm the worse.			
5 Please walk quicklier				
10 Monday is worst day	0 Monday is worst day of the week.			

## **SECTION 17** conjunctions

#### grammar summary

after althouah before and as soon as because but so until when while both ... and either ... or neither ... nor (For if, see Section 18.) (If necessary, use a dictionary to check the meanings of these conjunctions.)

We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

I went to Germany **because** Emma was there. We went home **after** the concert finished. I phoned **as soon as** I got the news.

Some conjunctions (and the words that follow them) can go in two places. I cleaned my room before I went out. Before I went out, I cleaned my room.

We use **present tenses** to talk about the **future** with **time-conjunctions**. I'll phone you **when I arrive**. Let's wait here **until somebody comes**. She'll pay you **as soon as she has** the money.

We can use *and* to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words. We **don't** need to **repeat unnecessary words** with *and*.

I went downstairs **and (I)** opened the door. I've got friends in Canada **and (in)** Australia. Could I have a knife **and (a)** fork?



## conjunctions: introduction and, but, because ...

#### **Conjunctions** are words like *and, but, because, although, if, while, so, until.* We use conjunctions to join sentences together.

It was cold	and	I wanted to go home.
l like him	but	I don't like her.
He got up	although	he was ill.
l didn't buy it	because	it was too expensive.
l'Il phone you	if	the train is late.
Andrew called	while	you were out.
It was raining	so	l took my umbrella.
l waited	until	Mary was ready.
Let's go out	as soon as	Peter arrives.

#### Oircle the best conjunction.

- I'll phone you although / so / when I arrive.
- 1 The party was boring, *although / because / so* I went home.
- 2 The weather was nice, *although / or / until* it was a bit cold.
- 3 She speaks good French, after / because / but she has a strong English accent.
- 4 I enjoyed my month in Argentina, although / and / but I learnt a lot of Spanish.
- 5 I'll tell you my plans because / so / while we're having lunch.
- 6 I helped him after / because / or he was a good friend.
- 7 I'll wait here with you as soon as / until your train leaves.
- 8 Let's talk about the future while / because / or we're walking.
- 9 You can pay me now or / so / because I can wait until next week.
- 10 Please come and see us before / as soon as / although you can.

#### Choose the best conjunction to join the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	······································
•	I lived in Liverpool. I left school. ( <i>if, although, until</i> ) I lived in Liverpool until I left school.
1	We'll be glad. This job is finished. ( <i>when, or, while</i> )
2	
3	I'd like to talk to you. You go home. ( <i>before, and, although</i> )
4	Sue watched TV. John came home. ( <i>if, until, or</i> )
5	We'll see you again. We come back from holiday. ( <i>while, after, and</i> )
6	
7	
8	They think they can do what they like. They're rich. ( <i>because, although, until</i> )
9	I want to stop working. I'm 50. ( <i>if, before, and</i> )
10	You look beautiful. You're smiling. ( <i>or, so, when</i> )

## position of conjunctions If you need help, ask me.

	n we use <b>conjunctions</b> , there are often <b>two po</b>			
	art with the conjunction	2 Put the conjunction <b>between</b> the two parts of the sentence.		
	nd the part that follows it).	Aaaaa(,) CONJUNCTION bbbbb		
	ONJUNCTION bbbbb, aaaaa			
И А	you need help, please ask me. 'HEN you are in London, phone us. LTHOUGH it was raining, I went out. S SOON AS she could, she went to bed.	Please ask me IF you need help. Phone us WHEN you are in London. I went out, ALTHOUGH it was raining hard. She went to bed AS SOON AS she could.		
Note		th conjunctions, especially in longer sentences.		
	ut these sentences together in two ways			
μ <b>ν</b> .	I enjoyed the film. The beginning was boring			
	I enjoyed the film, although the begin Although the beginning was boring,	nning was boring.		
1	I put on two sweaters. It was very cold. (beca	use)		
2	I'm going to work in Australia. I leave school.	(when)		
-				
3	l go and see Felix. I want to talk to somebody	ι. (17)		
4	Ann made coffee. Bill fried some eggs. (while	۰ ۱		
	, and made conce. Bin med some eggs (	۰ 		
5	I was interested in the conversation. I didn't u	understand everything. ( <i>although</i> )		
6	We went to a restaurant. There was no food in the house. ( <i>because</i> )			
C	We went to a restaurant. There was no rood i			
7	We'll have a big party. John comes home. (w	hen)		
8	I stayed with friends. My parents were travelling. (while)			
ç	I go for long walks at the weekend. The weat	ther's fine. ( <i>if</i> )		
-	. go to rong mana at the meeting the meet			
10	Come and see us. You arrive in Scotland. (as	soon as)		

NOTE: and, but, or and so always come between the two parts of the sentence.

#### We use the simple present with a future meaning after before, after, while, until, when and as soon as.

I'll see you before you go. (NOT ... before you will go.) We'll talk about it after I get back. You can use my car while I'm in Ireland. Don't move until I tell you. He'll phone when he gets home. (NOT ... when he will get home.) We'll start the party as soon as Alice arrives.

#### Put in verbs from the box. Use the simple present.

•	Wait here until Jane	5 I'll cook supper after I back from
1	Call me as soon as you about the	the gym.
	exam.	6 I'm going to travel round the world before I
2	Can you hold the baby while I	
	coffee?	7 I'm not going out until the rain
3	What's John going to do when he	8 Will you stay in while I shopping?
	school?	9 We'll call you as soon as we in Pari
4	Give my love to Sue when you to her.	10 We'll go for a drink after the class

come find get give 🗸 help look after look start tell travel stop

- I.'ll give...... you my address before I say goodbye. 1 Lisa's going to live here until she .....a job.
- 2 We're going to look after Sue's flat while she .....round America.
- 3 1 ..... you to clean the flat after I get back from work.
- 4 We're early we've got half an hour before the lesson .....
- 5 | ..... you the price as soon as I know myself.
- 6 Can I go and see Maggie while you ..... the kids?
- 7 When I get time, I ..... for a new place to live.
- 8 Mum's going to move to Scotland after she ...... work.
- 9 I'll bring you a present when I ..... home.
- 10 Things ..... worse before they get better.

#### Write five or more sentences about yourself, using some of the beginnings in the box.

When I leave school, I'll ... When I finish university, I'll ... When I get married, I'll ... When I have children, I'll ... When my children leave home, I'll ... When I stop work, I'll ... When I have time, I'll ... When I'm 20/30/40/50/60/70/80/90/100, I'll ...

1 2 ..... 3 ..... 4 ..... 5 ..... 6 ..... 7 .....

For tenses with if see page 245.

#### 236 CONJUNCTIONS

## because and so; although and but

Weca	
	in say <b>why</b> things happen with <i>because</i> or <i>so</i> (but not both).
Весал	<b>ise</b> Sue was tired, she went to bed. / Sue went to bed <b>because</b> she was tired.
OR Su	e was tired, <b>so</b> she went to bed. (BUT NOT <del>Because Sue was tired, so</del> she went to bed.)
We us	sually put a <b>comma</b> (,) before so. For more about commas with conjunctions, see page 235.
oL 🚺	in the sentences with <i>because</i> (twice) and with <i>so</i> .
100	He passed the exam. He had a good teacher.
	Because he had a good teacher, he passed the exam.
	He passed the exam because he had a good teacher.
	He had a good teacher, so he passed the exam.
1	I changed my hotel. The rooms were dirty.
2	The taxi was late. We missed the train.
3	I didn't like the film. I walked out of the cinema.
Mor	an say that things are <b>not as we expect</b> with <i>although</i> or <i>but</i> (but <b>not both</b> ).
	ugh Pete was tired, he didn't go to bed. / Pete didn't go to bed, although he was tired.
AILTO	rte was tired, <b>but</b> he didn't go to bed. (BUT NOT Although Pete was tired, but he didn't <del>go to bed.</del> )
	te was thed, out he didn't go to bed. (bot hor hindugin etc has thed, out he shart go to bed)
Man	cually but common before although and but
We us	sually put <b>commas</b> before <i>although</i> and <i>but</i> .
1	sually put commas before although and but.
ol 👌	in the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.
ol 👌	in the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.
ol 👌	She passed the exam, although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.
ol 👌	in the sentences with although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.
ol 👌	She passed the exam, although (twice) and with but. She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.
ol 👌	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.
ol 👌	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.
Jo Jo	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working.
Jo Jo	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working. She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Jo Jo	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working.
Jo Jo	She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working. She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Jo Jo 1	she passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working. She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Jo Jo 1	sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         She was very kind. I didn't like her.         He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.
Jo 1 2	she passed the exam. She had a bad teacher. Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam. She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher. She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam. I felt ill. I went on working. She was very kind. I didn't like her.
Jo 1 2	sin the sentences with although (twice) and with but.         She passed the exam. She had a bad teacher.         Although she had a bad teacher, she passed the exam.         She passed the exam, although she had a bad teacher.         She had a bad teacher, but she passed the exam.         I felt ill. I went on working.         She was very kind. I didn't like her.         He's a big man. He doesn't eat much.

## and I speak Russian, English and Swahili.

We can use and to join sentences, shorter expressions or single words.	
Sylvia won the first game <b>and</b> Pete won the second. 'What's she interested in?' 'Scottish dancing <b>and</b> mountain climbing.' 'What shall we have for supper?' 'Fish <b>and</b> chips.'	
In lists, we usually put and between the last two things, and commas (,) between the others.	
We need soap, bread, orange juice, <b>tomatoes and sugar.</b> She was beautiful, <b>intelligent and kind.</b> (NOT beautiful, intelligent, kind.)	
Write the sentences using <i>and</i> and commas.	
She speaks (French German Japanese Arabic). She speaks French, German, Japanese and Arabic.	
1 My company has offices in ( <i>London Tokyo New York Cairo</i> ).	
2 l've invited (Paul Alexandra Eric Luke Janet).	
3 I'll be here on ( <i>Tuesday Thursday Friday Sunday</i> ).	
4 She's got (five cats two dogs a horse a rabbit).	
5 He plays (golf rugby hockey badminton).	
6 She ( <i>addressed stamped posted</i> ) the letter.	

#### When we use *and*, we do not usually repeat unnecessary words.

She sings and <b>she</b> plays the violin.		She sings and plays the violin.
He plays tennis and <b>he plays</b> badminton.	]>+	He plays tennis and badminton.
They have offices in Britain and in America.	Þr	They have offices in Britain and America.
We stayed with my brother and <b>my</b> sister.	·····ja-	We stayed with my brother and sister.
The house and <b>the</b> garden were full of people.		The house and garden were full of people.
I've been to Greece and I've been to Turkey.		I've been to Greece and Turkey.
I washed <b>my shirt</b> and I dried my shirt.	]r>	I washed and dried my shirt.

#### Oross out the unnecessary words, and put in commas if necessary.

- I speak Russian, and I speak English and I speak Swahili.
- 1 She has painted the kitchen and she has painted the living room and she has painted the dining room.
- 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt and Bob was wearing blue jeans and Bob was wearing white trainers.
- 3 Can you give me a knife and can you give me a fork and can you give me a spoon, please?
- 4 Many people speak English in India and many people speak English in Singapore and many people speak English in South Africa.
- 5 I've written six letters and I've posted six letters this morning.

#### We use or in similar ways.

You can come with me or wait here. I don't speak German, French or Spanish.

238 CONJUNCTIONS

# double conjunctions both ... and; (n)either ... (n)or

We can make and more emphatic ('stronger') by using both and.	
He's <b>both</b> a top sportsman <b>and</b> a famous writer. She <b>both</b> sings <b>and</b> dances.	
We can make <b>or</b> more emphatic by using <b>either or</b> .	
You can <b>either</b> come with me now <b>or</b> find your own way home.	
We have time to see <b>either</b> the museum <b>or</b> the cathedral, but not both.	
Neither nor means 'not one and not the other'.	
The lessons were <b>neither</b> interesting <b>nor</b> useful. He speaks <b>neither</b> English <b>nor</b> French.	
Make sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.	
She speaks (Chinese Japanese ) She speaks both Chinese and Japanese.	
You can have (coffee / tea)	
You can have either coffee or tea.	
I can (draw sing sing sing sing sing sing sing sing	
I can neither draw nor sing.	
1 I think that she's (Scottish / Irish)	
2 I'd like to work with (animals / children)	
3 He did well in ( <i>mathematics</i> history	
4 This car is ( <i>fast comfortable</i> )	
5 She (looked at me said anything )	
·	
6 I've got problems ( <i>at home</i> IIII <i>in my job</i> IIII)	
	······
7 You can (stay here / go home)	
	•••••
8 Ilike (theatre 📰 cinema 🔛)	
	********
9 She speaks (English III French IIII)	
10. Liberts and realities ( according)	
10 I don't understand ( <i>politics / economics</i> )	
Write some true sentences about yourself.	
1 I can both	
2 I can neither	
3 I like both	
4 I don't like either	
5   haven't got either	
6	

# conjunctions: more practice

<b>4b</b>	Те	nses with time conjunctions. Put in the simple present or <i>will</i>
		1. "I phone you when I arrive (phone; arrive)
		I think I some tea before I to bed. (have; go)
		I here until your father (wait; arrive)
		When you again, Ann here. ( <i>come</i> ; <i>be</i> )
		We sorry when Rachel back home. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>go</i> )
		After we
		We your tickets as soon as we the money. (send; receive)
	7	I very busy until the exams over. ( <i>be</i> ; <i>be</i> )
	8	Before I to Tokyo, I some Japanese lessons. ( <i>go</i> ; <i>take</i> )
	9	As soon as the rain, I
		We breakfast after Luke ( <i>have</i> ; get up)
		osition of conjunctions. Put these sentences together in two ways.
		The weather's good. I go fishing at weekends. (if)
		If the weather's good, 1 go fishing at weekends.
		I go fishing at weekends if the weather's good.
	1	The teacher was ill. The children had a holiday. (because)
	2	I was in China. I made a lot of friends. ( <i>when</i> )
	446	
	3	They built the new road. It was difficult to get to our village. (until)
	4	Jessica wrote three letters. Dylan never answered. (although)
	-	Laborad birs. The medium - Entitle of (as seen as)
	5	I phoned him. The work was finished. (as soon as)
0	D	ouble conjunctions. Make sentences with both and, either or or neither nor.
	1	l (swim 🏢 play tennis 📰 ).
	2	He (lives / works) in Birmingham.
	3	My father speaks (Greek 🎆 French 🛄).
	4	She likes (pop music 🏢 jazz 🏢).
	5	You can have (orange juice / water).
	6	I can (sing 🎆 dance 🎆)
	7	He's (Scottish / Irish).
	8	He's studying (physics 🇱 biology 🔛).
	9	This sofa is (nice-looking 🛄 comfortable 🛄).
	10	Anna (looked at Henry 🏥 spoke to him 🏢).

### Grammar in a text. Put conjunctions from the box into the text.

although alt	hough a	and	and	and	because	because	before	SO	until	when
--------------	---------	-----	-----	-----	---------	---------	--------	----	-------	------

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: musical instruments. Look at the table and make sure you know the names of the instruments. Then make sentences. Put *the* with the names of the instruments.

- (Steve, auitar, piano) Steve plays both the guitar and the piano.
- (Joanna, David, cello) Neither Joanna nor David plays the cello.
- 1 (Karl, trombone, saxophone)
- 2 (Melanie, cello, drums) .....
- 3 (Steve, Karen, violin) .....
- 4 (Joanna, Charles, guitar)
  5 (Karen, piano, trumpet)
- 6 (Sophie, guitar, trumpet)
- 7 (Charles, Steve, saxophone)
- 8 (Sophie, Steve, trumpet)

	Carter		all all a		-		- Caller	
	cello	drums	trombone	guitar	piano	saxophone	trumpet	violin
Joanna	X	X	~	$\checkmark$	1	1	~	1
Karl		$\checkmark$	×	1	~	×	1	1
David	X	1	~	×	~	1	~	1
Steve	1	1	1	1	1	1	×	X
Melanie	1	1	×	1	×	. /	$\checkmark$	~
Sophie	1	1	1	×	1	1	×	1
Karen	1	1	1	1	1	×	1	X
Charles	1	×	1	1	×	1	1	1

### Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google). Which of the following gets most hits?

"as soon as we arrive" .24,600 "until it stops." ...... "after they finish" ...... "before I arrive" ...... "while I am there" .....



### زبان امید www.languagecentre.ir

# conjunctions: revision test

()	Ch	oose the right conjunctions and put the sentences together.
		l was tired. I went to bed. ( <i>while, so, after</i> ) I was tired, so I went to bed.
	1	I'm going to do some gardening. It gets dark. ( <i>because, but, until</i> )
	2	l couldn't read. It was too dark. ( <i>although, because, so</i> )
	3	The food wasn't very good. He ate everything. (so, but, because)
	4	The lesson finished early. We went for a walk. (but, until, so)
	5	I got his letter. I went round to see him. (after, although, while)
đ	6	Jane gets up. She makes coffee. (as soon as, until, although)
	7	You can't have any more coffee. There isn't any more. (so, because, why)
	8	I didn't go to work. The buses weren't running. ( <i>because, although, as soon as</i> )
	9	The buses weren't running. I didn't go to work. ( <i>until, so, as soon as</i> )
1	0	The phone always rings. I'm having a bath. ( <i>while, until, so</i> )
1	1	I can't tell you the decision. I know myself. (as soon as, while, until)
1	2	He didn't work very hard. He passed all his exams. ( <i>so, but, because</i> )
1	3	The holiday was over. I had to start working very hard. (when, until)
1	4	Andrew saw Zoë. He fell madly in love with her. (as soon as, until, but)
1	5	I left school. I worked as a taxi driver. ( <i>until, after, while</i> )
	C	prrect the mistakes.
	•	You can either stay here either come with me
	1	He plays neither the piano nor he plays the guitar.
	2	Although the train was late, but I got there in time.
	3	The house was small, cold, dirty.
	4	Although it was raining, went out.
	5	After Jake will get here, we'll all go swimming.
	6	Because it was cold, so I put on a coat
	7	You can either come in my car or either walk home
	8	I need a knife and I need a fork.
	9	Although I would like to help you, but I don't have time.
1	0	I play both classical music and I play jazz.
1	1	I'll change my job as soon as I'll find another one.
1	2	Will you still love me when I'll be old?

242 CONJUNCTIONS

# SECTION 18 if

### grammar summary

Most tenses are possible in sentences with *if*. He won't come tomorrow if he came yesterday. If that was Mary, why didn't she stop and say hello? If you've been to Paris, you've seen the Eiffel Tower. Oil floats if you pour it on water. If you're happy, I'm happy.

Note the following three important structures:

present tenses for future:
 With *if*, we use present tenses to talk about the future.
 I'll phone you *if I have time*. (NOT ... *if I will have time*.)

*if* + past, ... would ...
 We can use past tenses with *if* to show that something is not real or not probable now.
 (We normally use would in the other part of the sentence.)
 *If I had more money, I would buy a car now.*

if + past perfect, ... would have ...

To talk about **unreal past** events – things that did not happen – we use **if** + **past perfect**. (We normally use **would have** + **past participle** in the other part of the sentence.) *I'm sorry you had all those problems. If you had asked me, I would have helped you.* 

These three structures are often called 'first', 'second' and 'third conditional'. The structure with two present tenses (e.g. *If you're happy, I'm happy*) is sometimes called 'zero conditional', for no very good reason.

We can use unless to mean 'if not', 'except if'.

You can't come in unless you have a ticket. (=' if you don't have a ticket.')

*If you were the only girl in the world, and I were the only boy . . .* (Song by Clifford Grey, British songwriter, born 1937)

If you can find something that everyone agrees on, it's wrong.

(Mo Udall, American politician, 1922–1998)

If God did not exist, it would be necessary to invent him.

(Voltaire, French writer, 1694–1788)

If the automobile had followed the same development cycle as the computer, a Rolls-Royce would today cost \$100, get a million miles per gallon, and explode once a year, killing everyone inside.

(Robert X. Cringely, InfoWorld magazine)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, . . . you'll be a man, my son. (Rudyard Kipling, British short-story writer, novelist and poet, 1865–1936)

If you can keep your head when all about you are losing theirs, you just don't know what's going on. (British Army saying)

If one morning I walked on top of the water across Potomac River, the headline that afternoon would read "President Can't Swim". (Lyndon B. Johnson, American politician, 1908–1973 – President 1963–1969)

If the human mind was simple enough to understand, we'd be too simple to understand it. (Emerson Pugh, American writer on technology)

# if: position; unless

An if-clause can come at the beginning or end of a sentence. When it comes first, it is often separated by a comma (,). If I have time, I'll clean up the garden. I'll clean up the garden if I have time. Use if to put these sentences together in two ways. Joe works at Brown's. He probably knows Annie. If Joe works at Brown's, he probably knows Annie. Joe probably knows Annie if he works at Brown's. 1 I can't sleep. I get up and read. 2 You take books from my room. Please tell me. 3 You're hungry. Why don't you cook some soup? ..... 4 She's been travelling all day. She must be tired \_\_\_\_\_ 5 We catch the first train. We can be in London by 9.00. We can use unless to mean 'if ... not', 'except if'. You can't come in unless you have a ticket. (= 'You can't come in if you don't have a ticket.') Unless I'm very tired, I go to bed about midnight. (= 'Except if I'm very tired ...')

### Rewrite these sentences with unless. Children can't go in if they are not with an adult. Children can't go in unless they are with an adult. If you don't give me my money, I'm going to the police. unless you give me my money, I'm going to the police. 1 You can't park here if you don't live in this street. ..... 2 If you are not over 15, you can't see this film. \_\_\_\_\_ 3 I don't drive fast except if I'm really late. ..... 4 If I'm not going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. 5 We usually go for a walk after supper if there isn't a good film on TV. 6 I see my mother at weekends if I'm not travelling. ..... 7 If it's not raining, I play tennis most evenings. ..... 8 I can't help you if you don't tell me the truth.

# if: future I'll phone you if I hear from Alice.

Most tenses are possible in sentences with if. But after if, we normally use a present tense to talk about the future.

*If it is sunny tomorrow, we'll eat in the garden. I'll phone you if I hear from Alice. I'll be sorry if I don't pass this exam.* 

Choose the best verb to complete the sentence.

- I'll buy you a sweater if I ...fund ......... a nice one. (find, hold, pay)
- ▶ If it rains, we *"ll have"* the party indoors. (*think, play, have*)
- 1 I'll be glad if I ..... a letter from Jack tomorrow. (expect, get, decide)
- 2 Olivia ..... back your bike if she remembers. (come, bring, sell)
- 3 If you like, I ...... you Japanese lessons. (bring, hold, give)
- 4 If Alex ....., tell him I'm out. (phone, stop, write)
- 5 We'll stop and see you in Dublin if we ..... time. (give, think, have)
- 6 I'll give you £100 if you ..... smoking. (stay, stop, break)
- 7 1 ..... very surprised if Angela marries Jack. (be, stand, find)
- 8 If you sing, I ......, I promise. (not learn, not laugh, not drive)
- 9 If you cook lunch, I ..... supper. (eat, drink, cook)
- 10 The government will do what it likes if nobody ..... it. (stop, speak, find)

### Put in the correct verb forms.

- 1 1 ..... happy if I ..... my exam. (be; pass)
- 2 If you ..... now, you ..... the train. (leave; catch)
- 3 John says he ..... as a taxi-driver if he ..... money. (work; need)
- 4 If I ...... free tomorrow evening, I ..... you on Friday. (not be; see)
- 5 Mary ..... Chinese next year if she ..... time. (study; have)
- 6 1 ..... you to the station if I ..... find my car keys. (drive; can)
- 7 If he ..... her, he ..... a happy life. (marry; not have)
- 8 ...... you that you must? (stop; tell)
- 9 If you ..... to your father very politely, ..... he ..... he servery us his car? (talk; lend)

### Make sentences with if.

I'm afraid the bus will be late.

•	( get to work late again) If the bus is late, I'll get to work late again.
•	( lose my job)If I get to work late again, I'll lose my job.
1	( not find another job) If I lose my job,
2	(> lose my flat)
3	( move back to my parents' house)
4	(
5	(>- go swimming every day)
б	( look very good)
7	( meet interesting people)
8	( go to lots of parties)
9	( have a wonderful time)

# not real / not probable If dogs could talk, ...

le use if + past tense + would to	o talk about things that are <b>not real or not probable</b> now.						
+ PAST TENSE	WOULD + INFINITIVE (WITHOUT TO)						
I had a million dollars,	I would build a big swimming pool.						
you were the President,	what would you do?						
dogs <mark>could</mark> talk,	they would tell some interesting stories.						
he didn't travel so much,	he'd have more money.						
ontractions (see page 301): 1 wo	ould —— I'd, you would —— you'd etc						
Put in the correct forms of	the correct verbs.						
	four arms, life easier. (have; be)						
This would be ar	nice country if itdidn't rain so much. (not rain; be)						
	open the fridge, it all my food. ( <i>can; eat</i> )						
	answer, I						
	you to work on Sunday, you it? (do; ask)						
P.(	ead people's thoughts, what you? ( <i>can; do</i> )						
	f1enough money. (buy; have)						
An and the second state and the second state of the second state of the second state of the second state of the	If I? (say; ask)						
	s work on time if he so much. (finish; not talk)						
	se if I more time. ( <i>have; study</i> )						
10 If the programmes	better, I more TV. ( <i>be; watch</i> )						
Nake sentences beginning with if.							
	<ul> <li>My parents don't live near here, so I don't see them at weekends.</li> <li>If my parents lived near here, I would see them at weekends.</li> </ul>						
If my parents lived n							
	We won't play cards because Jane and Peter aren't here.						
	se suite una recer alen e nere.						
	oney, so we won't buy a new car.						
2 we haven t got enough inc	oney, so we won't buy a new car.						
2. First discontraction in latter	1 al						
3 Fred doesn't answer letters							
4 I won't take your photo be	cause I can't find my camera.						
5 I don't enjoy opera becaus	e I can't understand the words.						
	she talks about herself all the time.						
7 I haven't got a dog, so I doi	n't do for walks						
What would you do if you	had a free year and a lot of money? Write three or more sentences.						
turned and a later work of	study go to (other answers)						
travel round the world	go to (other unswers)						

# If I were you, ...

We sometimes use *were* instead of *was* after *if*. This is usually rather **formal**. *If I were taller I would play basketball*. *If John were here, he would know what to do*. We often say *If I were you, I would / I'd*..., when we want to give people **advice**. *If I were you, I'd* get a new car. *I wouldn't* stand there *if I were you*.

Write sentences with *if I were you*, using the expressions in the box.

call the police at once fly not sell it join a club see a doctor 🗸 take a holiday

- 'I feel ill' If I were you, I'd see a doctor.
- 'I'm really tired.'
   'I haven't got any friends.'
- 3 'Shall I take the train to Scotland?'
- 4 'Somebody has stolen my car.'
- 5 'Otto wants to buy my motorbike.'

John Baker has won a lot of money in the lottery. His family and friends are giving him advice. Look at the pictures and use the words in the box to complete the sentences.

buy a sports car buy a house ✓ give the money away have a big party put the money in the bank start a business stop work travel round the world

- ► JOHN'S GIRLFRIEND: If I were you, I'd buy a house.
- 1 HIS MOTHER: .....
- 2 HIS FATHER: .....
- 3 HIS BROTHER: .....
- HIS GRANDMOTHER:
   HIS SISTER:
- 6 HIS FRIEND JOE:
- 7 HIS FRIEND STEPHANIE: .....



In some answers, both contracted forms (for example I'm, don't) and full forms (for example I am, do not) are possible. Normally both are correct.

The difference between *if I go* and *if I went* (for example) is **not** a difference of **time**. We can use both *if I go/see* etc and *if I went/saw* etc to talk about the **present** or **future**. With *if*, a **past tense** does not mean 'past time'; it means '**not real**' or '**not probable**'.

PROBABLE/POSSIBLE	NOT REAL/NOT PROBABLE
If I go to London, I'll visit Tony.	If I went to the moon, I would take a lot of photos.
If I see Ann, I'll give her your address.	If I saw the Prime Minister, I would say 'hello'.

### Choose the best sentence-beginning.

- If I live / lived to be 75, ...
- 1 If I live / lived to be 175, ...
- 2 If dogs can / could talk, ...
- 3 If I go / went shopping next week, ...
- 4 If Switzerland starts / started a war against Australia, ...
- 5 If the government gives / gave everybody a month's holiday with pay, ...
- 6 If you need / needed help one day, ...
- 7 If everybody gives / gave 10% of their money to poor countries, ...
- 8 If everybody thinks / thought the same as me, ...
- 9 If I am / was the most intelligent person in the world, ...
- 10 If prices go / went up next year, ...

### Choose the best way to continue the sentences.

- I'm not going to open the window. If I open / opened the window, it will / would be too noisy.
- Maybe I'll open a window. But if I open/opened a window, it will/would be very noisy.
- 1 I'm going to get up early tomorrow. If I have / had time, I'll / 'd walk to work.
- 2 If I have / had time, I 'll / 'd walk to work, but it's just not possible.
- 3 'I may get a job in Germany.' 'If you get / got it, what will / would your boyfriend say?'
- 4 'There's a job in Germany, but I don't think I'll get it.' 'If you *get/got* it, what *will/would* your boyfriend say?'
- 5 We never leave food on the table. If we *do/did*, the cat *will/would* eat it.
- 6 'Shall I put this on the table?' 'If you do/did, the cat will/would eat it.'
- 7 I'll probably go to university. But if I go / went, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- 8 I'm not going to go to university. If I go / went to university, I won't / wouldn't earn any money for three years.
- 9 Maybe Jenny will marry Phil. But if she does / did, I'm afraid she won't / wouldn't be happy.
- 10 Phil isn't going to marry Jenny. Because if he does / did, he will / would have a terrible time with her.

### Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

1	If I live to be 90,
2	If I lived to be 190,
	If I learn more English,
4	If I learnt 20 languages,
5	If I go to New York,
	If I went to the moon,

### We can use *if* to talk about **unreal past** events – things that **didn't happen**. We use the **past perfect** and *would have* + **past participle**.

	WOULD HAVE + PAST PARTICIPLE	
If the weather <mark>had been</mark> better,	we would have gone to the sea. (But it wasn't, so we didn't.)	
If you <mark>had asked</mark> me,	I would have helped you. (But you didn't, so I didn't.)	
If Mary <mark>had seen</mark> you,	what would you have said? (But she didn't.)	
If she <b>hadn't gone</b> skiing,	she wouldn't have fallen and broken her leg. (But she did.)	

### nere yesterday, i would have come to see you

- 12 ..... you ..... me if I ..... me if I ....

### Getting up early is bad for you. Read the text in the box and make sentences.

	get up early — catch the 8.15 train — sit by a beautiful foreign woman fall in love and marry her — go to live in her country — work in her father's diamond business become very rich — go into politics — die in a revolution
	. If I had got up early, I would have caught the 8.15 train.
1	If I had caught
2	
	and married her.
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	

# if: more practice

### Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Put the beginnings and ends together. (Different answers are possible.).

0	If I had a lot of money,	A	l would give it all to you
1	If you ask me nicely,	В	I'll break my leg
2	If the news was always good,	С	nobody would believe them
3	If we go to the country,	D	I'll dance all night
4	lf we go skiing,	E	I'll wear my new bikini
5	If everybody spoke English,	F	it would be a disaster
6	If I come to your party,	G	I'll make you a cup of tea
7	If everybody was telepathic,	Н	newspapers wouldn't have many pages
8	If politicians told the truth,	1	they might say some interesting things
9	If we go swimming,	J	I'll take my bicycle
10	If animals could talk,	К	international communication would be much easier

### Probable/possible or not real / not possible. Choose the best ways to continue the sentences.

- ▶ I think I'll study medicine. But I know if I do / did that, I'll / d have to work very hard.
- She's a very generous person. If she wins / won the lottery, she will / would give it all away.
- 1 I'm not going to buy a car. If I buy / bought a car I will / would spend all my money on it.
- 2 I really must go and see Sandra. But if I go / went and see / saw her, I'll / 'd have to talk to her stupid brother.
- 3 My parents live a long way away. If they live / lived nearer, I will / would see them more often.
- 4 We're going to stay at home this evening. If we go / went out, we won't / wouldn't do anything interesting.
- 5 Those exams are difficult. Unless you start / started working harder, you won't / wouldn't pass.
- 6 The United Moderate Anarchist Party will probably win the election. And if they *win / won*, the country *will / would* be in deep trouble.
- 7 I'm glad Marion isn't going to marry Jack. Because if she *marries / married* him she *will / would* be very unhappy.
- 8 Maybe I'll take you to London with me. But if I take / took you, you'll / 'd have to pay for your ticket.
- 9 If it rains / rained again tomorrow, I won't / wouldn't go cycling.
- 10 Dylan never tells the truth. And if he does / did, I won't / wouldn't believe him.

### Grammar in a text. Put in the missing words.

### The laws of work

- 1. If anything can go wrong, it ...... go wrong.
- 2. If a job looks easy, it's difficult. If it ..... difficult, ..... impossible.
- 3. If you think a job will take two hours, it ...... take four days. If you think it ...... take four days, it ...... eight weeks. And so on.
- 4. If you throw something away, you ..... need it the next day.
- 5. If you do what everybody wants you to do, somebody ..... like it.
- 6. If you explain so clearly that nobody can misunderstand, somebody .....

### Unreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.

1 If I ..... coffee last night, I ..... better. (not drink; sleep) 2 If my parents ...... to university after I left school. (have; go) 3 Jessica ...... to Brazil last year if she ...... Pete. (ao: not meet) 4 If I ..... to Ireland. (not be; go) 5 1...... the bus if I...... (catch; run) 6 If he ...... longer. (stop; live) 7 1 .....it. (not ask; need) 8 Yesterday ...... in bed. (be; stay) 9 1 ..... it was going to be so cold. (wear; know) 10 If we ..... to see Uncle Pete. (have: ao)

Unreal past. Read the text and complete the chain of *if*-sentences.

### HOT WEATHER IS GOOD FOR YOU

It was hot, so my mother opened the door. A cat came in and ate her supper, so she went to the shop to buy food. In the shop she saw an advertisement for a secretary. So she got a new job, and met my father. I'm glad it was a hot day!

If it hadn't been hot, my mother wouldn't have opened the door. If she hadn't opened the door, the cat ...... her supper. If the cat ..... \_\_\_\_\_

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: names of languages

Anna is going to work in another country next year. See if you can make sentences with the correct language names. Use a dictionary if necessary.

	Arabic	Chinese 🗸	Dutch	German	Greek	Portuguese	Swahili	
	(China)	If she go	es to Chí	na, she wi	<mark>.ll have</mark> t	o learn Chin	ese.	中文
1	(Egypt)	If she						Nederlands
2								Deut
3	(Holland	)	•••••					Dout
4	(Kenya)							Ελληνικά
5	(Greece)							Portu
6	(Austria)							Kiswahili

### 🕼 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find out which of the following are more common

"unless I buy"	. 1	04	,0	0	0				
"if I were you"				-	•		 •	 	
"if she knew"								 	
"if we go"									
"if they had sai									

"unless I will buy"	
"if I was you"	
"if she would know"	
"if we will go"	
"if they would have said"	



### pronunciation for grammar Can<sup>17</sup>

Deutsch

Portuquês

# if: revision test

12832	ut in the correct verb forms.
	I'm sure John
	I would be very happy if I had more friends. (have)
1	If you your glasses, you would see much better. ( <i>clean</i> )
2	If Peter lives in Little Compton, he probably my friend Jack. (know)
3	I and see you tomorrow if I have time. (come)
	If she spoke more slowly, perhaps I her. (understand)
5	If you at 12.00, you will arrive at 3.20. (leave)
	I my car unless I needed money. (not sell)
7	If you so far away, it would be easier for us to see each other. (not live)
	1 this letter for you if I can find my dictionary. (translate)
9	If I you very nicely, will you make me some coffee? (ask)
10	If water very cold, it becomes ice. (get)
Ø Fi	ve of sentences 1–10 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.
	I usually get up and watch TV if I can't sleepCorrect
	I wouldn't do that if I <del>would be</del> you
1	I'll be very happy if I'll pass the exam.
2	If she's from Russia, she probably speaks Russian.
3	If he would eat more, he wouldn't be so thin.
4	If I don't see you today, I see you next week.
5	I'll come and see you on Wednesday if I have time.
6	If we left early tomorrow morning, we would arrive before 12.00.
7	Unless he doesn't work harder, he won't pass his exams.
8	If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I'll play tennis with James.
9	We'll go and see Max and Chris if we'll be in Berlin.
	I would get a better job if I could find one.
1000	nreal past. Put in the correct verb forms.
	If I What to do. (not ask; not know)
	If Alex to see him. (be; go)
3	I'm sorry. I that if I that if I
12	listening. (not say; know)
4	It nothing when the policeman
	stopped you. (be; say)
5	If I my girlfriend. ( <i>not get</i> ; not meet)
6	Lucy her to hospital when she started
0	feeling ill. ( <i>die; not take</i> )
7	If I out. (not be; go)
1	
8	
8	If I what my father wanted, I medicine.
	If I what my father wanted, I medicine. ( <i>do</i> ; <i>study</i> )
	If I
9	If I what my father wanted, I medicine. ( <i>do</i> ; <i>study</i> )
	If I

# relative pronouns

# **SECTION 19** relative pronouns

that

what

grammar summary

which

(whom)

who

We use relative pronouns to join sentences to noun	S.
We use who for people and which for things. We can	<i>said <b>a word which/that</b> l didn't hear.</i> pronouns.
The photos which/that show the beach are beautiful Prepositions can often go in two places. The woman about whom we were talking walked in The woman that we were talking about walked into We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which'. The children always eat what I cook.	l. (NOT The photos show the beach) to the room. (formal)
Artist Or / (dtist; Name 'dtt-/ nou!) A a person who creates works of ar, especially paint is of drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporations is of drawings: an exhibition of work by contemporations are is a singer of drawings: an exhibition of work by contexposed on a drawings: impression of her attacker. (if gura have issued an artist's impression of her attacker.) COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. COLOCATORS is Whoever made this cake is a real artist. Colocators is a professional entertainer such as a singer, a dancer or an a professional entertainer such as a singer, a dancer or an orders in a second that is good to eat; a swarm of bees is the set is good to eat; a swarm of bees a best sticky substance that is good to eat; a swarm of bees a best stick. Such as the bee's knees (informal) an excellent person or thing: She thinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic thinks of the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic thinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drinks she's the bee's knees (= she has a very high principhic drink that it is very important D more at RIRD, RUSS dust). But deter / 'budde(r)/ noun 1 a person or company whose bot public drinks and is a person or thing that builds, creates or a loopy shull be the me and to boty BULLDER. But deter / basglo(r); NamF barg-/ noun a person who entered a building illegally in order to steal. But deter / basglo(r); NamF barg-/ noun a person who entered a building illegally in order to steal. </td <td><ul> <li>bus 6-w (bas/ noun, yet)</li> <li>noun (pl. buses, US also busses) 1 a a large road yehiels a fixed route and stops regularly to ler people get on and off: Shall we walk or go by bus? A regular bus service connects of compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also be ducated together 3 a part of a computer system to another areas so that students of different races can be educated together 3 a students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set student, are a jo.</li> <li>cheese Cw (t) trainer and so a coArt) a a cheese sondwich (so for hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually the set set of the tables are so the set of the tables in a soft or hard and is usually hard regres in the different races as decised or yellow in colour; a male from the milk of a coArt) or use the soft or cotable of the tables in a soft or here as a cheese whife (= a knife with a special) or a din susuall</li></ul></td>	<ul> <li>bus 6-w (bas/ noun, yet)</li> <li>noun (pl. buses, US also busses) 1 a a large road yehiels a fixed route and stops regularly to ler people get on and off: Shall we walk or go by bus? A regular bus service connects of compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also bus 1.ANT, BUS STOP, MINBUS, TROLLEYBUS 2 (compare coActi a see also be ducated together 3 a part of a computer system to another areas so that students of different races can be educated together 3 a students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set students of different races can be educated together 3 a set student, are a jo.</li> <li>cheese Cw (t) trainer and so a coArt) a a cheese sondwich (so for hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually white or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually mite or yellow in colour; a soft or hard and is usually the set set of the tables are so the set of the tables in a soft or hard and is usually hard regres in the different races as decised or yellow in colour; a male from the milk of a coArt) or use the soft or cotable of the tables in a soft or here as a cheese whife (= a knife with a special) or a din susuall</li></ul>

# relative who and which the keys which I lost

We can use **sentences** to describe **nouns**. To join sentences to nouns, we use **relative pronouns**: *who* (for **people**) and *which* (for **things**).



I've got those books. You wanted them.

The man (Who) lives at No 10 plays golf. The letter Which you saw is for me. I like the girl (Who) works with Ann. I've got those books Which you wanted.

### Put in who or which.

- 1 The people ..... live downstairs are Irish.
- 2 The shop ..... sells that good bread is closed today.
- 3 The dictionary ..... I bought yesterday isn't very good.
- 4 That cheese ...... you like comes from Scotland.
- 5 Do you know the girls ..... are standing by the window?
- 6 I can't find the key ..... opens this door.
- 7 I've lost the earrings ..... Harry gave me.
- 8 The police are looking for three men ..... robbed the National Bank yesterday.
- 9 We know the woman ..... teaches French at Jane's school.
- 10 Here's a word ..... I don't understand.
- 11 Are those the shoes ...... Tracy has just bought?
- 12 I had just one teacher ..... was really good.

### We use who or which instead of he, him, she, it etc. Don't use both.

The woman who she teaches me French is ill. Here's the address which you wanted it

### Circle the correct answer.

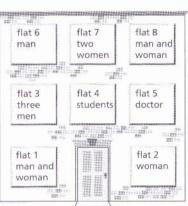
- 1 There's the man who took / he took your coat.
- 2 Do you know the people who live / they live next door?
- 3 I like that woman; she is / is very kind.
- 4 I've found the keys which I lost / lost them.
- 5 Do you like the new dress which I bought / bought it yesterday?
- 6 The car which is parked / it is parked outside belongs to Susan.
- 7 This is a new kind of knife: *cuts / it cuts* everything.
- 8 The poems which Mark writes / writes them are very hard to understand.
- 9 We've got three children who make / they make a lot of noise.
- 10 What did you do with the sweater which I lent you / I lent you it?

The man who makes no mistakes does not usually make anything. (*E J Phelps*)

(LJFIIelps)

L	ook at the picture and the information, and write sentences with who. The man and woman who live in flat 8 are from Scotland.
1	
2	
3	
4	
5	
б	
7	

FLAT	INFORMATION
1	play loud music all night
2	broke her leg skiing
3	play golf all day
4	haven't got much money
5	has three children
6	drives a Rolls-Royce
7	are hiding from the police
8	are from Scotland



Join the sentences in the place marked \*. Change *he, it* etc to *who* or *which*.

•	Most of the people* speak German. They live in Austria. Most of the people who live in Austria speak German.
•	l know a shop*. It sells really good meat. I know a shop which sells really good meat.
1	The bus* isn't running today. It goes to Oxford.
2	Yesterday I met a man*. He works with your brother.
3	The child* was ill. She didn't come to the party.
4	Can you pick up the papers*? They are lying on the floor.
5	The eggs* were bad. I bought them yesterday.
6	Here's the book*. You asked me to buy it for you.
7	I don't like the man*. He is going out with my sister.

We can use *whom* for people when the relative pronoun is the **object** of the following verb.

I've just got a postcard from a woman whom I met on holiday last year. (I met the woman.)

But *whom* is formal and unusual. In spoken English, we more often use *that* (see page 256), *who* or **nothing** (see page 257).

I've just got a postcard from **a woman who/that I met** on holiday last year. OR I've just got a postcard from **a woman I met** on holiday last year.

# relative that a bird that can't fly

	an use <i>that</i> instead of <i>who</i> or <i>which</i> .
2 17	nan <b>that</b> lives at number 8 is getting married. You haven't drunk the tea <b>that</b> I made for you.
In	in the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> .
-	I'd like to speak to the person*. She wrote this letter. I'd like to speak to the person that wrote this letter.
	The tomatoes* are all bad. I bought them yesterday.
	The tomatoes that I bought yesterday are all bad.
1	Joe's got a motorbike*. It can do 200 km an hour.
2	Is that the computer*? It doesn't work.
3	Those are the trousers*. I use them for gardening.
4	A man* wants to marry my sister. He lives in New York.
5	The doctors* all said different things. They looked at my leg.
6	The flowers* are beautiful. You gave them to Aunt Sarah.
7	The children* have gone on holiday. They play football with Paul.
	RAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that fly rite descriptions with <i>that.</i> Use a dictionary if necessary.
	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine
	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary.
	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you
	rite descriptions with <i>that</i> . Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey.
	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. an insect
W	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. an insect
W	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. a bird
W 1 2 3	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insect
W 1 2 3	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insect
W 1 2 3 4	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. an insectthat makes honey. a bird
W 1 2 3 4	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey / doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey an insectthat makes honey a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. an insectthat makes honey. a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey / doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey an insectthat makes honey a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey / doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey an insectthat makes honey a bird
W 1 2 3 4 5 6	rite descriptions with that. Use a dictionary if necessary. can fly straight up flies at night and hears very well can't fly doesn't have an engine eats small animals and birds can fly to the moon makes honey ✓ doesn't make honey and can bite you an insectthat makes honey. a bird

6 glider

7 space rocket

and .

5 helicopter

# leaving out relative pronouns the car (that) you bought

	hen a <b>relative pronoun</b> ( <i>who/which/that</i> ) is the <b>object</b> of it we <b>can't leave out</b> a relative pronoun when it is the <mark>su</mark>		
	phoned a man.) (A man ph		
The n	ne man that I phoned spoke Spanish. The man t	hat	phoned me spoke Greek.
-		The r	nan phoned me spoke Greek.)
The t	ne train <mark>that</mark> you want leaves at 10.00. The train t	hat	stops at York goes at 8.00.
	The train you want leaves at 10.00. (NOT 7	The t	rain stops at York goes at 8.00.)
1			
ls Is	Is the relative pronoun the subject (S) or object (	O) c	of the following verb?
•	the woman who wrote this letter	4	a man who(m) I helped
•	▶ the film that I saw	5	the weather that we have had
1		6	a machine that makes paper
	2 a woman who helped me		that car which you bought
3	3 the sweater which I wore	8	the man who cuts my hair
1	Look at Exercise 1. Find the expressions with obj	ect	relative pronouns and rewrite them
144	without who(m), which or that.		
•	<ul> <li>the film I saw</li> </ul>	3	
1	1	4	
2	2	5	
Pr (	Join the sentences in the place marked * without	t usi	ing who, which or that.
•	The cup of coffee* is on the table. You wanted it.		
	The cup of coffee you wanted is on the table.		
1	1 I'm working for a man*. I've known him for twenty ye	ears.	
2	2 They played a lot of music*. I didn't like it.		
2			
2			
2	3 The campsite* was very dirty. We found it.		
4	4 I'm going on holiday with some people*. I know the	m.	
5	5 That book* is very good. You gave it to me.		
6	6 The ring* belonged to her grandmother. She lost it.		
7	7 I'm driving a car*. I bought it 15 years ago.		
R	8 The papers* are on the table. You wanted them.		
0	o The papers' are of the table, for wanted them.		
A DE	Write three sentences beginning Everybody I kno	w.	
ATTEN A			••
	<b>.</b>		
	1	•••••	
2	2		
3	3		

# prepositions the man that she works for

	ne verbs have prepositions with them (see page 141) – for example look at, listen to.
vvne	
	en relative pronouns are the objects of these verbs, there are two possibilities: Seep the preposition with the verb (more informal; we can leave out who(m)/which/that.)
	he woman smiled. I was <b>looking at her</b> . —— The woman (whom/that) I was <b>looking at</b> smiled. he flat was dirty. He <b>lived in it</b> . —— The flat he l <b>ived in</b> ,vas dirty.
• p	ut the preposition before whom/which (very formal)
TI	he woman <mark>at whom</mark> I was <b>looking</b> smiled.
TI	he flat in which he lived was dirty.
at the c	
EF C	hange these expressions to make them more conversational. Use that. a boy with whom I went to school
1	
1	
3	
4	
5	
(2) R	Rewrite the expressions from Exercise 1, but leave out that.
•	a boy I went to school with 3
1	
2	
	ook at the information about Helen, and then make sentences (like the example) about he people in her life. Helen lives in a big flat with a friend called Ruby. She works for a man called Eric. At weekends she plays
	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom.
1	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is
1	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica</u> is <u>Monica</u> is
1 2 3 4	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica</u> is <u>Karen</u> is <u>Karen</u> is <u>Sometimes and Sometimes</u> and Sometimes
	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen</u> , or
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica is Monica is</u>
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen</u> , or
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica is Monica is</u>
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> .
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings.
- 3 4 5	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> .
3 4 5 • • •	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Tom is</u> <b>low write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</b> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> . The man she works The woman <u>The 80-year-old woman</u> <u>Markets</u>
3 4 5 <b>N</b> 1 2	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily and Jack are</u> Tom is <u>Monica determined to the example about Helen's birthday presents.</u> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> . The man she works <u>The woman</u> The 80-year-old woman <u>The people</u> .
3 4 5 <b>N</b> 1 2	tennis with a woman called Monica. Sometimes she reads to an 80-year-old woman called Karen, or babysits for people called Emily and Jack. She is in love with a man called Tom. Ruby is <u>the friend she lives with</u> . Eric is <u>Monica is</u> Karen is <u>Emily</u> and Jack are <u>Tom is</u> <b>low write sentences (like the example) about Helen's birthday presents.</b> For Helen's birthday, Ruby gave her a handbag, Eric gave her chocolates, Monica gave her a clock, Karen gave her theatre tickets, Emily and Jack gave her a picture, and Tom gave her flowers and earrings. The friend she lives <u>with gave her a handbag</u> . The man she works The woman <u>The 80-year-old woman</u> <u>Markets</u>

# relative what It was just what I wanted.

We can use what to mean 'the thing(s) which/that' or 'anything that'.
Have you got <b>what</b> you need for your journey? (= ' the things that you need') I'm sorry about <b>what</b> happened. 'Can I have something to eat?' 'Take <b>what</b> you like.'
We use <i>what</i> with a singular verb.
What I bought was mostly very cheap. (NOT What I bought were)
Change the words in italics to what.
<ul> <li>The things that she said weren't true.</li> <li>What she said wasw't true.</li> <li>1 The things that he did made everybody angry.</li> </ul>
2 Take <i>anything that</i> you want.
3 Soap – that's the thing that I forgot to pack!
4 She gave me a watch. It was just <i>the thing that</i> I wanted.
5 That child does <i>anything that</i> he likes.
6 <i>The things that</i> I read in the paper make me unhappy.
7 Don't tell me <i>things that</i> I know already.
8 <i>The thing that</i> I like best in life is doing nothing.
Write a sentence beginning What I need is

### We use that, not what, after anything, something, nothing, everything, all and the only thing.

You can take **anything that** you want. (NOT ... anything what you want.) The shop had **nothing that** I wanted. All that I could do was stand and watch. Money is **the only thing** in the world **that** matters to him.

### Put in that or what.

- 1 I believe everything ..... she says.
- 2 ..... she did surprised everybody.
- 3 I can't give you ..... you want.
- 4 He said nothing ..... was important.
- 5 I can't eat ..... I like.
- 6 ..... you need is a holiday.

- 7 I can't eat everything ...... I like.
- 8 The only thing ..... I forgot was toothpaste.
- 9 Ask Peter he'll tell you ..... you need to know.
- 10 She said something ..... was very helpful.

# relative pronouns: more practice

1002T		se of who and which. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using who or which.		
Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it. Yesterday I saw a film which you would like.		Yesterday I saw a film.* You would like it. Yesterday I saw a film which you would like.		
	1	I know a man.* He writes film music.		
	2	The bus* got to London twenty minutes late. I took it.		
	3	We have friends*. They live in Chicago.		
	4	The car* isn't very good. I bought it last month.		
	5	We stayed in a hotel*. It had a beautiful garden.		
	6	l didn't like the man*. My sister married him.		
	7	The people* weren't very interesting. They were at the party.		
	8	Tim uses long words*. I can't understand them.		
	9	The computer* crashes every five minutes. I'm using it.		
10 The woman* is terribly nice. She works in the flower shop.		The woman* is terribly nice. She works in the flower shop		
		The worker is terminy meet she works in the noner shop.		
den h				
0	Us	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> . The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.		
0	<b>U</b> s 1	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> .		
0	<b>U</b> s 1	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that.</i> The tickets* were very expensive. I got them.		
0	Us 1 2	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> . The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper.		
0	Us 1 2 3 4	se of <i>that</i> . Join the sentences in the place marked *, using <i>that</i> . The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons.		
0	Us 1 2 3 4 5	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that. The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons. The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door.		
0	Us 1 2 3 4 5 6	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that. The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons. The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door. I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them. What did you do with the money*? We collected it. People* are called linguists. They study languages.		
0	Us 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that. The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons. The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door. I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them. What did you do with the money*? We collected it. People* are called linguists. They study languages. We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.		
0	Us 1 2 3 4 5 6 7	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that. The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons. The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door. I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them. What did you do with the money*? We collected it. People* are called linguists. They study languages. We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house. The oranges* are all bad. You bought them.		
	Us 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9	se of that. Join the sentences in the place marked *, using that. The tickets* were very expensive. I got them. These are the scissors*. I use them for cutting paper. The woman* is from Brazil. She gives me tennis lessons. The man* is always very friendly. He lives next door. I'm spending the day with some people*. I know them. What did you do with the money*? We collected it. People* are called linguists. They study languages. We've got a cat*. It brings dead rats into the house.		

### beaving out who, which or that. Rewrite the words in italics without relative pronouns if it's possible. If not, write 'No change'

0.00	the hereinerer of the end of the state of th
	Where's the book which I was reading? the book I was reading
	The people who live next door are German. No change.
1	The clock that I bought doesn't work.
2	I didn't like the film which I saw last night.
3	Here's the letter that came for you.
4	It was a journey that took twelve hours.
5	He was a man that I really disliked.
6	I had an experience which changed my life.
7	What happened to that dog which you had?
8	I know a woman who speaks eight languages.
9	Do you know anybody who can play the trumpet?
10	Did you see those earrings that I bought for Helen?

### Grammar in a text. Cross out that if it can be left out.

'How was that hotel that I suggested?' 'That hotel! The rooms that they put us in were like cupboards, the beds that they gave us were much too small, and the extra blankets that we asked for never arrived. The 'full English breakfast' that they served was uneatable, and the 'French champagne' that we ordered at dinner was undrinkable. And that brochure that you showed me was full of lies. The 'view of the sea' that they talked about was a view of the car park, and the gym that they advertised wasn't there. And then, the bill that we got at the end was unbelievable. Never again!'

### Position of prepositions. Make these expressions more conversational.

- a boy to whom I talked ......
- 1 the book at which I was looking .....
- 2 the people for whom I work .....
- 3 the hotel in which we stayed .....
- 4 the place to which I drove .....
- 5 those people to whom we were talking .....
- 6 the train on which we travelled .....
- 7 some people with whom I work .....
- 8 the place about which I was telling you .....
- 9 the pen with which I write .....
- 10 the small village in which my mother lives .....

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: jewellery

### Read the text and complete the sentences. Use a dictionary if necessary.

Anna, Naomi, Sally, Jane, Jessica and Thalia have all got rich boyfriends. For Christmas, Anna wanted a gold watch, Naomi wanted a diamond brooch, Sally wanted sapphire earrings, Jane wanted a pearl necklace, Jessica wanted a ruby ring and Thalia wanted a silver bracelet. But:

# Anna got a diamond brooch, so ... Anna got what Naomí wanted.

- 1 Naomi got a ruby ring, so .....
- 2 Sally got a silver bracelet, so .....
- 3 Jane got a gold watch, so .....
- 4 Jessica got a pearl necklace, so .....
- 5 Thalia got sapphire earrings, so .....

### Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find five simple sentences beginning "Everybody I know likes ... ". Write one yourself.

1	Everybody I know likes	4	
2		5	
3		6 (Your sentence)	

pronunciation for grammar 100 M

**RELATIVE PRONOUNS 261** 





# relative pronouns: revision test

(1) w	/hich answer is right: A, B or both?			
Contraction of the second	The people play loud music very late. A who live downstairs B live downstairs			
	<ul> <li>I don't much like the music (A) they play</li> <li>B) that they play</li> </ul>			
	1 The girls gave me flowers for my birthday. A with whom I work B that I work with			
2 I don't want a phone more intelligent than me. <b>A</b> that is <b>B</b> is				
	Where's the paper? A that you wrote the address on <b>B</b> that you wrote the address on it			
4	I like people laugh at themselves. A can B who can			
5	she said made me very angry. A What B That what			
6	Yesterday everything was wrong. There are days like that. A I did B that I did			
7	'What do you call a thing that bottles?' 'A bottle-opener.' A opens B it opens			
8	There are the keys A I was looking for B that I was looking for			
9	The train was very uncomfortable. A in which we travelled B which we travelled in			
10	There's a shop near here open all night. A that stays B which stays			
11	I've found the shoes A that   lost B that   lost them			
12	Do you know anybody Russian? A who speaks B speaks			
	She married a man on holiday. A she met B that she met			
	The woman wanted to speak to James. A phoned B who phoned			
	Who were those people that you? A were talking to B were talking to them			
🙆 Si	ix of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.			
	The people <del>which</del> live next door have got five children			
	Do you know a shop which sells good cheese? Correct			
1 I didn't understand the language which she was speaking.				
2	2 We stayed in a hotel who had a beautiful garden.			
	I didn't understand the language she was speaking.			
	Is the book you're reading interesting?			
5	I didn't understand the language that she was speaking.			
6				
7	A vet is a doctor who works with animals.			
8	l didn't like the man which my sister married.			
9	Did I tell you about the film which we saw last night?			
10	Eric said a word which I couldn't understand it.			
11	I'm spending the day with some people I know.			
12	People what live in London are called 'Londoners'.			
13	There's the man I was telling you about.			
14	The train I came home on was an hour late.			
15	I don't like people that you can't relax with them.			
🕘 Pi	ut in <i>that</i> or <i>what</i> .			
1	l like everything you cook. 6 I learnt nothing was useful.			
2	Nobody rememers everything they do. 7 Peter will tell you you have to do.			
3	I said shocked everybody. 8 I can't wear I like at work.			
	The only thing I need is a 9 you need is a long holiday.			
	toothpaste. 10 Amy said something was interesting			
5	They couldn't give me I asked for.			

# indirect speech

# SECTION 20 indirect speech

### grammar summary

When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech.

Tenses, here-and-now words (like *this, here, today*) and pronouns (like *I, you*) may change in indirect speech. This is because the time, place and speaker may be different. *Treally like it here.* Bill said that he really liked it there.

We often **leave out** *that*, especially after common verbs like *say* and *think*. *Bill said* he really liked it there.

Indirect questions have a different structure from direct questions. 'What is your phone number?' He asked me what my phone number was. 'Do you like cherries?' She asked me if I liked cherries.

We can use **object** + **infinitive** (with to) after **ask** and **tell**. I **asked him to make** some coffee. She **told the children not to make** a noise.

### PROMISES, PROMISES

'You said I was beautiful'
'You are more beautiful every day.'
'You said you loved me.'
'And it's true. I love you. Deeply. Passionately,'
'You told me you would love me for ever.'
'And I will. For ever and ever.'
'You said you would never look at another woman.'
'I have never looked at another woman. I shut my eyes when one comes close.'
'You told me you were rich.'
'We have a solid gold bath with diamond taps.'
'You told me you wanted children'
'We have thirteen children.'
'You said you could cook.'
'I cook you a magnificent five-course dinner every night.'
'You told me you would bring me a cup of tea in bed every morning.'
'You get a cup of tea in bed every morning. With biscuits and the newspaper.'
'You said you could play the saxophone.'
'I am a world-famous saxophonist.'
'You promised that you would take me to Hawaii'
"We have just come back from three months in Hawaii."
'You said you would mend the dishwasher.' 'Sorry. I forgot.'
'You see. I can't believe a word you say.

\*\*\*

# tenses and pronouns Bill said he was really happy.





When we tell people what somebody said or thought, we often use indirect speech. Tenses and pronouns (*I*, you etc) change in indirect speech if the time and speaker change. For example, present tenses become past; *I* may become *he* or *she*; *my* may become *his* or *her*.

SOMEBODY SAID/THOUGHT	INDIRECT SPEECH	
'I'm happy.'	Bill said that he was happy. (NOT Bill said that I'm happy.)	
'I <b>have</b> a problem.'	I thought that I had a problem. (NOT I thought that I have a problem.)	
'She likes me.'	He knew that she liked him.	
'My feet are cold.'	She said <b>her</b> feet <b>were</b> cold.	

We often leave out that, especially after common verbs like say, think.

Bill said he was really happy. I thought it was a great party.

### Put in the correct pronouns (*I* etc) or possessives (*my* etc).

- 'She likes me'. He knew she liked ...him...
- 1 'I speak French.' He said ..... spoke French.
- 2 'I'm sorry.' She said ..... was sorry.
- 3 'Kate phoned me.' She said Kate had phoned .....
- 4 'We want our money.' They said ...... wanted ..... money.
- 5 'I'm tired.' He said ..... was tired.
- 6 'I can't help you.' She told me she couldn't help .....
- 7 'We're leaving.' They said ..... were leaving.
- 8 'I've lost my coat.' He said ..... had lost ..... coat.
- 9 'I like my job.' She told me ..... liked ...... job.
- 10 'Where are our tickets?' They asked where ..... tickets were.

### Note the difference between say and tell.

Tell must have a personal object: we tell somebody something.

She told me I was late. (NOT She told I was late.)

They told Anna the wrong time. (NOT They told the wrong time to Anna.)

Say doesn't need a personal object: we say something (to somebody).

She said I was late. (NOT She said me I was late.) I said nothing to the police. (NOT I said the police nothing.)

### Gircle the correct answer.

- 1 | said / told the driver I wanted to stop.
- 2 My mother *said / told* there was a letter for me.
- 3 Everybody said / told I looked beautiful.
- 4 Why did you *say / tell* the lessons were expensive?
- 5 Ross said / told the waiter he couldn't pay.
- 6 I didn't *say / tell* Peter that I was going away.
- 7 Nobody *said / told* me that the shop was closed.
- 8 Mia said / told that she would wait at the bus stop.

### **TENSE CHANGES**

When we tell people what somebody said in the past, there is a time difference. (For example, somebody said something on Sunday, and I tell you about it on Monday.) Because of this, tenses usually change as follows:

DIRECT SPEECH ON SUNDAY	TENSE CHANGE	INDIRECT SPEECH ON MONDAY
The children <b>are</b> in Ireland. My TV <b>isn't</b> working.	AM/ARE/IS WAS/WERE	Karen said her children <mark>were</mark> in Ireland. He said his TV <mark>wasn't</mark> working.
l <b>have</b> a meeting at 4.00. Sue <mark>has</mark> passed her exam.	HAVE/HAS HAD	She said she <b>had</b> a meeting at 4.00. Sally told me Sue <b>had</b> passed her exam.
I will probably be late.	WILL WOULD	I thought I would probably be late.
You <b>can</b> have three tickets.	CAN COULD	The man said I <b>could</b> have three tickets.
It <b>doesn't</b> matter, Martin.	DO/DOES	I told Martin it didn't matter.
The train <b>leaves</b> at 6.00. We all <b>speak</b> English.	SIMPLE PRESENT SIMPLE PAST	The timetable said the train <b>left</b> at 6.00. She said they all <b>spoke</b> English.
l forgot my keys.	SIMPLE PAST PAST PERFECT	He said he had forgotten his keys.

Rewrite the sentences in indirect speech, changing the tenses. Begin He/She/They said ...

•	SALLY: 'I'm tired.'
1	ANNA: 'My sister needs a car.'
2	DANIEL: 'I have to phone Andrew.'
3	MARY: 'Nobody wants to help me.'
4	HELEN: 'The radio doesn't work.'
5	BEN: 'I will be in Paris in July.'
6	MIKE: 'I like the red sweater.'
7	DAVID: 'I can't swim.'
8	ALICE: 'My parents are travelling.'
9	MARIA: 'The lessons are very good.'
10	BRAD AND AMY: 'We haven't heard from Joseph.'
1.	ack at the picture to see what John thought when

Look at the picture to see what John thought when he was small. Write his thoughts in indirect speech. He thought animals could talk.

(	ANIMALS CAN TALK. CATS HAVE NINE LIVES.	)
(	MY FATHER KNOWS EVERYTHING.	8
3	SPAGHETTI GROWS ON TREES.	
( •	THE TEACHER LIVES IN THE SCHOOL.	
7	I WILL BE RICH ONE DAY. J.	)
7	MY MOTHER HAS	
1	ALWAYS BEEN OLD. ) THY	1

What did you think when you were small? Write three or more sentences.

1	
2	
3	
4	
5	

# indirect questions She asked him what his name was.

Indirect questions have a different word order from direct questions, and no question marks: ???         DIRECT QUESTION:       Monica said, 'Where is John?'       I said, 'When can you come?'         INDIRECT QUESTION:       Monica asked where John was.       I asked when she could come.         (NOT Monica asked where John?)       We don't use do in indirect questions.       I asked when she could come.         (NOT Monica asked where was John?)       We don't use do in indirect questions.       I asked when she could come.         (NOT Monica asked me what I wanted.       I asked him where Andrew live?'       INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what I wanted.       I asked him where Andrew lived.         (NOT She asked me what did Iwant.)       Where does Andrew live?       I asked him where Andrew lived.       (NOT She asked me what did Iwant.)         Image: A policewoman stopped a driver in London and asked him some questions.       Write the questions in indirect speech.       I where do you live?'         Image: Where do you work?				
INDIRECT QUESTION:       Monica asked where John was. (NOT Monica asked where was John?)       I asked when she could come.         We don't use do in indirect questions.       Image: Comparison of the could come asked where was John?)         We don't use do in indirect questions.       'What do you want?'       'Where does Andrew live?'         INDIRECT QUESTION:       'What do you want?'       'Where does Andrew lived. (NOT She asked me what did I wanted. (NOT She asked me what did I wante)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what did I wanted. (NOT She asked me what did I wante)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         I of the questions in indirect speech.       'What is your name?'       She asked him. what his wawe was.         1 'Where do you live?'       'She asked him. what his wawe was.         1 'Where are you going?'       'Where have you been?'         2 'Where have you been?'       'What is the number of your car?'         4 'Where have you driving on the right?'       ''What is the number of your car?'         6 'Why are you driving on the right?'       ''What is do you know Tim?         Mereor QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.       '''         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether	Indire	ct questions have	a <b>different word order</b> from direct que	stions, and no question marks: XX
(NOT Monica asked where was John?)         We don't use do in indirect questions.         DIRECT QUESTION:       'What do you want?'       'Where does Andrew live?'         INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what I wanted. (NOT She asked me what did I wante)       I asked him where Andrew lived. (NOT She asked me what did I wante)         A policewoman stopped a driver in London and asked him some questions.       Write the questions in indirect speech.         'What is your name?'       She asked him what his mame was.         'Where do you live?'       '''         'Where do you work?'       '''         'Where have you been?'       '''         'Where have you been?'       '''         'What is the number of your car?'       '''         '''       '''         '''       '''         '''       '''         '''       '''         '''       '''         '''       '''         '''       ''''         '''       ''''         '''       '''''         '''       <	DIREC	T QUESTION:	Monica said, 'Where is John?'	I said, 'When can you come?'
DIRECT QUESTION:       'What do you want?'       'Where does Andrew live?'         INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what I wanted. (NOT She asked me what did I want.)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what did I want.)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what did I want.)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         Interview       Where does and rew live?'       I asked him some questions.         Write the questions in indirect speech.       ' What is your name?'       She Asked him. what his wawe was.         1       'Where do you work?'       '''.         2       'Where do you work?'       '''.         3       'Where are you going?'       '''.         4       'Where have you been?'       '''.         5       'What is the number of your car?'       '''.         6       'Why are you driving on the right?'       '''.         6       'Why are you driving on the right?'       '''.         INDIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?       Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.       She asked if/whether I was French.	INDIRE	ECT QUESTION:		I asked when she could come.
INDIRECT QUESTION:       She asked me what I wanted. (NOT She asked me what did I want.)       I asked him where Andrew lived.         I asked him where Andrew lived.       (NOT She asked me what did I want.)         I asked him some questions.       Write the questions in indirect speech.         I what is your name?       She asked him what his mame was.         I where do you live?       I where do you live?         I where are you going?       I where have you been?         I where have you been?       I what is the number of your car?'         I why are you driving on the right?       I where have you been?         I why are you driving on the right?       I where have you been?         I where the number of your car?       I where have you been?         I where the number of your car?       I where have you driving on the right?         I where the number of your car?       I where have you been?         I where the number of your car?       I where have you driving on the right?         I where the number of your car?       I where you french?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         I where here if whether I knew Tim.       She asked if whether I was French.         I he policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether	We do	n't use do in indi	rect questions.	
<ul> <li>(NOT She asked me what did I want.)</li> <li>A policewoman stopped a driver in London and asked him some questions.</li> <li>Write the questions in indirect speech.</li> <li>'What is your name?' She asked him what his name was.</li> <li>'Where do you live?'</li> <li>'Where do you work?'</li> <li>'Where are you going?'</li> <li>'Where have you been?'</li> <li>'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> </ul> With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same. DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French? INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.	DIREC	T QUESTION:	'What do you want?'	'Where does Andrew live?'
Write the questions in indirect speech.         • 'What is your name?'       She asked him what his name was.         1 'Where do you live?'       'Where do you work?'         2 'Where do you work?'       ''Where are you going?'         4 'Where have you been?'       ''What is the number of your car?'         5 'What is the number of your car?'       ''Why are you driving on the right?'         6 'Why are you driving on the right?'       ''Where the same.         DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         Are you French?       ''NDIRECT QUESTION:         He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.       She asked if/whether I was French.         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether	INDIRE	ECT QUESTION:		l asked him where Andrew lived.
<ul> <li>1 'Where do you live?'</li> <li>2 'Where do you work?'</li> <li>3 'Where are you going?'</li> <li>4 'Where have you been?'</li> <li>5 'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.</li> <li>DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French?</li> <li>INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.</li> <li>The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether</li> </ul>	Wr	rite the questio	ns in indirect speech.	
<ul> <li>2 'Where do you work?'</li> <li>3 'Where are you going?'</li> <li>4 'Where have you been?'</li> <li>5 'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.</li> <li>DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French?</li> <li>INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.</li> <li>The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether</li> </ul>		Conservation and a second second second second		
<ul> <li>3 'Where are you going?'</li> <li>4 'Where have you been?'</li> <li>5 'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.</li> <li>DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French?</li> <li>INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.</li> <li>The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether</li> </ul>	1	'Where do you liv	/e?'	
<ul> <li>4 'Where have you been?'</li> <li>5 'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.</li> <li>DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French?</li> <li>INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.</li> <li>The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether</li> </ul>				
<ul> <li>5 'What is the number of your car?'</li> <li>6 'Why are you driving on the right?'</li> <li>With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.</li> <li>DIRECT QUESTION: Do you know Tim? Are you French?</li> <li>INDIRECT QUESTION: He asked me if/whether I knew Tim. She asked if/whether I was French.</li> <li>The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether</li> </ul>				
6       'Why are you driving on the right?'         With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.         DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether				
6       'Why are you driving on the right?'         With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.         DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether				
With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.         DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether				
With indirect yes/no questions we use if or whether. They mean the same.         DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether		5	7 7	
DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?       Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.       She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether				
DIRECT QUESTION:       Do you know Tim?       Are you French?         INDIRECT QUESTION:       He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.       She asked if/whether I was French.         The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether	With i	ndirect ves/no qu	estions we use if or whather They mean	the same
INDIRECT QUESTION:         He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.         She asked if/whether I was French.           The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more questions.         Image: Comparison of the policewoman asked some more q				
The policewoman asked some more questions. Write them in indirect speech with if or whether			Do you know him?	Are you French?
		the second s		
	INDIRE	the second s	He asked me if/whether I knew Tim.	She asked if/whether I was French.
		ECT QUESTION:		
	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	🖒 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
		er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	→ Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a di 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
***************************************	→ Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a di 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was British she asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
5 'Are you listening to me?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2 3 4	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was British she asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
5 'Are you listening to me?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2 3 4 5	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
5 'Are you listening to me?'	Th 1 2 3 4 5 5 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 5 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl iving licence?' riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write rive asked him how old he wa	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married?	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was British is asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>&gt; 'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 1 2 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 3 3	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' 	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>'Are you married?'</li> <li>'Do you have children?'</li> <li>'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 3 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>'Are you married?'</li> <li>'Do you have children?'</li> <li>'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 1 2 3 4 5 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>'Are you married?'</li> <li>'Do you have children?'</li> <li>'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' uestions from a job interview. Write r'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak an	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write ?' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?' my foreign languages?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>&gt; 'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> <li>6 'What exams have you passed?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak au	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' They asked him how old he wa r' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	<b>D</b> Th	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> . 1.
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'		er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> . 1.
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 (Dovou have a driving licence?)	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	<b>Th</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
The job official and the second s	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
the presence of the state of th		ECT QUESTION:		
The you billight and international internation		ECT QUESTION:		
the presence of the state of th		ECT QUESTION:		
		ECT QUESTION:		
ALE VOIL BUILSDY		ECT QUESTION:		
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	d Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	👌 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	🖒 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	🖒 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>b</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>b</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'		er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'		er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 Do you have it with you?	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
4 'Do you always drive with the door open?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
4 'Do you always drive with the door open?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	→ Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a di 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
		er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	<b>D</b> Th	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	🖄 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	D Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	🖄 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
		ECT QUESTION:		
Are voll British Con distance in the was breast.		ECT QUESTION:		
		ECT QUESTION:		
	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
The year studing and the second structure to the secon	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
		ECT QUESTION:		
		ECT QUESTION:		
	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
1 'Is it your car?' She asked him whether	👌 Th	e policewoman	asked some more questions. Write	them in indirect speech with if or whether.
	🖄 Th	e policewoman 'Are you British?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
2 'Do you have a driving licence?'	<b>b</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>b</b>	er QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?'	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
3 'Do you have it with you?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
4 'Do you always drive with the door open?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
4 'Do you always drive with the door open?'	<b>Th</b> 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	<b>Th</b> 1 2	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' S 'Do you have a di	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl She asked him whether riving licence?	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
	→ Th 1 2 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was British she asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
5 'Are you listening to me?'	Th 1 2 3 4	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' riving vou?' rive with the door open?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married?	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was British is asked him whether	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 3 3	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' they asked him how old he wa r' dren?' worked before?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 3 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 3 3	ECT QUESTION: e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you listening ese are some q 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>'Are you married?'</li> <li>'Do you have children?'</li> <li>'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak an	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rith you?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' uestions from a job interview. Write r'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak an	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write ?' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?' my foreign languages?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 Th 6 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak an	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl ishe asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write ?' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?' my foreign languages?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .
<ul> <li>5 'Are you listening to me?'</li> <li>These are some questions from a job interview. Write them in indirect speech.</li> <li>&gt; 'How old are you?'They asked him how old he was.</li> <li>1 'Are you married?'</li> <li>2 'Do you have children?'</li> <li>3 'Where have you worked before?'</li> <li>4 'Why do you want to change your job?'</li> <li>5 'Can you speak any foreign languages?'</li> </ul>	Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 1 2 3 4 5 Th 5 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 1 2 3 4 5 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7 7	e policewoman 'Are you British?' 'Is it your car?' 'Do you have a du 'Do you have it w 'Do you always d 'Are you listening ese are some q 'How old are you 'Are you married? 'Do you have chil 'Where have you 'Why do you wan 'Can you speak au	asked some more questions. Write She asked him if he was Britisl she asked him whether riving licence?' rive with the door open?' to me?' uestions from a job interview. Write r' They asked him how old he wa r' dren?' worked before?' it to change your job?'	them in indirect speech with <i>if</i> or <i>whether</i> .

# present reporting verbs She says she comes from London.



### After present verbs (for example she says, I think) we don't change the tenses.

'Well, yes, I come from London.' 'Funny – you have a Scottish accent.' DIRECT OUESTION: She says she comes from London, but I think she has a Scottish accent. **INDIRECT QUESTION:** 

### Complete the indirect speech sentences.

•	'l'm Irish.'	He says he's Irish.
•	'Where is Peter?'	She wants to know . Where Peter is.
	'Did John phone?'	I don't know . if John phoned.
1	'We live in Greece.'	They say
2	'l went to Belfast yesterday.'	She says
3	'l've been ill.'	He says
4	'It's going to rain.'	She thinks
5	'l'll ask my sister.'	She says
6	'We're going to be rich.'	They believe
7	'Is lunch ready?'	He wants to know
8	'Where did I put my keys?'	l don't remember
9	'I'm getting a cold.'	l think
10	'This is the right answer.'	l know

### We can ask questions politely by saying Do you know ...? or Can you tell me ...? + indirect question. Is he at home? ---- Can you tell me if he's at home?

Where does she live? — Do you know where she lives?

### Rewrite the questions.

•	What does this word mean?	Do you know
•	Is there a lesson today?	Can you tell me . if there's a lesson today?
1	Where can I buy tickets?	Can you
2	How much does it cost?	Do
3	Has John phoned?	Can
4	Must I pay now?	Can
5	Does Maria like steak?	Can
6	Where did I park the car?	Do

### We can also use indirect questions in answers.

I can't remember if he's married. Sorry, I don't know where she lives.

### Don't give the answers! But write sentences beginning I know, I don't know, I'd like to know, I don't want to know, I don't care or I can't remember.

	Who built the Eiffel Tower? Know who built the Eiffel Tower.
1	What languages do Irish people speak?
2	What do elephants eat?
3	Does the British Museum open on Christmas Day?
4	Was King William II a tall man?
5	Do birds dream?

# here and now ----- there and then





When we tell people what somebody said, we may have to **change** words like *here, this, today* and *now*. This is because the **place and time have changed** since the words were spoken.

BILL IN IRELAND IN DECEMBER	JOE IN LONDON IN MARCH
I like it <b>here</b> .	Bill said he liked it there / in Ireland.
I'm going fishing this week.	He said he was going fishing that week.
I'm not working today.	He said he wasn't working that day.
What do you want to do now?	He asked what I wanted to do then/next.

Match the direct and indirect speech expressions.

DIRECT SPEECH: 'here and now' words					INDIRECT SPEECH: 'there and then' words						
0	here	5	today	A	that day	F	the next day				
1	now	6	tonight	В	that night	G	there				
2	this	7	last week	С	that	Н	the week before				
3	tomorrow	8	next week	D	the day before	1	then				
4	yesterday			E	the next week						

A friend of yours said these sentences a month ago in another country. Now you are telling somebody what she said.

Complete the sentences	with the	correct'there	and then'	words.

•	'l'm not happy here.'	She said she wasn't happy there.
1	'I hate this place.'	She said she hated
2	'l left home last week.'	She said she had left home
3	'l wrote to my father yesterday.'	She said she had written to her father
4	'Are you leaving today?'	She asked me if I was leaving
5	'Where will you be tonight?'	She asked where I would be
6	'l'll phone you tomorrow.'	She said she would phone me

Another friend of yours said these sentences two weeks ago in another town. Now you are telling somebody what he said. Write the sentences with the correct tenses and 'there and then' words.

•	'I'm really happy here.' He said he was really happy there.
	'I love this place.'
2	'l saw a great film yesterday.'
3	'I'm going to another party tonight.'
4	'Do you want to play tennis tomorrow?'
5	'My girlfriend will be here next week.'

# infinitives She told me to get out.

RECT SPEECH	INDIRECT SPEECH	
ease close the door.'	She asked me to close the door.	
ould you phone Angela?'	I asked John to phone Angela.	
et out!'	She told me to get out.	
on't worry.'	The doctor always tells her not to worry	
White most in divest speed		
Write past indirect speec		
MARK Peter, could you c Mark asked Peter to	lose the window? (ask) close the window.	
THE TEACHER: Andrew, d The teacher told Andrew	on't talk so loud. ( <i>tell</i> ) ew not to talk so loud.	
1 DAVE: Sandra, please giv	re me your phone number. ( <i>ask</i> )	
2 THE BOSS: James, I'd like	you to work late. ( <i>tell</i> )	
3 JUDY: Kim, please don't		
4 MR SANDERS: Fred, pleas	e don't smoke in my car. ( <i>ask</i> )	
••••••		
5 THE GENERAL: Colonel W	/alker, take 100 men and cross the river. ( <i>tell</i> )	
6 ANNA: Polly, you mustn'	t study so hard. ( <i>tell</i> )	
Joe left home for univers	ity. His family gave him	(WORK) (GET A LOT
lots of advice. Look at the		(HARD.) OF ENERCISE.)
the sentences.	picture and complete	DON'T GO TO BED
<ul> <li>His mother told him t</li> </ul>	o write	LATE. TO SRU
	nim not to forget. to brush his teeth.	DON'T GO
5		PARTIES DON'T PLAY
	every day.	WRITE EVERY
2 His mother	clean.	KEEP YOUR STATES THE
	hard.	ROOM CLEAN.
4 His sister	parties.	(CHANGE YOUR)
5 His brother	exercise.	DAY. ME EVES DAY.
6 His mother	every day.	FFFF & C I - Fut
7 His father	late.	
8 His brother	with money.	
9 His sister	for money.	
0 His grandmother	properly.	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	the state of the s	
<mark>e can use infinitives after <i>how</i> on't know <b>how to cook</b> fish.</mark>		nen to pay.
OFFERIOW HOW LOCOUK IISH.	She usked the what to write. Tell the Wi	ici i o puy.

2 I don't know how to .....

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

1 I know how to .....

# indirect speech: more practice

	Ind	direct questions. Yesterday morning Peter asked his mother hundreds of questions.
	He	ere are some of them. Report them using indirect speech.
		'Why do cats have tails?' He asked her why cats had tails.
		"Will I get all your money when you die?" He asked her if he would get all her money when she died.
	1	'Can I have ice cream for breakfast?'
	2	'Why do the stars only come out at night?'
	3	'Why does Daddy have to work?'
	4	'Where is God?'
	5	'Will I be taller than you one day?'
	6	'Do you believe in Father Christmas?'
	12	
	7	'Is Scotland in London?'
	8	'When will I be rich?'
	9	'Why don't French people speak English?'
	-	
1	0	'How big is the universe?'
£3	In	finitives. Yesterday morning Peter's mother told him to do hundreds of things.
	He	ere are some of them. Report them using "She told him".
		Say 'Please'. She told him to say 'Please'.
	•	Don't ask so many questions. She told him not to ask so many questions.
	1	Wash your hands before breakfast.
	2	Don't eat with your mouth open.
	3	Eat everything on your plate.
	4	Don't talk with your mouth full.
	5	Make your bed.
	6	Clean your room.
	7	Polish your shoes.
	8	Put on a clean shirt.
	9	Don't shout at your sister.
1	0	Don't be late for school.
6)		hat to etc. Write sentences beginning John doesn't know.
		'What should I tell Ann?' John doesn't know what to tell Ann.
	1	'How do I phone New York?'
	2	'Where do I pay?'
	3	'When do I start work?'
	4	'How do I switch the computer on?'
	5	'Where shall I put my coat?'
	6	'How much must I pay?'
	7	'What should I study?'

### Grammar in a text. Read the letter and then complete the report.

### Dear all,

Sorry I haven't written for a few weeks. I've been too busy. I'm having a great time; I'm going to parties every night. I'm doing a bit of work too. We had an exam last week. I hope I'll get good marks.

I only have one shirt - I've lost the others. Mum, can you buy me six more? And I can't find my raincoat. Is it at home?

My room here isn't very nice – I'll have to look for a better one. And the food here in college isn't much good, so I'm living on hamburgers. I've spent nearly all my money. Dad, can you send some more?

Can you give me Aunt Ellen's address? And I haven't heard from Sarah. Where is she living? And does Jasper want to come and spend two or three days down here with me?

That's all for now. Love to everybody.

100

In his letter Joe . said
It was because he 1his family that he
3 some work too. He said he
5 an exam 6 week
7 get good marks.
Joe 8 one shirt, because he
10 the others. He asked his mother 11 him six more.
And he asked 12 at home.
His room 14 have to look
for a better one. And because of the bad college food he 16 on hamburgers.
He said he 17 nearly all his money, and asked his father 18
him some more. Joe also asked his family 19 him his Aunt Ellen's address.
And he 20 from Sarah, and asked
22 she 23
At the end of the letter, Joe asked 24 to go

and spend a few days with him.

Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences beginning "We don't know what/where/when/how" + infinitive. Write some of them. (Note that why + infinitive is very unusual.)

1	
2	
3	
4	

100

# indirect speech: revision test

### Put in said or told.

- 1 The newspaper ..... it would snow at the weekend.
- 2 Everybody ..... me I would pass the exam, but I didn't.
- 3 I ..... the driver I knew the way.
- 4 My father ..... he was feeling tired because of working at weekends.
- 5 Everybody ...... Emma looked ill, but she was fine.
- 6 Luke ..... the doctor he had a lot of trouble sleeping.
- 7 1 ..... my mother I wasn't coming home before Saturday.
- 8 Nobody ..... me that the school was closed.
- 9 Rachel ..... that she would be back by one o'clock.
- 10 You never ..... me that you loved me.

### Correct (✓) or not (X)?

- I knew that I will see her again. .....
- Andrew told me he hated his brother's wife. .....
- 1 Leo phoned me on Sunday and said he went to a great party yesterday. .....
- 2 I said that I was sorry, but that I'm really tired. .....
- 3 I knew I would forget her name in a few days. .....
- 4 You told me I like the new car. .....
- 5 Jack said he had to phone Karl that evening. .....
- 6 Lucy said that nobody likes her. .....
- 7 I thought the TV didn't work, but I was wrong. .....
- 8 Maggie said she would see me soon, but I never saw her again. .....
- 9 I saw Carola in January and she told me I was unhappy just now. .....
- 10 Shakespeare told his wife that you don't understand my work. .....

### Nine of sentences 1–15 have mistakes. Find them and correct them.

- Do you remember what time the play starts? Correct
- John asked how did I feel. how I felt
- 1 lasked what the time was.
- 2 I didn't know if I was late.
- 3 A man asked me where was the post office.
- 4 Do you know when is arriving Jane? .....
- 5 I didn't know whether I was late.
- 6 Do you know where all those people work? .....
- 7 Can you say me what the time is? .....
- 8 The policeman asked me where I am going. .....
- 9 The children wanted to know was I English. .....
- 10 lasked him what he wanted?
- 11 I don't know what does this word mean. .....
- 12 Nobody understood what Sophie wants. .....
- 13 I'd like to know what you are thinking. .....
- 14 Please tell me what you want. .....
- 15 I don't know why did she say that.

# **SECTION 21** prepositions

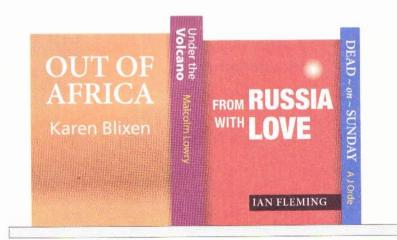
### grammar summary

abov	e acro	SS	against	a	long	at	behind	beti	ween	by	down	during
for	from	in	in front	of	into	nea	r off	on	oppo	osite	out of	over
past	round	1	through	to	unde	er u	until/till	up				

Some prepositions are difficult, because they have more than one meaning. (A preposition in one language often has several different translations into another language.)

In this section, we explain and practise the most important prepositions: those that we use to talk about time, place and movement.

- → For since and for, see page 65.
- → For the place of prepositions in questions, see page 111; with relative pronouns, see page 258.
- → For -ing forms after prepositions, see page 132.
- → For verbs followed by prepositions, see page 141.
- → For lists of common expressions with prepositions, see pages 305–306.





# at, in and on (time)

### We use at with clock times.

I'll see you at 4.15. The plane leaves at six. Call me at lunchtime.

But we say What time ...?, NOT USUALLY At what time ...?

What time is the film?

We use on with days, dates and expressions like Monday morning and Friday afternoon.

I'll be at home **on Tuesday**. We get up late **on Sundays**. The meeting's **on June 23rd**. I'm always sleepy **on Monday mornings**. I had to work **on Christmas Day**.

### Put in at or on.

- 1 What are you doing ..... Saturday?
- 2 Can you wake me ..... 6.30?
- 3 The classes start ..... September 8th.
- 4 I'll be in late ..... Tuesday morning.
- 6 She arrived ..... Easter Monday.





William Shakespeare

1564-1616

- 7 My job starts ..... April 17th.
- 9 I'll be home ..... 5.00.
- 10 I'll see you ..... Friday evening.
- 11 She always phones ..... midnight.
- 12 I was born ..... March-21st.

### We say in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening, but at night. She was born at 6.16 in the morning. I work best in the evening. This street is very quiet at night.

We use in with weeks, seasons, months, years and centuries.

We're going to Denmark **in the first week** of May. I always get unhappy **in the winter**. My birthday's **in March**. Shakespeare died **in 1616**. There were terrible wars **in the 17th century**.

We say *at Christmas, at Easter* and *at the weekend*. (American English *on the weekend*)

What are you doing at the weekend? Did you go away at Christmas?

### Put in *in, at* or *on*.

- 1 We went to Wales ..... the weekend.
- 2 I go skiing ..... February.
- 3 She finished school ...... 2006.
- 4 My mother comes to stay ..... Christmas.
- 5 | don't like driving ..... night.
- 6 Our garden is beautiful ..... the spring.
- 7 | stop work ...... 5.00 ..... the afternoon.
- 8 I'll finish university ...... June.
- 9 I last saw her ..... 1998.

- 10 Carola was born ........... 8.25 ........... the
- evening ...... Thursday 17th April 2000.
- 11 I'm never hungry ..... the morning.12 It gets hot here ..... the summer.
- 13 I'm going to Spain ...... Easter.
- 14 The conference is ...... the last week of May.
- 15 My grandfather was born ..... the 19th century.

# We don't use prepositions before common expressions with this, next, last and every.What are you doing this afternoon?Goodbye. See you next week.Theo was here last Tuesday.We go on holiday to the same place every year.

### Today is Wednesday March 16th 2011. Rewrite the sentences using *this, next, last* and *every*.

	I met her in 2010. I met her last year
1	I'll see you on March 23rd.
2	It rained non-stop from March 7th to March 13th.
3	Business was bad in February 2011.
4	Shall we go out on March 16th in the evening?
5	We're going to America in April 2011
6	Ann had a car crash on March 9th.
7	I'm going to change my job in 2012.
8	My holiday is in August 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015 etc.
9	I've spent too much money already in March.
10	The new school will be open in March 2012.

### To say how long it takes to finish something, we use in.

They built our house in three months. Your soup will be ready in ten minutes.

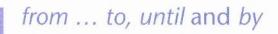
### My Australian friend Sheila is saving money because she wants to buy a sports car. She is saving \$1 a day, starting tomorrow.

- When will she have \$2 in her savings account? In two days.
- 1 When will she have \$5?
- 2 When will she have \$7? In a .....
- 3 When will she have \$14?
- 4 When will she have \$30? .....
- 5 When will she have \$365? .....
- 6 The car costs \$36,500. When will she have it?

GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: C	lates	
WEWRITE	WE SAY	
1999	nineteen ninety-nine	
17(th) March 2011	the seventeenth of March, two thousand and eleven	
OR March 17(th) 2011	March the seventeenth, two thousand and eleven	
OR 17.3.(20)11		
OR 17/3/(20)11		
American English: 3.17.2011	March (the) seventeenth, two thousand (and) eleven	

### Say these dates:

1	21.3.1999	2 14 February 1960	3 July 28 1846	4 6/5/03	5 May 9 1984	6 17 December 2012
---	-----------	--------------------	----------------	----------	--------------	--------------------



We use <i>till</i> (informal) or <i>until</i> to say when an action or situation ends.
I'll be in London <b>till</b> Thursday. We played football <b>until</b> 5 o'clock.
Complete the sentences with <i>until</i> or <i>till</i> and expressions from the box.
the age of 14 July lunchtime six o'clock in the morning 🗸 Saturday the end
<ul> <li>It was a great party. We danceduntil six o'clock in the morning.</li> <li>I'm going to have a sandwich now. I can't wait</li></ul>
We can give the beginning and end of an action or situation with from to/until/till.
I worked from 8.00 to 6.00 yesterday. We'll be away from July 16 until/till August 4.
<ul> <li>Make sentences about John's Sunday morning with to, till or until.</li> <li>read paper 7.30 - 8.00</li> <li>OR He read the paper from 7.30 until/till 8.00.</li> </ul>
<ol> <li>washed car 8.00 - 9.00</li> <li>talked to woman next door 9.00 - 9.15</li> </ol>
<ul> <li>3 played tennis 10.00 - 11.00</li> <li>4 talked to friends 11.00 - 11.30</li> <li>5 went for a walk 11.30 - 12.45</li> </ul>
Write two sentences with from to/till/until about things you did yesterday.  1 2
We use by (= 'not later than') to say that something happens at or before a certain moment.
UNTIL BY
You can keep the car <b>until Sunday</b> . You really must bring it back <b>by 12.00 on Sunday</b> .
NOW SUNDAY FRI. SAT. SUN 11.00. SUN 12.00. SUN 1.00
<ul> <li>Put in by or until.</li> <li>1 This book must go back to the library Tuesday.</li> <li>2 The film goes on</li></ul>
6 Can you wait for my answer tonight?

## for, during and while

### For + period tells you how long. During tells you when.

The journey lasted for three days. There was a rainstorm during the night. I slept for 20 minutes during the lesson.

### Put in for or during.

- 1 I lived in Mexico ..... six years.
- 2 I got a headache ..... the examination.
- 3 We visited Kyoto ..... our holiday in Japan.
- 4 The electricity went off ...... two hours ..... the afternoon.
- 5 Alex and his wife met ..... the war.
- 6 Could I talk to you ..... a few minutes?
- 7 I usually get a lot of phone calls ..... the morning.
- 8 She and her boyfriend have been together ...... a long time.

### During is a preposition: we use during + noun.

While is a conjunction: we use while + subject + verb (often past progressive - see page 52).

They got into the house during the night.They got into the house while I was asleep.He got ill during the journey.He got ill while he was travelling.

### Change the expressions.

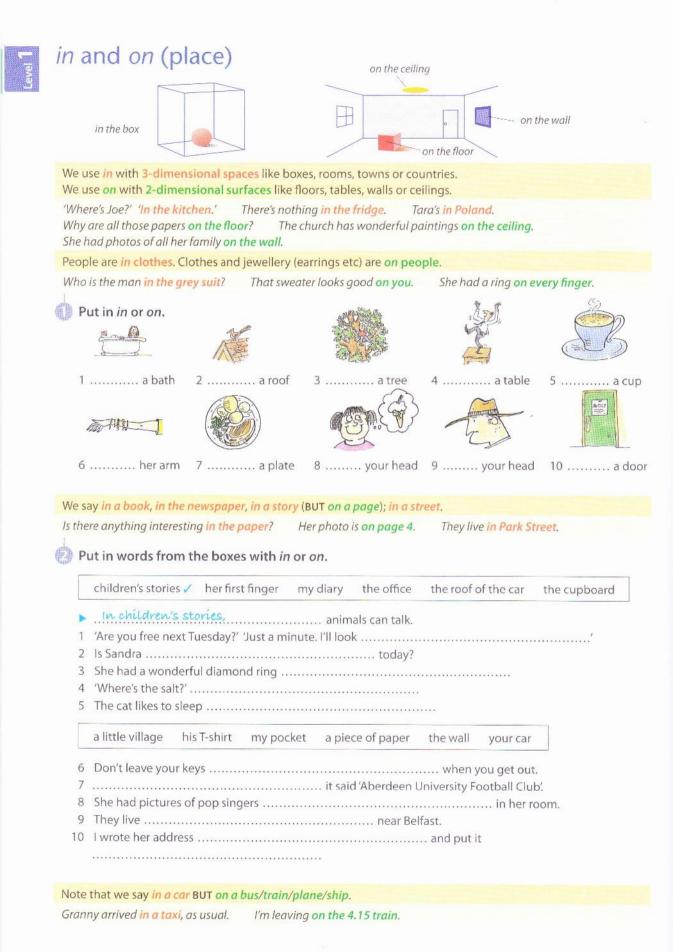
- while I was travelling (journey) during the journey
- 1 during the game (*they / play*) .....
- 2 while we were listening (*lesson*) .....
- 3 while they were fighting (*war*) .....
- 4 during her lesson (she / teach) .....
- 5 during his speech (*he / speak*) .....
- 6 during the conversation (they / talk)
- 7 while she was in hospital (*illness*) .....
- 8 during the snowstorm (it / snow)

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: useful expressions with for

### Look at the expressions in the box, and choose suitable ones to complete the sentences. Different answers are possible.

for a moment for a minute or two for a few minutes for an hour or so (= 'about an hour') for a couple of hours for a long time for ages for years and years for ever for life

- 1 They waited ....., but the bus didn't come.
- 2 | will love you .....
- 3 Could I talk to you .....?
- 4 I played tennis ..... and then went home.
- 5 I went to sleep ..... during the opera.
- 6 She usually stops work at 11 o'clock ..... and has a cup of coffee.
- 7 I often watch TV ..... before I go to bed.
- 8 They put him in prison .....



## at (place)



I'll meet you at the cinema.

Operator	TE	GW
LONDON Paddington	1743	1803
Ealing Broadway	The store	
Slough	1800	1822
Maidenhead		18
Twyford	irer	
Reading dep	1820	1838
Tilehurst	in the second second	
Pangbourne	1.444	***
Goring & Streatley	***	
Wallingford 🛲	1995	
Cholsey		1
Didcot Parkway arr	1835	153

The train stops at Slough, Reading and Didcot.

### We often use at to show where something happens - for example, with meeting places or points on a journey.

I'll see you this evening at Sarah's house. You have to change planes at Karachi.

I saw Linda waiting at the bus stop. Turn left at the next corner.

We often use at with words for things that people do, or the places where they do them.

at a football match at breakfast, lunch etc at a restaurant at work at the office at the theatre at the cinema at the station at a party at (the) college/university

OK

### Put in words from the box with at.

a Chinese restaurant a theatre Birmingham breakfast the cinema the crossroads the hotel bar the party the station the traffic lights 
vert work

- Paul crashed his car because he didn't stop ... at the traffic lights.
- 1 Are there any good films ..... this week?
- 2 Her train was terribly late I spent hours waiting .....
- 3 Will you be ..... at Mike's house on Saturday?
- 4 We had a really good meal ..... in Park Street last night.
- 5 I saw my first Shakespeare play ..... in a small town in Ireland.
- 6 The boss doesn't let us take personal phone calls .....
- 7 Helen never says anything ..... because she's still asleep.
- 8 There isn't a direct train. You change .....
- 9 I'll meet you downstairs ..... at 6.00.
- 10 'Where's the car park?' 'Turn right .....

We often use at with the top, the bottom, the side, the beginning and the end.

My room's at the top of the house. Begin at the beginning.

### Put in at the top, at the bottom etc.

- 1 Their house is down ..... of the hill.
- 2 I never have any money ..... of the month.
- 3 I stopped for a minute ...... of the stairs to have a rest.
- 4 The best fruit is always ..... of the tree, where you can't get it.
- 5 Maria wasn't there ..... of the lesson; she came in late.

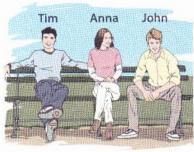
Sometimes *in* and *at* are **both possible**. We prefer *at* when we are thinking about the activity – what we do in the place – and *in* when we think about the place itself.

We had lunch at the station restaurant. It was very hot in the big dining room.

 $\rightarrow$  For expressions with no article like *at breakfast*, *at work*, see page 162.

## other prepositions of place

above against behind between by in front of near opposite under







Anna is sitting between Tim and John.

Come and sit **by** me.

We camped by the lake.



Montreal is in eastern Canada, near Ottawa.



I left my bicycle **against** the shop window.



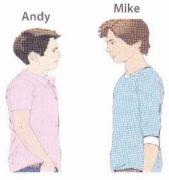
Joe's car is parked **in front of** our house. There's a bus stop **opposite** our house.



The dog is hiding **under** the table.



Lucy is in front of Beth. Beth is behind Lucy.



Andy is **opposite** Mike.



The plane is flying **above** the clouds.

### Choose the correct prepositions.

- 1 There was a big bird flying high up ..... the trees. (above, against, opposite)
- 2 They live in a beautiful old house ...... a river. (above, by, under)
- 3 There's a big clock ...... the door of the station. (above, against, between)
- 4 I sat down ...... Marion and looked into her eyes. (above, behind, by)
- 5 You can park your car ..... the house. (against, behind, between)
- 6 I'll meet you at the station ..... the clock. (against, between, under)
- 7 The door wouldn't stay shut, so I put a chair ..... it. (above, against, near)

### Put in the correct prepositions.

- 1 She put the money at the bottom of her suitcase, ...... her clothes.
- 2 Our house is ...... a bank and a supermarket, and just ..... the police station.
- 3 Please don't put your bicycle ..... our wall.
- 4 Sorry we're late we were driving ...... a slow bus all the way.
- 5 I work in a small town ..... Birmingham.
- 6 In the theatre I couldn't see anything because there was a very tall man ..... me.
- 7 We usually have lunch in a little café ..... the school, about five minutes' walk away.

### Look at the picture and choose the correct prepositions.

- above/ near the travel agent
- 1 opposite / in front of the National Bank
- 2 against / between the two women
- 3 above / behind the child
- 4 near / by the travel agent

- 5 in front of / behind the restaurant
- 6 opposite / under the car
- 7 against / opposite the window
- 8 behind / between the banks
- 9 by / opposite the supermarket



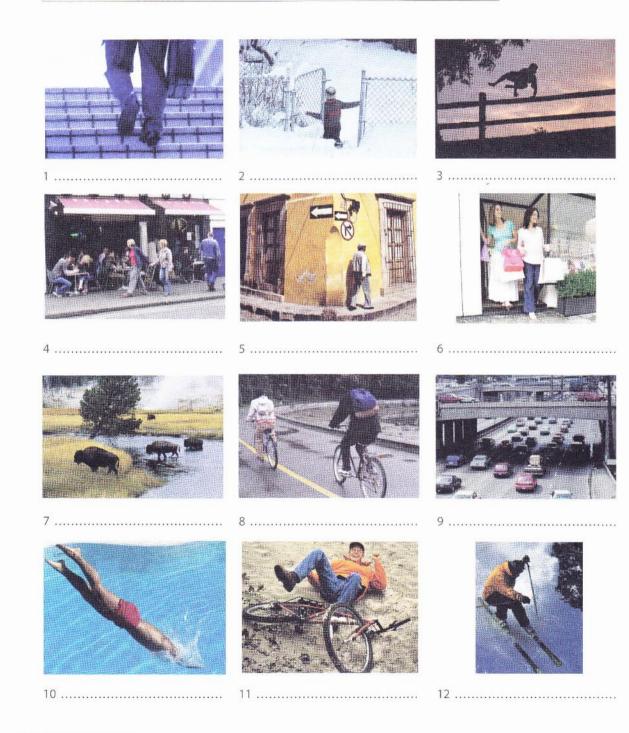
In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

## prepositions of movement

across along down into off over out of past round through under up

### Write the expressions under the correct photos. Use a dictionary if necessary.

across the river along the yellow line down the mountain into the water off the bike over the fence out of the shop past the café round the corner through the gate under the bridge up the steps



### **282 PREPOSITIONS**

### Oross out the words that are wrong.

- across the road / the church
- 1 along the corner / the road
- 2 up the mountain / the table
- 3 down the church / the stairs
- 4 over the corner / the wall
- 5 into the bank / the bridge
- 6 round the corner / the road

- 7 through the door / the railway line
- 8 off the police station / the table
- 9 out of the church / the stairs
- 10 under the bridge / the people
- 11 past the floor / the bank
- 12 across the river / the wall
- Ochoose the correct prepositions and put them in the correct places.

  - 1 Mrs Andrews got ...... the taxi and ran ...... Oxford Street. (along, round, out of, over)
  - 2 Alice walked ..... the steps to the river and ..... the bridge. (*along, down, through, over*)
  - 3 He walked slowly ...... the road for a few minutes, then he stopped and went ...... a small door ...... a garden. (*across, along, into, through*)
  - 4 Mandy went ..... the stairs and ..... her office, took a letter ..... the table and started to read it. (*into, off, out of, over, up*)
  - 5 Go ..... the supermarket, ..... the railway bridge, ..... the first corner, and the police station is on your right. (*along, down, past, round, under*)
  - 6 As soon as I got ..... the boat I went straight ..... the town centre to do some shopping. (*into, off, out of, past, through*)
  - 7 I got ...... bed, walked ..... the bedroom, and looked ..... the window. It was raining again. (*across, into, out of, out of, under*)
  - 8 It takes three hours to walk ..... the mountain, but you can get ..... it in two. (across, down, over, round, up)

We use to for movement, and at or in for position - where somebody/something is (see pages 278-279).

I went to the bus stop to meet Helen. I waited at the bus stop for twenty minutes.

We can use from ... with to ...

He took five days to cycle from London to Edinburgh.

We get to a place, but we arrive at a place, or arrive in a big place (NOT arrive to).

It took three hours to **get to** Cambridge. I was tired when I **arrived at** the station. We **arrived in** London very early in the morning.

### Put in from, to, at or in.

- 1 Let's go ..... the country this weekend.
- 2 She spends hours ..... the bathroom.
- 3 Shall we drive ..... Scotland or go by train?
- 4 We flew directly ..... Berlin ..... Tokyo.
- 5 What time do we arrive ..... Paris?
- 6 After six days' walking, they got ..... a river.
- 7 I saw Annie standing ..... the bus stop.
- 8 When we arrived ..... her house she had already left.
- 9 Are there tigers ..... Africa?
- 10 It takes me about half an hour to get ...... work.

Write a few sentences about a journey that you have made, using from, to, at and in.

NOTE: we get into and out of cars BUT on(to) and off buses/trains/planes/ships.

In some answers, both contracted forms (for example *I'm*, *don't*) and full forms (for example *I am*, *do not*) are possible. Normally both are correct.

### PREPOSITIONS 283

Level |

### prepositions: more practice

### Time. Circle the correct prepositions.

- 1 He phoned on / in Friday.
- 2 The party is at / on June 18th.
- 3 Are you at home at / on Christmas?
- 4 I'll be here during / for two months.
- 5 We get up late in / on Sunday mornings.
- 6 I often watch TV in / at night.
- 7 The film ends on / at 9.45.
- 8 You can't learn English in / by a month.

- 9 Hannah's birthday is on / in May.
- 10 What are you doing on / at Thursday?
- 11 Bring my bike back until / by Friday.
- 12 I'll work for / until 8.00 this evening.
- 13 I couldn't sleep for / during the night.
- 14 Stay here while / during | go shopping.
- 15 I play tennis at / in the weekend.

1	Expressions without prepositions. Today is Saturday August 13th 2011.
	Rewrite the expressions in <i>italics</i> using this, next, last and every.

۲	I finished university in 2010. Last year
1	Joanne had a party on Saturday August 6th
2	I'm going to buy a new car in 2012.
3	My holiday is in September 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014 etc.
4	I've already bought too many clothes in August.
5	It was really hot from August 1st to August 7th
6	Shall we go and see a film on August 14th in the evening?
7	I'll be away on Saturday August 20th
8	My brother was ill in July 2011.
9	We're going camping in September 2011
10	The new station will be ready in August 2012.

### Movement. Cross out the wrong words.

- across the river / the bank
- 1 along the church / the road
- 2 down the police station / the mountain
- 3 into the church / the table
- 4 off the corner / the table
- 5 out of the church / the wall

- 6 up the mountain / the floor
- 7 over the door / the wall
- 8 past the floor / the church
- 9 round the corner / the railway line
- 10 through the door / the table

### Place and movement. Put in suitable prepositions.

- 1 C comes ..... B and D in the alphabet.
- 2 I couldn't see the plane, because it was high ..... the clouds.
- 3 I had to wait a long time at the post office, because the woman ..... me wanted a lot of different things.
- 4 There's a garage on the other side of the street just ..... our house.
- 5 Please don't put bicycles ..... the shop window.
- 6 He turned round and walked away ..... the trees.
- 7 We cycled ...... a little road ..... the river for about five kilometres.
- 8 Ann came ..... the church and walked slowly ..... the square.
- 9 I got ..... the bus and went ..... the bank.
- 10 'Where's the swimming pool?' 'Drive ...... the police station, ..... the railway bridge and ..... the corner, and you'll see it on your left.'

### Place and movement. Write the opposites.

### 

- 2 off the bus .....
- 3 down the stairs
- 4 over the bridge .....
- 5 out of the river .....

### Dates. Write these dates as you would say them.

- 2006 two thousand and six
   17th March the seventeenth of March OR. March the seventeenth
- 1 23rd April .....
- 2 1st September .....
- 3 5th August, 2010 .....
- 4 March 2, 1980 .....

- 6 in front of the door
  7 at the top of the stairs
  8 up the mountain
  9 behind the police station
  10 at the beginning
- 5 10.1.02
  6 3/4/08
  7 October 4th
  8 21st March, 1936
  9 Oct 22, 2006
  10 1/1/01

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: duration. Put in suitable expressions from the box.

### (Different answers are possible.)

for a couple of hours I feel as if I've known you ...for ever. 1 I need to speak to you ..... for a few minutes 2 The terrorists were sent to prison ..... for a long time 3 We haven't seen Peter ..... 4 I'm going to rest ..... for a moment 5 It's been raining ..... for an hour or so 6 | usually play tennis ...... on Sundays. for ever 7 We've lived in the same house ..... 8 Can you help me .....? for life 9 She went to sleep on the train just ..... for years and years 10 I'm going out into the garden .....

### 🕝 Grammar in a text. Choose the correct prepositions.

### Dear Louise

I'm glad you can come 1 on / in Friday. You asked how to get to our house. It's very easy. Get 2 in / on a No. 16 bus 3 opposite / along the police station, and get 4 off / out at the fourth stop just 5 above / by the new supermarket. Then walk 6 off / along Boston Street for about 300 metres, turn right 7 at / on the traffic lights, keep straight on 8 along / under the railway bridge, go 9 through / up the hill past the church, 10 round / across the corner by the pub, then 11 down / off the hill and 12 under / across the main road. That takes you into South Park. Walk 13 along / through the park and 14 out of / off the other side, turn left 15 round / in front of the school, and you'll find yourself 16 on / in Green Road. Our house is the fourth on the left, just 17 out of / by the old railway station. You can't miss it. Love, Judy.

## Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

"across the river"	"along the road"	"out of the church"	"off the table"	"up the mountain"
"over the wall"	"round the corner"			

------

### PREPOSITIONS 285

### prepositions: revision test

Put in the correct words. 1 Let's go to Cardiff ...... Tuesday. (in, at, while, on) 2 The bridge ...... the river is closed. (along, over, up, through) 3 The next meeting is ..... December 8th. (on, at, in, by) 4 What do you usually do ..... the weekend? (on, at, in, by) 5 Max fell ...... his bike and broke his leg. (down, on, out of, off) 6 I need your answer ..... (in, by, at, until) Friday. 7 I'm not free now, but I can talk to you ...... half an hour. (in, for, by, until) 8 I slept ..... two hours this afternoon. (in, by, for, during) 9 The guickest way to our house is ..... the park. (along, through, in, over) 10 Let's go for a walk ..... the sun's shining. (while, during, for, along) Put in suitable prepositions. (More than one may be possible.) 1 I'm going to put this picture ..... my bedroom wall. 2 I'll be away ...... June 1st ...... July 15th. 3 Olivia lived in Cairo ..... three years. 4 | didn't work very hard ..... my time at university. 5 It says ...... the newspaper that there will be snow. 6 Does this bus stop ..... the railway station? 7 Your father's photo is ..... page 16. 8 We're leaving ..... the 10.40 train. 9 Lalways wear this ring ..... my little finger. 10 Write your name ..... the top of the page. 11 Can you clean this suit ...... 4 o'clock? 12 A lot of people travel for a year ..... school and university. 13 Pete met his girlfriend .....a party. 14 I'll be ready to go ..... ten minutes. 15 I like walking ..... the river. All these sentences are wrong. Correct the mistakes. I'll see you at Tuesday. 1 She talked non-stop during three hours. 2 Please let me have all the information until Saturday. 3 Anna walked slowly out the room and down the stairs. 4 There's a pub on the other side of the road in front of our house. 5 Do you think you can swim through this river? 6 There's a strange insect in the ceiling. 7 It took a long time to drive over the town to the church. 8 I'll see you on next Monday.

- 9 Did you stay at home on Christmas? .....
- 10 We have to get down the bus at the next stop.

## **SECTION 22** spoken grammar

### grammar summary

We often leave words out if the meaning is clear. This is particularly common in spoken English.

It often happens after auxiliary verbs.

She said she would phone, but she didn't. (= '... she didn't phone.')

I'll finish the work as soon as I can. (= '... as soon as I can finish the work.')

There are several common kinds of **short spoken sentence** made with **subject + auxiliary verb**:

- question tags: You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- short answers: 'Did you see Patrick?' 'No, I didn't.'
- reply questions: 'I've got a headache.' 'Have you? I am sorry.'
- so do I, nor can I etc: 'I was really cold on that bus.' 'So was I.'

We also often **leave out infinitives** (and other words) **after** *to*. *I've never seen the Taj Mahal, but I'd like to*. (='... I'd like to see the Taj Mahal.')

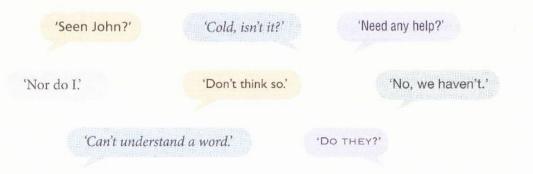
And we may **leave out small words** (pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) **at the beginning of sentences**. *Don't know.* (= 'I don't know.') *Train's late.* (= '**The** train's late.') *Been waiting long*? (= '**Have you** been waiting long?')



'Forgotten your key again, George?'



'It's all coming back to me now. We were married once, weren't we?'



## question tags This music isn't very good, is it?

**Question tags** are short questions that can follow sentences, especially in **spoken English**. We make question tags with **auxiliary verb** (*have, can* etc) or *be* + **pronoun** (*l*, *you* etc). We use question tags to **ask if something is true**, or to **ask people to agree** with us.

You haven't got my keys, **have you?** Louise will be here tomorrow, **won't she?** This music isn't very good, **is it?** That child can run fast, **can't he?** 

Question tags are usually **negative** (**III**) after **affirmative** (**III**) sentences, and **not negative** after **negative** sentences. We **don't** put question tags **after questions**.

It is warm, isn't it? It isn't cold, is it? (BUT NOT Is it cold, isn't it?)

Negative tags are usually contracted (see page 301) – for example isn't it? (NOT USUALLY is it not?) The negative tag for I am is aren't I? (see page 301)

I'm late, aren't l?

### Question tag or nothing (–)? Circle the correct form.

- I'm late , am I? /, aren't I? / ?
- You can't swim (, can you?) , can't you? / -?
- Has Anna phoned , has she? / , hasn't she? / -?
- 1 You'll be here tomorrow , will you?/, won't you?/-?
- 2 The postman hasn't come , has he?/, hasn't he?/-?

- 3 Are you ready, are you?/, aren't you?/-?
- 4 It's dark in here , is it? / , isn't it? / -?
- 5 He can't speak Greek , can he?/, can't he?/-?
- 6 The train's late , is it? / , isn't it? / -?
- 7 The food wasn't bad, was it?/, wasn't it?/-?
- 8 Have you done it , have you / , haven't you?/-?
- 9 I'm too early , amn't l? / , aren't l?/-?

If the sentence has an auxiliary verb or be, we use this in the question tag.

You would like coffee, wouldn't you? I'm not talking too fast, am I?

Sally doesn't eat meat, does she? You aren't angry with me, are you?

### If there is no auxiliary verb, we use do/does/did in the tag.

They went to Spain, didn't they? The lesson starts at 6.00, doesn't it?

Here are some sentences from real conversations. Put in the question tags.

- You're playing football tomorrow, <u>aren't you?</u>
- 1 That's the answer, .....

2 We're seeing Rebecca again tomorrow, .....

- 3 She's a lovely baby, .....
- 4 You'll be OK, ..... Roger?
- 5 Your brother can tell us that, .....
- 6 Isabel likes brown bread, .....
- 7 This house gets hot in summer, .....

Here are some negative sentences. Put in the question tags.

- They weren't at home, ...were they?
- 1 But he's not at school now, .....
- 2 You can't remember anything, .....
- 3 They don't use much electricity, .....
- 4 She doesn't look happy, .....
- 5 Those flowers don't need much water, .....
- 6 That kid hasn't done any work, .....

#### We can use there as a subject in question tags.

There's a letter for me, isn't there? There weren't any problems, were there?

### Put in the question tags.

- 1 There was a phone call for me, .....
- 2 There are six more lessons this year, .....
- 3 There's a meeting this afternoon, .....
- 4 There hasn't been any snow this year, .....
- 5 There weren't many people at the party, .....

### Put in the correct question tags.

- 1 You don't know Alicia, ..... (do you?, don't you?, are you?)
- 2 Polly's looking well, ..... (doesn't she?, isn't she?, is she?)
- 3 It's really cold today, ..... (isn't it?, isn't there, doesn't it?)
- 4 You can't hear what she's saying, ..... (is she?, can you?, can't you?)
- 5 You'd like a drink, ..... (wouldn't you?, don't you?, you would?)
- 6 They don't listen, ..... (are they?, aren't they, do they?)
- 7 Carola's been away, ..... (isn't she?, wasn't she?, hasn't she?)
- 8 I'm at the right address, ...... (am I?, aren't I?, amn't I?)
- 9 There's a problem, ..... (isn't there?, isn't it?, is it?)
- 10 You like chocolate, ...... (like you, aren't you?, don't you?)

### Change these questions into statements with question tags.

۲	Do you work at Smith's? You work at Smith's, dow't you?
1	Have they lived in France? They've
2	Did they all go home early?
3	Did it rain all last week?
4	Does her brother write for the newspapers?
5	Do I need a visa?
6	Would you like a holiday?
7	Was the train late?
8	Did Sarah forget your birthday?
9	Was there a letter for me?
10	Am I in time for lunch?

If a tag asks a real question, we say it with a rising intonation: the music of the voice goes up. If a tag just asks for agreement, we use a falling intonation: the voice goes down.

We're meeting in Oxford, gren't we?

Nice day, isn't it?

### Try to pronounce these tags.

- 1 The lesson begins at twelve, doesn't it?
- 2 Your sister's gone to America, hasn't she?
- 3 Bill's a good singer, isn't he?

- 4 It's cold, isn't it?
- 5 You're from Scotland, aren't you?
- 6 She looks good in red, doesn't she?

## short answers Yes, I have. No, they didn't.

To answer just 'Yes' or 'No' can be <b>impolite</b> .	
We often prefer answers with pronoun (I, you etc) + be or	
The auxiliary verb in the answer is usually the same as the	one in the <b>question</b> .
'Are you ready?' 'Yes, I am.' 'Have you phoned home?' 'Yes, I am.' 'Have you phoned home?' 'Yes, I am.' 'Lave you phoned home?' 'Lave you phoned home?''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''''	
Note that the negative of <i>I am</i> is <i>I'm not</i> .	
'Are you happy?' 'No, <b>I'm not</b> . (NOT N <del>o, Lamn't.</del> )	
Negative () short answers are usually contracted (see pa	an 2011: can't didn't atc
Affirmative (Internet answers are not contracted; we dor	
Write short answers to these questions.	
'Do you like jazz?' Yes, I do.'	5 'Does your brother like sport?' 'No,'
<ul> <li>'Are you coming home?' 'No, I'm not.'</li> </ul>	6 'Do you want tickets?' 'Yes,'
1 'Is it raining?' 'No,'	7 'Would your mother like coffee?'
2 'Has Joe phoned?' 'No,'	'No thanks,'
3 'Do the children understand?' 'Yes,	8 'Was the film interesting?' 'No,'
4 'Is this your coat?' 'No,'	9 'Are you ready?' 'No, I'm afraid'
	9 Are you ready: No, Thi alialu
Give your own personal short answers to these of the second state of the second sta	questions.
Do you like coffee?' Yes, I do. / No. I dow't.	5 'Is your English getting better?'
1 'Are you thinking in English now?'	6 'Have you been to New York?'
2 'Do you live in a town?'	7 'Did you watch TV yesterday?'
3 'Do you speak French?'	8 'Can you swim?'
4 'ls it raining now?'	9 'Are you tired?'
We can use short answers to agree or disagree with thing	s that people say
'It's hot today.' 'Yes, it is.' 'You didn't buy bread.' 'Yes, I d	
If there is <b>no auxiliary verb</b> , we use <b>do/does/did</b> in the sho	rt answer.
'Her hair <mark>looks</mark> nice.' 'Yes, it <mark>does</mark> .'	
A Miles also and a second seco	
Write short answers to agree or disagree.	
1 'You're early.' 'No,'	4 'The lesson starts at 5.00.' 'No,'
2 'lt's cold.' 'Yes,'	5 'Simon didn't phone.' 'Yes,'
3 'She sings really well.' 'Yes,'	6 'He made a mistake.' 'Yes,'
GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things that people	can do
the second s	cando
Give true answers with Yes, I can or No, I can't.	
1 Can you knit?	5 Can you dive?
2 Can you cook?	6 Can you draw?
3 Can you skate?	7 Can you sing?
4 Can you repair cars?	8 Can you ride a horse?
	ME SA MA
	W E J BR ST
148	
knit cook skate repair cars	dive draw sing ride a horse
and cook skate repair cars	and and and another

## reply questions Oh, yes? Did they really?

In conversation, we often ask short questions (auxiliary verb + pronoun) to show interest.

'I've just had a letter from Eric.' 'Have you?' 'Yes. He says he's coming back ...'

These '**reply questions**' are not really questions: they mean 'Oh, yes? That's interesting.' Some more examples:

John's getting married. 'Is he really? Who to?'

'Anna and Peter had a lovely time in Greece.' 'Did they?' 'Yes. They went ...'

We answer negative sentences with negative reply questions.

'I can't see very well with these glasses.' 'Can't you? Maybe you should get new ones.'

### Choose the correct reply questions.

- Your mother hasn't phoned. 'Has she? Hasn't she? I wonder why not.'
- 1 'I've just got married.' 'Have you? / Haven't you? Congratulations.'
- 2 'William had an accident last week' 'Has he? / Did he? Is he OK?'
- 3 'There's a strange bird on the roof.' 'Is it? / Is there? Let me look.'
- 4 'I can't understand this.' 'Can you? / Can't you? Let me help you.'
- 5 'This coffee doesn't taste very nice.' 'Doesn't it? / Does it? I'm sorry.'
- 6 'Your sister's in trouble with the police.' 'Is she? / Isn't she? Oh, dear. Not again!'
- 7 'The children want computers for Christmas.' 'Do they? / Don't they? They think I'm made of money.'
- 8 'The students don't like your lessons.' 'Don't they? / Aren't they? Well, I don't like them either.'

### Put the beginnings and ends together, and put in reply questions.

### GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: showing our feelings

### Complete the sentences with reply questions and expressions from the box. Use a dictionary if necessary. Different answers are possible.

	Congratulations! Good luck! I am sorry. I don't believe it. ✓ Say 'hello' to him/her for me. That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity!
•	'The Swiss have declared war on America.' 'Have they? I don't believe it.'
1	'I've just passed my exams.'
	'I'm seeing Katie next week.'
3	'My job interview is tomorrow.'
4	'Some trees can live for thousands of years.'
5	'Lewis didn't get into university.'
6	'My computer has crashed again.'
7	'l don't feel well.'
8	'Andy and Paula are getting married.'
	'I haven't got enough money to buy food.'

### SPOKEN GRAMMAR 291

## revision of spoken question and answer structures

QUESTION TAGS	SHORT ANSWERS	REPLY QUESTIONS
It is, isn't it?	'Are you?' 'No, I'm not.'	'l'm' 'Are you?'
1 am, aren't l?	'Has she?' 'Yes, she has.'	'He's' 'Has he?'
She has, hasn't she?	'Do they?' 'Yes, they do.'	'They like' 'Do they?'
They like, don't they?	'Are we?' 'No, we aren't.'	'We're' 'Are we?'
We aren't, are we?	'He wasn't' 'No, he wasn't.'	'She wasn't' 'Wasn't she?'
He didn't, did he?	'She didn't' 'Yes, she did.'	'He didn't' 'Didn't he?'

### Circle the best expression.

- Jemima can't sing at all, can she? she can't.
- 1 'I'm worried about Peter.' 'You are?'/ 'Are you?' / 'Aren't you?'
- 2 'Joe didn't phone yesterday.' / 'Joe phoned yesterday.' 'Didn't he?'
- 3 'I'm feeling ill.' / 'I'm not feeling well.' 'Are you?'
- 4 'Does John need help?'/'John needs help.' 'Does he?'
- 5 Do you remember David, / You don't remember David, do you?
- 6 'I've got a headache.' 'You haven't.' / 'You have.' / 'Have you?'
- 7 They can stay with us, they can't? / can't they? / can they?

### Read the conversation, and put in question tags (QT), short answers (SA) or reply questions (RQ).

QT	'Hello, Carol. Lovely day, 🕨 🕼 't 🚓 't 🗤 '
SA	Yes, it is. How are you?'
	'Well, I've got a problem.'
RQ	Have you? What's the matter?'
QT	'You remember my brother's boy Theo, 1
SA; QT	'2 He went to Australia, 3
SA	'No, 4 He went to Canada. Anyway, he's coming back to England.'
RQ	'5 That's nice.'
	'Well, yes, but he wants to stay with me.'
RQ	'Oh, 6 Is that the problem?'
SA	<sup>77</sup> l'm not very happy about it.'
RQ; QT	'8' Why? You like Theo, 9
SA	'10 very much.'
QT	'And you've got a lot of room in that big house, 11
SA	'12 But would you like to have a young man living in your house all the time?'
	'No, l suppose not.'
	'Well, I don't know what to do. I'm really very worried.'
RQ	'13 Would you like some advice?'
SA	'14
	'Tell him the truth. Say you like him a lot, but you don't want people in your house.'
QT	'l can't say that, 15'
SA	'16 He'll understand. I'm sure of it.'

RQ '17 ...... I don't know. Anyway, I'll think about it. Thanks.'

## leaving out words Don't know if she has.



We often use just an **auxiliary verb instead of repeating a longer expression**, if the meaning is clear. This happens in question tags, short answers and reply questions (see pages 288–291), and in other sentences too.

'Get up!' 'I am.' (= 'I am getting up.') Come round tomorrow evening, if you can. I haven't seen that film, but my brother has. (NOT ... but my brother has seen.)

We use do/does/did if there is no other auxiliary verb to repeat.

David said he knew the address, but he didn't really.

### Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said it wasn't raining, but it is raining.
- 1 He thinks I don't understand, but I do understand.
- 2 'You'd better eat something.' 'I have eaten something.'
- 3 Alice said she would lend me her car, but I don't think she will lend me her car.
- 4 Eric was sure he would pass his exam. I hope he has passed his exam.
- 5 'Will you write to me every day?' 'Of course I will write to you every day.'
- 6 I can't help you today, but I can help you tomorrow.

### We often use to instead of a longer expression, if the meaning is clear.

'Would you like to stay with us next weekend?' 'I'd love to.' (= 'I'd love to stay with you.') I don't play tennis, but I used to. 'Are you going to Scotland this summer?' 'We hope to.'

Complete the sentences, using the words in the box with to.

I'd like	It's starting	l'm trying 🗸	lused	she didn't want	Sorry, I forgot	They hope
----------	---------------	--------------	-------	-----------------	-----------------	-----------

'Can't you go faster?' ....'m trying to.

1 'Are Cathy and Dave getting married this year?'

- 2 lasked her to dance, but .....
- 3 I've never learnt to ski, but .....
- 4 I don't speak German very well now, but .....
- 5 'Did you remember to phone Liz?'
- 6 'ls it raining?'

In conversation, people may leave out 'small words' (for example pronouns, articles, auxiliary verbs) at the beginnings of sentences.

Must go now. Can't help you, sorry. Don't know. Car's not going well. Seen Billy? (= 'Have you seen Billy?') Nobody here. (= 'There's nobody here.')

### Write the complete sentences.

1	Couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
2	Doesn't know what she's doing.
3	Bus is late again.
4	Speak French?
5	Haven't seen them.
6	Don't think so.

→ For sentences where we leave out that, see pages 257 and 264.

### so am I; nor do I etc

To say that A is/does the same as B, we can use so + be or auxiliary verb (have, can etc) + subject (note the word order).

'I'm hungry.' 'So am I.' (NOT 'So I am.') Sue's stopped her lessons, and so has George.

If there is no auxiliary verb to repeat, we use *do/does/did*.

'My brother works in the theatre.' 'So does my cousin.'

### Complete the sentences, using so.

- 'My job's boring.' (I mine) ... 'So is mine.'
- 'My room gets very cold at night.' (I mine) ... 'So does mine.'...
- 1 'Anna is very interested in history'. (It Alice)
- 2 'My grandfather plays golf all day.' (IIII my father)
- 3 'l can swim under water.' (## /)
- 4 'Peter wants a bicycle for Christmas.' (農業 Carla) ......
- 5 'Joe has just got married.' (IIII Edward)

In negative sentences we use neither or nor + auxiliary verb + subject.

'I'm not working today.' 'Neither am I.' 'Mary can't drive.' 'Nor can Pat.' Bill doesn't like the boss, and neither does Jan.

### Complete the sentences, using *neither/nor*.

- 1 The soup wasn't very good, and (## the meat)
- 2 'Rob hasn't phoned yet.' (# Gemma)
- 3 'This dictionary doesn't show pronunciation.' (## this one)
- 4 'I can't cook.' (ﷺ I) .....
- 5 His parents won't help him, and (## his friends)

We can use short sentences (subject + auxiliary verb) to say that A is not the same as B.

'I'm not going to school today.' 'I am.' Some people don't like modern art, but I do. 'I like this music.' 'I don't.' The food was cheap, but the drinks weren't.

Complete the sentences with expressions from the box, to say that things are not the same.

her second one her sister my car my father  $\checkmark$  our dog the back door the green ones  $\checkmark$  the train

'My father works too hard. 'My father doesn't.'

- 'The red apples aren't very sweet.' 'The green ones are.'
- 1 'My car doesn't use a lot of petrol.'
- 2 'Mary has passed all her exams.' 'Yes, but .....
- Mast dama and suite but
- 3 Most dogs can swim, but .....
- 4 'The bus takes a long time to get to London.'
- 5 The front door wasn't open, but .....
- 6 'Her first book didn't sell very well.'

### Look at the table and write sentences.

	LIKES DANCING	HAS BEEN TO AMERICA	PLAYS TENNIS	CAN SKI	IS TALL	LAUGHS A LOT
ERIC	1	X	1	1	X	1
JULIE	1	~	×	×	X	1
PAUL	×	×	×	1	X	×
DAN	1	1	1	1	1	1
DENISE	×	1	×	×	1	×
RACHEL	1	1	×	×	1	1

	(Eric, Dan, dancing) Eric likes dancing, and so does Dan.
	(Julie, Rachel, ski) Julie can't ski, and nor can Rachel.
	(Julie, Denise, laugh) Julie laughs a lot, but Denise doesn't.
	(Eric, Julie, America) Eric hasn't been to America, but Julie has.
1	(Eric, Dan, tennis)
2	(Julie, Denise, tall)
3	(Denise, Paul, laugh)
4	(Dan, Rachel, ski)
5	(Julie, Denise, America)
6	(Eric, Paul, tall)
7	(Julie, Dan, tennis)
8	(Paul, Rachel, dancing)

Here are some facts about Mike and Katy. Are you the same as them, or different? Write your answers, using *So am I, Neither/Nor do I, I have, I can't* etc.

•	Katy has got blue eyes. So have I. OR I haven't.
	Mike doesn't like fish. 1 do. OR Nor do I.
1	Katy is interested in politics.
2	Mike has been to Texas.
3	Katy can sing.
4	Mike likes old music.
5	Katy speaks French.
6	Katy isn't very tall.
7	Mike hasn't got much hair.
8	Katy can't drink milk.
9	Mike doesn't like hot weather.
10	Mike doesn't understand computers.

We can also use **too** or **not either** to say that **A is/does the same as B**. 'I'm hungry.' 'I am **too**.' Lucy hasn't written, and Carol hasn't either. In informal conversation we often say **Me too** instead of **So do I**, **I do too** etc. 'I've got a headache.' '**Me too**.' (NOT 4-also.')





### spoken grammar: more practice

### Short answers. Complete the conversations.

- 'Do you like swimming?' ...'Yes, I do.'
- 1 'Was Emma at home when you went to see her?' 'No, ......'
- 2 'Does Tom play a musical instrument?' 'Yes, ......'
- 3 'Would your sister like some coffee or tea?' 'No thanks, ......'
- 4 'The plane arrives at 6.45, I think.' 'No, .......
- 5 'Can you work next Saturday?' 'Yes, .....'
- 6 'Have you written to Felicia?' 'No, .....'
- 7 'John wants to be a doctor.' 'No, ......'
- 8 'Did Carol phone this morning?' 'Yes, ......'
- 9 'Will the children be in this evening?' 'No, ......'
- 10 'Do you understand what I'm saying?' 'Yes, .....'

## Reply questions. Complete the conversations with reply questions and expressions from the box. (Different answers are possible.)

Good luck! ∣ am sorry. ✓ ∣ am sorry. ∣ don't believe it! Congratulations! Say 'hello' to him for me. That's interesting. That's terrible. That's a surprise. What a nuisance! What a pity! 'I didn't get that job that I wanted. 'Didn't you? I am sorry.' 1 'I'm seeing James on Tuesday.' 2 'l've got excellent results in my exams.' 3 'Scotland has declared its independence.' 4 'l've got an important interview tomorrow.' 5 'Light takes four years to travel here from the nearest star.' 6 'Anna and Peter are getting divorced.' 7 'My car has been stolen' 8 'Ifeelill' 9 'Tim has decided to become a ballet dancer.' 10 1 can't come to your party. So am I etc. Complete the sentences with So am I, Nor/Neither do I, etc. Arthur has gone home, and (# Jane) . So has Jane. 1 Dogs don't eat tomatoes, and (III cats) ..... 2 The 3.45 train hasn't arrived yet, and (ﷺ the 3.15) ..... 3 'I wasn't happy at school.' (IIII I) ..... 4 Ken didn't come to the lesson, and (IIII Sally) ..... 5 Roger likes travelling, and (### his brother) ..... 6 The meat is cold, and (### the potatoes) ..... 7 Natasha doesn't speak Russian, and () *her brother*) ..... 8 Our friends were late, and (## we) ..... 9 'We don't know why Teresa is unhappy.' (## her parents) ...... 10 'I'll try to help Robert.' ([]] /) .....

### Leaving out words. Make these sentences more natural by crossing out unnecessary words.

- You said you weren't crying, but you were crying.
- 1 She savs I don't love her, but I do love her.
- 2 'You should phone Aunt Lucy.' 'I have phoned Aunt Lucy.'
- 3 Henry thought that he would get rich fast, but I don't think he will get rich fast.
- 4 'Help me,' 'I'm trying to help you.'
- 5 'Will you forget me?' 'Of course I won't forget you.'
- 6 Jasper can sing, but I can't sing.
- 7 Andrew has asked me to go out with him, but I don't want to go out with him.
- 8 She's finished breakfast, but I haven't finished breakfast.
- 9 'You broke that window.' 'No, I didn't break that window.'
- 10 I haven't been to America yet, but I hope to go to America soon.

### Leaving out words. Write the complete sentences.

>	Been shopping? Have you been shopping?
•	Car won't start. The car won't start.
1	Don't know why.
2	Seen my mother today?
3	Don't think so.
	Sorry, can't come in here.
5	Want some help?
6	Know what I think?
7	Can't understand a word.
8	House is cold.
9	Raining again
10	Lost my keys.

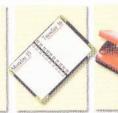
### 💮 GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY: things from the office. What would you ask if you were not sure

of the names of the things in the pictures?

- It's a stapler, isn't it? 4 ..... 1 They're ..... 5
- 2 .....
- 3











6



stapler

2 diary 1 paper clips

3 hole-punch 4 address book 5 rulers

6 calculators

### 💮 Internet exercise. Use a search engine (e.g. Google) to find some simple sentences with the expressions in the box. Write some of them.

and so is"	"and so are	e" "and so ha	s" "and so have	" "and so does"	"and so do"
and neither	r is" "and i	neither are" "	and neither has"	"and neither hav	e"
and neithe	does" "a	nd neither do"			



## spoken grammar: revision test

	Correct ( $\checkmark$ ) or not ( $x$ )?		
410	Daniela looks like you, looksn't	she?	Is today the 31st, is it?
	▶ You're Scottish, aren't you?		Peter and Annie are getting married, aren't
	1 We didn't give you our address		they?
	2 You can't speak Spanish, do you		Maggie wasn't here yesterday, was she?
	3 There's a problem, isn't it?	9	I'm playing tomorrow, amn't l?
	4 Jane doesn't smoke, doesn't sh	e? 10	You haven't seen Pat anywhere, did you?
	5 You'll be at home tonight, won	't you?	
	Put in the question tags.		
	It's a nice day,isw't it?		Dinner's ready,
	1 You can play the piano,		It's not raining,
	2 Lily will be here tomorrow,		You won't be late,
	3 You haven't got the keys,		Philip and Rachel have got married,
	4 Stephen likes fishing,		The papers haven't arrived,
	5 There wasn't much rain in the r	night, 13	I'm late,
	6 Petra went back home,		All the trains stop at Oxford,
	7 George doesn't play golf,		That letter didn't arrive,
0	Change these questions into a	affirmative (ﷺ) or nega	ative (ﷺ) statements with question tags.
	▶ Do you live in Dublin? 腦	ou live in Dublin, don	't you?
	Do you know my friend Adrian	? You don't know	1 my friend Adrian, do you?
	1 Have they gone home? 📰 The	ey haven't	
	2 Do we need tickets? ##		
	3 Would you like some more coff	fee? 🏢	
	4 Was Mike away yesterday?		
	5 Did Angela tell you her news?	闢	
	6 Can Sophie play the piano?		
	7 Will there be room for everybo	dy? 闘	
	8 Does your father eat meat?		
	9 Do these books belong to the l	ibrary? 🏢	
1	10 Are you tired?		
	Complete the conversations v	vith short answers.	
	'Do you play baseball?'	1 do.'	
	1 'Was the exam difficult?' 'No,		······
	2 'Would your little boy like to wa	atch TV?' 'No, thanks,	,
	3 'The lesson starts at 10.00.' 'No,	,	
	4 'Did the post come this mornin	ıg?' 'Yes,	1
	5 'Will it rain today?' 'No,		
	Complete the conversations v		
	'I've just passed my exam.'	tave you?	Congratulations!'
	1 'Joe and Suzy moved to London	n in March.' '	I didn't know.'
	2 'I won't be here next week.' '		Then come and see us the week after.'
	3 'I need some help.' '	I'll see	what I can do.'
		at into the house.' '	Well, could you throw
	it out, please?'	aht' (	That was studied of me
	5 'You didn't lock the door last ni	ynt	mat was stupid of me.

## appendix 1 common irregular verbs

(These are the most common irregular verbs. For a complete list, see a good dictionary.)

INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE	INFINITIVE	SIMPLE PAST	PAST PARTICIPLE
be	was/were	been	let	let	let
become	became	become	lie	lay	lain
begin	began	begun	lose	lost	lost
break	broke	broken	make	made	made
bring	brought	brought	mean	meant	meant
build	built	built	meet	met	met
buy	bought	bought	рау	paid	paid
catch	caught	caught	put	put	put
choose	chose	chosen	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
come	came	come	ride	rode	ridden
cost	cost	cost	run	ran	run
cut	cut	cut	say	said	said
do	did	done	see	saw	seen
draw	drew	drawn	sell	sold	sold
dream	dreamt/dreamed	dreamt/dreamed	send	sent	sent
drink	drank	drunk	show	showed	shown
drive	drove	driven	shut	shut	shut
eat	ate	eaten	sing	sang	sung
fall	fell	fallen	sit	sat	sat
feel	felt	felt	sleep	slept	slept
fight	fought	fought	speak	spoke	spoken
find	found	found	spell	spelt	spelt
fly	flew	flown	spend	spent	spent
forget	forgot	forgotten	stand	stood	stood
get	got	got	steal	stole	stolen
give	gave	given	swim	swam	swum
go	went	gone/been	take	took	taken
have	had	had	teach	taught	taught
hear	heard	heard	tell	told	told
hit	hit	hit	think	thought	thought
hold	held	held	throw	threw	thrown
keep	kept	kept	understand	understood	understood
know	knew	known	wake	woke	woken
lead	led	led	wear	wore	worn
learn	learnt/learned	learnt/learned	win	won	won
leave	left	left	write	wrote	written
lend	lent	lent			

## appendix 2 active and passive verb forms

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE: TENSE OF BE +	PAST PARTICIPLE
INFINITIVE	(to) watch	(to) write	(to) be watched	(to) be written
-ING FORM	watching	writing	being watched	being written
SIMPLE PRESENT	l watch	l write	l am watched	It is written
PRESENT PROGRESSIVE	I am watching	l am writing	I am being watched	It is being written
SIMPLE PAST	l watched	l wrote	I was watched	It was written
PAST PROGRESSIVE	l was watching	I was writing	I was being watched	It was being written
PRESENT PERFECT	I have watched	I have written	I have been watched	It has been written
PAST PERFECT	I had watched	I had written	I had been watched	It had been written
WILL FUTURE	I will watch	I will write	I will be watched	It will be written
GOING TO FUTURE	l am going to watch	l am going to write	l am going to be watched	It is going to be written
MODAL VERBS	I can watch	l can write	I can be watched	lt can be written
	I must watch	l must write	I must be watched	lt must be written
	I should watch	l should write	l should be watched	It should be written
	etc	etc	etc	etc

↔ For the use of the different tenses, see Sections 2–5.

→ For the use of passives, see Section 7.

→ For the spelling of -ing forms, see page 23.

→ For the spelling of third-person present forms (writes, watches, sits, goes etc), see page 16.

## appendix 3 capital letters (A, B, C etc)

We use CAPITAL LETTERS to begin the names of people, places, nationalities, languages, days, months and holidays.

Abraham Lincoln New York American Arabic Thursday September Christmas

We also use CAPITAL LETTERS for the most important words in the titles of **books**, **films** etc. War and Peace Gone with the Wind

And we use a CAPITAL LETTER for the **first word in a sentence**, and for the pronoun *I*. *Yesterday I went for a long bike ride*.

### appendix 4 contractions

Contractions like *he's*, *isn't* show the pronunciation of **informal speech**. They are common and correct in **informal writing** (for example, friendly letters), but are unusual in formal writing.

AFFIRMATIVE (###) CONTRACTIONS: PRONOUN + 'M, 'RE, 'S, 'VE, 'D, 'LL	NEGATIVE (###) CONTRACTION BE, HAVE OR OTHER AUXILIAR	
l am> l'm	are not aren't	shall not> shan't
we are> we're	is not isn't	would not> wouldn't
she is> she's	have not haven't	should not> shouldn't
he has> he's	has not hasn't	cannot> can't
l have> l've	had not hadn't	could not> couldn't
you had> you'd	do not doesn't	might not> mightn't
you would> you'd	did not didn't	must not> mustn't
they will> they'll	will not won't	need not> needn't

- With be, two negative forms are common: you're not / you aren't, she's not / she isn't, etc. With have, had, will and would, the forms with n't are more common: we usually say I haven't, I hadn't etc, NOT I've not, I'd not etc.
- There is no contraction amn't, BUT am not ---> aren't in questions.
   I'm late, aren't !? (BUT I'm not late, NOT | aren't late.)
- The contraction 's (= is or has) can be written after pronouns, nouns, question words, here and there.
   It's late. Your mother's gone home. Mary's got a headache.
   How's Joe these days? Here's your money. There's the telephone.
- We don't use affirmative (###) contractions at the ends of sentences. You're early.' 'Yes, we are.' (NOT Yes, we're.) I think she's gone home.' 'Yes, I think she has.' (NOT ... I think she's.)
- Negative (iiii) contractions are possible at the ends of sentences. 'It's raining.' 'No, it isn't.'
- Don't confuse it's (= it is/has) with its (possessive see page 188).
   The cat isn't hungry. It's only eaten half of its food.
- Don't confuse who's (= who is/has) with whose.
   Who's the woman in the green coat?
   Whose car is that?
- <sup>4</sup> In very informal speech, *going to, want to* and *got to* are often pronounced like *gonna, wanna* and *gotta*. They are sometimes written like this, especially in American English.

## appendix 5 punctuation

This section summarises the most important rules of punctuation.

#### the basic sentence

We don't put commas (,,,) between the basic parts of a sentence (subject and verb, verb and object etc). *My brother has found a really good job.* (NOT *My brother, has found a really good job.* OR *My brother has found, a really good job.*)

### before the basic sentence

If we put long adverbial expressions (saying when, where etc) before the basic sentence, we often use a comma (,). Compare: Last year he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh. Between January 2010 and March 2011, he followed a business studies course in Edinburgh.

### after the basic sentence

We don't usually use commas when adverbial expressions come after the basic sentence. *He followed a business studies course in Edinburgh between January 2010 and March 2011*.

### inside the basic sentence

When adverbial expressions come **between** parts of the basic sentence, we usually put commas before and after them.

She has, in the six months since she started her music studies, made remarkable progress.

### noun phrases

We don't usually separate a noun from the adjectives or other expressions that go with it. those very nice people (NOT those very nice, people) those very nice people in the flat downstairs (NOT those very nice people, in the flat downstairs) those very nice people who invited us to their party (NOT those very nice people, who invited us to their party)

### sentences with conjunctions

We often put **commas** in sentences with conjunctions, especially in longer sentences. (See page 219.) Compare: Everything will be different when Mr Harris leaves. Everything will be very different after April next year, when Mr Harris leaves. We usually use a comma if we start with the conjunction. When Mr Harris leaves, everything will be different.

### indirect speech

We **don't put commas** after verbs of saying, thinking etc in **indirect speech**. Jamie **says that** he has a problem. (NOT Jamie says, that ...) I don't know what I was going to tell the police. (NOT I don't know, what ...) We **don't put question marks** (?) in **indirect questions**. I **asked why** he was late. (NOT Fasked why he was late?)

### a useful rule: no comma before that

We **don't put commas** before *that* (conjunction or relative pronoun). *I know that she married a man that worked for her father*.

### between separate sentences

Between separate sentences (with no conjunction), we use a full stop (.) or a semi-colon (;), but **not a comma**. Compare.

Robert phoned, and he asked to speak to the manager. (comma and conjunction) Robert phoned. He asked to speak to the manager. OR Robert phoned; he asked to speak to the manager. BUT NOT Robert phoned, he asked to speak to the manager.

### lists

We use commas to separate the different things in a list (but not before *and*). She gave presents to her brothers, her sister, her sister's husband, her secretary **and** all of her colleagues.

### abbreviations (short forms of words)

We use full stops after some abbreviations, like *e.g.* (meaning 'for example'). *Mr* and *Mrs* have full stops in American English, but not usually in British English. Some British cities have beautiful cathedrals, *e.g.* Salisbury. Everybody liked *Mr* Carter.

### quotation marks ('...' or "...")

Quotation marks are used to show direct speech (somebody's actual words). His father said, 'Do what you want.' (NOT <Do what you want> OR – Do want your want.)

### figures

We use commas after thousands and millions, and full stops in decimal fractions.  $\in$  5,500,000 (= 'five million, five hundred thousand euros')  $\in$  5.5m (= 'five and a half million euros')

### apostrophes (')

For apostrophes in contractions (e.g. *isn't*), see Appendix 4. For apostrophes in possessives (e.g. *John's*), see page 201.

## appendix 6 word order

This section summarises the most important rules of word order that you can find in other parts of the book.

#### sentences

The basic word order of English sentences is **SUBJECT – VERB – OBJECT**. *I play the piano*. (NOT *I the piano play*.)

### questions

In questions we usually put an auxiliary verb before the subject. *Did you see the news last night?* (NOT *Saw you the news ...?*) *Can you swim?* For more details, see Section 8, pages 103–111. This does not usually happen with **indirect questions**. *She asked me where I lived*. (NOT *She asked me where did Hive*.) For more details, see page 266.

### adjectives

Adjectives usually go before, not after, nouns. an interesting film (NOT a film interesting) Adjectives can go after be, seem and similar verbs. I think she is tired. For more details, see Section 15, pages 209–211.

#### adverbs

Different adverbs can go in different places in a sentence. **Yesterday** I got up at 6.00. I've **just** seen a rabbit. You're driving very **slowly**. They do **not** usually go **between the verb and the object**. I **bought a bike yesterday**. (NOT <del>I bought yesterday a bike</del>.) She speaks **Spanish very well**. (NOT <del>She speaks very well Spanish.</del>) For more details, see Section 15, pages 212–215.

### prepositions

Prepositions often go at the ends of questions, especially in spoken English.
Who did you go with? What did you do that for?
For more details, see Section 8, page 111.
Prepositions can also go at the ends of relative clauses, especially in spoken English.
There's the man that I told you about. The train that I usually travel on wasn't running.
For more details, see Section 19, page 258.

### phrasal verbs

The objects of **phrasal verbs** (but not prepositional verbs) can often go **between the two parts of the verb**. *I turned the light out*. (OR *I turned out the light*.) **Pronoun objects** always go between the two parts of a phrasal verb. *I turned it out*. (NOT *I turned out it*.) For more details, see Section 10, pages 142–143.

#### ago

Ago follows an expression of time. We arrived two hours ago. (NOT ... ago two hours)

### enough

*Enough* usually goes before nouns but after adjectives and adverbs. Have you got enough soup? (NOT ... soup enough?) Is the soup hot enough? (NOT ... enough hot?) I didn't get up early enough.

### appendix 7 expressions with prepositions

### prepositions after verbs, adjectives and nouns

We use prepositions (*at, in* etc) after some verbs, adjectives and nouns. This is a list of the most common examples.

afraid of She's afraid of dogs.

agree with I don't agree with you.

angry about something We're all angry about the new working hours.

angry with somebody Mary's very angry with you.

arrive at/in a place I usually arrive at school at 8.30. What time do we arrive in London?

ask for If you want anything, just ask for it.

bad at I'm bad at games.

believe in (= 'believe that something is real') Do you believe in ghosts?

belong to This book belongs to me.

depend on We may arrive late this evening. It depends on the traffic.

different from/to You're different from (OR to) your sister.

difficulty in doing something I have a lot of difficulty in understanding her.

discuss something with somebody We discussed our plans with the manager.

divide into I divided the cake into four parts.

dream about something or somebody; dream of doing something I often dream about horses. When I was young, I dreamt of becoming a pilot.

dressed in She was dressed completely in black.

example of Can you show me an example of your work? explain something to somebody Can you explain this word to me?

get into/out of a car; get on(to)/off a bus, train, plane, ship I picked up my case and got into the taxi. She got off the bus at the wrong stop.

get to a place How do you get to Southport from here?

good at He's good at tennis.

happen to What's happened to Alice? She's an hour late.

the idea of doing something We had the idea of starting a small business.

interested in Are you interested in animals?

kind to They have always been very kind to me.

laugh at Please don't laugh at my French pronunciation.

listen to I like to listen to music while I'm working.

**look after children etc** Can you **look after** the children for half an hour?

look at Look at that wonderful old car!

look for (= 'try to find')
'What are you looking for?' 'My keys.'

married to He's married to Jane Gordon, the novelist.

nice to You weren't very nice to my mother.

pay somebody for something; pay a bill Have you paid John for the tickets? I forgot to pay the electricity bill.

pleased with We are very pleased with his work.

#### polite to

It's best to be polite to policemen.

#### reason for

What was the reason for his change of plans?

### smile at In this job you have to smile at people all day.

talk about Were you talking about me?

thank somebody for Thank you for waiting.

think about/of I think about you all the time. We're thinking of going to America.

### translate into/from

I've got to **translate** this letter **from** French **into** German.

#### typical of

She went out without saying 'Thank you'. That's just typical of her.

### wait for

I waited for her for half an hour, and then went home.

### write to

We write to each other every week. (BUT We phone each other ... – no preposition)

### wrong with

What's wrong with the car?

→ For more about prepositions, see Section 21.

→ For more about prepositions with verbs, see page 141.

### common expressions beginning with prepositions

at a party at the cinema at the theatre at the top at the bottom at the side at the beginning at the end of something

in the end (= 'finally', 'after a long time')

*by car/bus/train* etc (**BUT** *on foot*) *a book by Dickens an opera by Mozart* 

for example

in a raincoat/dress/hat in the rain/snow in the sky in the world in a picture in the middle in a loud/quiet voice write in pen/pencil in my opinion in time (= 'not late') on time (= 'at just the right time; not late or early')

on the phone on the radio on TV on page 22

→ For expressions without articles like in hospital, at university, see page 162.

### appendix 8 word problems

This section tells you about some words that are difficult to use correctly. We explain some other word problems in other sections of the book: see the Index.

- *after* We don't usually say *and after*, *X* happened. We prefer *afterwards* or *after that*. We had a pizza, and *afterwards / after that* we went skating. (NOT ... and *after, we went* ...)
- *ago Ago* goes after a time expression. Compare *ago* with *for* and *since* (see page 65). *It's August 1st. I came here three months ago*. *I've lived here for three months*, *since May*.

*another* is one word. Would you like *another* glass? (NOT ... an other glass.)

*as* and *like* (similarity) To say that things are similar, we normally use *like*. But before subject + verb, we prefer *as* in a formal style.

Your sister looks like you. Pronounce it like I do (informal) / as I do (formal).

*as*, not like (jobs) To talk about the jobs that people or things do, use *as*, not like. He's working *as* a waiter. (NOT He's working like a waiter.) I used my shoe *as* a hammer.

*born* We say that somebody *is/was born* (passive). *I was born* in London. Thousands of deaf children are born every year.

do and make Common expressions with do and make:

do work, a job, shopping, washing, ironing, business; do something, nothing, anything, everything make a suggestion, a decision, a phone call, a noise, a journey, a mistake, money, a bed, a fire, love

do + ... ing Common expressions:

do the shopping; do some (a lot of / a bit of) walking, swimming, reading, climbing, sailing, skiing

else We use else to mean other after something, anything, somebody, nobody etc. Something else to drink? Nobody else cooks like you.

ever is used mostly in questions, or with present perfect + superlative.
 Do you ever play golf? Have you ever been to Ireland?
 This is the best film I've ever seen. She says he's the nicest boy she's ever met.

explain is not used with two objects (see page 144). Can you explain this word to me? (NOT Can you explain me this word?)

forget see remember.

hear and listen to We can hear something without trying. When we listen to something, we want to hear it. Suddenly I heard a noise in the garden. Are you listening to me? (NOT ... listening me?)

We often use *can* with *hear*. I could hear Mary and John talking in the kitchen.

home We leave out to before home. Well, goodnight, I'm going home. (BUT Is anybody at home?)

hope We often use so and not after hope. 'Is David coming tomorrow?' 'I hope so.' 'Do you think it will rain?' 'I hope not.'

if and when We use if for things that may happen, and when for things that will happen. If I live to be 100... If it rains today ... When I die ... When it gets dark ...

just has several meanings: 1) right now 2) a short time ago (with present perfect, see page 64)

3) exactly 4) really 5) only

I'll phone you later. We're just having lunch.
 Aunt Daphne has just arrived.
 I just love your dress.
 Put those chocolates down!' 'I was just looking at them, Mum.'

*let* and *make* If I let you do something, I say that you can do it. If I make you do it, I say that you must. After *let* and *make*, we use object + infinitive without *to*.

Her parents let her go to the party. But they made her come home at midnight.

*remember* and *forget* + infinitive (with to) look towards the **future**: things that one has to do. *remember* and *forget* + -*ing* form look back to the **past**: things that one has done.

I must **remember to buy** bread. She always **forgets to close** the door.

I remember seeing the Queen when I was six. I'll never forget meeting you.

same We normally use the with same; and we say the same as ... (NOT the same like ...). We had the same idea. (NOT ... a same idea OR ... same idea) Her shoes are the same as mine.

see and hear + object + infinitive (without to)/...ing If you see/hear somebody do something, you see/hear a complete action. If you see/hear somebody doing something, they are in the middle of doing it.

I saw her go into John's house. I heard her play Beethoven's violin concerto on the radio. I looked up and saw Leo talking to Zoe. I walked past Anna's room and heard her crying.

*see, look and watch* We can *see* something without trying. When we look at something, we want to see it. *I saw Bill in the supermarket yesterday.* Look at that bird! (NOT Look that bird!)

We often use can with see.

On the left of the photo you can see my grandmother.

We watch things that move, change or happen. We watch TV most evenings. Did you watch the football match? The police are watching him to see where he goes.

so and such We use so + adjective without a noun, and such when there is a noun.
so kind so big such kind people such a big mistake such a fool

*still, yet* and *already* We use *still* to say that something is continuing; *yet* to ask if it has happened (or to say it hasn't); *already* to say it has happened earlier than we expected.

Granny's still on the phone. 'Has the postman come yet?' 'No, not yet.' I've already spent the week's money, and it's only Tuesday.

*than, as and that* Use *than* after comparatives (see page 223); *as* in the structure *as ... as* (see page 228); *that* after *say, think* etc and as a relative pronoun (see page 256).

She's **taller than** me. It's **as cold as** ice. The boss **says that** you're right. Who's the woman **that** just came in?

think We often use so after think. Don't use an infinitive after think. 'Are you coming to the party?' 'I think so.' 'Is it raining?' 'I don't think so.' I'm thinking of going to America. (NOT I'm thinking to go ...)

*try* After *try* we can use an **infinitive** (with *to*) or an *-ing* form. We prefer an **infinitive** when we are talking about **trying difficult things**.

Try to stop smoking – it's bad for you. 'It's really hot in here.' 'Try opening a window.'

very and too Too means 'more than we want'; very doesn't. 'It's very warm today.' 'Yes, a bit too warm for me.' 'Oh, it's OK for me.'

wait We often use wait for with object + infinitive (with to).
//m waiting for the postman to come.

*which*? and *what*? We prefer *which* when we are choosing between a *small number* of things, and *what* when there is a *wider choice*.

'I'd like a pair of those shoes.' 'Which ones - the blue or the red? And what size?'

whom In a very formal style, we use whom as an object in questions and relative clauses.
Whom did they elect? With whom did she go? She hated the man for whom she worked.

In an **informal** style, **who** is more normal in questions, and **that** (or nothing) in relatives. **Who** did they elect? **Who** did she go with? She hated the man (**that**) she worked for.

why and because Why asks for a reason. Because gives a reason. 'Why are you late?' 'Because I missed the train.'

### answer key

### page 2

- 1 1 are 2 is 3 are 4 am 5 are 6 is 7 am
- 2 1 We're all tired. 2 They're here. 3 I'm sorry.
  4 My name's Peter. 5 You're early.
  6 The shon's closed. 7 Sho's at home.
  - 6 The shop's closed. 7 She's at home.
- 3 1 Is Marie from Paris? 2 Are we very late?
  3 Is John in bed? 4 Is the boss here?
  5 Is your car fast? 6 Is Luke here?
  - 7 Are we all ready? 8 Am Learly?
  - 9 Are they at home? 10 Are you happy?
  - 11 Is Joe married? 12 Is this your house?
  - 13 Is that Jane?
- 4 1 What's 2 Where are 3 Who's 4 When are
  5 Why are 6 How's 7 Where's 8 Who are
  9 How are 10 When's

### page 3

- 5 1 she's not ill. / she isn't ill.
  - 2 they're not in London. / they aren't in London.3 you're not too tall. / you aren't too tall.
  - 4 we're not very late. / we aren't very late.
  - 5 it's not hot. / it isn't hot.
  - 6 I'm not at university.
  - 7 he's not very nice. / he isn't very nice.
  - 8 she's not in her office. / she isn't in her office.
  - 9 it's not mine. / it isn't mine.
  - 10 it's not very fast. / it isn't very fast.
- 6 1 He is thirsty. 2 She is cold. 3 They are hot.4 It is cold.
- 7 1 right. 2 size 3 colour 4 interested
  5 wrong 6 thirsty. 7 hot 8 cold
  9 old 10 hungry.

### page 4

- 1 1 were; was 2 was; were 3 were 4 was; were 5 was; were 6 were; was
  - 7 was; was 8 were; was

- 2 1 Was the party good?
  - 2 Were the people interesting?
  - 3 Was your father a teacher?
  - 4 Was everybody late?
  - 5 When was your driving test?
  - 6 Where were you on Tuesday?
  - 7 Why were all the windows open?
  - 8 Was John's brother at school with you?
- 3 1 weren't late. 2 wasn't a teacher.
  - 3 wasn't with Anna 4 weren't well
  - 5 weren't in England 6 wasn't good
  - 7 weren't in their hotel 8 wasn't warm

### page 5

- It will be hot in Rio. It will be warm in Paris.
   It will be cold in London. It will be very cold in Moscow.
- 2 1 I won't be sorry.
  - 2 It will be hot.
    - 3 We will be at home.
    - 4 The shops won't be closed.
    - 5 He won't be in Scotland.
    - 6 Lisa won't be at school.
- 3 1 When will your father be in England?
  - 2 Will Ann be at the party with John?
  - 3 Will everybody be here at 8.00?
  - 4 Will the train be late again?
  - 5 When will Joe and Mary be in the office?
  - 6 Will the weather be good tomorrow?
  - 7 Where will you be on Tuesday?

### page 6

- 2 1 Is there a doctor here?
  - 2 Are there any trains to London from this station?
  - 3 Was there a special price for students?
  - 4 Were there any mistakes in my letter?
  - 5 Is there much money in your bank account?
  - 6 How many students are there in your class?
  - 7 Were there many children at the swimming pool?
  - 8 How many people were there at the party?

### page 7

- 1 there will be sun 2 there will be two
   3 there will be ten people 4 there will be (enough) food 5 There will be fish
   6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers
- There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
   There will not be any trains on Sunday.
   There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.
   If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.
   There will not be any children at the party.
   There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.
   There will not be time to have lunch today.
- 3 1 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

### page 8

- 1 1 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul 6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick
- 3 1 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children?
  3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money.
  7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

### page 9

- She didn't have a computer.
   She had very fair hair.
   She didn't have lots of friends.
  - 4 She didn't have many nice clothes.
  - 5 Did she have her own room?
- 3 1 He will have a job.
  - 2 He won't have a bicycle.
  - 3 He will have a car.
  - 4 Will he have a house?
  - 5 Will he have a girlfriend?
  - 6 He won't have old clothes.
  - 7 He will have a suit.
  - 8 Will he have a guitar?

### page 10

- 1 1 had dinner 2 has coffee
  - 3 have a baby 4 have a shower
  - 5 have toast 6 have a game
- 2 1 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip. 3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 'Did you have a good game?'
   6 I don't have coffee

### page 11

- He's got two brothers.
   He hasn't got a car.
   He's got three dogs.
   He's got a dictionary.
   He hasn't got long hair.
   He hasn't got any sisters.
- 3 1 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

### page 12

- They weren't ready.
   We're all here.
   I'm not a student.
   Where's your house?
   She won't be late.
   You've got my keys.
   I haven't got much time.
   Franz doesn't live here.
- 2 1 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
  3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
  5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
  7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.
- 3 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed. 3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big. 5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office. 7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.
- 4 1 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do 6 does 7 do 8 Does
- 5 1 there will be 2 Is there 3 There was 4 are there 5 there weren't
  - 4 are there 5 there weren t
  - 6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
  - 9 Was there 10 Will there be

- 1 there will be sun 2 there will be two
   3 there will be ten people 4 there will be
   (enough) food 5 There will be fish
   6 There will be (a new) hospital 7 There will be
   trouble 8 There will be (a lot of) flowers
- There will not be a meeting tomorrow.
   There will not be any trains on Sunday.
   There will not be any buses at 4 o'clock in the morning.
   If you get up late tomorrow, there will not be any breakfast.
   There will not be any breakfast.
   There will not be any children at the party.
   There will not be a French lesson on Monday evening.
   There will not be time to have lunch today.
- 3 1 Will there be trains? 2 Will there be computers? 3 Will there be good food? 4 Will there be different countries? 5 Will there be governments? 6 Will there be a lot of problems?

#### page 8

- 1 1 My father 2 we all 3 have 4 has 5 Paul 6 have 7 has 8 Susie and Mick
- 3 1 have a garden. 2 Do they have any children?
  3 Does Peter have a cold? 4 My aunt doesn't have a dog. 5 Does Monica have any brothers or sisters? 6 I don't have enough money.
  7 Does Laura have a boyfriend? 8 Why do you have two cars?

#### page 9

- She didn't have a computer.
   She had very fair hair.
   She didn't have lots of friends.
  - 4 She didn't have many nice clothes.
  - 5 Did she have her own room?
- 3 1 He will have a job.
  - 2 He won't have a bicycle.
  - 3 He will have a car.
  - 4 Will he have a house?
  - 5 Will he have a girlfriend?
  - 6 He won't have old clothes.
  - 7 He will have a suit.
  - 8 Will he have a guitar?

## page 10

- 1 1 had dinner 2 has coffee
  - 3 have a baby 4 have a shower
  - 5 have toast 6 have a game
- 2 1 do you have lunch 2 She didn't have a good trip. 3 didn't have a shower. 4 Did you have a good flight? 5 'Did you have a good game?'
  6 I don't have coffee

### page 11

- He's got two brothers.
   He hasn't got a car.
   He's got three dogs.
   He's got a dictionary.
   He hasn't got long hair.
   He hasn't got any sisters.
- 3 1 Have they got a big garden? 2 Has Ann got a good job? 3 Has Bill got a big car? 4 Have they got a plane? 5 Have they got any horses?

- They weren't ready.
   We're all here.
   I'm not a student.
   Where's your house?
   She won't be late.
   You've got my keys.
   I haven't got much time.
   Franz doesn't live here.
- 2 1 Tom is late. 2 I will not have time.
  3 Anna is hungry. 4 He does not have a car.
  5 She has got two sisters. 6 She is right.
  7 Emma has got beautiful eyes. 8 There is a letter for you.
- 3 1 Is he from Beijing? No, he's not / he isn't from Beijing. 2 Was he in bed? No, he wasn't in bed. 3 Will we be very late? No, we won't be very late. 4 Is it very big? No, it's not / it isn't very big. 5 Were they at university? No, they weren't at university. 6 Was she in her office? No, she wasn't in her office. 7 Will they have coffee? No, they won't have coffee. 8 Are they happy? No, they're not / they aren't happy.
- 4 1 do 2 Does 3 does 4 Do 5 do 6 does 7 do 8 Does
- 5 1 there will be 2 Is there 3 There was
  - 4 are there 5 there weren't
  - 6 Were there 7 There are 8 There won't be
  - 9 Was there 10 Will there be

- 7 1 is 2 is 3 are 4 has 5 was 6 were not
  7 did not have 8 was 9 is 10 has 11 has
  12 is 13 is 14 is 15 has 16 does not
  have 17 has 18 is 19 has 20 has
- 8 1 true 2 false 3 true 4 true 5 false 6 true 7 false 8 false 9 false 10 true

#### page 14

- 1 1 Where 2 I 3 Are 4 has 5 is 6 am 7 won't 8 am 9 is 10 is 11 have 12 Does 13 Have 14 Will you be 15 I'm not 16 How 17 have 18 will be 19 have 20 are
- 2 1 √, X, √, √ 2 X 3 X 4 √ 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 √ 10 X
- 3 1 Is there a taxi outside? 2 Has Chris got a headache? 3 Joe doesn't have a car.
  4 Did Ann have a meeting yesterday?
  - 5 I didn't have coffee for breakfast.
  - 6 Will there be an English lesson tomorrow?
  - 7 l'm not hungry. 8 Petra hasn't got a new car.
  - 9 Did she have a nice time at the party?
  - 10 Has the house got a big garden?
- 4 1 Is Rosemary from London? 2 Will we be early? 3 Was Sarah at home? 4 Does Karim have / Has Karim got a cold? 5 Is your car fast?
  6 Will the manager be in America? 7 Were Tim and Anna students? 8 What time will you have lunch today? 9 Will you be here tomorrow?
  10 Were those people American?

### page 16

- 1 + -s: cooks, drinks, lives, reads, runs, smokes, stands, starts, writes + -es: fetches, fixes, misses, pushes, touches, watches, wishes
- 2 + -s: enjoys, plays, stays, tries -γ > -ιεs: copies, fries, marries, studies
- 3 1 I live in that house. 2 Kim works in a bank.
   3 Claire plays the violin very badly. 4 Those children come from Scotland. 5 You look very young.

4 1 The boss 2 I 3 Bread 4 Andy
5 Sophy and Ian 6 You 7 Our cat
8 That child 9 All those buses 10 My father

### page 17

- 1 1 play 2 speaks 3 ask 4 goes 5 make 6 forget 7 listen 8 lives 9 watch 10 get
- 2 1 thinks; knows 2 studies 3 tries 4 wear 5 washes 6 work 7 says 8 sits 9 watches 10 want

#### page 18

- 1 1 You do not speak very good Chinese.
  - 2 Bill / He does not play the guitar very well.
    - 3 We do not agree about holidays.
    - 4 George and Andrew do not live near me.
    - 5 My father / He does not write poetry.
    - 6 Barbara / She does not live in London.
    - 7 Henry / He does not like parties.
- 1 doesn't stop at Cardiff. 2 I don't like pop music. 3 He / Peter doesn't remember faces very well. 4 We don't know his wife. 5 She / Alice doesn't teach mathematics. 6 They / The children don't play hockey on Mondays. 7 They / The shops don't open on Sunday afternoons.
- 3 1 Our cat doesn't / does not like fish.
  - 2 Melinda doesn't / does not speak Russian.
  - 3 I don't / do not remember your phone number.
  - 4 Oranges don't / do not grow in Britain.
  - 5 The postman doesn't / does not come on Sundays.
  - 6 We don't / do not play much tennis.

#### page 19

- 4 1 don't like 2 doesn't speak
  3 don't remember 4 don't know
  5 doesn't want 6 don't want 7 doesn't work
  - 8 don't think

### page 20

1 1 Does 2 Do 3 Do 4 Does 5 Does 6 Do

- 2 1 Does the Oxford bus stop here?
  - 2 Do the teachers know her?
  - 3 Do you play the piano?
  - 4 Does John work in a restaurant?
  - 5 Does this train stop at York?
  - 6 Do we need more eggs?
  - 7 Does Fatima like parties?
  - 8 Does Peter speak Spanish well?
- **3** 1 your children 2 the lesson 3 you 4 the holiday 5 those women 6 you

- 4 1 Where do 2 What does 3 When do4 Why does 5 How many ... does 6 How do
- 5 1 What do you want? 2 What does this word mean? 3 What time does the film start?
  4 How much do those shoes cost? 5 Why does she need money? 6 How does this camera work? 7 Where do you buy your meat?
  8 Who do you want to see?
- 6 1 How do you spell that? 2 What do you do?
  3 What does this word mean? / How do you pronounce this word? 4 What time does the train arrive? 5 How much does it cost / do they cost? 6 Do you know Anna? 7 How do you do? 8 What time does the film start?

## page 22

- 1 does 2 My cats 3 doesn't 4 stops
   5 do English people 6 open 7 your holiday start 8 play 9 That café 10 say
- 2 1 I don't like getting up early.
  - 2 Do you want something to drink?
  - 3 Dan plays football on Saturdays.
  - 4 Do you remember her phone number?
  - 5 That clock doesn't work.
  - 6 She often flies to Paris on business.
  - 7 It doesn't rain much here in summer.
  - 8 Do elephants eat meat?
  - 9 Does he think he can sing?
  - 10 We need a new car.

# page 23

- 1 1 are talking 2 is eating 3 is cooking 4 am not enjoying 5 am reading
  - 6 is not raining 7 are not listening
  - 8 am feeling 9 is not going 10 are learning

- 2 cleaning, coming, dying, enjoying, going, living, making, playing, singing, starting, washing, writing
- 3 getting, feeling, putting, hitting, jumping, raining, robbing, shopping, shouting, sitting, slimming, dreaming, standing, talking, turning, answering, opening, visiting, forgetting

## page 24

- 1 1 The baby's crying again.
  - 2 It's snowing hard.
  - 3 You're looking very beautiful today.
  - 4 Your coffee's getting cold.
  - 5 I'm playing a lot of football this year.
  - 6 We're waiting for a phone call.
  - 7 Chris and Helen are spending a week in France.
- 2 1 She's washing 2 She's brushing
  - 3 She's listening 4 She's drinking
  - 5 She's reading 6 She's brushing
  - 7 She's reading 8 She's opening
  - 9 She's going

- 1 He's not / He isn't listening to me. 2 I'm not working today. 3 It's not / It isn't raining now.
   4 She's not / She isn't wearing a coat. 5 John's students aren't learning very much. 6 We're not / We aren't enjoying this film. 7 You're not / You aren't eating much these days. 8 I'm not expecting to pass the exam. 9 My computer's not / My computer isn't working. 10 I'm not playing much tennis these days.
- 2 1 he's not / he isn't playing well today.
  - 2 they're not / they aren't living in London.
  - 3 it's not / it isn't running well.
  - 4 I'm not enjoying it.
  - 5 the sun's not / the sun isn't shining.
  - 6 I'm not studying at university.
  - 7 she's not / she isn't singing just now.
  - 8 I'm not sleeping well these days.
  - 9 we're not / we aren't having a good time.
  - 10 I'm not crying because of you.
- The train's not/ The train isn't moving. 2 The children aren't listening. 3 It's not / It isn't raining. 4 The cat's not / The cat isn't eating.
   John's not / John isn't working.

- Are you waiting for somebody? 2 Is your boyfriend enjoying the concert? 3 Are those men taking our car? 4 Are you talking to me?
   Is it snowing? 6 Are we going too fast?
   Is your computer working? 8 Are you reading that newspaper? 9 Is the bus coming?
   Is somebody cooking lunch?
- 2 1 '... what is he writing?' 2 'Why is it stopping?'
  3 'What are they studying?' 4 'What game are they playing?' 5 '... Where are you going?'
  6 'Who is she telephoning?' 7 'What is it/he/she eating?' 8 'Where is she working?' 9 'What are you cooking?' 10 'Where are you living?'
- 3 1 Where are you going now? 2 Why is Anne crying? 3 What/Why is he writing? 4 Who/ Why are you telephoning? 5 Where are they living? 6 Where/Why is your brother studying English? 7 What/Why are you cooking?
  8 Why are those people looking at me? 9 What is the dog eating? 10 What are the children doing?

## page 27

- 1 1 Are you getting up?
  - 2 It's raining again.
  - 3 You aren't / You're not listening.
  - 4 Where are you going?
  - 5 Am I talking too fast?
  - 6 I'm not enjoying this film.
  - 7 Why are those people laughing at me?
  - 8 I'm not cooking this for you.
  - 9 What are you drinking?
  - 10 The baby's eating the newspaper.
- 2 1 Peter's trying to save money.
  - 2 Why are those children crying?
  - 3 Are your friends playing football this afternoon?
  - 4 She's not / She isn't looking very well today.
  - 5 I think she's making a big mistake.
  - 6 You're not / You aren't wearing your usual glasses.
  - 7 I'm starting to learn Spanish.
  - 8 ls the 10.15 train running today?
  - 9 David's not / David isn't living with his parents any more.
  - 10 What are you doing in my room?

3 1 is snowing 2 is looking 3 is wearing
4 is not wearing 5 is walking 6 are looking
7 are trying 8 are stopping 9 is returning
10 is kissing 11 is (he) saying

## page 28

- SIMPLE PRESENT: nearly always, on Fridays, very often, when I'm tired PRESENT PROGRESSIVE: just now, these days, this afternoon, today
- 2 1 eat; is not eating grass.
  - 2 fly; plane is not flying.
  - 3 rains; it is not raining.
  - 4 works; he/John is not working hard
  - 5 plays; she/Ann is not playing tennis
  - 6 speaks; he/John is not speaking English now.
  - 7 drives; he/Bill is not driving a bus now.
  - 8 sells; this shop / it is not selling books now.
  - 9 plays; is not playing the piano now.
  - 10 writes; he/Simon is not writing poetry now.
  - 11 chase; dog is not chasing cats now.

## page 29

- **3** 1 is she working 2 Does it rain 3 don't speak 4 is getting 5 Do you play 6 are you writing 7 Chale and a set of the s
  - 7 She's coming 8 I'm going 9 boils
  - 10 Is that water boiling 11 Is the bus coming
  - 12 talks; never listens. 13 He writes
  - 14 it's getting 15 do you see your parents
  - 16 He's coming back 17 Does John drive
  - 18 'm waiting for 19 are you looking
  - 20 do you like.

- 1 What does this word mean? 2 Rob doesn't want to see the doctor. 3 She loves me.
   4 Peter seems tired. 5 We don't need a new car.
   6 Do you know that man? 7 I hate this cold weather. 8 Do you like this music? 9 I don't remember her address. 10 Do you understand this letter?
- 2 1 don't understand. 2 prefer 3 like
  4 Do (we) need 5 doesn't matter.
  6 hope 7 don't remember 8 Do (you) believe
  9 don't know 10 Do (you) think 11 see.
  12 do (you) mean 13 love 14 hates

3 1 'I don't understand.' 2 'I see.' 3 'I hope not.'
4 'I think so.' 5 'I don't think so.' 6 'I don't know.' 7 'I know.' 8 'It depends.' 9 'It doesn't matter.' 10 'I don't remember.' 11 'I don't mind.' 12 'I hope so.' 13 'I don't think so.' 14 'I hope not.' 15 'I think so.'

## page 32

- 1 1 What 2 When 3 Where 4 How many 5 What time 6 How much 7 Why 8 How
- 2 1 What language do Brazilians speak? 2 Felix drives fast cars. 3 Annemarie doesn't read newspapers. 4 My two brothers both work in London. 5 Dogs don't eat vegetables. 6 Maria doesn't play the piano. 7 Does Peter work at weekends? 8 My husband cooks very well.
  9 Roger wants to work with animals. 10 Does this bus go to Belfast?
- 4 1 ✓ 2 × 3 × 4 ✓ 5 × 6 × 7 × 8 ✓ 9 ✓ 10 ✓

### page 33

- 5 1 looks after 2 gets up 3 has 4 goes
  5 likes 6 likes 7 does not like 8 lives
  9 works 10 does not want 11 is not working
  12 is sitting 13 is reading 14 is crying
  15 want 16 do not want 17 does not know
  18 loves 19 is doing 20 do you think
- 6 (possible answers)

Cathy is wearing a black skirt, a red blouse, a green cardigan, black boots and a raincoat. She is not wearing a hat. Sandra is wearing a long green dress, a black coat, black shoes, and a black hat. She is not wearing glasses. David is wearing a blue shirt with a pink tie, a grey suit, a black belt, black shoes and glasses. He is not wearing a coat. (Other answers are possible.)

### page 34

 catches, costs, does, enjoys, flies, has, hopes, knows, lives, mixes, passes, plays, stands, teaches, thinks, tries, washes, wears, wishes, works

- 2 beginning, crying, dying, enjoying, flying, forgetting, getting, happening, holding, hoping, learning, looking, making, opening, playing, sending, sitting, sleeping, stopping, taking
- 3 1 Do you work in London? 2 I don't like pop music. 3 Where does James live? 4 Do you want some coffee? 5 It rains a lot here.
   / It rains here a lot. 6 I wash my car every week. 7 Luke doesn't speak Spanish. 8 Do all your friends play football? 9 I don't wear a suit to the office. 10 How do you make spaghetti carbonara?
- 4 1 My sister is travelling in Spain. 2 Alice isn't looking very happy. 3 Why is the baby crying?
  4 Are you waiting for the bus? 5 I'm not playing much tennis these days. 6 Tim's wearing a very nice raincoat. 7 Are you talking about me? 8 You're walking too slowly. 9 What's that child eating? 10 I'm not enjoying this concert.
- 5 1 √ 2 × 3 × 4 √ 5 √ 6 × 7 √ 8 × 9 √ 10 √ 11 √ 12 × 13 √ 14 × 15 ×

### page 36

- The woman is going to have breakfast.
   He is going to read a letter.
   She is going to play the piano.
   The cars are going to crash.
   He is going to drink coffee.
   The ball is going to break the window.
- 2 1 Is Jane going to change her school?
  - 2 Where are you going to put that picture?
  - 3 What are you going to buy for Felix's birthday?
  - 4 Is Ethan going to play football tomorrow?
  - 5 When are you going to stop smoking?
  - 6 Is Alice going to go to university?
  - 7 Are you going to phone the police?
  - 8 Is your mother going to come and stay with us?
  - 9 Is she going to buy that coat?
  - 10 What are you going to tell the boss?

- 3 1 I'm going to stay in a nice hotel.
  - 2 I'm going to swim a lot.
  - 3 I'm not going to do any work.
  - 4 I'm going to take photos.
  - 5 I'm not going to read English newspapers.
  - 6 I'm going to learn some Italian.
  - 7 I'm not going to write postcards.
  - 8 I'm not going to visit museums.

- 4 1 How are you going to get to London?2 When is Monica going to come and see us?3 It's not going to snow.
  - 4 I'm going to cook fish for lunch.
  - 5 When are you going to see the doctor?
  - 6 Angela is going to marry her secretary.
  - 7 Is John going to call this evening?
  - 8 I'm going to stop playing poker.
  - 9 Everybody is going to watch the football match.
  - 10 Sally is not going to get the job.

- 1 1 I'm not playing baseball tomorrow.
  - 2 I'm not going to Canada next year.
  - 3 We're staying with Paul and Lucy next week.
  - 4 Are you working this evening?
  - 5 What time are your friends arriving?
  - 6 My company is moving to Scotland next year.
  - 7 How is your mother travelling to France?
  - 8 I'm seeing the dentist on Thursday.
  - 9 I'm going to a concert tonight.
  - 10 Gary is not marrying Cathy after all.
- 2 1 No, he's seeing John Parker on Sunday morning.
  - 2 No, he's going to the Birmingham office by train.
  - 3 No, he's having lunch with Stewart on Tuesday.
  - 4 No, he's going to the theatre on Wednesday evening.
  - 5 No, his new secretary is starting on Thursday. OR No, he's going to Berlin on Friday.
  - 6 No, he's going to Phil and Monica's wedding on Saturday.
- 3 1 Where are you going? 2 Why are you going there? 3 How long are you staying? 4 Are you staying in one place? 5 Are you staying with friends? 6 How are you travelling?
  7 Are you taking the dog? 8 Who is going with you? 9 When are you coming back?

### page 39

 The class will begin at 9.30. 2 They'll be home soon. 3 The examination will be difficult.
 We'll walk to the party. 5 She will not speak to me. 6 John will answer your questions.
 Emily will be ten years old on Sunday.

- 2 1 What time will tomorrow evening's concert start? 2 When will you and the family get back from Paris? 3 Will you be here tomorrow? 4 Will you and your mother be here tomorrow? 5 Where will you be this evening? 6 Will the children have enough money for the journey? 7 How soon will you know the answer?
- 1 won't be; will she be 2 won't have; Will you have 3 won't find; will I find 4 won't go; will they go? 5 won't get; will he get? 6 won't be; will it be 7 won't know; will you know

## page 40

- 1 1 'll wash 2 'll do 3 won't start 4 'll tell 5 won't stop 6 'll go shopping. 7 'll help 8 won't open.
- **3** 1 A 2 B 3 A 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 B 8 B

## page 41

- 1 1 The next lesson starts at 2.00.
  - 2 This term ends on March 12th.
  - 3 When does the concert finish?
  - 4 We don't have a lesson next Thursday.
  - 5 Does this bus stop at the post office?
  - 6 The play starts at 8.00.
  - 7 What time do you arrive in Rome?
  - 8 The banks close at 3.00 tomorrow.
  - 9 The next train stops at every station.
  - 10 When do the school holidays start?
- 2 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 'm not / won't be; will see 5 will study; stops 6 will drive; find 7 marries; will change 8 Will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) listen 10 will phone; get

- 1 1 He's going to write a letter.
  - 2 She's going to play the violin.
  - 3 They're going to get on a bus.
  - 4 The car's going to crash.
  - 5 He's going to sing.
  - 6 He's going to go skiing.
  - 7 He's going to start running.
  - 8 He's going to go swimming.
  - 9 They're going to have dinner.
  - 10 She's going to drink a glass of water.

- 2 1 She's seeing her bank manager on Monday.
  - 2 She's seeing her doctor on Tuesday.
  - 3 She's seeing her dentist on Wednesday.
  - 4 She's seeing her accountant on Thursday.
  - 5 She's seeing her solicitor on Friday.
- 3 1 'll start 2 will change 3 won't snow 4 'll go to sleep soon. 5 'll tell

- 1 I'm going to stop smoking. 2 I'm seeing 4 Andrew tonight. 3 It's not going to rain. 4 Peter's going to marry his boss. 5 Oliver won't pass his exams. 6 You'll like this film. 7 What time does the bus from London arrive? 8 I'm not using the car tomorrow. 9 I'm going to cook steak this evening. 10 How are you going to travel to Ireland? 11 I'll phone you when I get home. 12 Are you working on Saturday? 13 Will you need a room for the night? 14 Are you going to write to your father? 15 We won't have enough money for a good holiday. 16 Where will I find the key? 17 Will you go to university after you leave school? 18 John and Sylvia are staying with us next week. 19 When are you going to have a haircut? 20 Are you going to get up soon?
- 5 1 old house 2 'll come to 3 bridge
  4 'll come to 5 'll see 6 house
  7 'll recognise 8 door 9 apple trees.
  10 'll find 11 key 12 'll have 13 great time.

#### page 44

- 1 1 I'll 2 She'll 3 It won't 4 They're going to 5 They'll 6 They won't 7 She's not going to or She isn't going to 8 I'm not going to
- 2 1 X 2 √ 3 X 4 X 5 √ 6 √ 7 √ 8 √ 9 X 10 X
- 3 1 The concert is tonight. 2 Will 1 3 will move
   4 are not 5 am going 6 won't 7 I'll phone
   ... I get 8 will give 9 are you 10 will the meeting be

- 4 1 Is Melanie seeing Martin on Monday? Tessa isn't / Tessa's not seeing Tom on Tuesday.
  - 2 Is Mr Andrews going to study Arabic in Algiers? Mrs Roberts is not going to study Russian in Rome.
  - 3 Will Derek cook duck for Dorothy? Sally won't cook spaghetti for Sam.
  - 4 Is Harry going to take a holiday in Hungary? Steve is not going to study in Siberia.
  - 5 Is Oliver travelling to Oslo in October? Monica is not travelling to Madagascar in May.

## page 46

- arrived, changed, cooked, hated, lived, passed, shaved, watched
- 2 stayed, studied, cried, annoyed, carried, hurried, prayed
- 3 shopped, rained, started, robbed, slimmed, jumped, shouted, slipped, fitted, turned, visited, regretted, developed, galloped, opened, answered, referred

## page 47

- 1 I forgot my girlfriend's birthday on Monday.
  - 2 That's a really good book. I read it last year.
    - 3 When we were children we always spoke French at home.
    - 4 I didn't like my piano teacher, so I stopped my lessons last week.
    - 5 Where did you learn to speak Spanish so well?
- 3 1 stood 2 heard 3 opened 4 came
  5 did not see 6 said 7 took 8 gave
  9 held 10 did not read 11 said
  12 did not speak 13 wrote 14 ran 15 turned

- 1 1 worked 2 know 3 feel 4 came 5 see 6 write 7 arrive 8 like
- 2 1 We didn't speak Arabic. 2 He / My uncle didn't teach science. 3 He / Bill didn't cook the fish. 4 I didn't take my father (to the mountains). 5 We didn't tell the police everything. 6 I didn't write to my brother.
  7 I didn't like the music. 8 We didn't know her phone number.

3 1 he changed his shirt. 2 she didn't answer the others. 3 he didn't go to her house.
4 I brought some chocolates. 5 she bought a very nice dress. 6 I didn't eat the meat.
7 we didn't keep the letters. 8 they spoke German. 9 he didn't shave at weekends.

### page 49

- 1 1 bring 2 start 3 saw 4 began 5 break 6 leave 7 speak 8 keep 9 learnt 10 forgot 11 come 12 say
- 2 1 did she remember it? 2 did you pay the others? 3 did you like the film? 4 did he play well? 5 did you give them any money?
  6 did she write to her mother? 7 did he learn English? 8 did she get up early enough?
  9 did you shut the front door? 10 did they take the dog? 11 did she feel OK yesterday?
  12 did he forget the address as well?
- 3 1 Where did he go? 2 What did he buy?
  3 Who did she marry? 4 What did she break?
  5 Where did he stay? 6 What did he study?
  7 Where did he study? 8 What did she write?
  9 Who did she hear? 10 What did he understand? 11 What did she forget?
  12 Where did she go (on holiday)?

## page 50

- 1 I learnt a lot of Latin. 2 I didn't remember to buy the milk. 3 I didn't speak to her mother.
   4 'Did he phone this morning?' 5 I took the train. 6 did you go to Malaysia? 7 it didn't stop at Glasgow. 8 'They saw two films.'
   9 'Did you eat my chocolates too?'
   10 I didn't study enough.
- 2 1 Where did they go? 2 Why did they give him it / a bicycle? 3 What did she say? 4 What did they buy? 5 Who did you invite? 6 What did she drop? 7 Who did he beat? 8 Why did he write (to the police)? 9 Who did she ask (to marry her)? 10 When did he live there / in India?
- 3 did you remember

### page 51

1 were dancing. 2 was cooking supper.
 3 was driving home. 4 was not watching TV.

2 1 What was she writing? 2 Where was he shopping? 3 What was she cooking?
4 Why were they crying? 5 Were they driving to Scotland?

## page 52

- 1 was having 2 watched 3 was watching
  4 worked 5 were studying 6 drove
  7 walked 8 was working 9 studied 10 was talking
- 2 1 we were playing cards. 2 he wasn't talking.
  3 it was snowing. 4 she wasn't walking
  5 were you doing 6 were they talking about me?
  7 were you driving 8 wasn't expecting
  9 was doing 10 weren't running

## page 53

- 1 was reading; jumped 2 met; was travelling
  3 broke; was skiing 4 was shopping; stole
  5 phoned; was working 6 stopped; was driving
  7 heard; was having 8 went; was watching
  9 was washing up; broke 10 cut; was working
  11 left; was snowing 12 opened; were talking
  13 rang; was cooking 14 heard; was working
- 4 1 X 2 √ 3 √ 4 X 5 X 6 √ 7 √ 8 X
- 5 1 were singing. 2 were waiting 3 opened
  4 drove 5 turned 6 started 7 turned
  8 was passing 9 ran 10 pulled

## page 54

- 1 1 What did all those people want?
  - 2 Did all your brothers send you birthday cards?
  - 3 The baby ate some toothpaste this morning.
  - 4 The teacher didn't answer my question.
  - 5 I lost my keys again yesterday.
  - 6 Did anybody phone while I was out?
  - 7 The Prime Minister told us that things were getting better.
  - 8 My friends and I did not believe the Prime Minister.
  - 9 Richard didn't give me a birthday present.
  - 10 What time did you get up today?
- 2 1 we were watching TV. 2 he wasn't reading (it). 3 were they speaking English? 4 what were the children doing? 5 I wasn't expecting her. 6 I don't know what I was doing 7 it was snowing again. 8 the trains were not running.
  9 How fast were you driving 10 he was standing

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

- 3 1 went; was raining. 2 read
  3 Did (you) watch 4 walked; were talking
  5 was swimming 6 looked; was talking; was listening. 7 rang; was having 8 was lying
  9 did (you) go 10 met; was travelling
- 1 looked 2 was raining 3 washed
  4 got dressed 5 gave 6 made 7 didn't
  eat 8 went 9 waited 10 didn't arrive
  11 walked 12 was walking 13 arrived
  14 was working 15 was talking
  16 came in 17 told 18 didn't make
  19 sat down 20 started
- 5 1 Mozart composed 'The Marriage of Figaro'.
  - 2 Leonardo da Vinci painted the 'Mona Lisa'.
  - 3 Shah Jehan built the Taj Mahal.
  - 4 Alfred Nobel invented dynamite.
  - 5 Sergei Eisenstein directed 'Ivan the Terrible'.
  - 6 Gustave Eiffel built the Eiffel Tower.
  - 7 Edmund Hillary and Tenzing Norgay first climbed Mount Everest.
  - 8 Marie Curie discovered radium.
  - 9 John Lennon and Paul McCartney wrote the song 'Help'.
  - 10 The novelist Jane Austen wrote 'Pride and Prejudice'.

#### page 56

- became, began, broke, brought, bought, changed, cried, developed, felt, went, hoped, left, liked, paid, started, stayed, stopped, watched, wrote, worked
- 2 1 stopped 2 visited 3 making 4 feel 5 spoke 6 tell 7 like 8 see 9 phoned; was going 10 played
- 3 1 worked 2 was working; met
  3 lost; was shopping 4 listened to
  5 was cleaning; stopped 6 burnt; was cooking
  7 was reading; came 8 lived
  - 7 was redaining, came to inved
  - 9 was studying; got 10 caught; was running
- 4 1 drove 2 I studied 3 were you crying
  - 4 beginning; went 5 paid; left
  - 6 shopping; stole 7 rang 8 opened
  - 9 did you get up 10 1 lost; was walking

### page 58

2 1 She has forgotten my address. 2 I have made a mistake. 3 You have not shut the door.
4 Alan has worked very hard. 5 I have not heard from Mary.
6 John has not learnt anything.
7 I have broken a cup.
8 We have bought a new car.
9 The rain has stopped.
10 I have not seen a newspaper today.

#### page 59

- 3 1 Have we paid? 2 Has Tim phoned?
  3 Have you heard the news? 4 Have the dogs come back? 5 What has Barbara told the police?
  6 Why have Andy and Sarah brought the children? 7 What have you said to Mike?
  8 Why has everybody stopped talking? 9 Have you seen Martin anywhere? 10 Who has taken my coat? 11 What has happened? 12 Where has my brother gone? 13 Why has Peter closed the window? 14 Has Judith passed her exam? 15 Has the postman come?
- 4 Have you seen a lady without me? No, sorry, I haven't seen your ball. OR No, I haven't seen your ball, sorry.

#### page 60

- PROBABLY NOT 2 YES 3 DON'T KNOW 4 YES
   DON'T KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 DON'T KNOW
   DON'T KNOW 10 NO
- 2 1 never travelled 2 studied 3 has lost 4 met 5 've bought 6 left 7 've told 8 've made 9 've forgotten 10 built

- 3 1 has sent 2 have bought 3 have cut
  4 has stopped 5 has given 6 have sold
  7 have eaten 8 have found 9 have passed
  10 have broken
- 4 1 ... because she has lost her keys. 2 ... 'Yes, his girlfriend has left him.' 3 ... 'Sorry. I know him, but I have forgotten his name.' 4 ... 'No, I've seen it.' 5 ... 'I think she's gone to Ireland.' 6 ... 'Sorry, I've lent it to Maria.' 7 Luis has found a new job. He's working in a bank now.
  8 ... 'We can't. It's closed.' 9 ... 'Yes, she's changed her hair-style.'

5 1 gone 2 been 3 been 4 gone 5 been 6 gone

### page 62

- 1 1 a few days ago, last week, then, yesterday, when, in 1990
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 ✓ 4 X 5 X 6 X 7 ✓ 8 X 9 ✓ 10 X 11 X 12 ✓ 13 X 14 X 15 ✓ 16 X
- 3 1 Have you ever written a poem?
  - 2 I have never climbed a mountain.
  - 3 Has Charles spoken to you today?
  - 4 Clara hasn't told me her new address.
  - 5 Have you ever lost your memory?
  - 6 We haven't played football this year.
  - 7 Alex has never written to me.
  - 8 Have you seen Henry this week?
  - 9 My father has never driven a car.
  - 10 Has the cat had anything to eat today?
  - 11 Have you finished those letters?
  - 12 I haven't paid for the lessons this month.
  - 13 Sally has had a baby.
  - 14 Lucy hasn't phoned today.
  - 15 Has Corinne come back from India?
  - 16 It has stopped raining.
  - 17 Has the postman come this morning?
  - 18 We have eaten everything in the house.

### page 63

- 4 1 Joe has changed his job twice this year.
  - 2 How often has she asked you for money?
  - 3 I have often tried to stop smoking.
  - 4 Tom has phoned me six times this week.
  - 5 My father has met the Prime Minister twice.
  - 6 The police have questioned Annie more than once.
  - 7 I have only played rugby once in my life.
  - 8 My brother has often helped me in my work.
  - 9 Nobody has ever understood her.
  - 10 I have never wanted to go to the moon.
- 5 1 Have you ever been 2 have never read
  - 3 has won 4 won 5 never went 6 this year
  - 7 stayed 8 yesterday 9 have never seen
  - 10 did John phone

### page 64

- 1 have already paid. 2 has already left.
   3 has already got up. 4 have already cooked chicken. 5 has already finished.
- 2 1 Has my sister phoned yet?
  - 2 the postman hasn't come yet.
  - 3 Bill hasn't found a job yet.
  - 4 Have you finished that book yet?
  - 5 I haven't started work yet.
  - 6 Have you had supper yet?
- 3 1 I have just looked at the floor.
  - 2 Thave just thought about my home.
  - 3 I have just moved my feet.
  - 4 I have just put my hand on my head.
- 4 1 She has already written three letters.
  - 2 She has just telephoned her mother.
  - 3 She has already cleaned the kitchen.
  - 4 She hasn't read the newspaper yet.
  - 5 She has just made some toast.
  - 6 She hasn't listened to the radio yet.

## page 65

- 1 1 for 2 since 3 since 4 for 5 since 6 since 7 for 8 for 9 since 10 since 11 for 12 since
- 4 1 How long have you known Mike?
  - 2 How long have you been a student?
  - 3 How long has your brother been a doctor?
  - 4 How long has Andrew had that dog?
  - 5 How long have David and Elizabeth been together?

- 1 1 Mary has been painting the house for four days.
  - 2 We have been driving for four hours.
  - 3 Anna has been working at Smiths since January.
  - 4 Joseph has been building boats for 20 years.
  - 5 We've been waiting for the bus since 8.30.
  - 6 Prices have been going up since last year.
  - 7 We've been camping since July 20th.
  - 8 My father has been teaching for 40 years.
  - 9 It's been snowing for 12 hours.
  - 10 The team has/have been training together for three months.

- 3 1 √ 2 × 3 √ 4 × 5 √ 6 × 7 × 8 √ 9 × 10 √
- 4 1 She has been playing the piano. 2 He has been playing football. 3 She has been teaching.
  4 He has been writing letters. 5 She has been swimming.

#### page 68

- 1 had worked 2 had not rained. 3 had happened? 4 had seen 5 had not got6 had they been? 7 had paid 8 had not done
- 2 1 understood; had got 2 didn't play; had hurt
   3 had looked; started 4 had never travelled; went
   5 arrived; had already closed 6 didn't have; had paid

#### page 69

- 3 1 got; had eaten 2 met; had been
  3 started; remembered; had not closed
  4 found; had not opened 5 had already told; bought
- 4 1 When George had eaten all the chocolate biscuits, he started eating the lemon ones.
  - 2 When I had turned off the lights in the office, I locked the door and left.
  - 3 I borrowed Karen's newspaper when she had read it.
  - 4 Mark had a long hot shower when he had done his exercises.
  - 5 When Barry had phoned his mother with the good news, he went to bed.

#### page 70

- 1 1 Have all those people gone home?
  - 2 Peter hasn't told us everything.
  - 3 Has the postman been?
  - 4 Has Pat spoken to Robert?
  - 5 Tim and Angela haven't bought a house.
  - 6 Has Emma's boyfriend forgotten her birthday?
  - 7 Has Monica been working in London all this week?
  - 8 | haven't phoned Joseph.
  - 9 Have Robert and Sally moved to Ireland?
  - 10 We haven't been working all day.

- 2 1 YES 2 WE DON'T KNOW 3 YES 4 WE DON'T KNOW 5 WE DON'T KNOW 6 YES 7 NO 8 YES
  - 9 WE DON'T KNOW 10 YES
- 3 1 Why has everybody already gone home?
  - 2 How long has Anna been learning Chinese?
  - 3 Why did George close the door?
  - 4 Where have Sue and Jeanne gone on holiday?
  - 5 When did the President visit Russia?
  - 6 How long has Jan's father been travelling in Wales?
  - 7 What has happened?
  - 8 How long has Joe been working in Spain?
  - 9 Where did Mary study medicine?
  - 10 Who has taken my/your bicycle?

#### page 71

- 4 1 saw; knew; had met 2 did not have; had bought 3 had already started; arrived.
  4 broke; had forgotten 5 met
  6 forgot; had said. 7 had gone
  8 had finished; went 9 found; had bought
  10 closed; had left
- 5 1 had 2 spent 3 lost 4 did not pass
  5 happened 6 has been 7 has changed
  8 have bought 9 has opened
  10 have passed
- 6 1 swept 2 made 3 polished 4 washed
  5 ironed 6 washed up 7 put 8 tidied
  9 did 10 Have you swept 11 Have you made
  12 Have you polished 13 Have you washed
  14 ironed 15 Have you washed up
  16 put 17 Have you tidied 18 haven't done

- 1 broken, brought, come, drunk, eaten, forgotten, given, left, made, stood, stayed, stopped, taken, thought, tried
- 2 1 began 2 broken 3 come 4 knew 5 drunk 6 ate 7 fell 8 forgotten 9 given 10 taken
- 3 1 We've known; for 2 I've been working
  3 has gone; did she leave? 4 has already lost;
  lost 5 Have you ever driven 6 has never had
  7 Have you seen 8 started; eight weeks ago
  9 I've been; for 10 have you known

- 4 1 did (Mike) lose 2 has been eating
  3 has just had 4 has been snowing
  5 studied 6 have just passed
  7 have you known 8 Have (you ever) written
  - 9 lost 10 have not started

- 1 1 to be 2 be 3 pass 4 to get 5 be 6 to speak
- 2 1 likes 2 may 3 must 4 works 5 should 6 seems 7 might 8 wants
- 3 1 Can he ski? 2 Can he play poker?
  3 She mustn't sing. 4 He may not go this week.
  5 She can't visit us on Sunday.

## page 75

- 1 1 must write 2 must hurry 3 must stop 4 must pay 5 must study 6 must speak 7 must go
- 2 1 ... I must phone her tonight.
  - 2 ... I must go back and get it.
  - 3 ... My mother made it. You must have a piece.
  - 4 ... You must see it. It's a cinema classic.
  - 5 ... I must get up early.
  - 6 ... You must give me your phone number.
  - 7 ... We must go for a walk this weekend.
- 3 1 Must I pay any money? 2 Must I come to this room? 3 Must I write in ink? 4 Must I sit in my usual place? 5 Must I answer every question?
  6 Must I work without a dictionary?
  - 7 Must I stay if I finish early?

### page 76

- 1 has to wear 2 have to read 3 has to like
  4 have to have 5 has to be 6 have to do
  7 has to have 8 has to know 9 have to know
  10 has to practise
- 2 1 ... 'Do we have to finish it today?' 2 ... 'Do I/ we have to stay until the end?' 3 ... 'Do they have to speak Spanish?' 4 ... 'Do I have to tell you now?' 5 ... 'So do I have to babysit?'
  6 ... 'Do I have to pay it all now?' 7 ... 'Does he have to travel a lot?'

## page 77

- 1 1 You mustn't wash 2 You mustn't play 3 You mustn't let 4 You mustn't smoke 5 You mustn't play 6 You mustn't make
- 2 1 You don't have to make breakfast for me; I'll just have coffee. 2 You don't have to make lunch for me; I'll have lunch in the canteen. 3 You don't have to drive me to the station; I can walk.
  4 You don't have to give me your newspaper; I'll buy The Times at the station. 5 You don't have to post those letters; Cathy's going to the post office. 6 You don't have to speak French; everybody here understands English.
- 3 1 mustn't 2 don't have to 3 mustn't
  4 don't have to 5 don't have to 6 mustn't
  7 mustn't 8 don't have to 9 don't have to
  10 mustn't 11 mustn't 12 don't have to

#### page 78

- He didn't have to learn Russian. 2 He had to learn maths. 3 He didn't have to learn music.
   He had to play football. 5 He didn't have to write poems. 6 He had to write stories.
- 2 1 Did Adam have to pay for his lessons? 2 Did Tina have to take an exam last year? 3 Did Joe and Sue have to wait a long time for a train?
  4 Did you have to show your passport at the airport? 5 Did the children have to walk home?
  6 Did Peter have to cook supper?
- 3 1 'll have to get 2 won't have to go
  - 3 Will (you) have to learn 4 'll have to play
  - 5 'll have to ask 6 won't have to work
  - 7 Will (she) have to get 8 'll have to tell

- 1 should keep 2 should learn
   3 shouldn't believe 4 should eat
   5 shouldn't smoke 6 should tell 7 shouldn't play 8 shouldn't read 9 shouldn't drive
   10 should(n't) (always) say
- 2 1 'What time should I arrive?' 2 Who should I phone 3 'What should I wear?' 4 'Where should I sit?' 5 Where should I put
   6 What time should I wake

3 1 must 2 should/must 3 should 4 must 5 must 6 must 7 should

### page 80

- He can't play tennis, but he can play baseball.
   He can play the piano, but he can't play the violin.
  - 3 He can't remember names, but he can remember faces.
  - 4 He can eat oranges, but he can't eat cherries.
- 2 1 Can he cook? 2 Can she speak Spanish?
  3 How much can they pay? 4 Can you drive a bus? 5 Can you wear red? 6 Can you see the sea? 7 Can you read music? 8 What can he do? 9 Can you eat butter? 10 Can she talk?

## page 81

- 1 could name 2 could count 3 could read
   4 could not write 5 could tell 6 could
   remember 7 could not walk
- 3 1 Little Tim will be able to talk soon.
  - 2 I will be able to pay you next week.
  - 3 I hope that I will be able to go to America one day.
  - 4 The doctor will be able to see you tomorrow.
  - 5 We will be able to buy a car next year.

## page 82

- 1 It may not rain. 2 We may buy a car.
   3 Joe may not be at home. 4 Anna may need help. 5 The baby may be hungry. 6 I may not change my job. 7 She may be married.
   8 He may not want to talk to you. 9 You may not be right. 10 I may not be here tomorrow.
- 2 1 ... 'Perhaps. I may not have enough money.'
  - 2 ... 'Not sure. They may stay at home.'
  - 3 ... 'It's early. He may not be out of bed yet.
  - 4 ... 'Yes. I think it may snow.'
  - 5 ... 'We may go round to Sophie's place.'
  - 6 ... 'No. I may decide to study physics.'
  - 7 ... 'I don't know. I may give him a sweater.'

### page 83

3 1 may not 2 can't 3 may not 4 can't
 5 can't 6 may not 7 may not 8 may not
 9 can't 10 may not

- 4 1 might find 2 might send 3 might fall
   4 might make 5 might buy
- 5 1 might not finish 2 might miss
  3 might give 4 might not believe
  5 might not pass 6 might not know
  7 might be 8 might have to 9 might not have 10 might not

### page 84

- 1 1 Can I have a glass of water (, please)?
  - 2 Can I use your pencil (, please)?
  - 3 Can I have some more coffee (, please)?
  - 4 Can I put my coat here (, please)?
  - 5 Can I have some bread (, please)?
  - 6 Can I look at those photos (, please)?
- 2 1 Could I use your calculator, please?
  - 2 Could I leave early today, please?
    - 3 Could I take your photo, please?
    - 4 Could I borrow your newspaper, please?
    - 5 Could I turn on the TV, please?
    - 6 Could I open a window, please?
- 3 1 The children can play in the garden.
  - 2 Tell the boys that they can eat the cake in the kitchen.
  - 3 If you're cold, you can turn on the heating.
  - 4 If you're bored, you can watch television.
  - 5 Only teachers can park in this car park.

### page 85

- 4 1 You can't smoke here. 2 You can't take photos here. 3 You can't cycle here.
  4 You can't use mobile phones here.
- 5 1 Can I make a cup of tea for you / make you a cup of tea? 2 Can I help you? 3 Can I drive you to the station? 4 Can I get some aspirins for you / get you some aspirins?
- 6 1 may not talk 2 may not leave 3 may use
   4 may take 5 may leave 6 may use
   7 may do

## page 86

1 1 pass 2 clean 3 tell 4 drive 5 hold 6 babysit 7 lend 8 put 9 speak/drive 10 wait

- 2 1 Can you open the door?
  - 2 Could you give me an envelope?
  - 3 Can you pass me the sugar?
  - 4 Could you watch my children for a minute?
  - 5 Could you tell me the time?
  - 6 Could you possibly change some dollars for me?
  - 7 Can you wait outside?
  - 8 Could you possibly translate this letter for me?
  - 9 Can you come back tomorrow?
  - 10 Could you say it in English?
- 3 'Miss Ellis, could you come in here and pass me my coffee?'

- 1 What shall I buy for Sandra's birthday?
   2 When shall I phone you? 3 Shall I pay now?
   4 Shall I clean the bathroom? 5 How many tickets shall I buy? 6 Where shall I leave the car?
   7 What time shall I come this evening?
   8 Shall I shut the windows? 9 When shall I go shopping? 10 Shall I get your coat?
- 2 1 Shall we go out this evening? 2 Shall we have a game of cards? 3 How shall we travel to London? 4 What shall we do at the weekend?
  5 Where shall we go on holiday? 6 Shall we look for a hotel? 7 What time shall we meet Peter? 8 How much bread shall we buy?
  9 Shall we have a party? 10 When shall we have the next meeting?
- 3 1 Shall I post your letters? 2 Shall I do your shopping? 3 Shall I make your bed? 4 Shall I read to you? 5 Shall I drive you to the station?
  6 Shall I make you a cup of tea? 7 Shall I clean your car? 8 Shall I phone your secretary?
  9 Shall I cut your hair? 10 Shall I bring you an aspirin?

## page 88

- 1 I'd like a black T-shirt, please. 2 Would you like an aspirin? 3 Would you like the newspaper? 4 I'd like an ice cream, please.
   5 Would you like some more toast?
   6 I'd like a receipt, please.
- Would 2 Yes, please. 3 like 4 Would
   'd like 6 Yes, I do. 7 would like 8 don't
   wouldn't 10 'd like.

## page 89

- Most people used to travel on foot or on horses.
  - 2 Most people didn't use to go to school.
  - 3 Most people didn't use to learn to read.
  - 4 Most people used to cook on wood fires.
  - 5 Most people didn't use to live very long.
  - 6 Most people used to work very long hours.
- 2 1 Emily used to study German. Now she studies French. 2 Paul used to live in London. Now he lives in Glasgow. 3 Grace used to read a lot. Now she watches TV. 4 Dan used to be a driver. Now he's a hairdresser. 5 Alice used to drink coffee. Now she drinks tea. 6 Peter used to have lots of girlfriends. Now he's married.
- 3 1 Did you use to have dark hair? 2 Did you use to play football? 3 Where did you use to work?
  - 4 Did you use to enjoy your work?
  - 5 Did you use to go to a lot of parties?

- 1 1 Can he swim?
  - 2 Must she go immediately?
  - 3 but he may not go this week.
  - 4 She doesn't have to work on Thursday evening.
  - 5 Can he play hockey?
  - 6 Should she see the secretary today?
  - 7 She couldn't read when she was three.
  - 8 Would he like it now?
  - 9 but we might not take the children.
  - 10 I must not go to sleep.
- 2 1 I will be able to speak French 2 Everybody had to fill in a big form 3 Everybody will have to fill in a big form 4 Will you be able to play the guitar 5 Did you have to wear a tie 6 John couldn't read very well 7 We won't be able to buy a car 8 I had to see the doctor 9 Everybody will be able to say what they think 10 couldn't sing; won't be able to sing

- 3 1 ... You should make her a cup of tea.
  - 2 ... You should take more exercise.
  - 3 ... You should tell her you love her.
  - 4 ... You should give her a saucer of milk.
  - 5 ... You should change your shampoo.
  - 6 ... You shouldn't go to bed so late.
  - 7 ... You shouldn't tell her.
  - You shouldn't buy so many electronic gadgets.
  - 9 ... You should practise your service.
  - 10 ... You should buy a new one.
  - 11 ... You should buy some new clothes.
  - 12 ... You should study grammar.

4 (possible answers)

 Could I have a cup of coffee?
 May I take a photograph of you?
 Could you close the door, please, John?
 Could you possibly help me?
 Can you give me that newspaper, please?
 Could you clean my bicycle, please?
 Could you wash all my clothes before tomorrow, please?
 (Other answers are possible.)

- 5 1 With a scanner you can make copies.
  - 2 With a freezer you can keep food very cold.
  - 3 With a washing machine you can wash clothes.
  - 4 With a fridge you can keep food cool.
  - 5 With a mobile phone you can make phone calls.
  - 6 With a dishwasher you can wash plates, cups etc.
  - 7 With a camera you can take photos.
- 6 1 She might be a pilot. 2 He might be a businessman. 3 She might be an opera singer.
  4 He might be a politician. 5 She might be a lawyer. 6 He might be a chef. 7 She might be a gardener.

#### page 92

- 1 1 ¥ 2 × 3 × 4 √ 5 √ 6 × 7 √ 8 √ 9 × 10 ×
- 2 1 must 2 shouldn't 3 must not 4 should
   5 don't have to 6 have to 7 don't have to
   8 may not 9 can't 10 should

- 3 1 You must phone Martin tonight. 2 Ann might be here this evening. 3 You don't have to wait.
  4 People shouldn't watch TV all the time.
  5 Shall I open a window? 6 People should cooperate. 7 John used to smoke. 8 It may rain. 9 Alan can speak Spanish. 10 Can you help me?
- 4 1 can; can't 2 must 3 must 4 may; can; can't

#### page 94

- 1 1 B 2 E 3 H 4 C 5 F 6 G 7 D
- 2 1 is spoken 2 studied 3 spent 4 was broken 5 are made 6 was written
  7 will be opened 8 was driving; was stopped
  9 was built 10 had

#### page 95

- 1 1 is 2 is 3 am 4 Are 5 is 6 is 7 are 8 Are
- 2 1 is written 2 are watched 3 are sold
  4 is known 5 is pronounced 6 is spoken
  7 is played 8 are cleaned
- 3 1 is not spelt; is it spelt? 2 is not seen; is it seen? 3 is not pronounced; is it pronounced?
  4 are not found; are they found? 5 is not paid; is she paid?

### page 96

- 1 1 will be opened 2 will be spoken 3 will be finished 4 will be cleaned 5 will be sent
- 2 1 won't be taken; will they be taken 2 won't be built; will it be built? 3 won't be spoken; will be spoken?

- 1 1 was 2 were 3 were 4 were 5 was 6 was
- 2 1 were taken 2 were left 3 was cleaned 4 were met 5 was told 6 was sent

- 3 1 was not educated; was he educated?2 were not posted; were they posted?
  - 3 was not cooked; was it cooked?
  - 4 was not made; was it made?
  - 5 was not paid; was it paid?

- 1 it's being cleaned. 2 she's being interviewed
   3 My watch is being repaired. 4 I'm being sent
   5 my hair is being cut. 6 we are being followed
   7 The engine is being repaired. 8 It's being
   rebuilt. 9 he is being watched 10 it is being
   painted.
- 2 1 Bills are being paid. 2 Coffee is being made.
  3 Drinks are being served. 4 Food is being prepared. 5 Baggage is being brought down.
  6 Money is being changed. 7 New guests are being welcomed. 8 Reservations are being taken. 9 Phones are being answered.
  10 Rooms are being cleaned.

## page 99

- 1 has been arrested 2 has been bought
   3 has been killed 4 have been found
   5 has been chosen 6 has been closed.
  - 7 has been stolen. 8 have been asked
  - 9 have been lost. 10 has been invited
- 2 1 It's never been ridden. 2 It's never been worn. 3 It's never been opened.
  4 It's never been used. 5 It's never been played.

## page 100

- 1 is made 2 were killed 3 will be done
   4 is spoken 5 was made 6 were examined
   7 is cleaned 8 will be informed 9 will be opened 10 are found
- 2 (possible answers) Baggage is not being brought down. Bills are not being paid. Coffee is not being made. Drinks are not being served. Food is not being prepared. Money is not being changed. New guests are not being welcomed. Reservations are not being taken. Rooms are not being cleaned. Telephones are not being answered.

3 (possible answers)

Arriving passengers are being met. Boarding passes are being printed. Cars are being parked. Departures are being announced. Passports are being checked. Reservations are being made. Tickets are being sold.

## page 101

- 4 1 are being followed. 2 has been stolen.
  3 is being repaired. 4 have been moved.
  5 have been sent 6 are (you) being interviewed? 7 have/has been arrested
  8 have/has not been arrested; are being watched.
  9 is being rebuilt. 10 has been asked
- 5 1 are covered 2 are spent 3 walk
  4 do not eat 5 are left 6 sleep 7 are made
  8 is not known 9 live 10 are cut down

## page 102

- 1 posted 2 weren't paid 3 speaks
   4 isn't pronounced 5 will be built 6 is being cleaned 7 have been invited 8 is made
   9 is spoken 10 broke
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 √ 5 √ 6 X 7 X 8 √ 9 X 10 √
- 3 1 has been moved. 2 will be opened
  - 3 has been taken. 4 is being washed.
  - 5 will be told 6 has been stolen.
  - 7 was made 8 is spoken 9 are cleaned
  - 10 have been asked 11 was killed.
  - 12 will be done 13 will (the match) be played
  - 14 have been stolen 15 were sent
  - 16 is made 17 was hit; was broken
  - 18 is being translated 19 has been found
  - 20 will be finished

- 1 1 Are you tired?
  - 2 Is he at home?
  - 3 Must you go now?
  - 4 Can they speak Spanish?
  - 5 Will Derek be here tomorrow?
  - 6 Will Aunt Ruth arrive by train?
  - 7 Has she forgotten her keys?
  - 8 Is your sister playing tennis?
  - 9 Would you like some coffee?
  - 10 Has your secretary gone home?

- 2 1 Do you drink coffee at bedtime?
  - 2 Do you like classical music?
  - 3 Do you know my friend Andrew?
  - 4 Did you go skiing last winter?
  - 5 Do you work in London?
  - 6 Do you live in a flat or a house?
  - 7 Do you watch a lot of TV?
  - 8 Did you remember to buy bread?
  - 9 Did you see Barbara last weekend?
  - 10 Do you play tennis?

- 3 1 Does she speak Arabic?
  - 2 Does she know Mr Peters?
  - 3 Does she work at home?
  - 4 Did she live in Birmingham?
  - 5 Did she go home last week?
  - 6 Does she play the piano?
  - 7 Does she ride horses?
  - 8 Does she like working with children?
  - 9 Did she travel a lot last year?
  - 10 Does she drive to work?

#### 4 1 C 2 B 3 A 4 B 5 B 6 A 7 A 8 C

- 5 1 Did the police catch the drug dealers?
  - 2 Have Lucy and Felicia come back from holiday?
  - 3 When do English children start school?
  - 4 What is that man doing in the garden? or What is that man in the garden doing?
  - 5 Are the buses running next week?
  - 6 Has the film started?
  - 7 Has John's letter arrived yet?
  - 8 Is Alicia working today?
  - 9 Does Paul know your girlfriend?
  - 10 Why is Kate crying?

## page 106

- 1 'Why are you here?' 2 'Where have you been 1 today?' 3 'When are you going to Glasgow?' 4 'How do you like Scotland?' 5 'How did you come here?' 6 'Why did you come by car?' 7 'Where do you live?' 8 'When are you leaving?' 9 'When will we see you again?'
- 1 How far is 2 How tall is 3 How fast was 2 4 How often do you 5 How big is

  - 6 How long did you 7 How well do you

## page 107

- 3 1 C What colour 2 D What sort/kind of 3 B What size 4 F What colour 5 H What sort/kind of 6 E What time 7 G What size
- 1 'What's your new airlfriend like?' 4
  - 2 'What are you new neighbours like?'
  - 3 'What's your new car like?'
  - 4 'What's your new house like?'
  - 5 'What's your new job like?'
  - 6 'What's your new school like?'

### page 108

- 1 plays 2 made 3 did she marry? 4 does 1 this word mean? 5 did you say? 6 told
- 2 1 How many people came to her party?
  - 2 Which train did Peter catch?
  - 3 Which bus goes to the station?
  - 4 How many languages does Douglas speak?
  - 5 What sort of music does Alice like?
  - 6 What sort of music keeps the baby quiet?
- 1 Alice. 2 Who loves Ann? Pete. 3 Who does 3 Ann love? Joe. 4 Who loves Alice? Fred. 5 Who does Joe love? Mary. 6 Who does Pete love? Ann. 7 Who loves Pete? Nobody/No one.

### page 109

- 5 1 (a) What did Melissa buy? (b) Who bought a coat?
  - 2 (a) What did the bus hit? (b) What hit that tree?
  - 3 (a) Who lost the office keys? (b) What did Rose lose?
  - 4 (a) What does Paul teach? (b) Who teaches Arabic?
  - 5 (a) Who hates computers? (b) What does Mike hate?
- 1 Who first reached the North Pole? 2 Who 6 wrote War and Peace? 3 Who built the Great Wall of China? 4 Who painted Sunflowers?

- 1 1 Is your sister Caroline talking to the police?
  - 2 Do all the people here understand Spanish?
  - 3 Did most of the football team play well?
  - 4 Is the man at the table in the corner asleep?

- 2 1 How much does a ticket for Saturday's concert cost? 2 What time does the film about skiing in New Zealand start? 3 What does the second word in the first sentence mean? 4 Why does the man in the flat downstairs want to change his job?
- 3 1 Why are all those people laughing? 2 What is that big black dog eating? 3 Is everybody in your family going to Scotland for Christmas?
  4 What game are those children playing?
  - 5 Where are Lola and her friends studying?
  - 6 Are those people over there speaking French?

- 1 1 to 2 from 3 about 4 about 5 in 6 from 7 with 8 for 9 to 10 with 11 to 12 on
- 2 1 'What are you thinking about?' 2 'Who does Alice work for?' 3 'Who/What were you talking about?' 4 'What are you interested in?'
  5 'What are you looking at?' 6 'Who did you stay with?' 7 'Who do you work with?'
  8 'What did you spend the money on?' 9 'What was the film about?' 10 'Where can I get tickets from?'
- 3 1 What 2 Who 3 What 4 Who 5 Who
   6 What 7 to 8 for 9 Where 10 What
   11 to 12 for

### page 112

 Milk's not red. / Milk isn't red. 2 The children aren't at home. 3 Max hasn't been to Egypt.
 You mustn't give this letter / it to her mother.
 I won't be in the office tomorrow. 6 I couldn't swim when I was two years old. 7 We weren't in Birmingham yesterday. 8 I'm not English.

### page 113

- 4 1 Shakespeare didn't live in New York.
  - 2 Phone books don't tell you about words.
  - 3 The earth doesn't go round the moon.
  - 4 Most Algerians don't speak Russian.
  - 5 Cookers don't keep food cold.
  - 6 The Second World War didn't end in 1955.
  - 7 John doesn't know my sister.

6 1 don't 2 wasn't 3 doesn't 4 haven't
5 aren't 6 won't 7 didn't/couldn't
8 didn't/couldn't 9 hasn't 10 'm not

### page 114

- 1 1 not 2 not 3 no 4 not 5 no 6 not 7 not 8 Not 9 no 10 not
- There are no newspapers. 2 There's no time.
   There were no letters. 4 I saw no light.
   He gave no answer.

## page 115

- Nobody lives in that house. 2 I'll never understand my dog. 3 The children told me nothing. 4 I have no money. 5 I could hardly see the road.
- 2 1 I saw nobody. 2 We had no trouble.
  3 My parents never go out. 4 I looked for the dog, but it was nowhere in the house.
  5 I ate nothing yesterday. 6 It hardly rained for three months. 7 Nobody spoke.
- 3 1 My grandmother never drives fast.
  - 2 Andrew doesn't play the guitar.
  - 3 When she talked, I understood nothing.
  - 4 I don't like Ann's new shoes.
  - 5 Nothing happened this morning.
  - 6 There's nowhere to sit down in the station.
  - 7 I hardly watch TV.
  - 8 Nobody wants to play tennis.

- 1 Who cooked dinner? 2 What did Julia cook?
  3 What hit Joe? 4 Who did the ball hit?
  5 What does Sarah play? 6 Who plays the guitar? 7 How many languages does Beth speak? 8 Who speaks eight languages?
  9 Who ate Mum's breakfast? 10 What did Dad eat?
- 2 1 Who did you go with? 2 Who are you writing to? 3 Who did you buy it for? 4 Who is the letter from? 5 What were you talking about?
  6 What did you carry it in? 7 How much did you sell your car for? 8 What did she hit him with? 9 Who did you send the flowers to?
  10 Where does she come from?

3 1 Why are all those people looking at me?
2 Did Anna and Oscar have lunch together yesterday? 3 Does that man in the dark coat work for the government? 4 Is/Are the football team playing in Scotland next Saturday?
5 What are those children doing in the garden?
6 What does the first word in this sentence mean?
7 Are Tom and his sister staying at your house this week? 8 When are Emma's teacher and her class going to Paris? 9 What did that strange woman say to you? 10 When did/will Mary and Phil get married?

## page 117

- 4 1 My father never eats meat. 2 Peter doesn't like jazz. 3 There's nothing to do in this town.
  4 I understood nothing. 5 Sally doesn't play the piano. 6 I hardly go to the cinema.
  7 Nothing happened. 8 Nobody wants to talk to you. 9 I've got no money. 10 I haven't got enough money.
- 6 1 Adult grizzly bears can't climb trees. 3 Tigers don't live in Africa. 4 The first people didn't hunt dinosaurs. 5 Spiders aren't insects.
  6 Cats can't see when there is no light.

#### page 118

- 1 live 2 Are all your friends coming ...
   3 Correct. 4 Do you play 5 are you
   6 Correct. 7 Correct. 8 can 1 9 told you
   10 phone 11 don't speak 12 anywhere
   13 not 14 Correct. 15 What are you looking
   at? 16 Correct. 17 anything 18 not
   19 helped 20 not
- 2 1 Who 2 Why 3 Where 4 How old
  5 What colour 6 How tall 7 What sort/kind of
  8 How fast 9 What size 10 What ... like
- 3 1 Kelly/She isn't at work. 2 I haven't forgotten your face. 3 Peter/He doesn't drive taxis.
  4 We didn't go to Portugal. 5 You mustn't use that one. 6 Henry/He doesn't eat meat.
  7 These people / They don't play soccer.
  8 Luke/He didn't break his leg. 9 I won't be at home in the afternoon. 10 Elisabeth/She doesn't read books.

- 4 1 Have she and her sisters been to America?
  - 2 Do she and her sisters like dancing?
  - 3 Can she and her sisters swim?
  - 4 Will she and her sisters be here tomorrow?
  - 5 Did she and her sisters go to the party yesterday?
  - 6 Have she and her sisters ever studied history?
  - 7 Can she and her sisters drive?
  - 8 Did she and her sisters phone last night?
  - 9 Were she and her sisters talking to Philip when you saw them?
  - 10 Will she and her sisters get married soon?

## page 120

- 1 1 2 to 3 4 5 -; to 6 -; to 7 to 8 to
- 2 1 to learn 2 help 3 see 4 buy 5 to hear 6 to go 7 send 8 stop
- 3 1 not to have 2 not to break 3 not to go to sleep 4 not to make 5 not to have
  6 not to talk 7 not to wake 8 not to tell
  9 not to see 10 not to play

## page 121

- 1 to drive 2 to catch 3 to ask for 4 to wait for 5 to meet 6 to buy 7 to finish 8 to learn 9 to hear 10 to relax.
- 2 1 to clean 2 to buy 3 to get
  4 to open 5 to tell 6 to earn 7 to go
  8 to wish 9 to make 10 to get up
- 3 1 E to cut 2 F to see 3 B to buy 4 C to open 5 D to dry

### page 122

 1 refuse to 2 start to 3 promise to 4 expect to 5 try to 6 decide to 7 want to 8 learn to 9 plan to 10 need to 11 forget to 12 seem to 13 begin to 14 continue to 15 prefer to

## page 123

2 1 needs to 2 agreed to 3 decided to
4 tried to 5 learnt to 6 promised to
7 forgot to 8 refused to 9 want to
10 started to 11 prefers to 12 continued to
13 hopes to 14 seemed to 15 began to

- Sarah would like John to cook (tonight).
  - 2 The policeman wants the man to move his car.
  - 3 Helen's mother wants her to wash her face.
  - 4 Bill would like Andy to help him.
  - 5 Roger would like Karen to lend him some money.
  - 6 Jessie wants Peter to be quiet for a minute.
  - 7 David would like Alice to have dinner with him.
  - 8 Mike would like the government to put more money into schools.
  - 9 Lucy wants Bill to stop playing that terrible music.
  - 10 Mary would like Gordon to make the bed for once.
- 2 1 Her boss wants her to work harder.
  - 2 Her little brother wants her to buy him a bicycle.
  - 3 Her dog wants her to take him for a walk.
  - 4 Her boyfriend wants her to go to America with him.
  - 5 Her friend Martha wants her to lend her a blue dress.
  - 6 Her guitar teacher wants her to buy a better guitar.
  - 7 Her mother wants her to spend every weekend at home.
  - 8 Her sister wants her to go to Russia with her.
  - 9 The people downstairs want her to stop playing loud music at night.
  - 10 Her father wants her to study economics.

# page 125

- 3 1 I didn't tell Alan to go home. 2 Tasked Fred to be quiet. 3 Do you expect her to phone?
  4 I helped Joe to carry the books. 5 The policewoman told me to show her my driving licence. 6 Ann helped me to finish the work.
  7 Tasked the shop assistant to help me.
  8 Tneed you to stay with me. 9 Texpect her to pass her exam. 10 Tneed some people to help with the party.
- 4 1 His father wanted him to get rich.
  2 His sister Isabel wanted him to be good at sport.
  3 His brother Andy wanted him to go to university.
  4 His sister Nicole didn't want him to go to university.
  5 His brother Henry wanted him to be a racing driver.
  6 His grandmother wanted him to be a doctor.
  7 His friend Anthony wanted him to have an easy life.
  8 His maths teacher wanted him to study maths.
  9 His literature teacher wanted him to study literature.
  10 His music teacher didn't want him to study music.

# page 126

- 1 1 It wasn't necessary to phone John.
  - 2 It's impossible to understand that woman.
  - 3 It's nice to stay in bed late on Sundays.
  - 4 It's sometimes difficult to say 'No'.
  - 5 It was easy to make our children happy.
  - 6 It's sometimes dangerous to tell the truth.
  - 7 It's expensive to eat out in restaurants.
  - 8 It's almost impossible to learn a foreign language perfectly.
  - 9 It's nice to travel.
  - 10 It was good to visit my parents.
- 2 1 It was nice to have 2 It was interesting to see 3 it was a bit hard to understand
  4 It was very easy to make 5 It was expensive to eat 6 it was dangerous to swim 7 it was impossible to be

# page 127

- 4 (our answers)
  - 1 It's important to practise grammar.
  - 2 It's important not to translate everything.
  - 3 It's important to read a lot.
  - 4 It's important to read things that interest you.
  - 5 It's not important to have perfect pronunciation.
  - 6 It's important to have good enough pronunciation.
  - 7 It's important not to make too many mistakes.
  - 8 It's not necessary to speak without mistakes.
  - 9 It's important to practise listening to English.
  - 10 It's important to know 3,000 5,000 words.
  - 11 It's not necessary to know 50,000 words.
  - 12 It's important to have a good English-English dictionary.
  - 13 It's important to have a good bilingual dictionary.

- 1 1 to meet 2 to see 3 sorry 4 afraid 5 to have 6 to find 7 surprised 8 pleased 9 to leave 10 happy
- 2 1 Eleanor's silly to listen to Mark. 2 Elizabeth was wrong to take the train without a ticket.
  3 I was stupid to sit on my glasses. 4 I was wrong to wash a white shirt with a red one.
  5 You're silly to believe Luke. 6 You're right to eat a good breakfast. 7 You were crazy to lend money to Chris. 8 I was stupid to think the new Prime Minister was a good man. 9 Rebecca was wrong to tell Peter she loved him. 10 I was right to stay in bed until lunchtime.

- 1 is old enough to work 2 isn't old enough to leave 3 isn't old enough to leave 4 is old enough to leave 5 isn't old enough to 6 is old enough to change 7 is old enough to drive
- He's not tall enough to play basketball.
   She's not old enough to vote.
   I'm not strong enough to open this bottle.
   My French is good enough to read a newspaper.
   He isn't old enough to go out by himself.
   He's intelligent enough to do well at university.
- 3 1 Helen's too ill to work. 2 My grandfather's too old to travel. 3 I'm too bored to listen any longer. 4 Cara's too hot to play tennis.
  5 I'm too hungry to work. 6 I'm too tired to drive. 7 I was too afraid to move. 8 Molly was too ill last week to go to school. OR ... too ill to go to school last week. 9 Our dog's too fat to run. 10 My mother's too deaf to understand what people say.

#### page 130

- 1 homework to do. 2 letters to post? 3 film to watch 4 dress to wear 5 shopping to do 6 friend to see
- 2 1 anything to wear. 2 somewhere to work.
  3 nothing to do 4 nobody/no one to teach.
  5 something to finish. 6 nowhere to go.
  7 somebody/someone to love. 8 anywhere to stay 9 somebody/someone/anybody/anyone to help 10 something to carry.

#### page 131

- Skiing; reading. 2 Flying; going by train.
   Eating; washing. 4 Speaking; writing or Writing; speaking. 5 Understanding; listening.
   Shopping; shaving. 7 Working; resting.
   Smoking; driving.
- 4 2 NO CAMPING 3 NO SMOKING 4 NO CYCLING 5 NO FISHING

#### page 132

1 1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B 5 I 6 J 7 G 8 H 9 F 2 1 hearing 2 smoking 3 going 4 watching
 5 washing 6 closing 7 working 8 getting
 9 skiing 10 asking.

### page 133

- Bob is quite good at running, but not very good at cycling. 2 Sue is not very good at drawing, but very good at running. 3 Mark is quite good at swimming, and very good at running. 4 Bob is bad at swimming, but quite good at singing. 5 Jane is very good at running, and quite good at cycling. 6 Mark is not very good at singing, but quite good at drawing.
  7 Jane is not very good at drawing, but quite good at singing. 8 Sue is quite good at singing, and very good at singing.
- 5 1 Ellie stayed awake by drinking lots of coffee.
  2 Paul drank three glasses of water without stopping. 3 Charles woke us up by turning the TV on. 4 You can find out the meaning of a word by using a dictionary. 5 Mike paid for his new house without borrowing any money. 6 Helen lost her driving licence by driving too fast, too often. 7 Carl did all his homework without asking for any help. 8 Teresa cooks all her food without using any salt.

#### page 134

- 1 1 taking 2 eating 3 shopping 4 driving 5 stopping 6 working
- 2 1 They've just finished playing tennis. 2 All that week, it kept raining. 3 It's just stopped snowing. 4 He's given up smoking. 5 He can't help thinking of/about Annie. 6 They're going shopping. 7 She's practising writing.

- 3 1 washing 2 watching 3 working
  - 4 playing 5 wearing 6 studying
    - 7 watching 8 shopping 9 cooking; eating

- 1 I was surprised to find a cat in my bed. 2 She was wrong to leave her job. 3 I've got no money to buy a car. 4 I was crazy to give Peter money. 5 We were glad to say goodbye to Aunt Emma. 6 I was sorry not to have time to phone you. 7 I was too tired to work. 8 Here are some letters to post. 9 I've got no time to wash the dishes. 10 I need something to drink.
- 2 1 D to learn 2 E to watch 3 F to stop
  4 B to make 5 C to keep 6 H to pay
  7 G to cut 8 J to impress 9 K to catch
  10 I to look for

### page 137

- 4 1 sorry to say 2 unhappy to think 3 happy not to have 4 pleased to find 5 surprised to find 6 happy to be 7 pleased to see
- 5 1 They want me to buy a yacht. 2 They want me to buy a bike. 3 They want me to buy a motorboat. 4 They want me to buy a plane.
  5 They want me to buy a motorbike.

#### page 138

- 1 to work 2 to see 3 smoking. 4 driving 5 to buy 6 to talk 7 sending 8 talking. 9 to come 10 speaking.
- 2 1 Correct. 2 not to have 3 to learn
  4 Correct. 5 by taking 6 smoking
  7 Correct. 8 to go 9 Correct. 10 Correct.
  11 you to pay 12 Correct. 13 to get
  14 eating 15 changing 16 Correct.
  17 to see 18 Correct. 19 not to forget
  20 Correct.
- 3 1 Anna wants Beth to look after the children.
  - 2 Joe wants Jack to lend him money.
  - 3 Peter's mother wants him to clean his room.
  - 4 Sam wants Joe to go shopping.
  - 5 Tom would like Sarah to pass the newspaper.
  - 6 Mike's parents would like him to study medicine.
  - 7 The boss would like Emma to answer the phone.
  - 8 Mary doesn't want Jack to look at her like that.
  - 9 Harry doesn't want Jim to say anything to the police.
  - 10 Maria's mother doesn't want her to fall in love with a pop singer.

#### page 140

- 1 get (some) money 2 got into 3 got (a long) letter 4 Get out 5 get wet. 6 get cold.
   7 get off 8 get (really) hungry 9 get(ting) tired 10 gets dark
- 2 1 got burnt. 2 getting divorced. 3 got broken 4 get undressed 5 gets lost.
  6 get stolen. 7 get dressed 8 get changed.
  9 get invited 10 got married

#### page 141

- 1 1 A laugh 2 C wait 3 B ask 4 E belong 5 J listen 6 H Look 7 G think 8 F talks 9 I happened
- 2 1 believe in; belong to; happen to; laugh at; listen to; look at; talk about; think about; wait for
- 3 1 for 2 at 3 to 4 after 5 for 6 for 7 about 8 to 9 for 10 about 11 into 12 on 13 to 14 in 15 on 16 - 17 in 18 out of 19 at 20 off

#### page 142

- 1 1 wake/get 2 go 3 round. 4 on. 5 back 6 up! 7 lie 8 Go
- 2 1 up 2 down 3 back

- 3 1 on 2 on 3 down 4 off 5 down 6 back 7 up 8 look 9 pick 10 give 11 let 12 fill 13 take 14 Break
- 4 1 Could you turn the TV down? Could you turn it down? 2 You can throw the potatoes away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take your glasses off? Why don't you take them off?
  4 Please put that knife down. Please put it down.
  - 5 Shall I fill your glass up? Shall I fill it up?
  - 6 I'll switch the heating on. I'll switch it on.

- 1 1 I lent my bicycle to Joe yesterday.
  - 2 | often read Lucy stories.
  - 3 Carol teaches maths to small children.
  - 4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
  - 5 Amanda often gives flowers to her mother.
  - 6 Could you buy me a newspaper?
  - 7 I found my parents a hotel room.
  - 8 Pass Mr Andrews this paper.
  - 9 Luke has written Joy a letter.
  - 10 I want to get Peter a good watch.
- Sally gave Fred a book. 2 Fred gave Annie flowers. 3 Annie gave Luke a picture.
   Luke gave Mary a sweater. 5 Mary gave Joe a camera.
- 3 1 find 2 Give; give 3 buy

#### page 145

- 1 has his tyres checked 2 has his oil changed
   3 has his car repaired 4 has his shoes cleaned
   5 has his gardening done 6 has his letters typed
- 2 1 She should have it repaired. 2 He should have them cleaned. 3 They should have it repaired. 4 He should have it cut. 5 They should have it serviced. 6 She should have them checked. 7 He should have it repaired.
  8 He should have it checked.

### page 146

- 1 1 B 2 D 3 C
- 2 1 Turn 2 go 3 Turn 4 take 5 turn
- 3 1 Hurry up! 2 Be careful. 3 Help!
  4 Have a good holiday. 5 Sleep well.
  6 Don't forget 7 Wait for me! 8 Have some more 9 Follow me 10 Don't worry.
  11 Come in; sit down; make yourself at home.

#### page 147

- Let's not go for a walk. 2 Let's play tennis.
   Let's play cards. 4 Let's go swimming.
  - 5 Let's not go swimming. 6 Let's go skiing.
  - 7 Let's watch TV. 8 Let's go to France/Paris.

2 1 Athens. 2 to Copenhagen. 3 go to Vienna.
4 'Let's go to Prague.' 5 'Let's go to Warsaw.'
6 'Let's go to Moscow.' 7 'Let's go to Marrakesh.'
8 'Let's go to Istanbul.' 9 'Let's go to Bangkok.'
10 'Let's go to Beijing.' 11 'Let's go to Mexico City.' 12 'Let's go to Rio.'

#### page 148

- 1 1 up 2 round 3 fill 4 turn 5 on 6 Put 7 up 8 back. 9 Go 10 wake/get
- 2 1 Could you wash the cups up? Could you wash them up? 2 You can throw those papers away. You can throw them away. 3 Why don't you take off your coat? Why don't you take it off?
  4 You need to fill this form in. You need to fill it in. 5 Please bring back my bicycle. Please bring it back. 6 Let me fill your glass up. Let me fill it up. 7 Please put that gun down. Please put it down. 8 I'll switch on the TV. I'll switch it on. 9 Can you cut the onions up? Can you cut them up? 10 Pick up your coat. Pick it up.
- 3 1 Alice sent €500 to her sister. 2 Sarah bought the children ice creams. 3 Let's send a postcard to Granny. 4 Ruth showed the others the photo.
  5 I gave the secretary some flowers. 6 Can you find me John's address? 7 I found Aunt Patsy a hotel. 8 Take Mrs Lewis these papers.
  9 I've given all the information to George.
  10 I want to buy my sister a nice present.

### page 149

- 4 1 Come 2 worry. 3 Have 4 out! 5 Make 6 Help 7 Sleep 8 Follow 9 Have 10 forget
- 5 1 Pick 2 Hold 3 Put 4 Let 5 fetch 6 continue 7 throw 8 Get 9 Open 10 Get 11 Kneel 12 blow 13 Drink 14 remove 15 Telephone 16 Find

- 1 1 A, B, D 2 E 3 A, D 4 A, C 5 C 6 A 7 B, C 8 C, D 9 A, C 10 A, B, C, D
- 2 1 to 2 at 3 for 4 about 5 for 6 for 7 after 8 - 9 for 10 on 11 to 12 in 13 to 14 at 15 to 16 - 17 to 18 -; on 19 about 20 from

- 1 1 a 2 an 3 a 4 a 5 an 6 a 7 an 8 a
- 2 1 an old friend 2 a big apple 3 an unhappy child 4 an early train 5 a rich uncle
  6 an easy job 7 a hard exercise
  8 a European language 9 a small book
- 4 1 an envelope 2 A calculator 3 a torch. 4 a hammer. 5 A knife 6 An alarm clock

## page 153

- 1 1 children PC; flower SC; love U; meat U; mountains PC; music U; nose SC; oil U; photos PC; piano SC; river SC; snow U; songs PC; table SC; windows PC
- **2** 1 2 an 3 –; 4 5 6 a 7 8 an 9 a 10 –; –
- 1 cotton or wool 2 metal, plastic and glass (and perhaps leather) 3 brick, wood, metal and glass (and perhaps stone) 4 cotton or silk or wool 5 wood or metal or glass or plastic (or perhaps stone)
- 4 1 a 2 one 3 a 4 one 5 a 6 one

## page 154

- 1 1 the 2 the 3 an 4 a; a 5 the 6 a; the 7 the 8 the 9 The 10 a 11 the 12 the; the
- 2 1 Fa 2 D the 3 B the 4 C the 5 A a

## page 155

- **3** 1 a 2 a 3 An 4 The 5 the 6 The 7 the 8 a 9 the 10 the 11 the
- 4 1 This is a mouse. It's the smallest animal in the group. 2 This is a monkey. It's the most intelligent animal in the group. 3 This is an eagle. It's the fastest bird in the group. 4 This is a parrot. It's the only blue and yellow bird in the group. 5 This is a pigeon. It's the smallest bird in the group. 6 This is a spider. It's the only creature with eight legs in the group. 7 This is an ant. It's the only creature with six legs in the group. 8 This is a snake. It's the only creature with no legs in the group. 9 This is a frog. It's the only green creature in the group.

## page 156

- 1 He's a cook. 2 He's a builder. 3 She's a driver. 4 He's a teacher. 5 She's a photographer. 6 She's a dentist. 7 He's a hairdresser. 8 She's a musician. 9 He's a shop assistant.
- 3 1 A bag is a container. 2 A hammer is a tool.
  3 A piano is an instrument. 4 A bus is a vehicle.
  5 A screwdriver is a tool. 6 A guitar is an instrument. 7 A box is a container.
  8 A hotel is a building.

### page 157

- 1 a long neck. 2 big ears. 3 a loud voice.
   4 a big beard. 5 dark hair.
- **2** A 1 a 2 3 a 4 -B 1 a 2 a 3 - 4 - 5 - 6 a 7 a

#### page 158

- 2 1 Books 2 the books 3 English people
  4 The flowers 5 Life 6 the words
  7 The food 8 Water 9 the windows
- 3 1 drivers 2 money 3 understand; understand 4 think 5 think 6 things; things

## page 160

- Spanish; Peru. 2 Uncle Eric; Lake Superior.
   Oxford Street; London. 4 Napoleon
   Kilimanjaro; Africa. 6 France; Switzerland or Switzerland; France.
- 2 1 Himalayas 2 Denmark 3 Japanese
   4 People's Republic of China 5 Trafalgar Square
   6 Mediterranean 7 Ireland 8 United
   Kingdom 9 USA

### page 161

- **3** 1 the 2 the 3 the 4 5 the 6 the 7 8 -
- **4** 1 2 3 the 4 the 5 6 the 7 -8 the 9 the 10 - 11 - 12 the 13 -14 - 15 the 16 - 17 - 18 the 19 the 20 the

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *l am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

#### ANSWER KEY 333

- I lunch; Tuesday. 2 Easter. 3 next 4 winter.
   Saturdays. 6 September 7 August 23<sup>rd</sup>.
   8 1616. 9 Christmas. 10 last
- 2 1 bed 2 university 3 church 4 hospital
  5 work; car 6 prison 7 foot 8 home
  9 holiday. 10 school.

#### page 163

- 3 1 G a radio 2 C a garden 3 F a blanket
   4 D a hundred 5 E a million 6 A an
   American passport 7 J a tourist guide
   8 H a stupid idea 9 I a job
- 4 1 Patrick and I work in the same office.
  - 2 We're going to the theatre tonight.
  - 3 My room is at the top of the house.
  - 4 Would you like to live in the country?
  - 5 We usually go to the mountains at Christmas.
  - 6 Joe always sits at the back of the class.
  - 7 Suzie's office is on the right.
  - 8 I would like to live near the sea.
  - 9 Why are you driving in the middle of the road?
  - 10 Please sign your name at the bottom of this paper.

#### page 164

- **1** 1 a 2 the; the 3 an 4 the 5 6 -7 The 8 - 9 - 10 a 11 - 12 the 13 -; - 14 - 15 the 16 the 17 - 18 -19 - 20 -; -
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 X 4 √ 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 √ 10 X
- 3 COUNTABLE: diamond; holiday; price; photo; shop UNCOUNTABLE: coffee; hair; snow; information; music

#### page 165

**4** 1 - 2 - 3 - 4 a 5 a 6 the 7 the 8 the 9 a 10 - 11 a 12 a 13 the 14 the 15 the 16 a 17 The 18 the 19 the 20 the 21 a 22 the 23 the 24 The 25 the

### page 166

- 1 1 an 2 a 3 an 4 a 5 a 6 an 7 a 8 an 9 a 10 an
- **2** 1 2 a 3 -; 4 5 -; 6 a 7 -8 a 9 a 10 -; -
- **3** 1 2 3 4 the 5 6 the; the 7 - 8 an 9 the 10 the 11 - 12 -13 the 14 a; the 15 - 16 - 17 a 18 -; - 19 -; - 20 a
- 4 1 to Professor Anderson 2 Correct.
  3 the Czech Republic 4 Correct. 5 Correct.
  6 Correct. 7 I'll see you next Tuesday.
  8 a passport 9 a doctor 10 Correct.

#### page 168

- 1 1 these 2 This 3 These 4 These 5 this
- 2 1 those 2 those 3 that 4 Those 5 that3 (possible answers)

This plate is blue. That plate is white. These glasses are green. Those glasses are red. These spoons are black. That spoon is silver. This saucer is blue. Those saucers are white. This bowl is green. That bowl is red. (Other answers are possible.)

#### page 169

- 4 1 I'm enjoying 2 will be 3 Those 4 was 5 that 6 this 7 this 8 was 9 that 10 this
- 5 1 that 2 that 3 This 4 those 5 this
  6 these 7 This 8 That 9 this 10 those
  11 this 12 that 13 these 14 those
  15 that 16 these 17 this 18 those
  19 this 20 those

- 1 1 any 2 any 3 some 4 some 5 any 6 some 7 any 8 any 9 any
- any more to drink. 2 any foreign languages.
   any games 4 any sleep 5 any English newspapers

Could I have some coffee? 2 Would you like some bread? 3 Would you like some rice?
Could I have some tomatoes? 5 Would you like some more potatoes? 6 Could I have some more milk?

### page 171

- 4 1 E 2 D 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 F
- 5 1 buy any. 2 some tomorrow. 3 some (in front of) you. 4 want any. 5 any good 6 put some
- 6 1 wasn't 2 didn't do 3 didn't have
   4 didn't ask 5 didn't find

## page 172

- 1 Nothing. 2 anywhere. 3 someone
   4 anything 5 everywhere. 6 No one/Nobody
   7 Nowhere 8 something. 9 Everyone/
   Everybody 10 anybody 11 Everything
   12 somewhere
- 2 1 anybody/anyone 2 nowhere
   3 anything. 4 Nobody/No one 5 nothing.
   6 everything
- 3 1 knows 2 happens 3 is 4 ls 5 Has 6 agrees
- 4 1 X 2 √ 3 √ 4 X 5 X 6 X 7 √ 8 X 9 X 10 X

## page 173

- 1 1 much 2 much 3 many 4 many 5 much 6 much 7 many 8 many 9 much 10 many 11 many 12 much 13 many 14 much 15 much
- 2 1 How many symphonies did Beethoven write?2 How many cents are there in a dollar?
  - 3 How many kilometres are there in a mile?
  - 4 How many states are there in the USA?
  - 5 How much blood is there in a person's body?
  - 6 How much air do we breathe every minute?
  - 7 How many points do you get for a try in rugby union?
  - 8 How much food does an elephant eat every day?

### page 174

- 1 1 have 2 are 3 has 4 a lot 5 work 6 A lot 7 need 8 is
- 2 1 plenty of food 2 plenty of time
  3 plenty of patience 4 plenty of warm clothes
  5 plenty of eggs 6 plenty of water
  7 plenty of ideas

### page 175

- 1 1 a little 2 a few 3 a few 4 a little 5 a few 6 a little 7 a few 8 a little 9 a little 10 a few
- 2 1 alittle 2 little 3 few 4 a few 5 a few 6 few 7 few 8 A little
- 3 1 There was only a little room on the bus. or There wasn't much room on the bus.
  - 2 Only a few people learn foreign languages perfectly. OR Not many people learn foreign languages perfectly.
  - 3 She only has a few friends. or She doesn't have many friends.
  - 4 We only get a little rain here in summer. OR We don't get much rain here in summer.
  - 5 This car only uses a little petrol. or This car doesn't use much petrol.
  - 6 There are only a few flowers in the garden. OR There aren't many flowers in the garden.
  - 7 Our town only gets a few tourists. OR Our town doesn't get many tourists.
  - 8 We only have a little time to catch the train. OR We don't have much time to catch the train.

- 1 1 not enough food 2 not enough strings 3 not enough seats 4 not enough water
- 2 1 enough time 2 enough girls. 3 enough chairs. 4 enough work. 5 enough money 6 enough salt
- 3 1 not loud enough 2 not comfortable enough
  - 3 not bright enough 4 not easy enough
  - 5 not clear enough 6 not fresh enough
  - 7 not deep enough

4 1 warm enough 2 early enough 3 enough beds 4 often enough 5 quiet enough
6 enough children 7 enough milk 8 enough help 9 sweet enough 10 young enough

### page 177

- 1 1 too old 2 too much trouble 3 too many problems 4 too much money 5 too ill 6 too much work 7 too hot 8 too many students 9 too many cars 10 too difficult
- 2 1 too low 2 too short 3 too light
  4 too soft 5 not wide enough 6 not cheap
  enough 7 not wet enough 8 not thin enough
- 3 (possible answers)

1 too many (pairs of) socks 2 enough (pairs of) boots 3 too many pocket torches 4 not enough (tubes of) suncream 5 too many waterproof jackets 6 too many pairs of sunglasses 7 too much bread 8 too much cheese 9 not enough water 10 not enough oranges 11 not enough chocolate 12 enough soap 13 too many toothbrushes (Other answers are possible.)

### page 178

- The films all start at 7 o'clock. 2 All our secretaries speak Arabic. 3 All the children went home. 4 These coats all cost the same.
   Languages all have grammar. 6 All the people voted for the Radical Conservatives.
   My friends all live in London. 8 All these houses need repairs. 9 Those shops all belong to the same family. 10 All children need love.
- 2 1 The offices all close at weekends. 2 The lessons will all start on Tuesday. 3 Those children can all swim. 4 Our windows are all dirty. 5 Sorry, the tickets have all gone.
  6 We all went to New York for Christmas.
  7 The shops will all be open tomorrow.
  - 8 We all stopped for lunch at 12.30.
  - 9 These watches are all too expensive.
  - 10 The lights have all gone out.

## page 179

- Every animal breathes air. 2 She's read every book in the library. 3 I paid every bill. 4 Every computer is working today. 5 Every language has verbs. 6 Every London train stops at Reading. 7 I've written to every customer.
   Every glass is dirty. 9 Every child can be difficult. 10 Every road was closed.
- No. 2 Yes.... to every letter. 3 No. 4 No.
   5 No. 6 Yes. Every house ...

### page 180

- Both 2 both 3 either; both 4 Both; neither
   either 6 both 7 Either 8 either; both
   9 Either 10 Both; neither 11 both 12 either
- 2 1 both sides 2 Both (her) parents
  3 both directions. 4 Both teams
  5 both knees 6 both (my) earrings
  7 both ends 8 both (of his) socks.
  9 eyes 10 both sexes.

# page 181

- 1 not much of the milk 2 any of my friends
   3 enough of that meat 4 some of the big
   plates 5 a few of her ideas 6 most of these
   mistakes 7 too many of the students
   8 more of those potatoes 9 not much of my
   money 10 not enough of his work
- **2** 1 2 of 3 of 4 of 5 6 7 -8 of 9 of 10 - 11 -; - 12 of
- 3 1 Most 2 most of the 3 Most of the
  4 Most 5 Most 6 most of the 7 Most
  8 most 9 most of the 10 most

- 1 this 2 that 3 those 4 This 5 these
   6 anything 7 any 8 some 9 Nothing.
   10 without
- 2 1 every 2 each/either 3 everything. 4 all
  5 every 6 neither 7 either 8 both
  9 everybody 10 all

- 3 1 a little 2 few 3 a few 4 a few 5 little 6 lots of 7 many 8 think 9 too 10 big enough
- 4 1 Most of 2 Most 3 A few of 4 any
  5 some of 6 most of; all of 7 enough
  8 too many 9 A lot. 10 many of

- 5 1 f 2 b 3 j 4 c 5 i 6 d 7 g 8 h 9 e 10 a
- 6 half of us; most of the rest; few; a lot; most of us; half; some of us; how many; a lot; all of us

### page 184

- He spoke fast, but I understood everything.
   I'm hungry, but there isn't anything / there's nothing to eat.
  - 3 She has a lot of / plenty of money.
  - 4 A lot of us were at the party last night.
  - 5 Most people think I'm right.
  - 6 He was carrying a heavy bag in each hand.
  - 7 Everything is very difficult.
  - 8 | like every kind / all kinds of music.
  - 9 I think you're driving too fast.
  - 10 If everybody is ready, we can go.
- 2 1 this 2 That 3 those 4 that 5 This 6 somebody 7 I need 8 some 9 anything 10 anywhere
- 3 1 all 2 is 3 Both 4 each 5 every
  6 a little 7 little 8 a little 9 a few
  10 A little. 11 lots of 12 many
  13 too many 14 much 15 is 16 each
  17 everything 18 every 19 neither
  20 something

#### page 186

- 1 1 her 2 us 3 him 4 they 5 her 6 them 7 her; she
- 2 1 He 2 them 3 him 4 They 5 him 6 She
- 3 1 They 2 It 3 It 4 them 5 it 6 it 7 them. 8 they

#### page 187

- 5 1 He has moved to London. 2 They are on that chair. 3 I like them. 4 She is going to study medicine. 5 No, it is difficult. 6 I put it in the garage. 7 I/We play tennis. 8 It is beautiful.
- 6 1 It's warm. 2 It's windy. 3 It's snowing.
  4 It's hot. 5 It's raining. 6 It's sunny.
  7 It's cloudy. 8 It's cold.

#### page 188

1 1 her 2 his 3 Whose 4 its 5 my 6 their 7 his 8 her 9 your 10 his 11 its 12 her

#### page 189

- 2 1 James sold his bike to Carlos.
  - 2 Carlos sold his dog to Sara.
  - 3 Sara sold her house to Pat and Sam.
  - 4 Pat and Sam sold their motorbike to Harry.
  - 5 Harry sold his piano to Alice.
  - 6 Alice sold her coat to Michael.
  - 7 Michael sold his camera to Helen.
  - 8 Helen sold her guitar to Marilyn.
  - 9 Marilyn sold her hair dryer to Tom.
  - 10 Tom sold his dictionary to Amy.
- 3 1 their son Joe 2 their daughter Emma
  3 their camper van. 4 her brother Frank
  5 her sister Lucy 6 his sister Louise
  - 7 his brother Simon 8 their friend Pete

- 1 theirs. 2 looks better than yours.
   3 Yours looks terrible. 4 That dog looks like ours. 5 That car's not hers. 6 This coat isn't mine. 7 My cooking is better than his.
   8 Is this bike yours?
- 2 1 The towel is not theirs. 2 The razor is his.
  3 The red toothbrush is his. 4 The green toothbrush is hers. 5 The toothpaste is theirs.
  6 The make-up is hers. 7 The soap is hers.
  8 The green washcloth is hers. 9 The hair dryer is hers. 10 The dressing-gown is his. 11 The shampoo is theirs.

- 1 1 him 2 herself 3 themselves 4 yourselves 5 him
- 2 1 myself 2 'Himself.' 3 yourself. 4 ourselves
   5 herself 6 yourselves 7 themselves.
- 3 1 yourself 2 themselves. 3 myself.4 ourselves 5 herself.
- 4 1 each other 2 themselves. 3 each other 4 yourselves 5 each other

### page 192

- Column 2: us, NOT OUT Column 3: her, not hers Column 4: mine, NOT mines Column 5: themselves, NOT theirselves
- 2 1 his wife 2 mine 3 ours 4 its 5 'I like it.'
  6 It's five miles 7 It's Tuesday. 8 'It's over there.' 9 They were 10 it was wonderful 11 them 12 'It was me.' 13 That's her 14 It is cold 15 I have 16 her leg 17 It is 18 Is that my coat? 19 Whose 20 'It's me.'
- 3 1 her. 2 herself. 3 each other.

#### page 193

- 4 1 myself. 2 each other 3 himself 4 me; myself. 5 each other 6 themselves 7 you; yourself. 8 yourselves. 9 each other.
  10 yourselves
- 5 1 myself 2 yourself 3 himself 4 myself 5 ourselves 6 yourself
- 6 1 his 2 each other 3 they 4 her 5 she
  6 they 7 They 8 it's 9 Hers 10 their
  11 his 12 she's 13 him 14 her 15 herself.
  16 them 17 they're 18 each other 19 |
  20 they

### page 194

#### 1

1	me	my	mine	myself
you	you	your	yours	yourself
he	him	his	his	himself
she	her	her	hers	herself
it	it	its	-	itself
we	us	our	ours	ourselves
you	you	your	yours	yourselves
they	them	their	theirs	themselves

- 2 1 I like it 2 It's 20 miles 3 It's Friday.
  4 his sister 5 theirs 6 their children
  7 Whose 8 each other 9 enjoyed myself
  10 teaching myself 11 Where's my bike?
  12 It is 13 his arm 14 I have 15 made
  myself comfortable
- 3 1 him; me. 2 her; herself. 3 each other
  4 ourselves. 5 myself. 6 each other.
  7 yourself; you 8 me; yourself. 9 me.
  10 her 11 me; me; myself 12 her 13 his
  14 myself; they 15 her

#### page 196

- 1 + -s: cats, chairs, gardens, hotels, planes, ships, tables, times, trees
   + -εs: boxes, brushes, churches, classes, dresses, gases, glasses, watches, wishes
- 2 1 +-s: guys, holidays, keys, ways +-s: copies, countries, families, parties
- 3 1 children 2 students 3 want 4 cities
  5 wives 6 do 7 teeth 8 watches
  9 babies 10 matches 11 guys 12 work
  13 people

- 1 class ✓ club ✓ Communist Party ✓ company ✓ crowd ✓ idea ✗ lunch ✗ question ✗ room ✗ school ✓ train ✗
- 2 1 D say 2 A want 3 B play 4 C haven't 5 G have 6 F are
- 3 1 dark glasses. 2 shorts. 3 scissors
   4 black trousers 5 silk pyjamas. 6 tights

- 1 love, meat, music, oil, salt, snow, sugar, wool
- 2 some bread; a cheque; some baggage; a fridge; some furniture; a handbag; a holiday; some knowledge; some luck; a newspaper; a problem; a station; some travel; some work
- **3** 1 baggage 2 travel. 3 spaghetti 4 news 5 advice 6 furniture 7 work 8 hair
- 4 1 a job 2 a journey 3 a piece of advice 4 a piece of information 5 a piece of news

#### page 199

- 5 1 a glass 2 glass 3 chocolate 4 a chocolate
  5 paper 6 a paper 7 an iron 8 iron
  9 a chicken 10 chicken
- 6 1 bottle 2 jug 3 box 4 cup 5 mug 6 jar 7 can 8 bag 9 glass 10 packet

### page 200

1 1 this one. 2 a new one. 3 another one. 4 last one 5 small one. 6 blue ones.

### page 201

- 1 1 Alice and John's house. 2 artists' ideas 3 my dog's ears 4 those dogs' ears 5 those men's faces 6 his girlfriend's piano 7 their grandchild's birthday 8 their grandchildren's school 9 ladies' hats 10 my aunt and uncle's shop 11 Patrick's books 12 a photographer's job 13 our postman's cat 14 postmen's uniforms 15 Joyce's pen 16 the thief's bag 17 the thieves' car 18 that woman's brother 19 most women's desks 20 your mum and dad's bedroom
- 2 1 That big building is a girls' school. 2 Is this your mother's office? 3 May I speak to the boss's secretary? 4 What's Jane and Peter's address? 5 This is a picture of my grandparents' wedding. 6 Do you know John's new girlfriend?
  7 She writes for a women's magazine.
  8 Is that Robert's car? 9 Let me have Ruth and Jack's phone number. 10 What's your wife's job?

- 3 1 My sister's secretary's office.
  - 2 Jane's children's bicycles.
  - 3 Rob's family's holiday flat.
  - 4 Olivia's boyfriend's cat.
  - 5 The Prime Minister's wife's problem.
  - 6 Luke's uncle's farm.
  - 7 Mr Patterson's doctor's car.
  - 8 The President's niece's business.
  - 9 Charlotte's boss's wife.
  - 10 The Director's husband's friend's mother's cousin.

#### page 202

- Ann's house 2 the doctors' house
   Oliver and Carla's book 4 the teacher's car
   the girls' money 6 Susan's money
- The builder's car is parked in front of Anna's house.
   Do you know the tall woman's address?
   The children's bedtime is eight o'clock.
   Alice and Pat's brothers / Alice's and Pat's brothers are all in the army.
- 3 1 What's your brother's name? What's the name of that book? 2 Is there anything in the children's pockets? Is there anything in the pockets of that coat? 3 You can see the church from Emma's window. You can see the church from the window of the living room. 4 Why are John's arms so dirty? Why are the arms of your chair so dirty?

### page 203

- 4 1 a year's course 2 a week's holiday 3 a day's journey 4 an hour's drive 5 a minute's wait
- 5 1 The handbag is probably Aunt Matilda's.
  - 2 The gun is probably Texas Joe's.
  - 3 The crown is probably Queen Lobelia's.
  - 4 The big shoes are probably Oleg's.
  - 5 The document case is probably Mr Brown's.

- 1 1 business address, email address, home address
  - 2 aspirin bottle, milk bottle, perfume bottle
  - 3 jazz singer, opera singer, pop singer
  - 4 garden wall, prison wall (or kitchen wall)
  - 5 army uniform, police uniform, prison uniform
  - 6 garden chair, kitchen chair

- 2 1 F office building 2 D dog food 3 A computer engineer 4 B language school 5 E baby clothes 6 G knife drawer
- 3 1 a metal box 2 chocolate cakes 3 a plastic fork 4 vegetable soup 5 a leather jacket
   6 cotton shirts 7 a paper plate 8 tomato salad 9 a stone wall

- 4 1 an office manager 2 a coffee maker
  3 a coffee drinker 4 an animal lover 5 floor
  cleaner 6 a tennis player 7 a letter opener
  8 a cigar smoker 9 a mountain climber
- 5 1 telephone book 2 teacher's book
  3 Elizabeth's journey 4 train journey 5 aunt's home 6 holiday home 7 brother's interview
  8 job interview

### page 206

- 1 1 some 2 some 3 some 4 some 5 a 6 some 7 some 8 a 9 a 10 some
- 2 (possible answers) trousers, jeans, tights, shorts, pants, pyjamas, glasses, scissors
- 3 1 √ 2 √ 3 √ 4 X 5 X 6 √ 7 √ 8 √ 9 X 10 √
- 4 1 That's Peter's house 2 children's 3 boys'
  4 father's 5 boss's secretary or secretary's boss
  6 Jane and Peter's 7 parents' 8 teacher's
  9 John's 10 men's
- 5 1 a shoe shop 2 orange juice 3 a leather jacket 4 a train driver 5 a coffee table
  6 a window cleaner 7 news readers
  8 a computer magazine 9 a street market
  10 a gold watch

### page 207

 bus driver 2 a mountain climber 3 a tennis player 4 a maths teacher 5 a dog trainer
 a glass blower 7 a road cleaner 8 a butterfly collector 9 a computer programmer
 a bird watcher 7 1 clothes shops 2 family business 3 Joe's wife 4 sons' 5 daughter's 6 plastic tables and chairs 7 have 8 Joe's 9 bus drivers 10 chocolate cake

### page 208

- 1 foxes, journeys, matches, books, tables, feet, people, knives, mice, dogs, days, families, women, leaves, men, children, cars, wives, babies
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 ideas 4 ducks 5 X 6 journeys 7 X 8 governments 9 classes 10 X
- 3 1 tennis player 2 are 3 an hour's sleep
  4 women's 5 countries 6 A large one
  7 information 8 are 9 flower shop
  10 phone book
- 4 1 milk chocolate 2 lives 3 book shops 4 were the people or was the person 5 sister's son 6 the blue ones 7 l'd like one 8 a football player 9 journeys 10 street market 11 my brother's 12 an animal doctor 13 Anna's mother 14 silver earrings 15 orange juice 16 cities 17 door of the house 18 There's Peter's house. 19 Do you have Emma's address? 20 a big job

## page 210

- 1 a beautiful little girl 2 in a red coat
   3 was walking through a dark forest 4 with a big bag 5 of wonderful red apples 6 to see her old grandmother 7 Under a tall green tree
   8 she saw a big bad wolf 9 with long white teeth
- 2 1 'Good morning, little girl,' said 2 the big bad wolf. 3 'Where are you going 4 with that heavy bag 5 on this fine day?' 6 'I'm going to see my old grandmother,' 7 said the little girl.
  8 'She lives in a small house 9 near the new supermarket.'
- 3 1 friendly 2 little 3 stupid. 4 big

### page 211

4 1 beautiful and intelligent 2 cold, hungry and tired

- 5 1 'That car looks expensive.' 2 'Jane seems happy.' 3 'I feel ill and tired.' 4 It gets dark very early here in winter. 5 My parents are getting old.
- 6 1 'The train is late.' 2 'He looks Australian.'
  3 'Your hair looks beautiful.' 4 My memory is getting very bad.' 5 I want to become rich and famous.

- 1 1 slow 2 interestingly 3 beautifully 4 easy 5 perfect 6 badly 7 happy 8 angry 9 strong 10 quietly
- 2 1 finally 2 sincerely 3 loudly 4 thirstily
  5 probably 6 usually 7 nicely
  8 wonderfully 9 coldly 10 unhappily
  11 comfortably

## page 213

- 1 1 I read the letter carefully/slowly/yesterday.
  - 2 I bought a computer yesterday.
  - 3 Write your name carefully/clearly.
  - 4 You must see the doctor tomorrow.
  - 5 He speaks four languages correctly/perfectly.
  - 6 You didn't write the address clearly/correctly.
  - 7 I don't like skiing much/slowly.
  - 8 Please speak clearly and slowly.
- 3 1 extremely/terribly 2 completely
  - 3 beautifully/very well 4 extremely/terribly
  - 5 beautifully/very well 6 nearly
  - 7 badly/terribly 8 extremely/terribly

## page 214

 Jake always eats fish. He even eats fish for breakfast. 2 Ann often plays tennis, but she only plays in the evenings. 3 Edward usually puts tomato sauce on everything. He probably puts it on ice cream. 4 I sometimes forget names. I never forget faces. 5 Jane hardly ever gets angry, and she never shouts at people.
 I always get to the station on time, and the train is always late. 7 I will definitely phone you tomorrow, and I will probably write next week.
 I usually drink tea. I sometimes drink coffee.
 Your sister is certainly a good singer. She is also a very interesting person. 10 My mother is still asleep. I think she is probably ill. 2 1 Do you often play cards? 2 Have you ever been to Tibet? 3 Are you always happy?
4 Does the boss ever take a holiday? 5 Do you usually eat in restaurants? 6 Is Barbara still ill?

# page 215

3 (possible answers)

Eva never plays football. Tom plays football three times a week. Eva plays tennis once a week. Tom hardly ever plays tennis. Eva often goes skiing. Tom never goes skiing. Eva goes to the theatre every week. Tom goes to the theatre two or three times a year. Eva goes to the cinema three or four times a year. Tom goes to the cinema twice a month. Eva never goes to concerts. Tom goes to concerts every week. (Other answers are possible.)

4 go climbing 1 go swimming 8 go sailing 4 go wind-surfing 12 go skiing 10 go skating 11 go fishing 3 go shopping 7 go to the opera 9 go to the theatre 2 go to concerts 5

## page 216

- 1 1 boring 2 bored 3 interested 4 interesting
- 2 1 annoying 2 frightened; frightening
   3 exciting; excited 4 surprising; surprised

## page 217

- 1 1 well. 2 early 3 hard 4 weekly 5 hardly
- 2 1 Daily 2 lately 3 fast 4 hardly 5 early 6 well 7 late 8 weekly 9 hard 10 lately

3 1 X 2 √ 3 X 4 X 5 √

## page 218

 He was driving a fast red car. 2 She speaks perfect Chinese. 3 She speaks Chinese perfectly. 4 Host my keys yesterday.
 I've got a very important meeting tomorrow.
 Anna read Peter's letter slowly. 7 Tim plays the piano brilliantly. 8 Lucy is terribly unhappy.
 They make very good ice cream here.
 She's been happily unmarried for 15 years.

- 2 1 terrible 2 slowly 3 hard 4 friendly
  5 badly 6 unhappy 7 extremely; late
  8 carefully 9 late 10 completely
  11 beautiful 12 hard 13 unclearly
  14 perfect 15 well
- 4 careful; extremely

- 5 1 interesting films 2 a good cheap restaurant
  3 and good-looking 4 interested
  5 I very much like or I like ... very much.
  6 'The poor girl/woman!' or 'Poor Emma!'
  7 terribly 8 my glasses yesterday.
  9 happily
  10 have often thought 11 difficult
  12 in a friendly way/voice 13 Arabic very well.
  14 beautiful 15 fast 16 carefully 17 perfect
  - 18 is always 19 usually speak 20 hard
- 6 1 fast 2 daily 3 hard 4 late 5 hardly 6 friendly 7 silly 8 lonely.
- 7 1 a light/coffee 2 water 3 holidays
  4 hair, skin 5 a light 6 a bed, water
  7 hair, skin 8 milk 9 apples 10 children

#### page 220

- 1 1 really, completely, possibly, happily, nicely, easily, beautifully, probably, usually, incredibly, unhappily, rightly, sincerely, hungrily, carefully, perfectly, warmly, angrily, comprehensibly, slowly
- 2 1 I saw a good film yesterday. 2 Andy can definitely help you. 3 You speak Russian very well. 4 She never smiles. 5 Alice had some really interesting ideas. 6 They sell very good clothes here. 7 I have never been to Norway.
  8 Karl plays the violin very badly. 9 I have already paid. 10 He was wearing a new blue suit. 11 We often see Annie and Seb. 12 Emma read the report slowly. 13 Judy and Simon are always late. 14 You are probably right. 15 I hardly ever go to the cinema.
- 3 1 X 2 X 3 ✓ 4 ✓ 5 X 6 ✓ 7 X 8 ✓ 9 X 10 X 11 ✓ 12 ✓ 13 X 14 X 15 X

4 1 and stupid-looking 2 are usually 3 bored
4 will never 5 always listen 6 'The poor girl/ woman!'or 'Poor Jenny!' 7 have often been
8 terribly 9 slowly 10 is already
11 You never tell me 12 beautiful 13 has probably 14 fast 15 slowly

#### page 222

- 1 greener, greenest 2 safer, safest 3 richer, richest 4 smaller, smallest 5 stranger, strangest 6 finer, finest 7 higher, highest 8 wider, widest 9 nearer, nearest 10 whiter, whitest
- 1 bigger, biggest 2 hotter, hottest
   3 newer, newest 4 wetter, wettest
   5 slimmer, slimmest
- 3 1 lazier, laziest 2 hungrier, hungriest
   3 sleepier, sleepiest 4 angrier, angriest
   5 dirtier, dirtiest
- 1 more careful, most careful 2 more beautiful, most beautiful 3 more intelligent, most intelligent 4 more dangerous, most dangerous
   5 more important, most important 6 more boring, most boring 7 more interested, most interested
- 5 1 farther/further 2 better 3 worse.

#### page 223

- 1 the nicest 2 the best 3 more expensive
   4 more dangerous 5 the most dangerous
   6 bigger 7 the fastest 8 most
- 2 1 shorter 2 the most intelligent 3 quieter
  4 the coldest 5 louder 6 the biggest
  7 more intelligent 8 the most boring

### page 224

 1 Dogs are friendlier than cats. 2 Dogs are more intelligent than cats. 3 Train travel is cheaper than air travel. 4 Air travel is faster than train travel. 5 The Sahara is hotter than the Himalayas. 6 The Himalayas are colder than the Sahara. 7 English is easier than Chinese.
 8 Chinese is more difficult than
 9 English. 9 Canada is bigger than Ireland.
 10 Ireland is smaller than Canada. 2 1 The Amazon is longer than all the other rivers in South America. 2 Blue whales are heavier than all the other whales. 3 Mont Blanc is higher than all the other mountains in the Alps. 4 Cheetahs are faster than all the other big cats. 5 The Atacama desert is drier than all the other deserts. 6 Redwoods are taller than all the other trees.

## page 225

- 3 1 is more careful than him. / is more careful than he is. 2 hungrier than me. / hungrier than I am.
  3 shorter than you. / shorter than you are.
  4 are more excited than us. / are more excited than we are.
  5 is more beautiful than her. / is more beautiful than she is.
- 1 Mark is a bit / a little taller than Simon.
  2 Simon is a bit / a little older than
  Mark. 3 Mark is a bit / a little younger than
  Simon. 4 Mark is a lot / much richer than
  Simon. 5 Mark's car is a lot / much faster
  than Simon's car. 6 Simon's car is a lot /
  much slower than Mark's car. 7 Mark's car is
  a bit / a little more comfortable than Simon's
  car. 8 Simon's car is a lot / much quieter than
  Mark's car. 9 Mark's car is a lot / much noisier
  than Simon's car.

# page 226

- 1 1 F n 2 E q 3 A r 4 C m 5 B p 6 J s 7 G u 8 I t 9 H v
- 2 1 In the 1970s, the Beatles were the richest musicians in the world. 2 Eric says that Eleanor is the best singer in the group. 3 When I was a child, my father was the tallest man in our town.
  4 In this country, February is the coldest month of the year. 5 Who is the oldest of your three aunts? 6 Helen is very intelligent, but she is the quietest person in my class. 7 Which is the best of these three bikes? 8 Which is the biggest city in Argentina?

# page 227

- Lee talks to people more politely than Ben.
   Liam works more carefully than John.
  - 2 Liam works more carefully than John.
  - 3 Simon goes swimming more often than Karen.
  - 4 My car runs more quietly than my sister's car.
  - 5 Annie talks more slowly than Rob.
  - 6 Olivia thinks more clearly than most people.
  - 7 Jack dresses more expensively than me.
  - 8 I live more cheaply than my friends.
- 1 earlier. 2 later. 3 more. 4 nearer
   5 less. 6 faster. 7 higher. 8 longer.

# page 228

- Picture A is Jenny. Picture B is Cassie.
   Cassie is not as slim as Jenny. 2 Cassie is not as tall as Jenny. 3 Jenny's skirt is not as long as Cassie's. 4 Cassie's bag is not as big as Jenny's.
   Jenny's coat is not as heavy as Cassie's.
   Cassie's glass is not as big as Jenny's.
- 2 1 The other doctor isn't as nice as you. The other doctor isn't as nice as you are. 2 His boss isn't as interesting as him. His boss isn't as interesting as he is. 3 My mother isn't as slim as me. My mother isn't as slim as I am. 4 The Browns aren't as careful as us. The Browns aren't as careful as we are.

# page 229

4 1 Eric has twice as many cousins as Tony.
2 Ben eats three times as many sandwiches as Jo. 3 Helen has nearly as many computer games as Adrian. 4 Chris drinks twice as much coffee as Liz. 5 Mike has just as many books as David. 6 Rebecca doesn't have nearly as much free time as Fred.

- 1 1 as; as 2 most; in 3 than 4 the; in 5 better; best 6 more 7 as; as 8 than 9 more; am. 10 than; less
- 2 1 in the world 2 than 3 most 4 more slowly 5 most 6 than me 7 as cold as ice 8 than his wife 9 higher 10 worst 11 most intelligent 12 happier 13 in 14 of 15 the best

3 1 B is faster than C. 2 A is not as fast as B.
3 C is not as fast as B. 4 B is the fastest.
5 C is more expensive than A. 6 A is not as expensive as B. 7 B is the most expensive.
8 B is not as big as C. 9 C is bigger than A.
10 C is the biggest.

#### page 231

- 4 1 more than a year and less than a century2 more than a week and less than a year
  - 3 more than a day and less than a month
  - 4 more than a minute and less than a day
  - 5 more than an hour and less than a week
  - 6 more than a month and less than a decade
- 5 1 John 2 Tom 3 Hannah
- 6 than

#### page 232

- 1 more interesting, most interesting 2 thinner, thinnest 3 cheaper, cheapest 4 easier, easiest 5 worse, worst 6 more beautiful, most beautiful 7 lazier, laziest 8 farther/further, farthest/furthest 9 better, best 10 older, oldest 11 fatter, fattest 12 happier, happiest 13 later, latest 14 hotter, hottest 15 slower, slowest 16 bigger, biggest 17 more expensive, most expensive 18 dirtier, dirtiest 19 more important, most important 20 stronger, strongest
- **2** 1 as; as 2 than 3 that 4 than 5 than 6 as 7 that 8 than 9 as 10 than
- 3 1 than; more 2 am. 3 earlier; earliest
  4 more 5 the; in 6 As; as 7 most; in
  8 as; as 9 than 10 worse; worst.
- 4 1 in 2 worst 3 most 4 than 5 more quickly 6 as hard as stones 7 bigger
  8 most beautiful 9 of 10 the worst

#### page 234

1 1 so 2 although 3 but 4 and 5 while 6 because 7 until 8 while 9 or 10 as soon as 2 1 We'll be glad when this job is finished. 2 I'll be very angry if you do that again. 3 I'd like to talk to you before you go home. 4 Sue watched TV until John came home. 5 We'll see you again after we come back from holiday. 6 I like her, although she's a difficult person. 7 Henry didn't like working in a bank, so he changed his job.
8 They think they can do what they like because they're rich. 9 I want to stop working before I'm 50. 10 You look beautiful when you're smiling.

### page 235

- I put on two sweaters because it was very cold. Because it was very cold, I put on two sweaters.
  - 2 I'm going to work in Australia when I leave school. When I leave school, I'm going to work in Australia.
  - 3 I go and see Felix if I want to talk to somebody. If I want to talk to somebody, I go and see Felix.
  - 4 Ann made coffee while Bill fried some eggs. While Bill fried some eggs, Ann made coffee.
  - 5 I was interested in the conversation, although I didn't understand everything. Although I didn't understand everything, I was interested in the conversation.
  - 6 We went to a restaurant because there was no food in the house. Because there was no food in the house, we went to a restaurant.
  - 7 We'll have a big party when John comes home. When John comes home, we'll have a big party.
  - 8 | stayed with friends while my parents were travelling. While my parents were travelling, | stayed with friends.
  - 9 I go for long walks at the weekend if the weather's fine. If the weather's fine, I go for long walks at the weekend.
  - 10 Come and see us as soon as you arrive in Scotland. As soon as you arrive in Scotland, come and see us.

- 1 1 hear 2 make 3 leaves 4 write 5 get 6 am 7 stops. 8 go 9 arrive 10 finishes.
- 1 finds or gets 2 travels 3 will help
   4 starts 5 will tell 6 look after 7 will look
   8 stops 9 come 10 will get

- Because the rooms were dirty, I changed my hotel. I changed my hotel because the rooms were dirty. The rooms were dirty, so I changed my hotel.
  - 2 Because the taxi was late, we missed the train. We missed the train because the taxi was late. The taxi was late, so we missed the train.
  - 3 Because I didn't like the film, I walked out of the cinema. I walked out of the cinema because I didn't like the film. I didn't like the film, so I walked out of the cinema.
- Although I felt ill, I went on working.
   I went on working, although I felt ill.
   I felt ill, but I went on working.
  - 2 Although she was very kind, I didn't like her. I didn't like her, although she was very kind. She was very kind, but I didn't like her.
  - 3 Although he's a big man, he doesn't eat much. He doesn't eat much, although he's a big man. He's a big man, but he doesn't eat much.

# page 238

- My company has offices in London, Tokyo, New York and Cairo. 2 I've invited Paul, Alexandra, Eric, Luke and Janet. 3 I'll be here on Tuesday, Thursday, Friday and Sunday. 4 She's got five cats, two dogs, a horse and a rabbit. 5 He plays golf, rugby, hockey and badminton. 6 She addressed, stamped and posted the letter.
- 2 1 She has painted the kitchen, (the) living room and (the) dining room. 2 Bob was wearing a pink shirt, blue jeans and white trainers. 3 Can you give me a knife, fork and spoon, please? 4 Many people speak English in India, Singapore and South Africa. 5 I've written and posted six letters this morning.

# page 239

- 1 1 I think that she's either Scottish or Irish.
  - 2 I'd like to work with either animals or children.
  - 3 He did well in both mathematics and history.
  - 4 This car is neither fast nor comfortable.
  - 5 She neither looked at me nor said anything.
  - 6 I've got problems both at home and in my job.
  - 7 You can either stay here or go home.
  - 8 I like both (the) theatre and (the) cinema.
  - 9 She speaks neither English nor French.
  - 10 I don't understand either politics or economics.

# page 240

- 1 will have; go 2 will wait; arrives 3 come; will be 4 will be; goes 5 get; will cook
   6 will send; receive 7 will be; are 8 go; will take 9 stops; will go 10 will have; gets up.
- 2 1 Because the teacher was ill, the children had a holiday. The children had a holiday because the teacher was ill.
  - 2 When I was in China, I made a lot of friends. I made a lot of friends when I was in China.
  - 3 Until they built the new road, it was difficult to get to our village. It was difficult to get to our village until they built the new road.
  - 4 Although Jessica wrote three letters, Dylan never answered. Dylan never answered, although Jessica wrote three letters.
  - 5 As soon as the work was finished, I phoned him. I phoned him as soon as the work was finished.
- 3 1 I both swim and play tennis.
  - 2 He either lives or works in Birmingham.
  - 3 My father speaks neither Greek nor French.
  - 4 She likes neither pop music nor jazz.
  - 5 She can have either orange juice or water.
  - 6 I can neither sing nor dance.
  - 7 He's either Scottish or Irish.
  - 8 He's studying both physics and biology.
  - 9 This sofa is neither nice-looking nor comfortable.
  - 10 Anna neither looked at Henry nor spoke to him.

- 4 1 so 2 when 3 and 4 although 5 because 6 and 7 because 8 and 9 until 10 although 11 before
- 5 1 Karl plays neither the trombone nor the saxophone. 2 Melanie plays both the cello and the drums. 3 Neither Steve nor Karen play(s) the violin. 4 Both Joanna and Charles play the guitar. 5 Karen plays both the piano and the trumpet. 6 Sophie plays neither the guitar nor the trumpet. 7 Both Charles and Steve play the saxophone. 8 Neither Sophie nor Steve play(s) the trumpet.

- 1 1 I'm going to do some gardening until it gets dark. 2 I couldn't read because it was too dark. 3 The food wasn't very good, but he ate everything. 4 The lesson finished early, so we went for a walk. 5 After I got his letter, I went round to see him. 6 As soon as Jane gets up, she makes coffee. 7 You can't have any more coffee, because there isn't any. 8 I didn't go to work, because the buses weren't running. 9 The buses weren't running, so I didn't go to work. 10 The phone always rings while I'm having a bath. 11 I can't tell you the decision until I know myself. 12 He didn't work very hard, but he passed all his exams. 13 When the holiday was over, I had to start working very hard. 14 As soon as Andrew saw Zoe, he fell madly in love with her. 15 After Heft school, I worked as a taxi driver.
- 1 He plays neither the piano nor the guitar.
  Although the train was late, I got there in time.
  R The train was late, but I got there in time.
  small, cold and dirty 4 I/he/she/we/they went out 5 gets 6 Because it was cold, I put on a coat. R It was cold, so I put on a coat.
  or walk home 8 a knife and fork
  Although I would like to help you, I don't have time. OR I would like to help you, but I don't have time. 10 both classical music and jazz.
  I find 12 I'm old

#### page 244

1 1 If I can't sleep, I get up and read. I get up and read if I can't sleep. 2 If you take books from my room, please tell me. Please tell me if you take books from my room. 3 If you're hungry, why don't you cook some soup? Why don't you cook some soup if you're hungry? 4 If she's been travelling all day, she must be tired. She must be tired if she's been travelling all day. 5 If we catch the first train, we can be in London by 9.00. We can be in London by 9.00 if we catch the first train. 2 1 You can't park here unless you live in this street.
2 Unless you're over 15, you can't see this film.
3 I don't drive fast unless I'm really late.
4 Unless I'm going fishing, I get up late on Sundays. 5 We usually go for a walk after supper unless there's a good film on TV.
6 I see my mother at weekends unless I'm travelling. 7 Unless it's raining, I play tennis most evenings. 8 I can't help you unless you tell me the truth.

# page 245

- 1 get 2 will bring 3 will give 4 phones
   5 have 6 stop 7 will be 8 won't laugh
   9 will cook 10 stops
- 1 will be; pass 2 leave; will catch 3 will work; needs 4 am not; will see 5 will study; has 6 will drive; can 7 marries; will not have 8 will (you) stop; tells 9 talk; will (he) lend
- If I lose my job, I won't find another job.
   If I don't find another job, I'll lose my flat.
  - 3 If I lose my flat, I'll move back to my parents' house.
  - 4 If I move back to my parents' house, I'll get very bored.
  - 5 If I get very bored, I'll go swimming every day.
  - 6 If I go swimming every day, I'll look very good.
  - 7 If I look very good, I'll meet interesting people.
  - 8 If I meet interesting people, I'll go to lots of parties.
  - 9 If I go to lots of parties, I'll have a wonderful time.

#### page 246

- 1 could; would eat 2 were; would know
   3 knew; would tell 4 asked; would (you) do
   5 could; would (you) do 6 would buy; had
   7 asked; would (you) say 8 would finish; did
   not talk 9 would study; had 10 were; would
   watch
- 2 1 If Jane and Peter were here, we would play cards.

2 If we had enough money, we would buy a new car. 3 If Fred answered letters, I would write to him. 4 If I could find my camera, I would take your photo. 5 If I could understand the words, I would enjoy opera. 6 If Carola didn't talk about herself all the time, I would like her. 7 If I had a dog, I would go for walks.

- 1 If I were you, I'd take a holiday.
   2 If I were you, I'd join a club.
   3 If I were you, I'd fly.
   4 If I were you, I'd call the police at once.
   5 If I were you, I wouldn't sell it.
- 2 1 If I were you, I'd start a business. 2 If I were you, I'd put the money in the bank. 3 If I were you, I'd buy a sports car. 4 If I were you, I'd have a big party. 5 If I were you, I'd travel round the world. 6 If I were you, I'd stop work.
  7 If I were you, I'd give the money away.

#### page 248

- 1 1 lived 2 could 3 go 4 started 5 gave 6 need 7 gave 8 thought 9 was 10 go
- 2 1 have; 'll 2 had; 'd 3 get; will 4 got; would
  - 5 did; would 6 do; will 7 go; won't
  - 8 went; wouldn't 9 does; won't 10 did; would

#### page 249

- 1 1 had been 2 had worked 3 had taken 4 had not played 5 would have studied
  - 6 Would (you) have crashed
  - 7 would not have slept
  - 8 had come; would have had
  - 9 had not broken down; would have been
  - 10 would (you) have studied; had liked
  - 11 would not have got; had not wanted
  - 12 would (you) have helped; had asked
- 2 1 If I had caught the 8.15 train, I would have sat by a beautiful foreign woman.
  - 2 If I had sat by a beautiful foreign woman, I would have fallen in love and married her.
  - 3 If I had fallen in love and married her, I would have gone to live in her country.
  - 4 If I had gone to live in her country, I would have worked in her father's diamond business.
  - 5 If I had worked in her father's diamond business, I would have become very rich.
  - 6 If I had become very rich, I would have gone into politics.
  - 7 If I had gone into politics, I would have died in a revolution.

## page 250

- 1 (possible answers) 1 G 2 H 3 J 4 B 5 K 6 D 7 F 8 C 9 E 10 I (Other answers are possible.)
- 2 1 bought; would 2 go; 'll 3 lived; would 4 went; wouldn't 5 start; won't 6 win; will 7 married; would 8 take; 'll 9 rains; won't 10 did; wouldn't
- 3 1 will 2 looks; it's 3 will; will; will take
   4 will 5 won't 6 will

## page 251

- 4 1 had not drunk; would have slept
  - 2 had had; would have gone
  - 3 would have gone; had not met
  - 4 had not been; would have gone
  - 5 would have caught; had run
  - 6 had stopped; would have lived
  - 7 would not have asked; had needed
  - 8 would have been; had stayed
  - 9 would have worn; had known
  - 10 had had; would have gone
- 5 ... the cat wouldn't have eaten her supper. If the cat hadn't eaten her supper, she wouldn't have gone to the shop to buy food. If she hadn't gone to the shop to buy food, she wouldn't have seen an advertisement for a secretary. If she hadn't seen an advertisement for a secretary, she wouldn't have got a new job and met my father.
- 6 1 If she goes to Egypt, she will have to learn Arabic. 2 If she goes to Brazil, she will have to learn Portuguese. 3 If she goes to Holland, she will have to learn Dutch. 4 If she goes to Kenya, she will have to learn Swahili. 5 If she goes to Greece, she will have to learn Greek. 6 If she goes to Austria, she will have to learn German.

- 1 cleaned 2 knows 3 will come
   4 would understand 5 leave 6 would not sell
   7 did not live 8 will translate 9 ask 10 gets
- 2 1 if | pass 2 Correct. 3 ate 4 will see 5 Correct. 6 Correct. 7 he works
  - 8 Correct. 9 if we are 10 Correct.

- 3 1 had not asked; would not have known
  - 2 had been; would have gone
  - 3 would not have said; had known
  - 4 would have been; had said
  - 5 had not got; would not have met
  - 6 would have died; had not taken
  - 7 had not been; would have gone
  - 8 had done; would have studied
  - 9 would have gone; had had
  - 10 had not helped; would have been

- 1 1 who 2 which 3 which 4 which 5 who 6 which 7 which 8 who 9 who 10 which 11 which 12 who
- 2 1 took 2 live 3 she is 4 lost 5 bought 6 is parked 7 it cuts 8 writes 9 make 10 I lent you

## page 255

- 3 1 The man and woman who live in flat 1 play loud music all night. 2 The woman who lives in flat 2 broke her leg skiing. 3 The three men who live in flat 3 play golf all day. 4 The students who live in flat 4 haven't got much money. 5 The doctor who lives in flat 5 has three children. 6 The man who lives in flat 6 drives a Rolls-Royce. 7 The two women who live in flat 7 are hiding from the police.
- 4 1 The bus which goes to Oxford isn't running today. 2 Yesterday I met a man who works with your brother. 3 The child who didn't come to the party was ill. 4 Can you pick up the papers which are lying on the floor? 5 The eggs which I bought yesterday were bad. 6 Here's the book which you asked me to buy for you. 7 I don't like the man who is going out with my sister.

## page 256

 John's got a motorbike that can do 200km an hour. 2 Is that the computer that doesn't work?
 Those are the trousers that I use for gardening.
 A man that lives in New York wants to marry my sister. 5 The doctors that looked at my leg all said different things. 6 The flowers that you gave to Aunt Sarah are beautiful. 7 The children that play football with Paul have gone on holiday. 2 1 an insect that doesn't make honey and can bite you 2 a bird that can't fly 3 a bird that eats small animals and birds 4 an animal that flies at night and hears very well 5 a machine that can fly straight up 6 a plane that doesn't have an engine 7 a thing that can fly to the moon

# page 257

1 10 25 30 40 50 6	S	70	8 S
--------------------	---	----	-----

- 2 1 the languages she spoke 2 the sweater I wore 3 a man I helped 4 the weather we have had 5 the car you bought
- 3 1 I'm working for a man I've known for twenty years. 2 They played a lot of music I didn't like.
  3 The campsite we found was very dirty. 4 I'm going on holiday with some people I know. 5 That book you gave to me is very good.
  6 The ring she lost belonged to her grandmother.
  7 I'm driving a car I bought 15 years ago.
  9 The camparate was a structure of the rest of th
  - 8 The papers you wanted are on the table.

- 1 1 the girl that I was talking about 2 the people that I work for 3 the house that I live in
  4 the music that you are listening to 5 the bus that I go to work on
- 2 1 the girl I was talking about 2 the people I work for 3 the house I live in 4 the music you are listening to 5 the bus I go to work on
- 3 1 Eric is the man she works for. 2 Monica is the woman she plays tennis with. 3 Karen is the woman she reads to. 4 Emily and Jack are the people she babysits for. 5 Tom is the man she is in love with.
- 4 1 The man she works for gave her chocolates. 2 The woman she plays tennis with gave her a clock. 3 The woman she reads to gave her theatre tickets. 4 The people she babysits for gave her a picture. 5 The man she is in love with gave her flowers and earrings.

- What he did made everybody angry. 2 Take what you want. 3 Soap – that's what I forgot to pack. 4 She gave me a watch. It was just what I wanted. 5 That child does what he likes. 6 What I read in the paper makes me unhappy. 7 Don't tell me what I know already. 8 What I like best in life is doing nothing.
- **3** 1 that 2 What 3 what 4 that 5 what 6 What 7 that 8 that 9 what 10 that

#### page 260

- 1 I know a man who writes film music.
   2 The bus which I took got to London twenty minutes late. 3 We have friends who live in Chicago. 4 The car which I bought last month isn't very good. 5 We stayed in a hotel which had a beautiful garden. 6 I didn't like the man who my sister married. 7 The people who were at the party weren't very interesting. 8 Tim uses long words which I can't understand.
   9 The computer which I'm using crashes every five minutes. 10 The woman who works in the flower shop is terribly nice.
- 2 1 The tickets that I got were terribly expensive. 2 These are the scissors that I use for cutting paper. 3 The woman that gives me tennis lessons is from Brazil. 4 The man that lives next door is always very friendly. 5 I'm spending the day with some people that I know. 6 What did you do with the money that we collected? 7 People that study languages are called linguists. 8 We've got a cat that brings dead rats into the house. 9 The oranges that you bought are all bad. 10 Why did you throw away the soup that I cooked?

#### page 261

- 3 1 the clock I bought 2 the film I saw 3 No change. 4 No change. 5 a man I really disliked 6 No change. 7 that dog you had 8 No change. 9 No change. 10 those earrings I bought
- 4 The rooms they put us in; the beds they gave us; the extra blankets we asked for; The 'full English breakfast' they served; the 'French champagne' we ordered; that brochure you showed me; The 'view of the sea' they talked about; the gym they advertised; the bill we got

- 5 1 the book I was looking at 2 the people I work for 3 the hotel we stayed in 4 the place I drove to 5 those people we were talking to 6 the train we travelled on 7 some people I work with 8 the place I was telling you about 9 the pen I write with 10 the small village my mother lives in
- 6 1 Naomi got what Jessica wanted. 2 Sally got what Thalia wanted. 3 Jane got what Anna wanted. 4 Jessica got what Jane wanted.
   5 Thalia got what Sally wanted.

#### page 262

- 1 1 A, B 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 A, B 7 A 8 A, B 9 A, B 10 A, B 11 A 12 A 13 A, B 14 B 15 A
- 2 which had 6 The woman who came
   8 the man who 10 which I couldn't
   understand. 12 People who/that live
   15 people that you can't relax with.
   (The other sentences are all correct)
- 3 1 that 2 that 3 What 4 that 5 what 6 that 7 what 8 what 9 What 10 that

#### page 264

- 1 1 he 2 she 3 her. 4 they; their 5 he 6 me. 7 they 8 he; his 9 she; her 10 their
- 2 1 told 2 said 3 said 4 say 5 told 6 tell 7 told 8 said

# page 265

- 3 1 She said (that) her sister needed a car.
  - 2 He said (that) he had to phone Andrew.
  - 3 She said (that) nobody wanted to help her.
  - 4 She said (that) the radio didn't work.
  - 5 He said (that) he would be in Paris in July.
  - 6 He said (that) he liked the red sweater.
  - 7 He said (that) he couldn't swim.
  - 8 She said (that) her parents were travelling.
  - 9 She said (that) the lessons were very good.
  - 10 They said (that) they hadn't heard from Joseph.

In these answers, we usually give **either** contracted forms (for example *l'm*, *don't*) **or** full forms (for example *i am*, *do not*). Normally both are correct.

4 He thought (that) cats had nine lives. He thought (that) his father knew everything. He thought (that) spaghetti grew on trees. He thought (that) the teacher lived in the school. He thought (that) he would be rich one day. He thought (that) his mother had always been old.

## page 266

- She asked him where he lived. 2 She asked him where he worked. 3 She asked him where he was going. 4 She asked him where he had been. 5 She asked him what the number of his car was. 6 She asked him why he was driving on the right.
- 2 1 She asked him whether it was his car.
  2 She asked him if/whether he had a driving licence. 3 She asked him if/whether he had it with him. 4 She asked him if/whether he always drove with the door open. 5 She asked him if/ whether he was listening to her.
- 3 1 They asked him if/whether he was married.
  2 They asked him if/whether he had children.
  3 They asked him where he had worked before.
  4 They asked him why he wanted to change his job.
  5 They asked him if/whether he could speak any foreign languages.
  6 They asked him what exams he had passed.

## page 267

- 1 they live in Greece. 2 she went to Belfast yesterday. 3 he's been ill. 4 it's going to rain.
   5 she'll ask her sister. 6 they're going to be rich.
   7 if/whether lunch is ready. 8 where I put my keys. 9 I'm getting a cold. 10 this is the right answer.
- 2 1 Can you tell me where I can buy tickets?2 Do you know how much it costs?
  - 3 Can you tell me if/whether John has phoned?
  - 4 Can you tell me if/whether I must pay now?
  - 5 Can you tell me if/whether Maria likes steak?
  - 6 Do you know where I parked the car?

#### page 268

 1 now - then 2 this - that 3 tomorrow - the next day 4 yesterday - the day before
 5 today - that day 6 tonight - that night
 7 last week - the week before 8 next week the next week

- 2 1 that place. 2 the week before. 3 the day before. 4 that day. 5 that night. 6 the next day.
- 3 1 He said he loved that place. 2 He said he'd seen a great film the day before. 3 He said he was going to another party that night. 4 He asked if I wanted to play tennis the next day. 5 He said his girlfriend would be there the next week.

# page 269

- Dave asked Sandra to give him her phone number. 2 The boss told James to work late.
   Judy asked Kim not to tell Karen about Ryan.
   Mr Sanders asked Fred not to smoke in his car.
   The general told Colonel Walker to take
   men and cross the river. 6 Ann told Polly not to study so hard.
- 2 1 His girlfriend told him to write to her every day.
  2 His mother told him to keep his room clean.
  3 His father told him to work hard.
  4 His sister told him not to go to too many parties.
  5 His brother told him to get a lot of exercise.
  6 His mother told him to change his shirt every day.
  - 7 His father told him not to go to bed late.
  - 8 His brother told him to be careful with money.
  - 9 His sister told him not to play cards for money.
  - 10 His grandmother told him to eat properly.

# page 270

- 1 1 He asked her if/whether he could have ice cream for breakfast. 2 He asked her why the stars only came out at night. 3 He asked her why Daddy / his father had to work. 4 He asked her where God was. 5 He asked her whether he would be taller than her one day. 6 He asked her if she believed in Father Christmas. 7 He asked her if/whether Scotland was in London. 8 He asked her when he would be rich. 9 He asked her why French people didn't speak English. 10 He asked her how big the universe was.
- 2 1 She told him to wash his hands before breakfast. 2 She told him not to eat with his mouth open. 3 She told him to eat everything on his plate. 4 She told him not to talk with his mouth full. 5 She told him to make his bed.
  6 She told him to clean his room. 7 She told him to polish his shoes. 8 She told him to put on a clean shirt. 9 She told him not to shout at his sister. 10 She told him not to be late for school.

#### 350 ANSWER KEY

- 3 1 John doesn't know how to phone New York.
  - 2 John doesn't know where to pay.
  - 3 John doesn't know when to start work.
  - 4 John doesn't know how to switch the computer on.
  - 5 John doesn't know where to put his coat.
  - 6 John doesn't know how much to pay.
  - 7 John doesn't know what to study.

4 1 had been 2 told 3 was having 4 was doing 5 had had 6 the (week) before 7 would 8 said 9 had 10 had lost 11 to buy 12 if/whether 13 was 14 was 15 would 16 was living 17 had spent 18 to send 19 to give 20 told 21 hadn't heard 22 where 23 was living. 24 if/ whether 25 wanted

# page 272

- 1 1 said 2 told 3 told 4 said 5 said 6 told 7 told 8 told 9 said 10 told
- 2 1 X 2 X 3 √ 4 X 5 √ 6 X 7 √ 8 √ 9 X 10 X
- 3 3 where the post office was. 4 when Jane is arriving? 7 tell me 8 was going 9 if/ whether I was 10 what he wanted. 11 what this word means. 12 wanted. 15 why she said (All the other sentences are correct.)

#### page 274

- 1 1 on 2 at 3 on 4 on 5 at; on 6 on 7 on 8 at; on 9 at 10 on 11 at 12 on
- 2 1 at 2 in 3 in 4 at 5 at 6 in 7 at; in 8 in 9 in 10 at; in; on 11 in 12 in 13 at 14 in 15 in

# page 275

3 1 I'll see you next Wednesday. 2 It rained nonstop last week. 3 Business was bad last month. 4 Shall we go out this evening? 5 We're going to America next month. 6 Ann had a car crash last Wednesday. 7 I'm going to change my job next year. 8 My holiday is in August every year. or ... every August. 9 I've spent too much money already this month. 10 The new school will be open next March. or ... in March next year.

- 4 1 In five days. 2 In a week. 3 In two weeks.
  4 In a month. 5 In a year. 6 In a hundred years.
- 5 1 the twenty-first of March / March the twenty-first, nineteen ninety-nine 2 the fourteenth of February / February the fourteenth, nineteen sixty 3 the twenty-eighth of July / July the twenty-eighth, eighteen forty-six 4 the sixth of May / May the sixth, two thousand and three 5 the ninth of May / May the ninth, nineteen eighty-four 6 the seventeenth of December / December the seventeenth, two thousand and twelve

#### page 276

- 1 until lunchtime. 2 until Saturday. 3 until the age of 14. 4 until the end. 5 until July.
- He washed the car from 8.00 to/till/until 9.00.
   He talked to the woman next door from 9.00 to/till/until 9.15.
  - 3 He played tennis from 10.00 to/till/until 11.00.
  - 4 He talked to friends from 11.00 to/till/until 11.30.
  - 5 He went for a walk from 11.30 to/till/until 12.45.
- 4 1 by 2 until 3 by 4 by 5 by 6 until

#### page 277

- 1 1 for 2 during 3 during 4 for; during 5 during 6 for 7 during 8 for
- 2 1 while they were playing 2 during the lesson
  3 during the war 4 while she was teaching
  5 while he was speaking 6 while they were
  talking 7 during her illness 8 while it was
  snowing
- 3 (possible answers)
  1 for an hour or so 2 for ever 3 for a moment
  4 for a couple of hours 5 for a minute or two
  6 for a few minutes 7 for an hour or so
  8 for life (Other answers are possible.)

## page 278

1 1 in 2 on 3 in 4 on 5 in 6 on 7 on 8 in 9 on 10 on 2 1 in my diary. 2 in the office 3 on her first finger 4 in the cupboard. 5 on the roof of the car. 6 in your car 7 On his T-shirt 8 on the wall 9 in a little village 10 on a piece of paper; in my pocket

#### page 279

- 1 at the cinema 2 at the station. 3 at the party 4 at a Chinese restaurant 5 at a theatre 6 at work. 7 at breakfast 8 at Birmingham.
   9 at the hotel bar 10 at the crossroads.
- 2 1 at the bottom 2 at the end 3 at the top 4 at the top 5 at the beginning

#### page 281

- 1 1 above 2 by 3 above 4 by 5 behind 6 under 7 against
- 2 1 under 2 between; opposite 3 against 4 behind 5 near 6 in front of 7 near
- 3 1 opposite 2 between 3 behind 4 near
  5 in front of 6 under 7 against 8 between
  9 by

#### page 282

 1 up the steps 2 through the gate 3 over the fence 4 past the café 5 round the corner 6 out of the shop 7 across the river 8 along the yellow line 9 under the bridge 10 into the water 11 off the bike 12 down the mountain

#### page 283

- 2 1 along the road 2 up the mountain 3 down the stairs 4 over the wall 5 into the bank
  6 round the corner 7 through the door
  8 off the table 9 out of the church
  10 under the bridge 11 past the bank
  12 across the river
- 3 1 out of; along 2 down; over 3 along; through; into 4 up; into; off 5 past; under; round 6 off; into 7 out of; across; out of 8 up; down
- 4 1 to 2 in 3 to 4 from; to 5 in 6 to 7 at 8 at 9 in 10 to

## page 284

- 1 1 on 2 on 3 at 4 for 5 on 6 at 7 at 8 in 9 in 10 on 11 by 12 until 13 during 14 while 15 at
- 2 1 last Saturday 2 next year 3 in September every year or every September 4 this month 5 last week 6 tomorrow evening 7 next Saturday 8 last month 9 next month 10 next August or in August next year
- 3 1 along the road 2 down the mountain
  3 into the church 4 off the table 5 out of the church 6 up the mountain 7 over the wall
  8 past the church 9 round the corner
  10 through the door
- 4 1 between 2 above 3 in front of
  4 opposite 5 against 6 through
  7 along; by 8 out of; across 9 off; into
  10 past; under; round

- 5 1 out of the church 2 on the bus 3 up the stairs 4 under the bridge 5 into the river
  6 behind the door 7 at the bottom of the stairs
  8 down the mountain 9 in front of the police station 10 at the end
- 6 1 the twenty-third of April or April the twenty-third 2 the first of September or September the first 3 the fifth of August, two thousand and ten or August the fifth ... 4 the second of March, nineteen eighty or March the second ...
  5 the tenth of January, two thousand and two or January the tenth ... 6 the third of April, two thousand and eight or April the third ...
  7 the fourth of October or October the fourth 8 the twenty-first of March, nineteen thirty-six or March the twenty-first ... 9 the twenty-second of October, two thousand and six or October the twenty-second ... 10 the first of January, two thousand and one or January the first ...
- 7 (possible answers) 1 for a moment. 2 for life. 3 for a long time. 4 for a few minutes. 5 for a long time. 6 for a couple of hours 7 for years and years. 8 for a moment 9 for a few minutes. 10 for an hour or so. (Other answers are possible.)

8 1 on 2 on 3 opposite 4 off 5 by
6 along 7 at 8 under 9 up 10 round
11 down 12 across 13 through 14 out of
15 in front of 16 in 17 by

#### page 286

- 1 1 on 2 over 3 on 4 at 5 off 6 by 7 in 8 for 9 through 10 while
- 2 1 on 2 from; until 3 for 4 during 5 in 6 at/in front of/opposite 7 on 8 on 9 on 10 at 11 by/before 12 between 13 at 14 in 15 along/by/near
- 3 1 for three hours 2 by Saturday 3 out of the room 4 opposite our house 5 across this river 6 on the ceiling 7 across the town 8 next Monday 9 at Christmas 10 off the bus

#### page 288

- 1 1 , won't you? 2 , has he? 3 -? 4 , isn't it? 5 , can he? 6 , isn't it? 7 , was it? 8 -? 9 , aren't l?
- 2 1 isn't it? 2 aren't we? 3 isn't she? 4 won't you 5 can't he? 6 doesn't she? 7 doesn't it?
- 3 1 is he? 2 can you? 3 do they? 4 does she? 5 do they? 6 has he/she?

#### page 289

- 4 1 wasn't there? 2 aren't there? 3 isn't there? 4 has there? 5 were there?
- 5 1 do you? 2 isn't she? 3 isn't it? 4 can you?
  5 wouldn't you? 6 do they? 7 hasn't she?
  8 aren't !? 9 isn't there? 10 don't you?
- 6 1 They've lived in France, haven't they? 2 They all went home early, didn't they? 3 It rained all last week, didn't it? 4 Her brother writes for the newspapers, doesn't he? 5 I need a visa, don't I?
  6 You'd like a holiday, wouldn't you? 7 The train was late, wasn't it? 8 Sarah forgot your birthday, didn't she? 9 There was a letter for me, wasn't there? 10 I'm in time for lunch, aren't I?

#### page 290

- 1 'No, it isn't' or 'No, it's not.' 2 'No, he hasn't.'
   3 'Yes, they do.' 4 'No, it isn't' or 'No, it's not.'
   5 No, he doesn't.' 6 'Yes, I/we do.' 7 'No, thanks, she wouldn't.' 8 'No, it wasn't.'
   9 'No, I'm afraid I'm not.'
- 3 1 'No, I'm not.' 2 'Yes, it is.' 3 'Yes, she does,'
   4 'No, it doesn't.' 5 'Yes, he did.' 6 'Yes, he did.'

#### page 291

- 1 Have you? 2 Did he? 3 Is there?4 Can't you? 5 Doesn't it? 6 Is she?7 Do they? 8 Don't they?
- 2 1 C Don't you? 2 B Are they? 3 F Is it?4 D Has he? 5 E Can't you?
- 3 (possible answers)
  1 'Congratulations!' 2 'Say 'hello' to her for me.'
  3 'Good luck!' 4 'That's interesting.'
  5 'What a pity!' 6 'What a nuisance!'
  - 7 'I am sorry.' 8 'That's a surprise.'
  - 9 'That's terrible.' (Other answers are possible.)

#### page 292

- Are you? 2 Joe didn't phone yesterday.
   I'm feeling ill. 4 John needs help.
   You don't remember David, 6 Have you?
   can't they?
- 2 1 don't you? 2 Yes, I do. 3 didn't he?
  4 he didn't. 5 Is he? 6 does he? 7 Yes, it is.
  8 Aren't you? 9 don't you? 10 Yes, I do
  11 haven't you? 12 Yes, I have. 13 Are you?
  14 Yes, I would. 15 can I? 16 Yes, you can.
  17 Are you?

- 1 ... but I do. 2 ... I have. 3 ... I don't think she will. 4 ... I hope he has. 5 ... Of course I will. 6 ... I can tomorrow.
- 2 1 'They hope to.' 2 she didn't want to. 3 I'd like to. 4 I used to. 5 'Sorry, I forgot to.'
  6 'It's starting to.'

3 1 I couldn't understand what he wanted from me.
2 She doesn't know what she's doing. 3 The bus is late again. 4 Do you speak French?
5 I haven't seen them. 6 I don't think so.

# page 294

- 1 'So is Alice.' 2 'So does my father.'
   3 'So can I.' 4 'So does Carla.' 5 'So has Edward.'
- 2 1 neither/nor was the meat. 2 'Neither/Nor has Gemma.' 3 'Neither/Nor does this one.'
  4 'Neither/Nor can I.' 5 neither/nor will his friends.
- 3 1 'My car does.' 2 her sister hasn't. 3 our dog can't. 4 'The train doesn't.' 5 the back door was. 6 'Her second one did.'

# page 295

4 1 Eric plays tennis, and so does Dan. 2 Julie isn't tall, but Denise is. 3 Denise doesn't laugh a lot, and neither/nor does Paul. 4 Dan can ski, but Rachel can't. 5 Julie has been to America, and so has Denise. 6 Eric isn't tall, and neither/ nor is Paul. 7 Julie doesn't play tennis, but Dan does. 8 Paul doesn't like dancing, but Rachel does.

## page 296

- 1 she wasn't. 2 he does. 3 she wouldn't.
   4 it doesn't. 5 I can. 6 I haven't. 7 he doesn't. 8 she did. 9 they won't. 10 I do.
- 2 (possible answers)
  - 1 'Say 'hello' to him for me.' 2 'Congratulations!' 3 'I don't believe it!' 4 'Good luck!' 5 'That's interesting.' 6 'That's terrible.' 7 'What a nuisance!' 8 'I am sorry.' 9 'That's a surprise.' 10 'What a pity.'
- 3 1 nor/neither do cats. 2 nor/neither has the 3.15. 3 'Nor/Neither was l.' 4 nor/neither did Sally. 5 so does his brother. 6 so are the potatoes. 7 nor/neither does her brother.
  8 so were we. 9 'Nor/Neither do her parents.' 10 'So will I.'

# page 297

- 4 1 ... but I do. 2 ... 'I have.' 3 ... but I don't think he will. 4 ... 'I'm trying to.' 5 ... 'Of course I won't.' 6 ... but I can't. 7 ... but I don't want to. 8 ... but I haven't. 9 ... 'No, I didn't.' 10 ... but I hope to.
- 5 1 I don't know why. 2 Have you seen my mother today? 3 I don't think so. 4 Sorry, you can't come in here. 5 Do you want some help?
  6 Do you know what I think? 7 I can't understand a word. 8 The house is cold.
  9 It's raining again. 10 I've lost my keys.
- They're paper clips, aren't they? 2 It's a diary, isn't it? 3 It's a hole-punch, isn't it? 4 It's an address book, isn't it? 5 They're rulers, aren't they?
   They're calculators, aren't they?

- 1 1 √ 2 × 3 × 4 × 5 √ -6 × 7 √ 8 √ 9 × 10 ×
- 2 1 can't you? 2 won't she? 3 have you?
  4 doesn't he? 5 was there? 6 didn't she?
  7 does he? 8 isn't it? 9 is it? 10 will you?
  11 haven't they? 12 have they? 13 aren't l?
  14 don't they? 15 did it?
- 3 1 They haven't gone home, have they?
  - 2 We need tickets, don't we?
  - 3 You'd like some more coffee, wouldn't you?
  - 4 Mike was away yesterday, wasn't he?
  - 5 Angela didn't tell you her news, did she?
  - 6 Sophie can't play the piano, can she?
  - 7 There will be room for everybody, won't there?
  - 8 Your father doesn't eat meat, does he?
  - 9 These books don't belong to the library, do they?
  - 10 You're tired, aren't you?
- 4 1 it wasn't. 2 he wouldn't. 3 it doesn't.4 it did. 5 it won't.
- 5 1 Have they? 2 Won't you? 3 Do you? 4 Has it? 5 Didn't !?

# index

a, an: see articles a bit with comparatives 225 a few and a few of 181 and few. a little and little 175 a little and a little of 181 with comparatives 225 alot a lot (of) 174, 181 with comparatives 225 able: be able to 81 above 280-281 across 282-283 active and passive 94 active and passive verb forms 300 adjectives 209-211: 216-220 after be, become, etc 211 and adverbs: the difference 212 comparatives and superlatives 221-226 ending in -ly 217 followed by infinitives 128 with enough/too + infinitive 129 words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217 adverb particles (away, back etc) 142 - 143adverbs 212-215: 217 and adjectives: the difference 212 comparatives and superlatives 227 of manner 212 other adverbs 213 position 214-215 words that are both adjectives and adverbs 217 advice: uncountable 198 afraid afraid of 305 with be 3 after and afterwards 307 with present tense for future meaning 41, 236

against 280-281 ages with be 3 ago, for and since 307 aaree + infinitive 122-123 aaree with 305 all all, every and each 179 all, everybody and everything 178 and all of 181 position with noun or verb 178 along 282-283 already already, yet and still 308 position 64, 214-215 with present perfect 64 also: position 214-215 although 234 and but 237 always: position 214-215 and 234, 238 with adjectives 211 angry about/with 305 annoved and annoving 216 another 307 anv and any of 181 and some 170-171 anybody 172 anyone 172 anything 172 anything to ... 130 anywhere 172 aren't 1? 288, 301 arrive at/in 141, 283, 305 articles 151-166 a and an 152 a/an and one 153 a/an for jobs, roles etc 156 a/an in descriptions 157 expressions without articles (e.g. in bed, have breakfast, next Monday) 162-163 names 160-161 not used with my etc 163, 189 pronunciation 152 special cases 162-163

the and a/an 154–155 the not used in generalisations 158–159 with countable and uncountable nouns 153

as

and like 307 as, than and that 308 jobs and roles 307 not used without article 163 as ... as 228-229 as I am or as me 228 as soon as 234 with present tense for future meaning 41, 236 ask ask for 141, 305 ask somebody to do something 125 at (preposition of place) 279 and in 279 at a party 306 at the bottom/top/side 306 at the cinema/theatre 306 at, to and in 283 at (preposition of time) 274–275 at the beginning 306 at/in the end 306 back: at the back 163 bad at (...ing) 133, 305

bad at (...ing) 133, 305 baggage: uncountable 198 be 1–5 auxiliary: see progressive, passive be able to 81 be born 97 be careful 146 be in/out/away/back etc 142 contractions 2, 3 there is 6–7 with hungry, thirsty, ages etc 3 because 234 and so 237 and why 308 become + adjective 211

bed: expressions without article 162 been and gone 61 before with present tense for future meaning 41, 236 beain + infinitive 122-123 believe believe in 141, 305 not normally used in progressive 30-31 belong to 141, 305 better, best 222 between 280-281 born: be born 97, 307 borrow: structures 144 both 180 and both of 181 both ... and 239 both, either and neither 180 bottom: at the bottom 163 bread: uncountable 198 brina bring back 143 bring somebody something 144 but 234 and although 237 buy somebody something 144 bv and until 276 by ... ing 133 by bicycle/bus/car etc 162 by Dickens, Mozart etc 306 by myself/yourself etc 191 in passives 94 preposition of place 280-281

#### can

ability 80-81 can't and may not 83 permission 84-85 requests 86 can't help ... ing 134 capital letters 300 causative have 145 certainly: position 214-215 church: expressions without article 162 cinema: at/to the cinema 163 club: singular or plural verb 197 cold with be 3 collective nouns 197 college: expressions without article 162 colour with be 3

come come back 142 come in 146 company: singular or plural verb 197 comparative and superlative adjectives 221-226 forms 222 superlatives with in or of 226 superlatives with the 155, 223 the difference between comparatives and superlatives 223 using comparatives 224-225 using superlatives 226 comparative and superlative adverbs 227 conditionals: see if congratulations 291 conjunctions 233-242 and 238 because and so, although and but 237 both ... and, (n)either ... (n)or 239 introduction to conjunctions 234 position of conjunctions 235 tenses with time conjunctions 236 continue + infinitive 122-123 contractions 301 cook somebody something 144 could: see can countable and uncountable nouns 153 country: the country 163

daily: adjective and adverb 217 decide + infinitive 122–123 definitely: position 214–215 demonstratives (this, that etc) 168–169 depend on 305 describe: structures 144 determiners 167–184 with of 181 different from/to 305 difficulty in ...ing 305 discuss something with somebody 305 dislike ...ing 135 divide into 305

#### do

and make 307 auxiliary: see questions, negatives, question tags, short answers, reply questions do...ing 307 don't forget 146 don't worry 146 down 282–283 dream about/of 305 dressed in 305 dropping words in speech 293 during, for and while 277

#### each

and each of 181 each, every and all 179 each other and reflexives 191 early: adjective and adverb 217 either and either of 181 either, neither and both 180 either ... or 239 I'm not either 295 else 307 England: singular or plural verb 197 enjoy enjoy ... ing 134 enjoy myself/yourself etc 191 enough 176, 177 and enough of 181 with adjective and infinitive 129 even: position 214-215 ever 307 position 214-215 tenses 62 everv and every one of 181 every, each and all 179 expressions without prepositions 274 everybody 172 and all 178 everyone 172 everything 172 and all 178 everywhere 172 example of 305 excited and exciting 216

expect + infinitive 122–123 expect somebody to do somethina 125 explain: structures 144, 305, 307 family: singular or plural verb 197 farther, farthest 222 fast: adjective and adverb 217 feel + adjective 211 fetch somebody something 144 few and few of 181 few, a few, little and a little 175 fill in (a form) 143 fill up 143 find somebody something 144 finish ... ing 134 follow me 146 for and since 65 for, since and ago 307 for, during and while 277 for example 306 forget + infinitive 122-108 + Infinitive or ... ing 308 friendly: adjective, not adverb 217 frightened and frightening 216 from ... to movement 283 time 276 front: at the front 163 furniture: uncountable 198 further, furthest 222 future 35-44 future passive 96 aoina to 36-37 of be 5 of have 9 present progressive 38 simple present 41 will 39-40

#### gerunds: see -ing forms

get: structures 140 + adjective 211 get into, out of, on, off 141, 305 get out 142 get somebody something 144 get to a place 305 get up 142 have got 11

#### give

give back 143 give somebody something 144 give up ... ing 134, 143 glasses 197 00 go ... ing 134 go away/back/in/out/on 142 going to 36-37 gonna 301 gone and been 61 good at (...ing) 133, 305 good luck 291 got: have got 11 gotta (='got to') 301 grammar and vocabulary adjectives that go with particular nouns 219 adverbs of degree; subjects of study 216 animal behaviour 117 animals, birds and other creatures 155 cities and countries 147 clothes 33 common adjectives 176, 177 common adjectives with somebody etc 183 common expressions with reflexive pronouns 191 common imperative expressions 146 containers 199 dates 275 discovery, invention, creation 55 duration 285 eight useful things 91 games 19 giving directions 43 go with spare-time activities 215 housework 71 interests 159 jewellery 261 jobs 91 kinds of things 156 learning and using a language 127 materials 153, 165 musical instruments 241 names of languages 251 one-word noun + noun structures 205 public notices 131 relations 13 seven useful things 152

showing our feelings 291 some useful questions 107 the bathroom 190 things from the office 297 things that come in twos 180 things that fly 256 things that people can do 290 time 231 towns 174 travelling by air 100 useful time-expressions with for 277 vehicles 137 weather 187 group nouns 197

hair: uncountable 198 happen to 141, 305 hard: adjective and adverb 217 hardly used without not 115 hardly ever: position 214-215 hate + -ing form 135 + infinitive 135 not normally used in progressive 30-31 have 8-11 auxiliary: see perfect don't have to and mustn't 77 have a good journey/holiday 146 have breakfast, a shower, a good flight etc 10 have got 11 have some (more) ... 146 have something done 145 have to 76-78 he 186-187 hear and listen to 307 somebody do/doing something 308 help help yourself 190 help! 146 help somebody to do somethina 125 her object pronoun 186-187 possessive: her and his 188-189 hers 190 herself 191 him 186-187 himself 191

his 188-189, 190 and her 188 holiday: on holiday 162 home 307 without article 162 hope 307 + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31hospital: expressions without article 162 how How do you spell/pronounce ...? 107 How long does it take to ...? 107 How long have you been here? and How long are you here for? 107 how many as subject 108-109 how many/much 173 how old/tall/far etc 106 how to ... 269 hundred: a hundred 163 hungry with be 3 hurry up 142, 146

186-187 I am sorry 291 I don't believe it 291 I don't mind 31 I hope so/not 31 I see (='l understand') 30 idea: the idea of ... ina 305 if 243-252 and when 307 if I go or if I went 248 if I were you 247 in indirect questions 266 position of if-clauses 244 unless 244 unreal past 249 with past tense and would meaning 'not real' or 'not probable' 246 with present tense for future meaning 41, 245, 248 imperatives 146 in (preposition of time) 274-275 in/at the end 306 in/on time 306

in (preposition of place) 278-279 in a picture 306 in a raincoat/dress/hat 306 in a ... voice 306 in and at 279 in and on 278 in front of 280-281 in or of after superlatives 226 in pen/pencil 306 in the middle 306 in the rain/snow 306 in the sky 306 in, at and to 283 indirect speech 263-272 here and now words 268 if and whether 266 indirect auestions 266 infinitives 269 present reporting verbs 267 pronouns 264-265 say and tell 264 tenses 264-265 infinitives 119-130 after adjectives 128 after nouns (e.g. letters to write) 130 after verbs 122-123 in indirect speech 269 infinitive of purpose 121 it with infinitive subjects 126-127 verb + object + infinitive 124-125 with adjective and enough/too 129 with and without to 120 information: uncountable 198 -ing forms (gerunds) 131-135 after prepositions 132-133 after to 133 as subjects 131 verb + -ing form 134-135 -ing forms (present participles) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc interested and interesting 216 interested in 305 with be 3 into 282-283 irregular comparatives 222 irregular plurals 196 irregular verbs 299

it 186–187 used for countries, animals, times, dates, distance, weather 186–187 it depends 31 it doesn't matter 30 its 188–189 and it's 189, 301 itself 191

*jeans* 197 *just* 307 position 214–215 with present perfect 64

keep on ...ing 134 kind to 305 know: not normally used in progressive 30–31 knowledge: uncountable 198

last: expressions without prepositions 274 last year etc: no article 162 late: adjective and adverb 217 laugh at 141, 305 learn + infinitive 122-123 leaving out words in speech 293 relative who, which, that 257 left: on the left 163 lend somebody something 144 less than 225 let and make 307 let in 143 let's 147 lie down 142 like (verb) +...ing 135 + infinitive 135 not normally used in progressive 30-31 like and as 307 listen to 141, 305 and hear 307 little and little of 181 little, a little, few and a few 175 lonely: adjective, not adverb 217

#### look

+ adjective 211 look after/at/for 141, 305 look out! 142, 146 look round 142 look up (something in a dictionary etc) 143 look, see and watch 308 lots (of) 174, 181 love +...ing 135 + infinitive 135 not normally used in progressive 30-31 lovely: adjective, not adverb 217 luck: uncountable 198 luggage: uncountable 198

made of 153 make and do 307 and let 307 make somebody something 144 make yourself at home 146 make yourself comfortable 191 many and many of 181 and much 173 too many 177 married to 305 may and might 82-83 may not and can't 83 permission 85 me 186-187 me too 295 mean: not normally used in progressive 30-31 might and may 82-83 million: a million 163 mind ... ing 134 mine 190 modal verbs 73-92, and see entries for individual verbs monthly: adjective and adverb 217 more and more of 181 in comparatives 222-225 more than 225 most and most of 181 in superlatives 222-223, 226 mountains: the mountains 163

#### much

and many 173 and much of 181 too much 177 with comparatives 225 must 75, 77 and should 79 mustn't and don't have to 77 my 188–189 myself 191

names with or without the 160-161 near 280-281 need + infinitive 122-123 need somebody to do something 125 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31negatives 112-115; see also the units on be, have, modal verbs and the various tenses neither and neither of 181 neither ... nor 239 neither can l etc 294 neither, either and both 180 never position 214-215 tenses 62 used without not 115 news: uncountable 198 next expressions without prepositions 274 next Friday etc: no article 162 nice to 305 no (= 'not any') and none (of) 181 and not 114 no ... ing 131 used without not 115 no one 172 nobody 172 used without not 115 none (of) 181 non-progressive verbs 30-31 nor can letc 294 not and no 114 I hope not 31 not much/many and little/few 175

#### nothing 172 nothing to ... 130 used without not 115 nouns 195-208 + infinitive (e.g. letters to write) 130 countable and uncountable nouns 198-199 group nouns 197 noun + noun 204-205 one(s) 200 possessives with 's and s' 201-203, 205 singular and plural 196 nowhere 172 used without not 115

#### of

or in after superlatives 226 with determiners 181 off 282-283 offer somebody somethina 144 often: position 214-215 on (preposition of place) 278 and in 278 on foot 162 on holiday 162 on page 22, 306 on the phone 306 on the radio 306 on TV 306 on (preposition of time) 274-275 on/in time 306 one and a/an 153 one(s) 200only only a little/few 175 position 214-215 the only 155 opposite 280-281 orchestra: singular or plural verb 197 ought to 79 our 188-189 ours 190 ourselves 191 out of 282-283 over 282-283

pair 197

passives 93-102 future 96 introduction to passives 94 passive and active verb forms 300 present perfect 99 present progressive 98 simple past 97 simple present 95 past 282-283 past continuous: see past progressive past participles (worked, broken, seen etc) in perfect tenses 58, 68 in passives 94 past perfect 68-69 past progressive 51-53 past simple: see simple past past tenses 45-56 of be 4 of have 9 past progressive 51-53 past progressive and simple past 52-53 simple past 46-50 with if 246-248 pay and pay for 141, 305 people 196 most people or most of the people 181 perfect tenses 57-72 present perfect 58-65 present perfect progressive 66-67 past perfect 68-69 personal pronouns 186–187 phrasal verbs 142-143 pick up 143 place names with or without the 160-161 plan + infinitive 122-123 pleased with 305 plenty (of) 174, 181 plural nouns 196 police: plural verb 197 polite to 306 possessive determiners and pronouns 188-190 mine, yours etc 190 my, your etc 188-189 possessive nouns with 's and s' 201-203, 205 practise ... ing 134

#### prefer

+ infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30 - 31prepositions 273-286 +-ing form 132-133 after particular verbs 141 at (place) 279 at, in and on (time) 274-275 by and until 276 common expressions with prepositions 306 for, during and while 277 from ... to (time) 276 in and on (place) 278 in guestions 111 in relative clauses 258 movement 282-283 other prepositions of place 280-281 present participles (-ing forms) in progressive (continuous) verb forms: see present progressive, past progressive etc present perfect 58-67 forms 58-59 passive 99 present perfect and present 61, 67 present perfect and simple past compared 60-61 present perfect progressive 66-67 time words 62-63 with already, yet and just 64 with since and for 65 present progressive 23-29 and simple present 28-29 for future 38 passive 98 present simple: see simple present present tenses 15-34 simple present 16-22 present progressive (continuous) 23-27 the two present tenses compared 28-29 non-progressive verbs 30-31 present and present perfect 61, 67 prison: expressions without article 162 probably: position 214-215

#### promise

+ infinitive 122–123 promise somebody something 144 punctuation 301–302 put down 143 put on (clothes) 143 pyjamas 197

question tags 288–289, 292 question words 2, 106–107 as subjects 108–109 questions 102–111 indirect questions 266 prepositions in questions 111 question words 2, 106–107 question-words as subjects 108–109 questions with long subjects 110 *yes/no* questions 104–105 see also the units on *be, have,* modal verbs and the various tenses

radio: on the radio 163 read somebody something 144 reason for 306 reflexives (myself etc) 191 and each other 191 refuse + infinitive 122-123 relative pronouns (who, whom, which, that, what) and relative clauses 253-262 leaving out relative pronouns 257 prepositions in relative clauses 258 that 256, 259 what 259 who and which 254-255 whom 255 remember + infinitive or ... ing 308 not normally used in progressive 30-31 reply questions 291, 292 reported speech: see indirect speech right with be 3 right: on the right 163 round 282-283

's and s' possessives 201–203, 205 same 308

say 'hello' to him/her for me 291 sav and tell 264 structures 144 school: expressions without article 162 scissors 197 sea: the sea 163 see see, look and watch 308 somebody do/doing something 308 seem + adjective 211 + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30-31 send somebody something 144 shall 39 shall I/we ... ? 87 she 186-187 short answers 290, 292 should 79 and must 79 show somebody something 144 side: at the side 163 silly: adjective, not adverb 217 simple past 46-50 and past progressive 52-53 passive 97 simple present 16-22, 28-31 and present progressive 28-29 for future 41 passive 95 since and for 65 since, for and ago 307 singular and plural nouns 196 sit down 142, 146 sleep well 146 smile at 306 so 234 and because 237 and such 308 I hope/think so 31 so am / etc 294 some and any 170-171 and some of 181 somebody 172 someone 172 something 172 something to ... 130 sometimes: position 214-215 somewhere 172 spaghetti: uncountable 198

#### spelling

adverbs in -ly 212 capital letters 300 comparatives and superlatives 222 -ing forms 23 noun plurals 196 regular past participles 58 's and s' in possessives 201 simple past endings 46 simple present endings 16 spend (time) ... ing 134 spoken grammar 287–298 leaving out words 293 guestion tags 288-289, 292 reply questions 291, 292 short answers 290, 292 so am l, nor can he etc 294-295 stand up 142 start + infinitive 122-123 still position 214-215 still, yet and already 308 stop ... ing 134 such and so 308 suggest: structures 144 superlative: see comparative surprised and surprising 216 switch/turn on/off (lights. electrical appliances) 143

#### take

take away 143 take care of yourself 191 take off (clothes) 143 take somebody something 144 talk about 141, 306 teach somebody something 144 team: singular or plural verb 197 tell and say 264 tell somebody something 144 tenses: see present, past etc. in indirect speech 264-265 with time conjunctions 236 than after comparatives 224 than, as and that 308 than I am or than me 225 thank somebody for something 306 that (relative pronoun) 256, 259 that, as and than 308 that, this etc 168-169 that's a surprise/interesting/ terrible 291

the: see articles with superlatives 223 the country/mountains/sea 163 the same 163 theatre: at/to the theatre 163 their 188-189 theirs 190 them 186-187 themselves 191 there is 6-7 in question tags 289 these 168-9 they 186-187 think (don't) think so 31 not always used in progressive 30 - 31structures 308 think about 141 think about/of 306 thirsty with be 3 this 168-9 expressions without prepositions 274 this Monday etc: no article 162 those 168-169 thousand: a thousand 163 through 282-283 throw away 143 till: see until to (preposition) to, at and in 283 to ... ina 133 to with infinitive: see infinitives too + adjective + infinitive 129 and very 308 too, too much/many and not enough 177 too (= 'also'): l am too, me too 295 top: at the top 163 translate into/from 306 travel: uncountable 198 trousers 197 try + infinitive 122-123 + infinitive or ... ing 308 turn round 142 turn up/down (radio, TV, heater) 143 TV: on TV 163 typical of 306

uncountable: see countable under 280–283 understand: not normally used in progressive 30–31 university: expressions without article 162 unless 244 until/till 234, 276 + present with future meaning 41, 236 and by 276 up 282–283 us 186–187 used to 89 usually: position 214–215

verbs with adverb particles (phrasal verbs) 142–143 verbs with infinitives 122–123 love, like, hate 135 with object + infinitive 124–125 verbs with prepositions 141 verbs with two objects 144 very and too 308 very much: position 213

wait: structures 141, 308 wait for me 146 wake up 142 wanna (= 'want to') 301 want + infinitive 122-123 not normally used in progressive 30-31 want somebody to do something 124 wash up (cups, plates etc) 143 watch, look and see 308 we 186-187 weekly: adjective and adverb 217 well: position 213 were: if I were you 247 what (question word) and which 308 as subject 108-109 what... with article 163 what ... like? 107 what a nuisance/pity 291 what time/colour/size/sort of ...? etc 3, 106 what to ... 269 what (relative pronoun) 259 when + present with future meaning 41,236 and if 307 when to ... 269

Where are you from / do you come from? 107 whether 266 which (question word) and what 308 which ... ? as subject 108-109 which (relative pronoun) 254-255 while 234 + present with future meaning 41,236 while, for and during 277 who (question word) as subject 108-109 who (relative pronoun) 254-255 whom 308 relative pronoun 255 whose and who's 301 why and because 308 will 39-40 with + article 163 without + article 163 without ... ing 133 won't 39 word order 304 work expressions without article 162 uncountable 198 worse, worst 222 would with if 246-249 would like + infinitive 88 would like somebody to do something 124 write somebody something 144 write to 306 wrong be wrong 3 wrong with 306

#### yet

with present perfect 64 yet, still and already 308 you 186–187 your 188–189 yours 190 yourself, yourselves 191

# Oxford English Grammar Course Learn and practise the grammar you need to speak and write in English.

- Short grammar explanations are easy to remember. Colour makes the grammar clear.
- Clear simple examples show how the grammar works.

#### AM 1? HAVE YOU? CAN SHE? DO YOU? DOES HE?

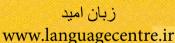
All yes/no questions begin with a verb. To make questions: put an auxiliary verb before the subject. (Auxiliary verbs are be (am, are etc), have/has/had, will, would, can, could, shall, should, may, might and must.) STATEMENT S: The taxi is coming. Ann has arrived. The train will be late. You can pay. QUESTION W: Is the taxi coming? Has Ann arrived? Will the train be late?

 Texts, articles, guotations and poems use the grammar.

Ashie CARSTAIRS was born in 1976. She is an explorer who has travelied extensively in Asia and Africa. She has also participated in she has climbed in the Andes and Himalayas. For the last five years, Ann has been working for the National Institute for Polar Research. She has written four books about her experiences.



- Internet exercises and grammar-and-vocabulary work
- Tests in the book and online



#### About the authors

Michael Swan and Catherine Walter are experts in English and language teaching. Michael is the author of Practical English Usage. Catherine is a Lecturer in Applied Linguistics at Oxford University. Their well-known books include The Good Grammar Book and How English Works (the basis for Oxford English Grammar Course Basic and Intermediate).

#### Hundreds of exercises practise the grammar.

Can you pay?

#### questions and negatives: more practice Duestions with and without do/did. Ask about the words in italics.

Oxford English

Grammar

Oxford

English

Course

Grammar

Oxford

English

Grammar

#### She said something. what did she say? She said something. Mia cooked dinne Julia cooked eggs 3 The ball hit loe 4 Th Sa 🚯 Grammar in a text. Read the poem, and then write one yourself. 24 fust you wait and see Just you wait and see I'm genting older Tim genting older Hare's built into an die seerything I can't papik German. oor land broakting I can we Tim men gening to be a builet danver see aan tapen singen. I'm men gening to be a builet danver see aan tapen singen. I'm men singen singen. I'm men singen singen. I'm men singen singen. I'm men singen singen. oor taan two boor maarkaan oor wither the source of also services. B 8 80 0

# But Flido semething good. Just you will and see

Your poent
I'm getting older.
There isn't time to do everything,
Fcant
or
F can see
Fire not going to
or
C'à never
411
- HT
But Fd
Jose you wait and see.



grammar to using grammar.

Pronunciation for grammar CD-ROM practises rhythm, stress and intonation. Listen, think, repeat and record. Online exercises take you from practising





OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS